

VOLVMEN PRIMVM

# DE BELLO GALLICO

A

CAIO IVLIO CÆSARE



AD VERBUM TROPICEQVE INTERPRETATVS  
AB

ANDREA INGLE

## COPYRIGHT INFORMATION

Licensees may copy, distribute, display and perform the work and make derivative works and remixes based on it only if they give the author or licensor the credits (attribution) in the manner specified by these.

Licensees may copy, distribute, display, and perform the work and make derivative works and remixes based on it only for non-commercial purposes.

Licensees may distribute derivative works only under a license identical ("not more restrictive") to the license that governs the original work. Without share-alike, derivative works might be sublicensed with compatible but more restrictive license clauses, e.g. CC BY to CC BY-NC.)







## IMPORTANT NOTICE!

This is a work in progress and is by no means a final copy—think of it as an incomplete first draft; the formatting is not complete, and translations and definitions have not been fully edited, and as I have but one year of experience in latin, one can expect many errors within.

Last Updated:  
Thursday, May 4, 2017  
13:27:47

Revision number:	1022
File Name:	Liber.odt
Time Editing:	481:47:38.00
Pages:	624
Paragraphs:	11105
Words:	129455
Characters:	778260
Tables:	1804
Graphics:	2
Objects:	0
Footnotes (+ Definitions)	3000



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<a href="#">COPYRIGHT INFORMATION</a> .....	<a href="#">TWO POSSIBLE ROUTES THROUGH THE PROVINCE</a>
<a href="#">IMPORTANT NOTICE</a> .....	.....LXVII
<a href="#">FORMATTING INDEX</a> .....VI	<a href="#">I.VII</a> .....
<a href="#">ABBREVIATIONS</a> .....VII	<a href="#">CÆSAR HASTENS TO GENEVA</a>
<a href="#">REFERENCED WORKS</a> .....VIII	.....LXXV
<a href="#">THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETII</a> .....I	<a href="#">I.VIII</a> .....
	<a href="#">CÆSAR FORBIDS THE HELVETIANS ENTRY</a> .....LXXXIX
	<a href="#">I.IX</a> .....
	<a href="#">THE HELVETIANS DEPART</a>
	.....XCIX
<a href="#">I.I</a> .....	<a href="#">I.X</a> .....
<a href="#">DIVISIONS AND PEOPLES</a> .....I	<a href="#">CÆSAR LEARNS OF THEIR PLANS</a> .....CVII
<a href="#">I.II</a> .....	<a href="#">I.XI</a> .....
<a href="#">ORGATORIX PERSUADES HIS PEOPLE TO MIGRATE</a> .....XVII	<a href="#">THE ÆDUANS, AMBARRI, &amp; ALLOBROGES SEEK AID</a> .....CXVII
<a href="#">I.III</a> .....	<a href="#">I.XII</a> .....
<a href="#">THEY MAKE PREPARATIONS</a>	<a href="#">CÆSAR CUTS TO PIECES ONE DIVISION</a> .....CXXV
.....XXXI	
<a href="#">I.IV</a> .....	<a href="#">I.XIII</a> .....
<a href="#">THE CONSPIRACY IS REVEALED</a> .....XLIX	<a href="#">CÆSAR, BRIDGING THE ARAR, CROSSES</a> .....CXXXV
<a href="#">I.V</a> .....	<a href="#">I.XIV</a> .....
<a href="#">THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO MIGRATE</a> .....LVII	<a href="#">CÆSAR LAYS DOWN CONDITIONS</a> .....CXLVII
<a href="#">I.VI</a> .....	

<a href="#"><u>I.XV</u></a> .....	<a href="#"><u>PREPARE FOR BATTLE</u></a> .....CCLIII
<a href="#"><u>THE HELVETIANS RESUME</u></a>	
<a href="#"><u>THEIR MARCH</u></a> .....CLXIII	<a href="#"><u>I.XXV</u></a> .....
	<a href="#"><u>THE ROMANS CHARGE</u></a> .....CCLIX
<a href="#"><u>I.XVI</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>THE ÆDUANS DO NOT BRING</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXVI</u></a> .....
<a href="#"><u>THE PROMISED GRAIN</u></a> .....CLXXI	<a href="#"><u>THE HELVETIANS ARE</u></a>
	<a href="#"><u>TOTALLY DEFEATED</u></a> .....CCLXXI
<a href="#"><u>I.XVII</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>LISCUS DISCLOSES THE</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXVII</u></a> .....
<a href="#"><u>TREACHERY</u></a> .....CLXXXIII	<a href="#"><u>THE HELVETIANS BEG FOR</u></a>
	<a href="#"><u>TERMS</u></a> .....CCLXXXI
<a href="#"><u>I.XVIII</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR LEARNS THAT</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXVIII</u></a> .....
<a href="#"><u>DUMNORIX IS A TRAITOR</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR DEALS WITH THE</u></a>
.....CXCI	<a href="#"><u>FUGITIVE VERBIGENS</u></a>
	.....CCLXXXIX
<a href="#"><u>I.XIX</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR CONSULTS</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXIX</u></a> .....
<a href="#"><u>DUMNORIX' BROTHER</u></a> .....CCIX	<a href="#"><u>A TALLY OF THE HELVETIANS</u></a>
	<a href="#"><u>AND THEIR ALLIES</u></a> .....CCXCIX
<a href="#"><u>I.XX</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR PARDONS DUMNORIX</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>BUT WARNS HIM</u></a> .....CCXIX	<a href="#"><u>ARIOVISTUS</u></a> .....CCCV
<a href="#"><u>I.XXI</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR PLANS TO CRUSH THE</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXX</u></a> .....
<a href="#"><u>HELVETIANS</u></a> .....CCXXXI	<a href="#"><u>THE GALLIC LEADERS</u></a>
	<a href="#"><u>CONGRATULATE CÆSAR</u></a> .....CCCV
<a href="#"><u>I.XXII</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>THROUGH FALSE</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXXI</u></a> .....
<a href="#"><u>INFORMATION THE PLAN</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR IS BESEECHED TO</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>FAILS</u></a> .....CCXXXVII	<a href="#"><u>DEFEND GAUL</u></a> .....CCCXV
<a href="#"><u>I.XXIII</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR TURNS TO GO TO</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXXII</u></a> .....
<a href="#"><u>BIBRACTE FOR SUPPLIES</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>THE SEQUANIANS SHOW</u></a>
.....CCXLVII	<a href="#"><u>WHAT MIGHT HAPPEN</u></a>
	.....CCCXXXIX
<a href="#"><u>I.XXIV</u></a> .....	
<a href="#"><u>ROMANS AND HELVETIANS</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>I.XXXIII</u></a> .....
	<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR PROMISES TO HELP</u></a>
	<a href="#"><u>AGAINST ARIOVISTUS</u></a>



.....CCCXLVII	<u>I.XLIV</u> .....
<u>I.XXXIV</u> .....	<u>ARIOVISTUS IS</u>
<u>CÆSAR INVITES ARIOVISTUS</u>	<u>UNCOMPROMISING AND</u>
<u>TO A CONFERENCE</u> .....CCCLVII	<u>DEFIANT</u> .....CDLXIII
<u>I.XXXV</u> .....	<u>I.XLV</u> .....
<u>CÆSAR MAKES DEMANDS OF</u>	<u>CÆSAR DECLINES TO MAKE</u>
<u>ARIOVISTUS</u> .....CCCLXIII	<u>AN CONCESSIONS</u> .....CDLXXXV
<u>I.XXXVI</u> .....	<u>I.XLVI</u> .....
<u>ARIOVISUTS REPLIES, DEFYING</u>	<u>THE CONFERENCE IS</u>
<u>CÆSAR</u> .....CCCLXXI	<u>DISRUPTED BY AN ATTACK</u>
	.....CDXCI
<u>I.XXXVII</u> .....	<u>I.XLVII</u> .....
<u>CÆSAR HEARS FURTHER</u>	<u>ARIOVISTUS REOPENS</u>
<u>COMPLAINTS</u> .....CCCLXXXI	<u>NEGOTIATIONS</u> .....CDXCIX
<u>I.XXXVIII</u> .....	<u>I.XLVIII</u> .....
<u>CÆSAR HASTENS TO</u>	<u>ARIORISTUS MOVES CAMP</u> DIX
<u>VESONTIO</u> .....CCCLXXXVII	
<u>I.XXXIX</u> .....	<u>I.XLIX</u> .....
<u>PANIC SEIZES CÆSAR'S ARMY</u>	<u>CÆSAR FORTIFIES A CAMP</u>
.....CCCXCV	<u>BEYOND ARIOVISTUS</u> .....DXIX
<u>I.XL</u> .....	<u>I.L</u> .....
<u>CÆSAR EMPLOYS A</u>	<u>THE GERMANS CONSULT THE</u>
<u>PERSUASIVE ADDRESS</u> .....CDVII	<u>SPIRITS</u> .....DXXV
<u>I.XLI</u> .....	<u>I.LI</u> .....
<u>THE ARMY REINVIGORATED</u>	<u>CÆSAR FORCES AN</u>
<u>CÆSAR ADVANCES</u> .....CDXXXI	<u>ENGAGEMENT</u> .....DXXXIII
<u>I.XLII</u> .....	<u>I.LII</u> .....
<u>ARIOVISTUS SUGGESTS A</u>	<u>DESPERATE FIGHTING, HAND-</u>
<u>CONFERENCE</u> .....CDXXXIX	<u>TO-HAND</u> .....DXXXIX
<u>I.XLIII</u> .....	<u>I.LIII</u> .....
<u>CÆSAR AND ARIOVISTUS</u>	<u>CÆSAR IS VICTORIOUS</u> ..DXLVII
<u>MEET</u> .....CDLI	<u>I.LIV</u> .....

<a href="#"><u>CÆSAR GOES TO NORTH</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>\$368</u></a>	DLXXV
<a href="#"><u>ITALY</u></a> .....DLVII	<a href="#"><u>\$369</u></a>	DLXXVI
<a href="#"><u>APPENDIX</u></a> .....DLXII	<a href="#"><u>\$370</u></a>	DLXXVI
	<a href="#"><u>\$372</u></a>	DLXXVI
	<a href="#"><u>\$373</u></a>	DLXXVI
<a href="#"><u>Allen and Greenough's New</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>\$374</u></a>	DLXXVI
<a href="#"><u>Latin Grammar</u></a> .....	<a href="#"><u>\$376</u></a>	DLXXVI
<a href="#"><u>\$39</u></a> .....DLXII	<a href="#"><u>\$377</u></a>	DLXXVII
<a href="#"><u>\$113</u></a> .....DLXII	<a href="#"><u>\$381</u></a>	DLXXVII
<a href="#"><u>\$146</u></a> .....DLXIII	<a href="#"><u>\$382</u></a>	DLXXVII
<a href="#"><u>\$147</u></a> .....DLXV	<a href="#"><u>\$383</u></a>	DLXXVII
<a href="#"><u>\$148</u></a> .....DLXV	<a href="#"><u>\$384</u></a>	DLXXVII
<a href="#"><u>\$170</u></a> .....DLXV	<a href="#"><u>\$388</u></a>	DLXXVIII
<a href="#"><u>\$194</u></a> .....DLXVII	<a href="#"><u>\$390</u></a>	DLXXVIII
<a href="#"><u>\$196</u></a> .....DLXVIII	<a href="#"><u>\$393</u></a>	DLXXVIII
<a href="#"><u>\$282</u></a> .....DLXVIII	<a href="#"><u>\$396</u></a>	DLXXVIII
<a href="#"><u>\$283</u></a> .....DLXIX	<a href="#"><u>\$400</u></a>	DLXXIX
<a href="#"><u>\$289</u></a> .....DLXIX	<a href="#"><u>\$401</u></a>	DLXXIX
<a href="#"><u>\$291</u></a> .....DLXIX	<a href="#"><u>\$402</u></a>	DLXXIX
<a href="#"><u>\$293</u></a> .....DLXIX	<a href="#"><u>\$403</u></a>	DLXXIX
<a href="#"><u>\$301</u></a> .....DLXX	<a href="#"><u>\$404</u></a>	DLXXIX
<a href="#"><u>\$306</u></a> .....DLXX	<a href="#"><u>\$405</u></a>	DLXXIX
<a href="#"><u>\$307</u></a> .....DLXX	<a href="#"><u>\$406</u></a>	DLXXX
<a href="#"><u>\$308</u></a> .....DLXX	<a href="#"><u>\$407</u></a>	DLXXX
<a href="#"><u>\$317</u></a> .....DLXXI	<a href="#"><u>\$408</u></a>	DLXXX
<a href="#"><u>\$323</u></a> .....DLXXI	<a href="#"><u>\$409</u></a>	DLXXXI
<a href="#"><u>\$326</u></a> .....DLXXI	<a href="#"><u>\$410</u></a>	DLXXXI
<a href="#"><u>\$335</u></a> .....DLXXII	<a href="#"><u>\$411</u></a>	DLXXXI
<a href="#"><u>\$343</u></a> .....DLXXII	<a href="#"><u>\$412</u></a>	DLXXXI
<a href="#"><u>\$345</u></a> .....DLXXII	<a href="#"><u>\$414</u></a>	DLXXXI
<a href="#"><u>\$346</u></a> .....DLXXIII	<a href="#"><u>\$415</u></a>	DLXXXII
<a href="#"><u>\$347</u></a> .....DLXXIII	<a href="#"><u>\$416</u></a>	DLXXXII
<a href="#"><u>\$348</u></a> .....DLXXIII	<a href="#"><u>\$417</u></a>	DLXXXII
<a href="#"><u>\$349</u></a> .....DLXXIV	<a href="#"><u>\$418</u></a>	DLXXXII
<a href="#"><u>\$350</u></a> .....DLXXIV	<a href="#"><u>\$419</u></a>	DLXXXIII
<a href="#"><u>\$359</u></a> .....DLXXIV	<a href="#"><u>\$420</u></a>	DLXXXIII
<a href="#"><u>\$364</u></a> .....DLXXV	<a href="#"><u>\$423</u></a>	DLXXXIII
<a href="#"><u>\$367</u></a> .....DLXXV	<a href="#"><u>\$424</u></a>	DLXXXIII

<a href="#">\$425</a>	DLXXXIV	<a href="#">\$539</a>	DXCV
<a href="#">\$426</a>	DLXXXIV	<a href="#">\$540</a>	DXCV
<a href="#">\$427</a>	DLXXXV	<a href="#">\$543</a>	DXCVI
<a href="#">\$428</a>	DLXXXV	<a href="#">\$545</a>	DXCVI
<a href="#">\$429</a>	DLXXXV	<a href="#">\$546</a>	DXCVI
<a href="#">\$431</a>	DLXXXVI	<a href="#">\$549</a>	DXCVI
<a href="#">\$432</a>	DLXXXVI	<a href="#">\$551</a>	DXCVI
<a href="#">\$434</a>	DLXXXVI	<a href="#">\$553</a>	DXCVII
<a href="#">\$439</a>	DLXXXVII	<a href="#">\$555</a>	DXCVII
<a href="#">\$444</a>	DLXXXVII	<a href="#">\$556</a>	DXCVII
<a href="#">\$450</a>	DLXXXVII	<a href="#">\$557</a>	DXCVII
<a href="#">\$452</a>	DLXXXVII	<a href="#">\$558</a>	DXCVIII
<a href="#">\$457</a>	DLXXXVII	<a href="#">\$560</a>	DXCVIII
<a href="#">\$463</a>	DLXXXVII	<a href="#">\$561</a>	DXCVIII
<a href="#">\$469</a>	DLXXXVIII	<a href="#">\$562</a>	DXCIX
<a href="#">\$470</a>	DLXXXVIII	<a href="#">\$563</a>	DXCIX
<a href="#">\$481</a>	DLXXXVIII	<a href="#">\$564</a>	DXCIX
<a href="#">\$495</a>	DLXXXVIII	<a href="#">\$565</a>	DXCIX
<a href="#">\$496</a>	DLXXXIX	<a href="#">\$566</a>	DC
<a href="#">\$503</a>	DLXXXIX	<a href="#">\$567</a>	DC
<a href="#">\$504</a>	DLXXXIX	<a href="#">\$568</a>	DC
<a href="#">\$506</a>	DLXXXIX	<a href="#">\$569</a>	DC
<a href="#">\$507</a>	DXC	<a href="#">\$572</a>	DCI
<a href="#">\$508</a>	DXC	<a href="#">\$573</a>	DCI
<a href="#">\$509</a>	DXC	<a href="#">\$576</a>	DCI
<a href="#">\$510</a>	DXC	<a href="#">\$577</a>	DCI
<a href="#">\$513</a>	DXC	<a href="#">\$580</a>	DCIII
<a href="#">\$514</a>	DXCI	<a href="#">\$583</a>	DCIII
<a href="#">\$516</a>	DXCII	<a href="#">\$584</a>	DCIII
<a href="#">\$524</a>	DXCII	<a href="#">\$586</a>	DCIV
<a href="#">\$526</a>	DXCII	<a href="#">\$587</a>	DCIV
<a href="#">\$527</a>	DXCIII	<a href="#">\$588</a>	DCV
<a href="#">\$529</a>	DXCIII	<a href="#">\$589</a>	DCV
<a href="#">\$531</a>	DXCIII	<a href="#">\$592</a>	DCV
<a href="#">\$534</a>	DXCIII	<a href="#">\$593</a>	DCVI
<a href="#">\$535</a>	DXCIV	<a href="#">\$601</a>	DCVI
<a href="#">\$536</a>	DXCIV	<a href="#">\$640</a>	DCVI
<a href="#">\$537</a>	DXCV		

[Lewis & Short's Latin](#)

[Dictionary](#).....

# FORMATTING INDEX

Symbol & Structure		Example
I.I.I.	Book; chapter; sentence	I.V.X.
	Authentic Latin text	GALLIA EST OMNIS DĪVĪSA IN PARTĒS TRĒS...
""	Direct Latin text translated from indirect text (when applicable)	"MIHI QUIDEM PERSUADETUR"
	Subordinated Latin text	Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit
<sup>1</sup>	Footnotes	Gallia est <sup>1</sup> omnis <sup>2</sup> dīvisa <sup>3 4 5</sup> in partēs <sup>6</sup> trēs
=	Ad verbatim translation in English	=all Gaul is separated into three parts
~	Figurative translation in English	~the whole of Gallia is divided into three parts
	Vocabulary definitions	<b>dīvidus, -a, -um</b> , ADJ. (DIVIDO), separated
	Grammatical notes	PRED. NOM. SG.
(...)	Words to smoothen translation	=the Marne and the Seine separates (them) from the Belgæ
[...]	Missing or necessary words	=one [part] of which the Belgæ inhabit
<...>	Hints of grammar not necessary but helpful	=it was a great <source of> hiderance to the Gauls for fighting
text	Text which is considered redundant in the English language	= <del>routes</del> in which (of such a character that by them) they could be able to go forth from (their) home
//	Words from another location in the text inserted	=and /they (the Belgæ) import/ those (things)
	Uncertain text	<b>sē præsente</b>

# ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	absolute	irr.	irregular
abs.	absolute	lit.	literal
acc.	accusative	loc.	locative
adj.	adjective	m.	masculine
adv.	adverb	meton.	by metonymy
aka.	also known as	milit.	military sense
char.	characteristic	n., neut.	neuter
coll.	collective, collectively	neg.	negative
comp.	comparative, compound	nom.	nominative
conj.	conjunction	num.	numeral
const.	construction	obj.	object
dat.	dative	opp.	opposed to, opposite
decl.	declension	P. a.	participle adjective
def.	defective	part.	participle
dif.	difference	pass.	passive
dem.	demonstrative	pers.	person, personal
dep.	deponent	perf.	perfect
esp.	especially	pl.	plural
ex.	example	plup.	pluperfect
dim.	diminutive	pos.	positive
distrib.	distributive	ppp.	perfect past participle
e.g.	exempli gratia, for example	præp.	preposition
Eng.	English	pred.	predicate
etc.	et cetera, and so forth	pres.	present
equiv.	equivalent	pron.	pronoun, pronominal
excl.	exclamation	prop.	proper, -ly, in a proper sense
expr.	expressed	purp.	purpose
f.	feminine	reflex.	reflexive
fig.	figuratively	rel.	relative
fut.	future	res.	result
gen.	genitive	semi-dep.	semi-deponent
in gen.	in general	sg.	singular
id.	idem, the same	signif.	significance.
i.e.	id est, that is	spec.	specification
imp.	imperative	subj.	subjunctive, subject
impers.	impersonal, impersonally	subst.	substantive
imperf.	imperfect	sup.	superlative
inch.	inchoative, inceptive	t. t.	technical term
indecl.	indeclinable	trans.	translate, translation, transitive
indef.	indefinite	trop.	in a tropical or figurative sense
indic.	indicative	usu.	usually
indir.	indirect	v.	verb
inf.	infinitive	voc.	vocative
intens.	intensive		
inter.	interrogative		
interj.	interjection		
intr.	intransitive		

## REFERENCED WORKS

Harpers' Latin Dictionary: A New Latin Dictionary Founded on the Translation of Freund's Latin-German Lexicon

Edited by E.A. Andrews An Elementary Latin Dictionary with Brief Helps for Latin Readers Charlton T. Lewis

Cæsar's Gallic War (Allen & Greenough's Edition)

Julius Cæsar, James B. Greenough, Benjamin L. D'ooge, M. Grant Daniel

Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

J. B. Greenough, G. L. Kittredge, A. A. Howard, Benjamin. L. D'ooge

Commentaries on the Gallic War – Cæsar Completely Parsed with Interlinear and Marginal Translations

Julius Cæsar, Rev. James B. Finch

C. Iulii. Cæsaris Commentarii Rerum Gestarum. Cæsar's Commentaries – The Gallic War, Books I-IV, With Selections From Books V-VII and from The Civil War

Julius Cæsar, Kelsey W. Frances

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic war: Literally Translated, with Explanatory Notes

Julius Cæsar, Hinds & Noble

De Bello Gallico – Libri VII : Cæsar's Gallic War, with a Life of Cæsar, Geography and People of Gaul, History of the Military Art in Cæsar's Commentaries; Historical and Grammatical Notes; Vocabulary and an Index

Julius Cæsar, Lowe Corneluis Marshall, Ewing J. T

College Cæsar: Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Julius Cæsar, Geoffrey Steadman

A Latin Reader for the Second Year, with Notes, Exercises for Translation into Latin, Grammatical Appendix, and Vocabularies

Julius Cæsar, John Carew Rolfe, Walter Dennison

Cæsar's Bellum Gallicum Book 1, with Vocabulary, Notes, and Clause Subordination

Julius Cæsar, James A. Stephens The campaign against the Helvetians.





# THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETII.

## I.I



### DIVISIONS AND PEOPLES.



## I.I.I.



ALLIA EST OMNIS DĪVĪSA IN PARTĒS TRĒS,  
QUĀRUM ŪNAM INCOLUNT BELGÆ, ALIAM  
AQUĪTĀNĪ, TERTIAM QUĪ IPSŌRUM LINGUĀ  
CELTÆ, NOSTRĀ GALLĪ APPELLANTUR.

Gallia<sup>I</sup> est<sup>II</sup> omnis<sup>III</sup> dīvīsa<sup>IV v VI</sup> in<sup>VII</sup> partēs<sup>VIII</sup> trēs<sup>IX</sup>

=all Gaul is divided into three ~the whole of Gallia is divided  
parts into three parts

- 
- I **Gallia, -ae**, F., Gaul, the country of the Gaulli, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany
- II **sum, fui, esse** (ES-; FEV-), AS A PREDICATE, *asserting existence, to be, exist, live*; Of circumstances or condition, *to be, be found, be situated, be placed*; WITH DAT., *to belong, pertain, be possessed, be ascribed*; WITH GEN. POSSESS., *to belong to, pertain to, be of, be the part of, be peculiar to, be characteristic of, be the duty of*; Of events, *to be, happen, occur, befall, take place*; **fōre** FOR *futurum esse* (SEE CHART §170)
- III **omnis, -e**, ADJ., PL, *all, every*; SG., *every, all, the whole*—"Gallia est omnis divisa," *the whole of Gallia*

quārum<sup>I</sup> [partem] ūnam<sup>II</sup> incolunt<sup>III</sup> Belgæ<sup>IV</sup>

=one [part] of which the Belgæ ~one of which the Belgæ inhabit  
inhabit

aliā<sup>V</sup> [partem] Aquitānī<sup>VI</sup> [incolunt]

=another [part] the Aquitani ~the Aquitani another  
[inhabit]

IV **est...dīvīsa**, PART. USED AS ADJ. PARTICIPLES ARE OFTEN USED AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVES. AS SUCH THEY MAY BE JOINED TO THE SUBJECT BY ESSE OR A COPULATIVE VERB. NOTE. FROM THIS PREDICATE USE ARISE THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE PASSIVE,—THE PARTICIPLE OF COMPLETED ACTION WITH THE INCOMPLETE TENSES OF ESSE DEVELOPING THE IDEA OF PAST TIME: AS, INTERFECTUS EST, HE WAS (OR HAS BEEN) KILLED. LIT. HE IS HAVING-BEEN-KILLED (I.E. ALREADY SLAIN). §495

V PRED. NOM. SG.

VI **divīdus, a, um**, ADJ. (DIVIDO), *separated*; IN PPP. AS ADJ., *divided*

VII **in**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. OR ABL., WITH ACC., *in* space, with verbs implying entrance, *into, to*; WITH ABL., of space, *in, within*; WITH ABL. Of position, *on, upon, over, among, before, in, under*; Of a multitude or number, *in, among, of*; In other relations, in which an aiming at, an inclining or striving towards a thing, is conceivable, *on, about, respecting; towards, against; for, as; in, to; into*; Of purpose, *for, with a view to; In time, into, till, for*

VIII **pars, partis**, F. (PAR-), *a part, piece, portion, share; direction, side; place district*; Fig., *"ex parte," in part, partly*

IX **trēs, tria**, GEN. **trium**, card; NUM., *three*

I **quī, quæ, quod**, GEN. **cuius**, PRON. (CA-), INTERROG, *who? which? what? what kind of a?*; SG. N., *what, as far as, as much as, to the extent that* (MOSTLY ADJ., AS SUBST., *quī* ASKS THE NATURE OR CHARACTER, *quis* THE NAME); WITH AN ACCESSORY SIGNIF., *causal* or *final*, JOINED TO THE SUBJ. *As, because, seeing that, since*; AS CONJ., *because* (SEE CHART: RELATIVE PRONOUNS §147 & INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS §148)

II **ūnus, -a, -um**, ADJ., Prop. In gen., *one, a single*—WITH GEN. PART.; Esp. Adv., **ūnā**, *in one and the same place, at the same time, in company, together* (SEE CHART: ŪNUS, ONE §113)

III **incolō, -luī, —, ere** (IN + COLŌ), *to be at home, abide, dwell*

IV **Belgae, -ārum**, M., *the Belgæ or Belgians*, a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul

V **alius, -a, -ud**, ADJ. PRONOM. (AL-), *another, other, different; alius...alius, one...another*—IN PL., *some...others* (SEE CHART: ALIUS (N. ALIUD), OTHER §113)

tertiam<sup>vii</sup> [partem]

=*the third [part]*

~*the third*

[eī] quī ipsōrum<sup>ii</sup> linguā<sup>iii iv</sup> Celtæ<sup>v</sup> [appellantur]<sup>vi</sup>

=*[those] who in <respect to> the language of themselves [are called] Celts* ~*those who, in their own language, are called Celts*

nostrā [linguā]<sup>vii</sup> Gallī appellantur

=*in <respect to> our [language], they are called Gauls*

~*in our language they are called Gauls*

VI **Aquitānus, -a, -um**, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; IN PL., AS SUBST., *the Aquani or Aquitanians*, inhabiting south-western Gaul

VII **tertius, -a, -um** (TER), NUM., *third*

I ANTECEDENT (SP. *eī*) IS OFTEN OMITTED. THE ANTECEDENT NOUN SOMETIMES APPEARS IN BOTH CLAUSES, BUT USUALLY ONLY IN THE ONE THAT PRECEDES. SOMETIMES IT IS WHOLLY OMITTED. III. THE ANTECEDENT MAY BE OMITTED, ESPECIALLY IF IT IS INDEFINITE. §307<sup>III</sup>

II **ipse, -a, -um**, GEN. **ipsius**. PRON. DEMONSTR., In gen., to express eminence or emphasis. *Self*, in person (often rendered by an emphatic *he*, or by *very, just, precisely*); To EMPHASIZE ONE OF THE SUBJECTS OF A COMMON PREDICATE., WITH *et, he too, himself in person, even he*; To make prominent one of two or more subjects of any predicate, *for his part, he too, also, as well* (SEE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN CHARTS: IPSE, SELF. §146)

III ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. I. TO THIS HEAD ARE TO BE REFERRED MANY EXPRESSIONS WHERE THE ABLATIVE EXPRESSES THAT IN ACCORDANCE WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. NOTE. AS THE ROMANS HAD NO SUCH CATEGORIES AS WE MAKE, IT IS IMPOSSIBLE TO CLASSIFY ALL USES OF THE ABLATIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (ORIGINALLY INSTRUMENTAL) IS CLOSELY AKIN TO THAT OF MANNER, AND SHOWS SOME RESEMBLANCE TO MEANS AND CAUSE. §418

IV **lingua, -æ**, F., *the tongue, the tongue*; *A tongue, utterance, speech, language*

V **Celtae, -ārum**, M., *Celts, the people of central Gaul*

VI **appellō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (AD + PELLO), *to address, speak to, apply to, accost*; *To call by name, term, name, entitle*

VII **nostrā [linguā]**, ABL. OF SPEC. §418

## I.I.II.

HĪ OMNĒS LINGUĀ, ĪNSTITŪTĪS, LĒGIBUS INTER SĒ  
DIFFERUNT.

Hī omnēs linguā<sup>I</sup>, īnstitūtīs<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>, lēgibus<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup> inter<sup>VI</sup> sē<sup>VII</sup> differunt<sup>VIII</sup>  
=all these (people) differ among ~all these differ from each other  
themselves in <respect to> in language, customs and laws  
language, in <respect to>  
customs, (and) in <respect to>  
laws

## I.I.III.

GALLŌS AB AQUĪTĀNĪS GARUMNA FLŪMEN, Ā BELGĪS  
MATRONA ET SĒQUANA DĪVIDIT.

Gallōs ab Aquītānīs<sup>IX</sup> Garumna flūmen<sup>X</sup> [dīvidit]  
=the river Garonne [separates] ~the river Garonne separates  
the Gauls from the Aquitani the Gauls from the Aquitani

---

I ABL. OF SPEC. §418

II ABL. OF SPEC. §418

III **īnstitūtum** **i**, N. (P. OF INSTITUO), a purpose, intention, design; A practice, custom, usage, habit

IV ABL. OF SPEC. §418

V **lĕx lĕgis**, F. (LEG-), a formal proposition for a law, motion, bill (offered by a magistrate to the people); A law, precept, regulation, principle, rule, mode, manner

VI **inter**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. (ANA-), between, betwixt; Esp., WITH PRONOUNS, to express all reciprocal relations, among, with, or between one another; mutually, together; With a period, during, in the course of, within, for, by, at

VII **inter sē**, SPECIAL USE OF REF. SPECIAL USES OF THE REFLEXIVE ARE THE FOLLOWING: VI. INTER SĒ (NŌS, VŌS), AMONG THEMSELVES (OURSELVES, YOURSELVES), IS REGULARLY USED TO EXPRESS RECIPROCAL ACTION OR RELATION. §301

VIII **diffĕro, distŭli, dilātum, differre** (DIF + FERO), to carry different ways; to spread abroad, scatter, disperse, separate; to differ, be different

*ā Belgīs Matrona<sup>I</sup> [flūmen] et Sēquana<sup>II III</sup> dividit<sup>IV</sup>*

*=the Marne [river] and the Seine ~the Marne and the Seine  
(river) separate (them) from the separate them from the Belgæ  
Belgæ*

## I.I.IV.

HÖRUM OMNIUM FORTISSIMĪ SUNT BELGÆ, PROPTEREĀ  
QUOD Ā CULTŪ ATQUE HŪMĀNITĀTE PRŌVINCIAE  
LONGISSIMĒ ABSUNT, MINIMĒQUE AD EŌS MERCĀTŌRĒS  
SÆPE COMMEANT ATQUE EA QUÆ AD EFFĒMINANDŌS  
ANIMŌS PERTINENT IMPORTANT, PROXIMĪQUE SUNT  
GERMĀNĪS QUĪ TRĀNS RHĒNUM INCOLUNT, QUIBUSCUM  
CONTINENTER BELLUM GERUNT.

---

IX *ab Aquitānis...ā Belgīs*, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

X *flūmen, inis*, N. (FLV-), *a flowing, flood, stream, running water; river*

I *Martona, ae*, M., *the Marne*

II *ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana*, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III *Sēquana, -ae*, M., *the Seine*

IV *ā Belgīs...Sēquana dividit*, V. IN PL. WHEN TWO OR MORE SG. OBJS. TWO OR MORE SINGULAR SUBJECTS TAKE A VERB IN THE PLURAL: II. IF THE SUBJECTS ARE CONNECTED BY DISJUNCTIVES (§223i), OR IF THEY ARE CONSIDERED AS A SINGLE WHOLE, THE VERB IS USUALLY SINGULAR. NOTE. ALMOST ALWAYS WHEN THE SUBJECTS ARE ABSTRACT NOUNS. §317ii

Hōrum<sup>I</sup> omnium fortissimī<sup>II III</sup> sunt Belgæ

=of all these men, the bravest ~of all these, the Belgæ are the  
are the Belgæ bravest

propterea<sup>IV</sup> quod ā cultū<sup>V VI</sup> atque<sup>VII</sup> hūmānitāte<sup>VIII IX</sup> prōvinciæ  
longissimē<sup>X XI</sup> absunt<sup>XII</sup>

=on that account because they ~because they are furthest from  
are the furthest away from the the civilization and refinement  
culture and humanity of (our) of our Province  
province

---

I **horum**, PART. GEN. WITH **fortissimī**. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS, I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE **ALIUS**, **ALTER**, **NŪLLUS**, ETC. §346I

II PRED. NOM. SUPERL. ADJ. WITH **sunt**

III **fortis**, -e, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FER-), *strong, powerful, mighty; Strong, vigorous, firm, steadfast, stout, courageous, brave, manly, valiant, bold, fearless*

IV **propterea**, ADV. (PROPTER), *therefore, for that cause, on that account; Esp., in the phrase, propterea quod, because*

V ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VI **cultus**, -ūs, M. (COL-), *labor, care, cultivation, culture; Style, care, way of life, cultivation, civilization, refinement, luxury*

VII **atque** or **ac** (ONLY BEFORE CONSONANTS), CONJ. (AD + QUE), *and* (LIKE -que, it CONNECTS WORDS OR THOUGHTS WHICH FORM A WHOLE, BUT UNLIKE -que GIVES PROMINENCE RATHER TO WHAT FOLLOWS, AND IS RARELY REPEATED); COPULATIVE. CONNECTING SINGLE WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS, *and, as well as, together with; WITH THE DEM. PRON. hic, is, and besides, and that, and that too*

VIII ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

IX **hūmānitās**, -ātis, F. (HUMANUS), *human nature, humanity; Civilization, cultivation, good-breeding, elegance, refinement*

X **longus**, -a, -um, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (LEG-), *long, extend; Distant, remote, long delayed; longē, long, in length; To be far away, i.e. to be of no assistance, of no avail; Widely, greatly, much, very much, by far* —ESP. WITH SUP. AND COMP.

XI USED AS ADV. SUPERL.

XII **absum**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus** (AB + SUM), *In general, to be away from, be absent*

minimēque<sup>I</sup> ad eōs mercātōrēs<sup>II</sup> sæpe<sup>III</sup> commeant<sup>IV</sup>

=and (because) merchants least ~and merchants least often  
often travel to them frequent them

atque<sup>V</sup> ea

=and // those (things) ~and // those things

quæ ad effēminandōs<sup>VI VII</sup> animōs<sup>VIII</sup> pertinent<sup>IX</sup>

=which tend to <the purpose of> ~which tend to enervate the  
effeminating minds mind

important<sup>X</sup>

=/and/ import /those (things)/ ~import

- I **minimē**, ADV. SUP. (MINIMUS), *least of all, in the smallest degree, least, very little*
- II **mercātor, -ōris**, M. (MERCOR), *a trader, merchant, wholesale dealer*
- III **sæpe**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (SAC-), *often, oft, oftentimes, many times, frequently*
- IV **commeō, commeāvī, commeatum, commeāre** (COM + MEO), *visit or travel to; to frequent; to and fro*
- V **atque**, CONJ. INDECLFORM., *and, and also*; AFTER WORDS EXPRESSING SIMILARITY, OR THE OPPOSITE, *atque* or *ac* has the force of *than, as*; as, in *parem...condicionem atque ipsi erant, into the same condition...as themselves*, Lit. *as (and) they themselves were* (I.XXVIII)
- VI **ad effēminandōs animōs**. ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. WHEN THE GERUND WOULD HAVE AN OBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE, THE GERUNDIVE IS GENERALLY USED INSTEAD. THE GERUNDIVE AGREES WITH ITS NOUN, WHICH TAKES THE CASE THAT THE GERUND WOULD HAVE HAD. §503 & THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506
- VII **effēminō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (EX + FEMINA), *to make feminine, represent as feminine; Fig., to make womanish, effeminate, enervate*
- VIII **animus, -ī**, M. (AN-), *the rational soul; Of the mind, the mental powers, intelligence, reason, intellect, mind*
- IX **pertineō, -uī, —, -ēre** (PER + TENEŌ), *to stretch out, reach, extend; To have a tendency, tend, lead, conduce; To have a tendency, to tend or lead to an object or result*
- X **importō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (IN + PORTŌ), *to bring in, introduce, bring from abroad, import*

proximīque<sup>I</sup> sunt Germānīs<sup>II</sup>

=and they are the nearest to the  
Germans

~and they are the nearest to the  
Germans

quī trāns<sup>III</sup> Rhēnum incolunt

=who dwell across the Rhine

~who dwell beyond the Rhine

quibuscum<sup>IV</sup> continenter<sup>V</sup> bellum<sup>VI</sup> gerunt<sup>VII</sup>

=(those men) with whom they  
are continuously bearing war

~with whom they are  
continuously waging war

## I.IV.

QUĀ DĒ CAUSĀ HELVĒTIĪ QUOQUE RELIQUŌS GALLŌS  
VIRTŪTE PRÆCĒDUNT, QUOD FERĒ COTĪDIĀNĪS PRÆLIĪS  
CUM GERMĀNĪS CONTENDUNT, CUM AUT SUĪS FĪNIBUS  
EŌS PROHIBENT AUT IPSĪ IN EŌRUM FĪNIBUS BELLUM  
GERUNT.

I **proximus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PROPE), *the nearest, next*; SUBST. N., *the neighborhood, vicinity, nearest place*

II DAT. WITH ADJ. OF NEARNESS, **proximī**. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODĀTUS, APTUS, AMĪCUS, INIMĪCUS, INFESTUS, INVĪSUS, MOLESTUS, IDŌNEUS, OPPORTŪNUS, PROPRIUS, ŪTĪLIS, INŪTĪLIS, AFFĪNIS, FĪNITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICĪNUS, PĀR, DISPĀR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS, IŪCUNDUS, GRĀTUS, NŌTUS, IGNŌTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

III **trāns**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. (TER-), *Of motion, across, over, to the farther side of*; *Of position, across, beyond, on the other side of*

IV **quibuscum** = cum quibus

V **contineō, -tinuī, -tentus, -ēre** (COM- + TENEO), *to hold together, bound, limit, comprise, enclose, surround, environ*; *Of places, to bound, limit, enclose*; *With the access. idea of hindering, preventing motion, to keep, keep still, detain, restrain, repress, enclose*; Trop., *to hold back, detain, repress, hold in check, curb, check, stay, stop, tame, subdue*, etc.; ADV., **continenter**, *In time, continuously, without interruption*

VI **bellum, -ī**, N. (DVA-, DVI-), *war*

VII **gerō, gessī, gestus, -ere** (GES-), *to bear about, bear, carry, wear, have, hold, sustain*; *To carry out, administer, manage, regulate, rule, govern, conduct, carry on, wage, transact, accomplish, do, perform*



Quā dē causā<sup>I II</sup> Helvētīi<sup>III</sup> quoque<sup>IV</sup> reliquōs<sup>V VI</sup> Gallōs virtūte<sup>VII VIII</sup> prācēdunt<sup>IX</sup>

=concerning which cause the ~for which reason the Helvetii  
Helvetii also preceed the also surpass the rest of the  
remaining Gauls in <respect to> Gauls in valor  
valor

- 
- I **quā dē causā**, A RELATIVE PRONOUN (OR ADVERB) OFTEN STANDS AT THE BEGINNING OF AN INDEPENDENT SENTENCE OR CLAUSE, SERVING TO CONNECT IT WITH THE SENTENCE OR CLAUSE THAT PRECEDES.. §308<sup>VI</sup>
- II **causa**, -æ, F. (CAV-), a cause, reason, motive, inducement, occasion, opportunity; Esp., **Causā**, IN ABL. WITH GEN. OR POSSESS. ADJ. (usu. put after the noun), as *patris causā*, *meā causā*, on account of, for the sake of, ALMOST ALWAYS REFERRING TO THE FUTURE, AND IMPLYING A PURPOSE
- III **Helvētius**, -a, -um, ADJ., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine)
- IV **quoque**, CONJ. (QUE + QUO), also, too
- V TRANS. AS, “the rest of,” SUPERLATIVES (AND MORE RARELY COMPARATIVES) DENOTING ORDER AND SUCCESSION—ALSO MEDIUS, [CĒTERUS], RELIQUOUS—USUALLY DESIGNATE NOT WHAT OBJECT, BUT WHAT PART OF IT, IS MEANT. §293
- VI **reliquus**, -a, -um, ADJ. (RE- + LIC-), left, left over, remaining
- VII ABL. OF SPEC. §418
- VIII **virtūs**, -ūtis, F. (VIR), manliness, manhood, i.e. the sum of all the corporeal or mental excellences of man, strength, vigor; bravery, courage; aptness, capacity; worth, excellence, virtue, etc.; Military talents, courage, valor, bravery, gallantry, fortitude
- IX **prācēdō**, -cessi, -cessus, -ere (PRĀE + CĒDŌ), to go before, precede, lead the way, lead; Trop., to surpass, outstrip, outdo, excel, be superior

quod ferē<sup>I</sup> cottidiānīs<sup>II</sup> praeliīs<sup>III</sup> cum<sup>IV</sup> Germānīs contendunt<sup>V</sup>

=because they are contending ~as they contend with the  
with the Germans in almost Germans in almost daily battles  
daily battles

cum aut<sup>VI</sup> suīs finibus<sup>VII VIII</sup> eōs prohibent<sup>IX X</sup>

=when they either hold them, ~when they either repel them  
(away) from their own borders from their own territories

aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt<sup>XI</sup>

=or (when) they themselves ~or themselves wage war on  
wage war in their territories their frontiers

- 
- I **ferē**, ADV. (FER-), closely, quite, entirely, fully, altogether, just; Of degree, nearly, almost, well-nigh, within a little, for the most part, about
- II **cottidiānus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COTTIDIE; QUOT + DIES), of every day, daily
- III **cotidiānīs praeliīs**. ABL. OF MEANS. §409
- IV **cum**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (SEC-), with, together with, in the company of, in connection with, along with, together, and; Cum IN ANASTROPHE (ANASTROPHE: INVERSION OF THE USUAL ORDER OF WORDS. §640). SO ALWAYS WITH THE PERS. PRON., *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum*, etc.
- V **contendō, -dī, -tus, -ere** (CON + TENDŌ), to stretch, bend, draw tight, strain; To measure strength, strive, dispute, fight, contend, vie; To march, press on, seek, journey hastily, hasten; With the access. idea of hindering, preventing motion, to keep, keep still, detain, restrain, repress, enclose
- VI **aut**, CONJ., INTRODUCING AN ANTITHESIS TO WHAT PRECEDES, *or*; SO INTRODUCING SUCCESSIVE ALTERNATIVES, *or...or*; INTRODUCING TWO ALTERNATIVES, *aut ... aut, either...or*
- VII **suīs finibus**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401
- VIII **finis, -is**, M. (FID-), that which divides, a boundary, limit, border; Borders, territory, land, country
- IX **cum...prohibent**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM, WHEN, AND SOME PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE DATES OR DEFINES THE TIME AT WHICH THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB OCCURRED. §545
- X **prohibeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (PRO + HABEO), to hold before, hold back, keep away, check, restrain, hinder, prevent, avert, keep off, debar; To keep away, keep, preserve, defend, protect
- XI **cum...gerunt**, cum CLAUSE. §545

## I.I.VI.

EŌRUM ŪNA PARS, QUAM GALLŌS OBTINĒRE DICTUM  
EST, INITIUM CAPIT Ā FLŪMINE RHODANŌ; CONTINĒTUR  
GARUMNĀ FLŪMINE, ŌCEANŌ, FĪNIBUS BELGĀRUM;  
ATTINGIT ETIAM AB SĒQUANĪS ET HELVĒTIĪS FLŪMEN  
RHĒNUM; VERGIT AD SEPTENTRIŌNĒS.

Eōrum ūna pars

=one part of these (territories)

~one part of these

quam Gallōs obtinēre<sup>I II</sup>

=which /it has been said/ that the  
Gauls occupy

~which /it has been said/ that the  
Gauls occupy

---

I **Gallōs obtinēre.** INDIR. DISC. DEP. ON **dictum est.** IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **obtineō, -tinui, -tentus, -ēre** (OB + TENEŌ), to hold fast, have, occupy, possess, preserve, keep, maintain

dictum est<sup>I II</sup>

=it was said

~it has been said

initium<sup>III IV</sup> capit<sup>V</sup> ā flūmine Rhodanō<sup>VI VII</sup>=takes (its) entrance from the  
river Rhone~takes its beginning at the river  
Rhone

I **quam...obtinēre...dictum est**, SUBST. CLAUSE. A CLAUSE USED AS A NOUN IS CALLED A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE. A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE MAY BE USED AS THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, AS AN APPOSITIVE, OR AS A PREDICATE NOMINATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE. §561 & A CLAUSE WHICH IS USED AS A NOUN MAY BE CALLED A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, AS CERTAIN RELATIVE CLAUSES ARE SOMETIMES CALLED 'ADJECTIVE CLAUSES. BUT IN PRACTICE THE TERM IS RESTRICTED TO CLAUSES WHICH REPRESENT A NOMINATIVE OR AN ACCUSATIVE CASE, THE CLAUSES WHICH STAND FOR AN ABLATIVE BEING SOMETIMES CALLED ADVERBIAL CLAUSES. EVEN WITH THIS LIMITATION THE TERM IS NOT QUITE PRECISE. THE FACT IS RATHER THAT THE CLAUSE AND THE LEADING VERB ARE MUTUALLY COMPLEMENTARY; EACH REINFORCES THE OTHER. THE SIMPLEST AND PROBABLY THE EARLIEST FORM OF SUCH SENTENCES IS TO BE FOUND IN THE PARATACTIC USE (SEE §268) OF TWO VERBS LIKE VOLO ABEAS, DĪCAMUS CĒNSEŌ, ADEAM OPTIMUM EST. FROM SUCH VERBS THE USAGE SPREAD BY ANALOGY TO OTHER VERBS, AND THE COMPLEMENTARY RELATION OF THE CLAUSE TO THE VERB CAME TO RESEMBLE THE COMPLEMENTARY FORCE OF THE ACCUSATIVE, ESPECIALLY THE ACCUSATIVE OF COGNATE MEANING (§390). §560 & A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE USED AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB BECOMES THE SUBJECT WHEN THE VERB IS PUT IN THE PASSIVE (IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.) II. SOME VERBS THAT TAKE AN INFINITIVE INSTEAD OF A SUBJUNCTIVE ARE USED IMPERSONALLY IN THE PASSIVE, AND THE INFINITIVE BECOMES THE SUBJECT OF THE SENTENCE. §566II

II **dicō, dixī, dictus, -ere** (DIC-), to say, speak, utter, tell, mention, relate, affirm, declare, state, assert; To appoint, set apart. fix upon, settle

III **initium, -ī**, N. (IN + EO), a going in, entrance; Fig., a beginning, commencement

IV ACC. SG. OBJ. OF **capit**

V **capiō, cēpī, captus, -ere** (CAP-), to take in hand, take hold of, lay hold of, take, seize, grasp; In partic. Of living objects. To take into possession, take captive, seize, make prisoner—Of places. To occupy, choose, select, take possession of, enter into—mostly milit. t. t., to take up a position, select a place for a camp, etc.—Of things of value, property, money, etc. In gen., to take, seize, wrest, receive, obtain, acquire, get, etc.—Of regular income, revenue, etc., rents, tolls, profits, etc., to collect, receive, obtain; In gen., of any occupation, work, or undertaking, to begin, enter upon, take, undertake, etc.—TRANSF. OF PLACE

attingit<sup>I</sup>

=it borders on

~it borders

etiam<sup>II</sup> ab<sup>III</sup> Sēquanīs<sup>IV</sup> et Helvētiīs<sup>V</sup> flūmen Rhēnum<sup>VI</sup>

=/it borders on/ also the river ~too, on the side of the Sequani  
Rhine on (the side of) the and the Helvetii, upon the river  
Sequani and on (the side of) the Rhine  
Helvetii

continētur Garumnā<sup>VII</sup> flūmine, Ōceanō<sup>VIII</sup>, finibus<sup>IX</sup> Belgārum

=it is bound by the river ~it is bounded by the river  
Garonne, by the ocean, and by Garonne, the ocean, and the  
the territories of the Belgæ territories of the Belgæ

VI **ā flūmine Rhodanō.** ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

VII **Rhodanus, -ī, M., the Rhone**

I **attingō, -tigī, -tactus, -ere** (AD + TANGO), *to touch, come in contact with; Of places, to be near, border on, adjoin, touch*

II **etiam**, ADV. (ET + IAM), *Of time, now too, yet, as yet, even yet, still, even now; CONJ. FREQ. WITH COMPARATIVES (SUCH AS quīn) for the sake of intensity, yet, still*

III **āb, ā, abs**, PRÆP. WITH ABL., *from, away from; To denote the side or direction from which an object is viewed in its local relations (=A PARTE), at, on, in—Gallia Celtica attingit ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum, on the side of the Sequani, i.e. their country*

IV **ab Sēquanīs, ab + ABL. = PLACE FROM WHERE.** THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC.II. POSITION IS FREQUENTLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB (RARELY EX), PROPERLY MEANING FROM. §429

V **ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs.** ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

VI **Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine**

VII **Garumna, -ae**, *river of S.W. Gaul—now the Garonne*

VIII **Ōceanus, -ī, M., the great sea, outer sea, ocean**

IX **Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

vergit<sup>I</sup> ad septentrionēs<sup>II</sup>

=(and) it turns toward the seven stars near the north pole ~and lies toward the northern regions

## I.I.VII.

BELGÆ AB EXTRĒMĪS GALLIÆ FĪNIBUS ORIUNTUR;  
PERTINENT AD ĪNFERIŌREM PARTEM FLŪMINIS RHĒNĪ;  
SPECTANT IN SEPTENTRIONĒM ET ORIENTEM SŌLEM.

Belgæ ab extrēmīs<sup>III</sup> Galliæ finibus<sup>IV</sup> oriuntur<sup>V</sup>

=the Belgæ descend from the furthest frontiers of Gaul ~the Belgæ rises from the extreme frontier of Gaul

pertinent ad inferiōrem<sup>VI</sup> partem flūminis Rhēnī

=(and) they extend toward the lower part of the river Rhine ~extend to the lower portion of the river Rhine

- 
- I **vergō**, —, —, **-ere** (VERG-), to bend, turn, be inclined, lie, be situated; NEUT., to bend, turn, incline itself; of places, to lie, be situated in any direction
- II **septentriones**, **-um**, PROP. (SEPTEMTRIO), the seven plough-oxen; hence, as a constellation; Lit., the seven stars near the north pole (called also the Wain, and the Great or Little Bear); TRANSF. The northern regions, the north (as a quarter of the heavens)
- III **extrēmus**, **-a**, **-um**, ADJ. SUP. (EXTER), outermost, utmost, extreme, farthest, last
- IV **ab extrēmīs...finibus**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §403
- V **orior**, **ortus**, **oriri**, DEP. (OL-), to arise, rise, stir, get up; Fig., to rise, come forth, spring, descend, grow, take origin, proceed, start, begin, originate
- VI **inferus**, **-a**, **-um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. SUP. (CF. INFRA), below, beneath, underneath, lower

spectant<sup>I</sup> in septentrionē et orientem<sup>II</sup> sōlem<sup>III</sup>

=(and) they look toward the seven stars near the north pole and the rising sun ~and look toward the north and the rising sun

## I.I.VIII.

AQUITANIA Ā GARUMNĀ FLŪMINE AD PYRĒNÆŌS MONTĒS ET EAM PARTEM ŌCEANĪ QUÆ EST AD HISPĀNIAM PERTINET; SPECTAT INTER OCCĀSUM SŌLIS ET SEPTENTRIONĒS.

Aquitania ā Garumnā flūmine<sup>IV</sup> ad Pyrēnæōs<sup>V</sup> montēs<sup>VI</sup> et eam partem Ōceanī

=Aquitania /extends/ from the river Garonne to the Pyrenæan mountains and to that part of the ocean ~Aquitania /extends/ from the river Garonne to the Pyrenæan mountains and to that portion of the ocean

quæ est ad<sup>VII</sup> Hispāniā<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=which is toward Spain ~which is near Spain

pertinet

=extends ~extends

---

I **spectō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (SPECIO), to look on, look at, behold, gaze at, watch, observe, inspect, attend; Of localities, to look, face, lie, be situated towards any quarter

II **oriēns, -entis**, M. (PPP. OF ORIOR), the rising sun, morning sun; The East, Orient

III **sōl, sōlis**, M. (SER-), the sun

IV **ā Garumnā flūmine**. ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

V **Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um**, ADJ., of Pyrene—"Pyrēnæōs montēs," the Pyrenees Mountains

VI **mōns, montis**, M. (MAN-), a mountain, mount, range of mountains

spectat inter occāsum<sup>x</sup> sōlis et septentriōnēs

=it looks between the setting of ~it looks between the setting of  
the sun, and the seven stars near the sun, and the north star  
the north pole

---

VII **ad**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., In space, *to, toward*; Nearness or proximity in gen. (= APUD), *near to, by, at, close by*; In number or amount, *near, near to, almost, about, toward*; WITH VERBS WHICH DESIGNATE GOING, COMING, MOVING, BEARING, BRINGING NEAR, ADAPTING, TAKING, RECEIVING, CALLING, EXCITING, ADMONISHING, ETC., WHEN THE V. IS COMPOUNDED WITH **ad**, THE PRÆP. IS NOT ALWAYS REPEATED, BUT THE CONSTR. WITH THE DAT. OR ACC. EMPLOYED—*lēgātīōnem ad cīvitatēs suscipit, he undertakes the office of ambassador to the states* (I.III); In other relations, *with regard to, in respect of, in relation to, as to, to, in*; WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AFTER VERBS OF MOTION, **ad** IS USED IN ANSWER TO THE QUESTION *Whither?* INSTEAD OF THE SIMPLE ACC., but commonly with this difference, that **ad** denotes *the vicinity of, the neighborhood of*

VIII SPECIAL USE OF PLACE TO WHICH. SPECIAL USES OF PLACE FROM WHICH, TO WHICH, AND WHERE ARE THE FOLLOWING: IV. WITH ALL NAMES OF PLACES AT, MEANING NEAR (NOT IN), IS EXPRESSED BY AD OR APUD WITH THE ACCUSATIVE. §428

IX **Hispānia, -ae**, F., *Spain*; PL., *Spanish provinces*; referring to the division into the two parts, "*Hispania citerior*," *Hither Spain*, "*Hispania ulterior*," *Further Spain*

X **occāsus, -ūs**, M. (OB + CAD-), *a falling, going down, setting*



## I.II



ORGATORIX PERSUADES HIS PEOPLE TO MIGRATE.



### I.II.I.



PUD HELVĒTIŌS LONGĒ NŌBILISSIMUS FUIT ET  
DĪTISSIMUS ORGETORĪX.

Apud<sup>I</sup> Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus<sup>II</sup> fuit et dītissimus<sup>III</sup> Orgetorīx<sup>IV</sup>

=Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix  
was by far the most well-known  
and (the most) wealthy

~Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix  
was by far the most noted and  
wealthy

- 
- I **apud**, PRÆP. INDECFORM., PRÆP. GOV. ACC., *with, at, by, near*; In respect of persons, *in* (whose) *presence* or *before* whom any thing is done or takes place; Of persons, of inhabitants of cities or countries, among whom one is, or something is, is done or happens, *among* (= INTER)
- II **nōbilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (GNA-), *that is known, well-known, famous, noted, celebrated, renowned*; *High-born, of noble birth, noble* (usu. of families from which the high offices of state had been filled)
- III **dīves, -itis**, WITH COMP. AND SUP, ADJ. (DIV-), *rich, wealthy, opulent*
- IV **Orgetorix, -īgis**, M., *a Helvetian nobleman who formed a plot to seize supreme power*

## I.II.II.

IS, M. MESSĀLĀ ET M. PUPIO PĪSŌNE CŌNSULIBUS, RĒGNĪ  
CUPIDITĀTE INDUCTUS CONIŪRĀTIŌNEM NŌBILITĀTIS  
FĒCIT ET CĪVITĀTĪ PERSUĀSIT UT DĒ FĪNIBUS SUĪS CUM  
OMNIBUS CŌPIĪS EXĪRENT: PERFACILE ESSE, CUM VIRTŪTE  
OMNIBUS PRÆSTĀRENT, TŌTĪUS GALLIÆ IMPERIŌ POTĪRĪ.

Is

=he (*Orgetorix*)

~he

M[arcō]<sup>I</sup> [Valeriō]<sup>II</sup> Messālā<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> et M[arcō] Pupio<sup>V</sup> Pīsōne<sup>VI</sup>  
[Calpurnianō] cōnsulibus<sup>VII VIII IX</sup>

=with M[arcus] [Valerius] ~when Messala and Piso were  
Messala and M[arcus] Pupius consuls  
[Calpurnianus] Piso (being)  
consuls (e.g. 61 B.C.)

---

I **Mārcus, -ī**, M., a Roman first name, equiv. to english *Mark*

II **Valerius, -ī**, M., a Roman name

III **Messāla, -ae**, M., a Roman name

IV **Marcō Valeriō Messālā**, Mārcus Valerius Messālā, consul in 61 B.C.

V **Pupius, -ī**, M., a Roman name

VI **Pīsō, -ōnis**, M., a Roman name

VII **M. Messālā et M. Pupio Pīsōne cōnsulibus**. ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. I. AN ADJECTIVE, OR A SECOND NOUN, MAY TAKE THE PLACE OF THE PARTICIPLE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION §419i

VIII **cōnsul, -ulis**, M. (COM- + SAL-), a *consul*—the highest magistracy of the Roman republic was vested in two consuls, chosen annually; In dates, defining the year; USU. ABL ABSOL.—*Messālā et Pīsone consulibus, in the consulship of*

IX **Marcō Pupio Pīsōne Calpurnianō**, consul with M. Valerius Messala in 61 B.C.

rēgnī<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> cupiditatē<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> inductus<sup>V</sup> coniūratiōnem<sup>VI</sup> nōbilitātis fēcīt<sup>VII</sup>  
 =<having been> led by desire of ~seduced by lust of sovereignty,  
 kingship, made a swearing formed a plot among the nobility  
 together of the nobility

et cīvitatī<sup>VIII</sup> <sup>IX</sup> persuāsīt<sup>X</sup> <sup>XI</sup>  
 =and persuaded the state ~and persuaded the people

ut<sup>XII</sup> dē finibus suīs<sup>XIII</sup> cum<sup>XIV</sup> omnibus cōpiīs<sup>XV</sup> exīrent<sup>XVI</sup> <sup>XVII</sup>  
 =that they should go out from ~to go forth from their  
 their own territories with all territories with all their  
 (their) possessions possessions

- 
- I OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. §348
- II **regnum, -i**, N. (REX), *kingly government, royal authority, kingship, royalty; Dominion, sovereignty, rule, authority, supreme power*
- III ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409
- IV **cupiditās, ātis**, F. (CUPIDUS), *a longing, desire, passion, eagerness*
- V **indūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere** (IN + DUCō), *to lead in, bring in, introduce, conduct, lead up, bring forward; To move, excite, persuade, induce, mislead, seduce*
- VI **coniūratiō, -ōnis**, F. (CONIŪRO), *a swearing together; In a bad sense, a conspiracy, plot*
- VII **faciō, fēcī, factus, -ere** (FAC-), *to make, construct, fashion, frame, build, erect, produce, compose; IN PASS., to make in all senses, to do, perform, accomplish, prepare, produce, bring to pass, cause, effect, create, commit, perpetrate, form, fashion, etc.; Of actions, to do, perform, make, carry on, execute*
- VIII **cīvitatī**, DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuāsīt**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- IX **cīvītās, -ātis**, F. (CIVIS), *the condition of a citizen, citizenship, freedom of the city, membership in the community; A community of citizens, body-politic, state*
- X DIR. OBJ. TO THE CLAUSE. **ut...exirent**
- XI **persuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsus, -ēre** (PER + SUĀDEō), *to convince, persuade*

perfacile<sup>I II</sup> esse<sup>III</sup> [dīxit]<sup>IV</sup>

=*[he said] that it was very easy*      ~*(saying) that it would be very easy*

cum virtūte<sup>V</sup> omnibus<sup>VI</sup> præstārent<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=*since they excelled all men in*      ~*since they excelled all in valor*  
<respect to> valor

tōtius<sup>IX</sup> Galliæ imperiō<sup>X XI</sup> potīrī<sup>XII XIII</sup>

=*to take possession of the*      ~*to acquire the supreme power*  
*command of the whole of Gaul*      *of the whole of Gaul*

XII **ut**, CONJ. AND ADJ. (UT), CONJ., WITH SUBJ., Of effect or result, *that, so that*; ADV. REL. ADV. OF MANNER (=eo modo quo), *as*; Causal, *as, = prout, pro eo ut*. Introducing a general statement, in correspondence with the particular assertion of the principal clause, *ut = as, considering... that, in accordance with*; Of manner. Interrog., *how, in what way, in what manner*—USU. IN DEPENDENT QUESTIONS, WITH SUBJ.—AFTER VERBS OF FEARING, *how, in what way, lest...not, that...no*

XIII ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

XIV **cum**, CONJ. (CA-). PROP., OF TIME, CONSTR. WITH INDIC. IN AN INDEPENDENT ASSERTION; WITH SUBJ. IN A SUBORDINATE STATEMENT—Fixing a point of time, *when, at the time when*; Fixing or defining a period of time, *when, while, during the time that, as, as long as, after*; Prægn., giving a cause or reason (CUM CAUSALE), *when, since, because, inasmuch as, seeing that, in that, in view of the fact that*

XV **cōpia**, -æ, F. (CO + OPS), Of material objects. Of possessions, *resources, wealth, supplies, riches, prosperity*; In milit. lang. *copia*, AND FAR MORE FREQ. IN PL. **copiæ**, -ārum, *men, troops, forces, army*

XVI **ut...exīrent**. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563.

XVII **exeō**, -īi, -itus, -ire (EX + EO), *to go out, go forth, go away, depart, withdraw, retire*

I PRED. WITH **esse**, NEUTER ADJECTIVES ARE USED SUBSTANTIVELY IN THE FOLLOWING SPECIAL SENSES: IV. A NEUTER ADJECTIVE MAY BE USED AS AN ATTRIBUTIVE OR A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH AN INFINITIVE OR A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE. §289<sup>IV</sup>

II **perfacilis**, -e, ADJ. (PER + FACILIS), *very easy*

## I.II.III.

- 
- III ***perfacile esse***, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. I. THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. IS OFTEN NOT EXPRESSED, BUT IMPLIED IN SOME WORD OR IN THE GENERAL DRIFT OF THE SENTENCE: §580i
- IV ***perfacile esse [dixit]***, INF. IN INDIRECT DISC. THE PRESENT, THE PERFECT, OR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE IS USED IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ACCORDING AS THE TIME INDICATED IS PRESENT, PAST, OR FUTURE WITH REFERENCE TO THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. BY WHICH THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS INTRODUCED, SUCH AS: ERROR: REFERENCE SOURCE NOT FOUND SEE CHART: §584
- V ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- VI DAT. WITH COMP. V. ***præstarent***. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370
- VII ***cum...præstarent***, *cum* CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549
- VIII ***præstō, -itī, -itus, -āre*** (PRÆ + STŌ), *to stand out, stand before, be superior, excel, surpass, exceed, be excellent*; IMPERS. WITH SUBJECT-CLAUSE, *it is preferable, is better*
- IX ***tōtus, -a, -um***, GEN. ***tōtius*** (TV-), *all, all the, all at once, the whole, entire, total* (SEE CHART: TŌTUS, WHOLE §113)
- X OBJ. OF DEP. V. ***persuāsit***. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410
- XI ***imperium, -ī***, N. (IMPERO), WITH ABL., *a command, order, direction, injunction; Supreme power, sovereignty, sway, dominion, empire, supremacy, authority*
- XII SUBJ. OF V. ***esse***
- XIII ***potior, -itus, -irī***, DEP. (POTIS), *to become master of, take possession of, get, obtain, acquire, receive*

ID HŌC FACILIUS EĪS PERSUĀSIT, QUOD UNDIQUE LOCĪ  
NĀTŪRĀ HELVĒTIĪ CONTINENTUR: ŪNĀ EX PARTE  
FLŪMINE RHĒNŌ LĀTISSIMŌ ATQUE ALTISSIMŌ, QUĪ  
AGRUM HELVĒTIUM Ā GERMĀNĪS DĪVIDIT; ALTERĀ EX  
PARTE MONTE IŪRĀ ALTISSIMŌ, QUĪ EST INTER  
SĒQUANŌS ET HĒLVETIŌS; TERTIĀ LACŪ LEMANNŌ ET  
FLŪMINE RHODANŌ, QUĪ PRŌVINCIAM NOSTRAM AB  
HELVĒTIĪS DĪVIDIT.

Id<sup>I</sup> hōc<sup>II</sup> facilius eīs<sup>III</sup> persuāsit<sup>IV</sup>

=because of this (thing), he more easily persuaded them (to adopt) that (course) ~to this he the more easily persuaded them

quod undique<sup>V</sup> loci<sup>VI</sup> VII nātūrā<sup>VIII</sup> Helvētiī continentur

=because the Helvetii are held together from all parts by the nature of (their) place ~because the Helvetii are confined on every side by the nature of their situation

---

I OBJ. OF **persuāsīt**. SOME VERBS ORDINARILY INTRANSITIVE MAY HAVE AN ACCUSATIVE OF THE DIRECT OBJECT ALONG WITH THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT. §369

II ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuāsīt**. §367

IV **persuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsus, -ēre** (PER + SUĀDEŌ), to convince, persuade

V **undique**, ADV. (UNDE + QUE), from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides, all around, on every part, everywhere

VI **locus, -ī**, M. (LOCA), a place, spot; Fig. Place, position, situation, condition, relation, state

VII **nātūra, -æ**, F., birth; Nature, natural constitution, property, quality

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō<sup>I</sup> atque altissimō<sup>II III</sup>

=from one part by the very ~on one side by the Rhine, a very  
broad and very deep Rhine river broad and deep river

quī<sup>IV</sup> agrum<sup>V</sup> Helvētium ā Germānīs<sup>VI</sup> dīvidit

=(the Rhine) which divides the ~which separates the Helvetian  
territory of the Helvetii from the territory from the Germans  
Germans

alterā<sup>VII</sup> ex parte monte Iūrā<sup>VIII IX</sup> altissimō<sup>X</sup>

=from the second part by the ~on a second side by the Jura, a  
Jura, a very high mountain very high mountain

quī est inter Sēquanōs et Hēlvetiōs

=(the Jura mountain) which is ~which is (situated) between the  
(situated) between the Sequani Sequani and the Helvetii  
and the Helvetii

I **lātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (STER-), *broad, wide, extensive*

II **flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **altus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (P. OF ALO), *nourished, grown great, high, lofty, tall; deep*

IV TAKES ITS GENDER NOT FROM **flumine**, BUT FROM **Rheno**. A RELATIVE GENERALLY AGREES IN GENDER AND NUMBER WITH AN APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN IN ITS OWN CLAUSE, RATHER THAN WITH AN ANTECEDENT OF DIFFERENT GENDER OR NUMBER. §306

V **ager, -grī**, M. (AGO), *productive land, a field, farm, estate, arable land, pasture; A territory, district, domain*

VI ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VII **alter, -tera, -terum**, PRONOM. ADJ. (AL-), *one, another, the one, the other (of two); Esp., AS A NUMERAL, the second, next (SEE CHART: ALTER, -TERIUS, THE OTHER §113)*

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IX **Iūra, -æ**, M., *a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone*

X **Iūra altissimō**, APPPOSITION. A NOUN USED TO DESCRIBE ANOTHER, AND STANDING IN THE SAME PART OF THE SENTENCE WITH THE NOUN DESCRIBED, IS CALLED AN APPOSITIVE, AND IS SAID TO BE IN APPPOSITION. §282

tertiā [ex parte] lacū<sup>I</sup> Lemannō<sup>II</sup> et flūmine Rhodanō<sup>III</sup>

=*from the third [part] by the Lake of Geneva, and by the river Geneva, and by the river Rhone*

quī prōvinciam<sup>IV</sup> nostram ab Helvētiīs<sup>V</sup> dīvidit

=*(the Lake of Geneva) which divides our province from the Helvetii*

#### I.II.IV.

HĪS RĒBUS FĪEBAT UT ET MINUS LĀTĒ VAGĀRENTUR ET  
MINUS FACILE FĪNITIMĪS BELLUM ĪNFERRE POSSENT: QUĀ  
EX PARTE HOMINĒS BELLANDĪ CUPIDĪ MAGNŌ DOLŌRE  
ADFICIĒBANTUR.

---

I **lacus, -ūs, m.** (LAC-), *an opening, hollow, lake, pond, pool*

II **Lemammus, -ī, m.**, WITH *lacus*, *Lake Geneva*

III **lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **prōvincia, æ, f.**, *A province, i.e. a territory out of Italy, acquired by the Romans (chiefly by conquest), and brought under Roman government; also, to be rendered provincial administration, employment, etc.*

V **ab Helvētiīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401



**Hīs rēbus<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> fiēbat<sup>III</sup>**

=because of these things, it was made

~from these circumstances, it came to pass

**ut et<sup>IV</sup> minus<sup>V</sup> lātē<sup>VI</sup> vagārentur<sup>VII</sup>**

=both that they roamed less broadly

~that they could range less widely

---

**I** ***hīs rēbus***, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

**II** ***rēs, reī***, F. (RA-), a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case

**III** IMPF. TENSE EXPRESSES THE CONTINUED EFFECT OF THE CAUSES. THE IMPERFECT DENOTES AN ACTION OR A STATE AS CONTINUED OR REPEATED IN PAST TIME. NOTE. THE IMPERFECT IS A DESCRIPTIVE TENSE AND DENOTES AN ACTION CONCEIVED AS IN PROGRESS OR A STATE OF THINGS AS ACTUALLY OBSERVED. HENCE IN MANY VERBS IT DOES NOT DIFFER IN MEANING FROM THE PERFECT. THUS REX ERAT AND REX FUIT MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT THE FORMER DESCRIBES THE CONDITION WHILE THE LATTER ONLY STATES IT. THE ENGLISH IS LESS EXACT IN DISTINGUISHING THESE TWO MODES OF STATEMENT. HENCE THE LATIN IMPERFECT IS OFTEN TRANSLATED BY THE ENGLISH PRETERITE. §470

**IV** ***et***, CONJ., and; WHEN REPEATED, *et...et*, IT SERVES TO CONNECT TWO IDEAS PARTITIVELY, *both...and, as well...as, not only...but also*

**V** ***parvus, -a, -um***, ADJ. COMP. AND SUP.: ***mīnor, mīnīmus***. (PAV-), Of magnitude, little, small, petty, puny, inconsiderable; ADV., COMP., ***minus***, less; COMP., ***mīnor, -us***, less, lesser, smaller, inferior

**VI** ***lātus, -a, -um***, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (STER-), broad, wide, extensive; ***lātē***, ADV., broadly, widely, extensively; with *longe*, on all sides, far and wide, everywhere

**VII** ***vagor, -ātus, -āri***, DEP., *vagus*, to stroll about, go to and fro, ramble, wander, roam, range, rove

et minus facile finitimis<sup>I</sup> bellum inferre<sup>II</sup> possent<sup>III</sup>

=and that they were less easily ~and could less easily make war  
able to bear war upon (their) upon their neighbors  
neighbors

- 
- I **finitimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FINIS), *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring*; SUBST., **finitimi, -orum**, M., *neighbors*
- II **inferō intulī, inlātus, inferre** (IN + FERŌ), *to bring in, introduce, bring to, carry in*; Milit., *signa (arma) in hostem, or hosti, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon*; IN PHRASES, WITH *bellum, gradum, or pedem, to make an attack*; Fig., *to bring forward, adduce, introduce, produce, make, excite, occasion, cause, inflict*
- III **ut...vagārentur...possent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT WITH UT (NEGATIVE UT NŌN) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF AN EFFORT—SUCH ARE ESPECIALLY FACIŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS (EFFICIŌ, CŌFICIŌ, ETC.) VERBS AND PHRASES TAKING AN UT-CLAUSE OF RESULT AS SUBJECT OR OBJECT ARE ACCEDIT, ACCIDIT, ADDITUR, ALTERA EST RĒS, COMMITTŌ, CŌNSEQUOR, CONTINGIT, EFFICIŌ, EVENIT, FACIŌ, FIT, FLERĬ POTEST, FORE, IMPETRŌ, INTEGRUM EST, MŌS EST, MŪNUS EST, NECESSE EST, PROPE EST, RĒCTUM EST, RELINQUITUR, RELIQUUM EST, RESTAT, TANTĬ EST, TANTUM ABEST, AND A FEW OTHERS. §568

quā<sup>I</sup> ex parte hominēs<sup>II</sup> bellandī<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> cupidī magnō<sup>V</sup> dolōre<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup>  
 adficiēbantur<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=from which part (partly ~for which reason men fond of  
 because), (these) men, desirous war (as they were) were affected  
 of waging war, were affected with great regret  
 with great pain

---

I A REL. PRON. IS OFTEN USED AT THE BEGINNING OF AN INDEPENDENT CLAUSE, CONNECTING IT WITH THE PRECEDING SENTENCE. A RELATIVE PRONOUN (OR ADVERB) OFTEN STANDS AT THE BEGINNING OF AN INDEPENDENT SENTENCE OR CLAUSE, SERVING TO CONNECT IT WITH THE SENTENCE OR CLAUSE THAT PRECEDES. §308VI

II **homō, -inis**, M. AND F., *a human being, man, person*

III OBJECTIVE GEN. OF THE GERUND WITH ADJ. **cupidī**. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING AN OBJECT OF REFERENCE GOVERN THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE INCLUDE: ADJECTIVES DENOTING DESIRE, KNOWLEDGE, MEMORY, FULLNESS, POWER, SHARING, GUILT, AND THEIR OPPOSITES GOVERN THE GENITIVE. §349I & THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

IV **bellō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre** (BELLUM), *to wage war, carry on war, war*

V **magnus, -a, -um**, Lit., of physical size or quantity, *great, large*; Of things, *vast, extensive, spacious*, etc.; Trop. In gen., *great, grand, mighty, noble, lofty, important, of great weight or importance*; Esp. Of measure, weight, quantity, *great, much, abundant, considerable*, etc.; IN PLUR. SUBST., **māiōres, -um**, M., *ancestors, forefathers*

VI **dolor, -ōris**, M. (DAL-), *pain, smart, ache, suffering, anguish; dolor; Esp, indignation, wrath, animosity, anger, resentment*

VII **magnō dolōre**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

VIII **afficio, affēci, affectum, -ere** (AD + FACIO), *to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; WITH ACC. AND ABL., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon; or the ablative and verb may be rendered by the verb corresponding to the ablative, and if an adjective accompany the ablative, this adjective becomes an adverb*

IX **adfiō, adfēci, adfectum, adficere** (AD + FACIO), *to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; WITH ACC. AND ABL., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon*

## I.II.V.

PRŌ MULTITŪDINE AUTEM HOMINUM ET PRŌ GLŌRIĀ  
 BELLĪ ATQUE FORTITŪDINIS ANGUSTŌS SĒ FĪNĒS HABĒRE  
 ARBITRĀBANTUR, QUĪ IN LONGITŪDINEM MĪLIA  
 PASSUUM DUCENTA QUADRĀGINTĀ, IN LĀTITŪDINEM  
 CENTUM OCTŌGINTĀ PATĒBANT.

Prō<sup>I</sup> multitūdine<sup>II</sup> autem<sup>III</sup> hominum

=that, however, in comparison ~considering the extent of their  
 with the multitude of men population

- 
- I **prō**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (PRO-), Of place, *before, in front of, in face of*; On account of, *for the sake of*; Of relation or proportion, *for, in proportion, in comparison with, in accordance with, according to, conformably to, by virtue of*; Of equivalence, *for, the same as, just as, as*; Of compensation, *for, in exchange for, in return for*
- II **multitūdo, ĩnis**, F. (MULTUS), *a great number, multitude*; In partic. Of people, *a great number, a crowd, multitude*; Of the common people, *the crowd, the multitude*
- III **autem**, CONJ., AN ADVERSATIVE PARTICLE WHICH REGULARLY FOLLOWS AN EMPHATIC WORD, OR TWO OR MORE CLOSELY CONNECTED WORDS, *but, on the other hand, on the contrary, however*

et prō glōriā<sup>I</sup> bellī atque fortitūdinis<sup>II</sup> angustōs<sup>III</sup> sē finēs habēre<sup>IV V</sup>  
 =and in comparison with (their) ~and their renown for warfare  
 renown of warfare and of and bravery, they had but  
 bravery, they had narrow narrow limits  
 borders

arbitrābantur<sup>VI</sup>  
 =they were thinking ~they thought

quī in longitudinem<sup>VII</sup> mīlia<sup>VIII IX</sup> passuum<sup>X XI</sup> ducenta quadrāgintā  
 =(the territories) which (were) ~although they (extended) in  
 extending) in length two- length 240 miles  
 hundred forty thousands of  
 paces

- I **glōria, -ae**, F. (CLV-), *glory, fame, renown, praise, honor*—WITH GEN.
- II **fortitūdo, -inis**, F. (FORTIS), *strength; Mentally, firmness, manliness shown in enduring or undertaking hardship; fortitude, resolution, bravery, courage, intrepidity*
- III **angustus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ANG-), WITH COMP. AND SUP, *narrow, strait, contracted*
- IV **habere arbitrābantur**, INF. IN INDIR. DISC. §584
- V **angustōs sē finēs habēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrābantur**.  
IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- VI **arbitror, -ātus sum, -ārī**, DEP. (ARBITER), In law, of witnesses, *to testify on information and belief, depose to one's best knowledge*; In gen., *to be of an opinion, believe, consider, think*
- VII **longitūdo, -inis**, F. (LONGUS), *length*
- VIII ACC. OF EXTENT OF SPACE. EXTENT OF SPACE IS EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §425
- IX **mille, PL. mīlia**, NUM. ADJ. (MIL-), *a thousand, ten hundred*; In the phrase, *mille passuum, a thousand paces* (a Roman mile, about 1618 English yards)
- X PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346
- XI **passus, -ūs**, M. (PAT-), *a step, pace*

in lātītūdinem<sup>I</sup> centum octōgintā patēbant<sup>II</sup>

=they were lying open in breadth ~and in breadth 180 (Roman  
one-hundred eighty (thousands miles)  
of paces)

---

I lātītūdō, -inis, F. (LATUS), *breadth, width*

II pateō, -uī, —, -ēre (PAT-), *to stand open, lie open, be open; To stretch out, extend*

## I.III



THEY MAKE PREPARATIONS.



### I.III.I.



IS RĒBUS ADDUCTĪ ET AUCTIONITATE  
ORGETORIGIS PERMOTĪ, CONSTITUERUNT EA  
QUAE AD PROFICISCENDUM PERTINERENT  
COMPARARE, IUMENTORUM ET CARRORUM  
QUAM MAXIMUM NUMERUM CEMERE, SEMENTES QUAM  
MAXIMAS FACERE UT IN ITINERE COPIA FRUMENTI  
SUPPETERET, CUM PROXIMIS CIVITATIBUS PACEM ET  
AMICITIAM CONFIRMARE.

Hīs rēbus<sup>I</sup> adductī<sup>II</sup> et auctōritāte<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> Orgetorigis permōtī<sup>V</sup>  
cōstituērunt<sup>VI</sup>

=(the Helvetii), <having been> ~induced by these  
led by these things and <having considerations, and influenced  
been> moved deeply by the by the counsel of Orgetorix, they  
influence of Orgetorix, decided determined to provide

ea

=that those things ~such things

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II addūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere (AD + DŪCŌ), to lead to, bring to, bring along; To bring, lead, prompt, move, induce, prevail upon, persuade, incite

III ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV auctōritās, -ātis, F. (AUCTOR), origination, production; Of persons, influence, weight, dignity, reputation, authority

V permoveō, -mōvī, -mōtus, -ēre (PER + MOVEŌ), to move deeply, rouse, excite, agitate, influence, lead, induce, prevail on

VI cōstituō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere (COM- + STATUO), to put, place, set, station; To fix, appoint, determine, define, decide, decree; To establish, set in order, organize, manage, administer, regulate, arrange, dispose; MILIT. To station or post troops somewhere, to draw up, set in order



quæ ad proficiscendum<sup>i ii</sup> pertinērent<sup>iii</sup>

=(those things) which extended ~which pertained to setting out  
to <the purpose of> setting  
forward

comparāre<sup>iv v</sup>

=to prepare

~to prepare

- 
- I **ad proficiscendum.** ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. WHEN THE GERUND WOULD HAVE AN OBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE, THE GERUNDIVE IS GENERALLY USED INSTEAD. THE GERUNDIVE AGREES WITH ITS NOUN, WHICH TAKES THE CASE THAT THE GERUND WOULD HAVE HAD. §503 & THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506
- II **proficiscor, -fectus, -ī,** DEP. (PROFICIO; PRO + FACIO), *to set forward, set out, start, go, march, depart; To set out, begin, commence, start*
- III **quæ...pertinērent,** REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592
- IV INF. DEPENDING ON **cōstituērunt.** MANY VERBS TAKE EITHER A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE OR A COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE, WITHOUT DIFFERENCE OF MEANING. SUCH ARE VERBS SIGNIFYING WILLINGNESS, NECESSITY, PROPRIETY, RESOLVE, COMMAND, PROHIBITION, EFFORT, AND THE LIKE. §457
- V **comparō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (COM + PARŌ), *to prepare, make ready, set in order, furnish, provide*

iūmentōrum<sup>I</sup> et carrōrum<sup>II</sup> quam maximum<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> numerum<sup>V</sup>  
cœmere<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup>

=to buy up as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons ~to purchase as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons

sēmentēs<sup>VIII</sup> quam maximās<sup>IX</sup> facere

=to make (their) sowings as large as possible ~to make their sowings as large as possible

- 
- I **iūmentum, -i**, N., a beast used for drawing or carrying, draught-cattle, a beast of burden, esp. a horse, mule, or ass
- II **carrus, -ī**, M., a wagon for freight, baggagewagon (with four wheels)
- III **quam + super** = as...as possible. THERE ARE TWO PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS, KNOWN RESPECTIVELY AS THE FIRST (OR ACTIVE) AND THE SECOND (OR PASSIVE). THE PERIPHRASTIC FORMS ARE INFLECTED REGULARLY THROUGHOUT THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE AND IN THE PRESENT AND PERFECT INFINITIVE. § 194<sup>III</sup>
- IV **māximus, -a, -um** (MAC-), Of size, large, great, big, high, tall, long, broad, extensive, spacious
- V **numerus, -ī**, M. (NEM-), a number; In partic. A certain collective quantity, a body, number of persons or things
- VI OBJ. OF **cōstituērunt**
- VII **coēmō, -ēmī, -ēmtus, -ere** (COM- + EMO), to purchase, buy up, forestall
- VIII **sēmentis, -is**, F. (SEMEN), semen, a seeding, sowing
- IX **quam + super** = as...as possible. §194<sup>III</sup>

ut in itinere<sup>I</sup> cōpia<sup>II</sup> frūmentī<sup>III</sup> suppeteret<sup>IV V</sup>

=<in order> that in the journey, ~so that on their march plenty of  
an ample supply of corn might corn might be in store  
be present

cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem<sup>VI</sup> et<sup>VII</sup> amīcitiam<sup>VIII</sup> cōfirmāre<sup>IX X</sup>

=(and) to strengthen (relations) ~and to strengthen peace and  
of peace and friendship with the friendship with the neighboring  
nearest states states

---

I **iter, -itineris**, N. (I-), a going, walk, way; A going, journey, passage, march, voyage; *quam maximis itineribus contendere*, forced marches

II **cōpia, -æ**, F. (COM- + OPS), an abundance, ample supply, plenty

III **frūmentum, -ī**, N. (FVG-), corn, grain, harvested grain; WITH *loca*, abounding in corn

IV **ut suppeteret**, CLAUSE OF PURP. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE IS HORTATORY IN ORIGIN, COMING THROUGH A KIND OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE CONSTRUCTION. §529

V **suppetō, -ivī, -itus, -ere** (SUB + PETO), to be at hand, be in store, be present, be available

VI **pāx, pācis**, F. (PAC-), a compact, agreement, treaty, peace, treaty of peace, reconciliation

VII When more than two words stand in the same relation, the Copulative Conjunction may be expressed with *all*, or omitted with *all*, or the last two words may be joined by *-que*; in each case English usage generally prefers “and” between the last two words. Thus, *Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis*, the Rauraci, Tulingi, and Latobrigi (I.V); *lingua, institutis, legibus*, in respect to language, institutions, and laws (I.I); *pueri, senes mulieresque*, children, old men, and women (I.XXIX)

VIII **amīcitia, -æ**, F. (AMICUS), friendship

IX INF. DEPENDING ON **cōstituērunt**. §457

X **cōfirmō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (CŌN + FIRMŌ), to make firm, make strong, establish, strengthen; To confirm, give full assurance of a fact, corroborate an assertion, settle, fix, establish, to prove, demonstrate the truth of a thing, etc

## I.III.II.

AD EĀS RĒS CŌNFICIENDĀS BIENNIUM SIBI SATIS ESSE  
DŪXĒRUNT: IN TERTIUM ANNUM PROFECTIONEM LĒGE  
CŌNFIRMANT.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās<sup>I II</sup> biennium<sup>III</sup> sibi<sup>IV</sup> satis<sup>V</sup> esse<sup>VI</sup>

=that a period of two years is ~that a term of two years would  
enough for them for <the be sufficient for them to execute  
purpose of> completing those their designs  
things

dūxērunt<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=(The Helvetii) calculated

~they reckoned

- 
- I **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās.** ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURP. §506
- II **cōnficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (COM- + FACIO), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil; To make a thing completely ready, to make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, etc; to write, draw up
- III **biennium, -ī,** N. (BI- + ANNUS), a period of two years, two years
- IV **DAT. OF REF.** THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376
- V **satis,** ADJ. N. INDECL. (SA-), ONLY NOM. AND ACC, enough, sufficient, satisfactory, ample, adequate
- VI **biennium...esse,** IND. DISC. DEP. ON **dūxērunt.** IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- VII **esse dūxērunt,** IMPLIED INDIR. DISC.
- VIII **dūcō, -ūxī, -uctus, -ere** (DVC-), to lead, conduct, guide, direct, draw, bring, fetch, escort; To calculate, compute, reckon; With regard to time, to draw out, extend, protract, prolong—put off, delayed; To lead a person, as regards his will or opinions, in any direction; to move, incite, induce, allure, in a good or bad sense

in tertium annum<sup>IX X</sup> profectiōnem<sup>XI</sup> lēge<sup>XII</sup> cōfirmant<sup>XIII</sup>

=they make firm by law (their) ~they fix by decree their  
departure for the third year departure for the third year

### I.III.III.

AD EĀS RĒS CŌNFICIENDĀS ORGETORĪX DĒLIGITUR.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās<sup>VI</sup> Orgetorīx dēligitur<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=Orgatorix is chosen <for the ~Orgetorix was chosen to  
purpose of> completing those complete these plans  
things

### I.III.IV.

IS SIBI LĒGĀTIŌNEM AD CĪVITĀTĒS SUSCIPIT.

---

IX **in tertium annum**, 'for' the third year; in + ACC. IN CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME. IN MANY IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS OF TIME, THE ACCUSATIVE WITH AD, IN, OR SUB IS USED. SUCH ARE THE FOLLOWING. §424v

X **annus, -ī**, M. (AC-), a year

XI **profectiō, -ōnis**, F. (PRO + FAC-), a going away, setting out, departure

XII ABL. OF MEANS. §409

XIII HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTĀTIŌ. §585. B. N.) §469

VI **ad eās rēs cōficiendās**. ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURP. §506

VII HIST. PRES. §469

VIII **dēligō, -lēgi, -lēctus, -ere** (DE + LEGO), to choose, pick out, select, elect, designate, single out

Is sibi<sup>I</sup> lēgatiōnem<sup>II</sup> ad cīvitātēs suscipit<sup>III</sup>

=he (Orgatorix) undertakes for ~he took upon himself the office  
himself the office of ambassador of ambassador to the states  
to the states

### I.III.V.

IN EŌ ITINERE PERSUĀDET CASTICŌ CATAMANTALCĒDIS  
FĪLIŌ SĒQUANŌ, CUIUS PATER RĒGNUM IN SĒQUANĪS  
MULTŌS ANNŌS OBTINUERAT ET Ā SENĀTŪ POPULĪ  
RŌMĀNĪ AMĪCUS APPELLĀTUS ERAT, UT RĒGNUM IN  
CĪVITĀTE SUĀ OCCUPĀRET QUOD PATER ANTE HABUERIT;  
ITEMQUE DUMNORĪGĪ ĀDUŌ FRĀTRĪ DĪVICIĀCĪ, QUĪ EŌ  
TEMPORE PRĪNCIPĀTUM IN CĪVITĀTE OBTINĒBAT AC  
MAXIMĒ PLĒBĪ ACCEPTUS ERAT, UT IDEM CŌNĀRĒTUR  
PERSUĀDET, EĪQUE FĪLIAM SUAM IN MĀTRIMŌNIUM DAT.

---

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **suscipit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO., ANTE., CON., IN., INTER., OB., POST., PRĒ., PRŌ., SUB., SUPER., AND SOME WITH CIRCUM., ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **lēgatiō, -ōnis**, F. (LEGO), *the office of ambassador, embassy, legation*

III **suscipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (SUB + CAPIO), *to take, catch, take up, lift up, receive; Fig., to undertake, assume, begin, incur, enter upon (voluntarily)*

In eō itinere persuādet<sup>I</sup> Casticō<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> Catamantalædis<sup>IV</sup> filiō<sup>V</sup> Sēquanō  
 =in this journey, he persuades ~on this journey he persuaded  
 Casticus, the son of Casticus, the son of  
 Catamantaledes Catamantaledes

cuius pater<sup>VI</sup> rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs<sup>VII</sup> annōs<sup>VIII</sup> obtinuerat  
 =of whose father had held the ~whose father had held the  
 royal authority among the sovereignty among the Sequani  
 Sequani for many years for many years

---

I HIST. PRES. §469

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuādet**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

III **Casticus, -ī**, M., a certain prominent Sequanian

IV **Catamantālædis, -ī**, M., a leader among the Sequanians before Caesar's time

V **filius, -ī**, M. (FE-), a son

VI **pater, -tris**, M. (PA-), a father, sire

VII **multus, -a, -um**, ADJ., PL., WITH SUBST., OR WITH ADJ. USED AS SUBST, many, a great number

VIII **multōs annōs**, ACC. OF DUR. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

et ā senātū<sup>I II</sup> populū<sup>III</sup> Rōmānī amīcus<sup>IV V</sup> appellātus erat

=and he had been called "friend" ~and had been called "friend" by the senate of the Roman people the senate of the Roman people

ut rēgnum in cīvitate suā occupāret<sup>VI</sup>

=that he (Casticus) might take ~to seize the sovereignty in his into possession the royal own state authority in his own state

quod pater ante<sup>VII</sup> habuerit<sup>VIII</sup>

=(the Royal authority) which ~which his father had held (his) father had held before him previously

I ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ā* OR *ab*. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES *ā* OR *ab*) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION. (§409). THUS *occisus gladiō*, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, *occisus ab hoste*, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

II **senātus**, -ūs, M. (SEN-), In Rome, *the council of the elders, council of state, Senate, body of senators*

III **populus**, -ī, M. (PLE-), *a people, nation*; In Rome, *the whole body of citizens, people*

IV PRED. N. OF THE V. **appellātus erat**. WITH *sum* AND A FEW OTHER INTRANSITIVE OR PASSIVE VERBS, A NOUN OR AN ADJECTIVE DESCRIBING OR DEFINING THE SUBJECT MAY STAND IN THE PREDICATE. THIS IS CALLED A PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE. THE VERB *sum* IS ESPECIALLY COMMON IN THIS CONSTRUCTION, AND WHEN SO USED IS CALLED THE COPULA (I.E. CONNECTIVE). OTHER VERBS WHICH TAKE A PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE ARE THE SO CALLED COPULATIVE VERBS SIGNIFYING TO BECOME, TO BE MADE, TO BE NAMED, TO APPEAR, AND THE LIKE. §283

V **amīcus**, -ī, M. (AMICUS), *a loved one, loving one, friend*

VI **ut...occupāret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH *ut* (NEGATIVE *nē*) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563



itemque<sup>I</sup> Dumnorīgī<sup>II</sup> Æduō frātrī<sup>III</sup> Dīviciācī<sup>IV</sup>

=and (he), likewise // to ~and he also /prevailed on/  
Dumnorix, an Æduan, the Dumnorix, an Æduan, the  
brother of Divitiacus brother of Divitiacus

quī eō tempore<sup>V</sup> vi prīncipātum<sup>VII</sup> in cīvitatē obtinēbat

=(Divitiacī) who, in that time, ~who at that time possessed the  
was occupying the chief part in chief command in his state  
the state (the Æduan state)

ac maximē<sup>VIII</sup> plēbī<sup>IX</sup> x acceptus erat<sup>XI</sup>

=and he was exceedingly ~and was exceedingly beloved by  
accepted to the common people the plebeians

VII **ante**, PREP. WITH ACC., *before*—In space, or trop. in regard to estimation, judgment, or rank (usu. only of objects at rest. while *prae* is used of those in motion); *Ante diem* (abbrev. a.d.) with an ordinal number gives the date, not of the foregoing, but of the present day —“*ante diem quintum* (a.d. V.) *Kalendas Apriles*,” *the fifth day before the calends of April*

VIII **quod...habuerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

I **item**, ADV. (I- + TAM), *likewise, besides, also, further, moreover, too, as well*

II **Dumnorix, -īgis**, M., an Æduan, brother of Divitiacus, and son-in-law of Orgatorix; a bitter enemy of Caesar, and leader of an Æduan anti-Roman party; slain by Caesar's orders while trying to escape from him, 54 B.C.

III **frāter, -tris**, M., *a brother*; TRANSF., Like our word *brother*, as a familiar appellation of friends and lovers.

IV **Diviciācus, -i**, M., an Æduan of influence, loyal to Caesar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix and the Bellovaci

V ABL. OF TIME. §423

VI **tempus, -ōris**, N., a portion of time, *time, period, season, interval*

VII **prīncipātus, -ūs**, M. (PRINCEPS), *a beginning, origin; The first place, pre-eminence, chief part, supremacy, leadership; The chief command, post of commander-in-chief*

VIII **māximē**, ADV. (MAXIMUS), *in the highest degree, most particularly, especially, exceedingly, altogether, very*

ut idem<sup>I</sup> cōnārētur<sup>III</sup>

=that he might attempt the same ~to make a like attempt  
thing

persuādet<sup>IV</sup>

=he persuades ~prevailed on

eīque filiam<sup>V</sup> suam in mātirimōnium<sup>VI</sup> dat<sup>VII</sup>

=and he gives to him his own ~and gave him his daughter in  
daughter into matrimony marriage

IX DAT. WITH ADJ. **acceptus**. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APTUS; AMICUS, INIMICUS, INFESTUS, INVISUS, MOLESTUS; IDONEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS; UTILIS, INUTILIS; AFFINIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICINUS; PAR, DISPAR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IUCUNDUS, GRATUS; NOTUS, IGNOTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

X **plēbs, plēbis**, F. (PLE-), the common people, commons, commonalty, plebeians, folk

XI **accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (AD + CAPIO), to take without effort, receive, get, accept; Of voluntary taking, to take, accept, take into possession, receive; To bear, endure, suffer any thing disagreeable or troublesome

I **idem, eadem, idem**, PRON. (I- + -DEM), the same

II **ut...cōnārētur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

III **cōnor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP., to undertake, endeavor, attempt, try, venture, seek, aim, make an effort, begin, make trial of

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V **fīlia, -æ**, F. (FE-), a daughter

VI **mātirimōnium, ī**, N. (MATER), wedlock, marriage, matrimony

VII **dō, dedī, datus, -are** (DA-), to give; and hence, WITH THE GREATEST VARIETY OF APPLICATION, PASSING OVER INTO THE SENSES OF ITS COMPOUNDS, DERIVATIVES, AND SYNONYMS (edere, tradere, dedere; reddere, donare, largiri, concedere, exhibere, porrigere, præstare, impertire, suppeditare, ministrare, subministrare, præbere, tribuere, offerre, etc.), as, to give away, grant, concede, allow, permit; give up, yield, resign; bestow, present, confer, furnish, afford; offer, etc.; Designating the effect, to cause, make, bring about, inflict, impose

## I.III.VI.

PERFACILE FACTŪ ESSE ILLĪS PROBAT CŌNĀTA PERFICERE,  
 PROPTEREĀ QUOD IPSE SUÆ CĪVITĀTIS IMPERIUM  
 OBTEŅTŪRUS ESSET: NŌN ESSE DUBIUM QUĪN TŌTĪUS  
 GALLIÆ PLŪRIMUM HELVĒTIĪ POSSENT; SĒ SUĪS CŌPIĪS  
 SUŌQUE EXERCITŪ ILLĪS RĒGNA CONCILIĀTŪRUM  
 CŌNFIRMAT.

Perfacile factū<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> esse<sup>III</sup>

=that it is easy in the doing

~that it was very easy

illis probat<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup>

=he (Orgatorix) makes good to  
 them

~he showed them

cōnāta<sup>VI</sup> perficere<sup>VII</sup>

=that to accomplish (their)  
 attempts

~to accomplish the venture

---

I ABL. SUPINE. THE SUPINE IN -Ū IS USED WITH A FEW ADJECTIVES AND WITH THE NOUNS FĀS, NEFĀS, AND OPUS, TO DENOTE AN ACTION IN REFERENCE TO WHICH THE QUALITY IS ASSERTED. THE ONLY COMMON SUPINES IN -Ū ARE AUDITŪ, DICTŪ, FACTŪ, INVENTŪ, MEMORĀTŪ, NĀTŪ, VISŪ. IN CLASSIC USE THIS SUPINE IS FOUND IN COMPARATIVELY FEW VERBS. IT IS NEVER FOLLOWED BY AN OBJECT-CASE. NOTE 1. THE SUPINE IN -Ū IS THUS IN APPEARANCE AN ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (§418). §510

II **faciō, fēcī, fectus, -ere** (FAC-), to do; SUPINE (PPP. STEM + ū), **factus, -ūs**, M., in doing

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **probat**. §580

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V **probō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (PROBUS), to make good, esteem good, approve, esteem, commend; To make credible, show, prove, demonstrate

VI **cōnāta, -ōrum**, N. (CONATUS), an undertaking, attempt, venture, hazard, plan

VII **perficiō -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (PER + FACIO), to achieve, execute, carry out, accomplish, perform, despatch, bring about, bring to an end, finish, complete

proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset<sup>I</sup>

=on this account because he ~as he personally was about to  
himself (Orgatorix) was about to seize the supreme power in his  
obtain command of his own own state  
state

nōn esse<sup>II</sup> dubium<sup>III</sup>

=that it is not doubtful ~that there was no doubt

---

I **proptereā quod...obtentūrus esset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. CAUSAL CLAUSES TAKE EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE, ACCORDING TO THEIR CONSTRUCTION; THE IDEA OF CAUSE BEING CONTAINED, NOT IN THE MOOD ITSELF, BUT IN THE FORM OF THE ARGUMENT (BY IMPLICATION), IN AN ANTECEDENT OF CAUSAL MEANING (LIKE PROPTEREĀ), OR IN THE CONNECTING PARTICLES. QUOD IS IN ORIGIN THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (STEM QUO-) USED ADVERBIALY IN THE ACCUSATIVE NEUTER (CF. §214. D) AND GRADUALLY SINKING TO THE POSITION OF A COLORLESS RELATIVE CONJUNCTION (CF. ENGLISH THAT AND SEE §222). ITS USE AS A CAUSAL PARTICLE IS AN EARLY SPECIAL DEVELOPMENT. QUIA IS PERHAPS AN ACCUSATIVE PLURAL NEUTER OF THE RELATIVE STEM QUI-, AND SEEMS TO HAVE DEVELOPED ITS CAUSAL SENSE MORE DISTINCTLY THAN QUOD, AND AT AN EARLIER PERIOD. IT IS USED (VERY RARELY) AS AN INTERROGATIVE, WHY? (SO IN CLASSICAL LATIN WITH NAM ONLY), AND MAY, LIKE QUANDO, HAVE DEVELOPED FROM AN INTERROGATIVE TO A RELATIVE PARTICLE. §539 & §583

II INDIR. DISC. §580

III **dubius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (DVA-), moving two ways, fluctuating; Fig., wavering in opinion, doubting, doubtful, dubious, uncertain

quīn<sup>I</sup> tōtīus Galliā<sup>II</sup> plūrimū<sup>III</sup> Helvētīi possent<sup>IV V</sup>

=that the Helvetians were the most able of the whole of Gaul ~that the Helvetii were the most powerful of all the Gauls

sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū<sup>VI VII</sup> illis<sup>VIII</sup> rēgna conciliātūrum [esse]<sup>IX X</sup>

=that he, with his own forces and his own army, would win over the kingship for them ~that he will, with his own resources and his own army, win over the sovereignty for them

- 
- I **quīn**, CONJ., AS AN INTERROG. PARTICLE, *why not? wherefore not?*; TRANSF. AS A REL. PARTICLE, PROP. *quī* or *qui ne*, AND MOSTLY WHERE THE REL. STANDS FOR A NOM. MASC. OR FOR ABL. OF TIME, *who ... not, that not, but that, but, often* = Eng. *without* AND A PARTICIPAL CLAUSE; LIT. USED AFTER NEGATIVES, *that or but that*
- II PART. GEN. WITH **plūrimū**. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346
- III **plūrimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PLUS), *most, very much, very many*; ADV., **plūrimū**
- IV **quīn...possent**, A **quīn** CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUIN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. I. QUIN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH NON DUBITŌ, I DO NOT DOUBT, NON EST DUBIUM, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. § 558i
- V **possum, potui, posse**, IRREG. (POTIS + SUM), *to be able, have power, can*; In partic. *To be able, to have influence or efficacy, to avail*; In gen. WITH GEN., *able, mighty, powerful, potent*
- VI **exercitus, -ūs**, M. (EXERCEO), *a disciplined body of men, army*
- VII **suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409
- VIII DAT. OF REF. §376
- IX **conciliō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (CONCILIAM), *to bring together, unite, reconcile, make friendly, win over, conciliate*; *To procure, purchase, obtain, acquire, win, gain*
- X **sē...conciliātūrum**, INDIRECT DISC. DEP. ON **cōnfirmat**. §580

cōnfirmat<sup>I</sup>

=he (Orgatorix) gives assurance ~he assured them  
(to them)

### I.III.VII.

HĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE ADDUCTĪ INTER SĒ FIDEM ET IŪS  
IŪRANDUM DANT, ET RĒGNŌ OCCUPĀTŌ PER TRĒS  
POTENTISSIMŌS AC FIRMISSIMŌS POPULŌS TŌTĪUS  
GALLIÆ SĒSĒ POTĪRĪ POSSE SPĒRANT.

Hāc ōrātiōne<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> adductī inter sē<sup>IV</sup> fidem<sup>V</sup> et iūs<sup>VI</sup> iūrandum<sup>VII</sup> <sup>VIII</sup>  
dant

=(the Helvetians) led in by this ~influenced by this speech, they  
discourse, give a promise and a gave a pledge and oath to one  
sworn oath between themselves another

---

I HIST. PRES. §469

II **hāc ōrātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **ōrātiō, -ōnis**, F. (ORO), a speaking, speech, discourse, language, faculty of speech, use of language; A set speech, harangue, discourse, oration

IV The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by *inter se* (Lit. among themselves), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, *inter se dant, they gave* (Lit. give) to one another (I.III); *inter se differunt, they differ from one another* (I.I); *inter se collocuti, having conferred with one another* (IV.XXX); *cohortati inter se, urging one another on* (IV.XXV); *inter se contenderent, they strove together* (I.XXXI); *inter se, referring to two persons, with each other* (V.XLIV)

V **fidēs**, —, USU. (FID-), trust, faith, confidence, reliance, credence, belief; An assurance that produces confidence, a promise, engagement, word, assurance, confirmation

VI **iūs, iūris**, N. (IV-), that which is binding, right, justice, duty; ABL. AS ADV., by right, rightfully, with justice, justly

VII **fidem et ius iurandum**, HENDIADYS. HENDIADYS (HEN DIA DUOIN): THE USE OF TWO NOUNS, WITH A CONJUNCTION, INSTEAD OF A SINGLE MODIFIED NOUN. §640

VIII **iūs iūrandum, -ris i**, an oath

et

=and

~and

rēgnō occupātō<sup>I</sup>=with the supreme power in  
<having been> seized~when they had seized the  
sovereigntyper<sup>II</sup> trēs potentissimōs<sup>III</sup> ac firmissimōs<sup>IV</sup> populōs tōtīus Galliæ<sup>V</sup>  
sēsē potīrī posse<sup>VI VII</sup>=that they, through (the agency  
of) the three most powerful and  
the most steadfast nations, are  
able to become masters of the  
whole of Gaul~they will, by means of the three  
most influential and very  
powerful nations, be enabled to  
obtain possession of the whole of  
Gaul

---

I **rēgnō occupātō**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. §419

II **per**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., In space, through, across, through the midst of, from side to side of, traversing; Of agency, through, by, by the hands of, by the agency of; Through, by, under pretence of, by the pretext of

III **potēns, -entis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PART. OF *possum*), able, mighty, strong, powerful, potent; To be able, be strong, be powerful, have influence, be efficacious, avail, accomplish

IV **firmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FER-), firm (IN OPP. TO frail, destructible), steadfast, stable, strong, powerful; Trop., firm in strength or durability, also in opinion, affection, etc., fast, constant, steadfast, immovable, powerful, strong, true, faithful

V GOVERNED BY **potīrī**. THE DEONENTS *ŪTOR*, *FRUOR*, *FUNGOR*, *POTIOR*, *VESCOR*, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. I. *POTIOR* SOMETIMES TAKES THE GENITIVE, AS ALWAYS IN THE PHRASE *POTIRI RĒRUM*, TO GET CONTROL OR BE MASTER OF AFFAIRS (§357). §410<sup>I</sup>

VI EQUIV. TO A FUT. INF. THE PRESENT, THE PERFECT, OR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE IS USED IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ACCORDING AS THE TIME INDICATED IS PRESENT, PAST, OR FUTURE WITH REFERENCE TO THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. BY WHICH THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS INTRODUCED, SUCH AS: THE PRESENT INFINITIVE *POSSE* OFTEN HAS A FUTURE SENSE—"TOTIUS GALLIÆ SĒSĒ POTIRI POSSE SPĒRANT" (I.III), THEY HOPE THAT THEY SHALL BE ABLE TO GET POSSESSION OF ALL GAUL. §584<sup>II</sup>

VII **sēsē... posse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **spĕrant**. §580

spērant<sup>VIII</sup>

=*they hope*

~*hope that*

---

VIII **spērō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (SPES), *to hope, look for, trust, expect, promise oneself*



# I.IV



THE CONSPIRACY IS REVEALED.



## I.IV.I.

EA RĒS EST HELVĒTIIS PER INDICIUM ĒNŪNTIĀTA.

Ea rēs<sup>I</sup> est Helvētiīs per<sup>II</sup> indicium<sup>III</sup> ēnūntiāta<sup>IV</sup>

=this thing (the plan) was ~this conspiracy was disclosed  
spoken out to the Helvetii to the Helvetii by an informer  
through information

## I.IV.II.

MŌRIBUS SUIS ORGETORĪGEM EX VINCLIS CAUSAM  
DĪCERE COĒGĒRUNT.

- 
- I **rēs, rei**, F. (RA), a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case
- II With Nouns referring to Persons often *per* is used with the Accusative to express the Means through which something is done, as distinguished from Direct Agency, which is expressed by the Ablative with *ab*; as, *per eos*, with their help, Lit. by means of them (I.IV)
- III **indiciū, -i**, N. (IN + DIC-), a notice, information, discovery, disclosure, charge, evidence
- IV **ēnūntiō, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (Ē + NUNTĪO), to say out (esp. something that should be kept secret), to divulge, disclose, to report, tell

Mōribus<sup>I</sup> suis<sup>II</sup> Orgetorīgem ex<sup>III</sup> vinclīs<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup> causam dīcere  
coēgērunt<sup>VI</sup>

=in their own customs, they ~they, in accordance with their  
drove together Orgatorix to custom, compelled Orgetorix to  
speak (his) cause from chains plead his cause in chains

### I.IV.III.

DAMNĀTUM PĈENAM SEQUĪ OPORTĚBAT UT IGNĪ  
CREMĀRĚTUR.

- 
- I **mōs, mōris**, M. (MA-), *manner, custom, way, usage, practice, fashion, wont*, as determined not by the laws, but by men's will and *pleasure, humor, self-will, caprice*
- II ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- III *a, ab*, and sometimes *ex*, are often used to indicate a Local Relation, where we use *on, in*, or *at*; as, *a dextro cornu, on the right wing*, Lit. *from* (the point of view of) *the right wing* (I.II); *a novissimo agmine, on the rear* (I.XXIII); *a fronte, in front* (II.XXIII)
- IV ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403
- V **vinculum, -i**, N. (VINCIO), *a means of binding, fastening, band, bond, rope, cord, fetter, tie*; Fig., *a bond, fetter, restraint*
- VI **cōgō, coēgī, coāctus, -ere** (COM- + AGO), *to drive together, collect, crowd, bring together, summon, congregate, convene*; *To urge, force, compel, constrain*; ESP. WITH ACC., INF., *ut, ad, in* OR ABSOL., *to urge one to any action, to force, compel, constrain*

[eum] **Damnātum**<sup>I II</sup> **pœnam**<sup>III</sup> **sequi**<sup>IV V</sup>

=that [he], (if) <having been> ~he, if found guilty /it was  
condemned /it was necessary/ to necessary/ to follow the penalty  
follow the penalty

**oportēbat**<sup>VI VII</sup>

=it was necessary

~it was necessary

**ut igni**<sup>VIII IX</sup> **cremārētur**<sup>X XI</sup>

=that he should be burned by fire ~that he should be consumed  
burned by fire

- I In the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence an Ablative Absolute, a Participle, or other form of expression implying a Condition, may be used in place of the clause with *si*; as, *data facultate*, taking the place of *si facultas data esset*, if an opportunity should have been granted, in the Direct Form, *si facultas data erit* (I.VII); *damnatum* (*eum*), him, if condemned, *damnatum* taking the place of *si damnatus esset* (I.IV)
- II **damnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DAMNUM), to adjudge guilty, condemn, convict
- III **pœna, -æ, F.**, indemnification, compensation, recompense, retribution, satisfaction, expiation, punishment, penalty, price
- IV **damnatum pœnam sequi**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **oportebat**. VERBS OF MOTION, COMPOUNDS OF CIRCUM, TRANS, AND PRÆTER, AND A FEW OTHERS, FREQUENTLY BECOME TRANSITIVE, AND TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE. §388II & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- V **sequor, secūtus, -ī, DEP. (SEC-)**, to follow, come after, follow after, attend, accompany
- VI **damnatum...sequi**. INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **oportebat**. §388II & §580
- VII **oportet, -uit, -ēre, IMPERS. (OB + PAR-)**, it is necessary, is proper, is becoming, behooves
- VIII **ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409**
- IX **ignis, -is, M. (AG-)**, fire
- X **SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE AFTER ut. A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE USED AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB BECOMES THE SUBJECT WHEN THE VERB IS PUT IN THE PASSIVE (IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.). §566**
- XI **cremō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (CAR-)**, to burn, consume by fire

## I.IV.IV.

DIĒ CŌNSTITŪTĀ CAUSÆ DICTIŌNIS ORGETORĪX AD  
IŪDICIIUM OMNEM SUAM FAMILIAM AD HOMINUM MĪLIA  
DECEM UNDIQUE COĒGIT, ET OMNĒS CLIENTĒS  
OBÆRĀTŌSQUE SUŌS, QUŌRUM MAGNUM NUMERUM  
HABĒBAT, EŌDEM CONDŪXIT: PER EŌS NĒ CAUSAM  
DĪCERET SĒ ĒRIPUIT.

Diē<sup>I</sup> cōnstitūtā<sup>II</sup> causæ<sup>III</sup> dictiōnis<sup>IV</sup>

=on the day set of speaking of  
(his) cause

~on the day appointed for  
pleading his cause

Orgetorīx ad iūdicium<sup>V</sup> omnem suam familiam<sup>VI</sup> ad hominum<sup>VII</sup>  
mīlia decem undique coēgit

=Orgatorix drove together all  
his own family servants from all  
parts towards the judgement  
towards 10,000 of men

~Orgetorix drew together from  
every quarter to the court, all  
his domestics to the number of  
ten thousand persons

- 
- I **diēs, diēi**, M. F. (DIV-), a day, civil day; In general, time, space of time, period; “diem ex die ducere,” from day to day
- II ABL. OF TIME WHEN. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- III OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. §348
- IV **dictiō, -ōnis**, F. (DICO), a saying, speaking, uttering, delivery; In gen. “causæ,” a defending, pleading
- V **iūdicium, -ii**, N., a judgment, i.e. a judicial investigation, trial; a judicial sentence
- VI **familia, -æ**, F., the slaves in a household, a household establishment, family servants, domestics (not family, i.e. wife and children)
- VII PARTITIVE GEN. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NULLUS, ETC. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. §346II

et omnēs clientēs<sup>I</sup> obaerātōsque<sup>II</sup> suōs

=and /he led together.../ all the clients and his own debtors ~and /he led together.../ all his dependents and debtor-bondsmen

quōrum magnum numerum habēbat<sup>III</sup>

=(his own debtors) of whom he was having a great number ~of whom he had a great number

eōdem<sup>IV</sup> condūxit<sup>V</sup>

=he led together (his family servants, clients, and debtors) in the same (place) ~he led together to the same place

per<sup>VI</sup> eōs

=by means of them ~and with their help

- 
- I **cliēns, entis**, M. (P. OF CLUEO), *a personal dependant, client; A client, retainer, follower*
- II **obaerātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (OB + ÆS), *involved in debt; PL. M. AS SUBST., debtors*
- III **habeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (HAB-), *to have, hold, support, carry, wear; To hold, to make, do, perform, prepare, utter, pronounce, produce, cause; To hold or keep a person or thing in any condition; to have, hold, or regard in any light; WITH A DOUBLE OBJECT, ESP. FREQ. WITH THE PART. PERF. PASS., to have, hold, or possess a person or thing in any quality or capacity, as any thing; to have, hold, or possess an action as completed, finished; To hold, account, esteem, consider, regard a person or thing in any manner or as any thing; to think or believe a person or thing to be so or so*
- IV **ABL. OF PLACE WHERE.** THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429
- V **condūcō dūxī, ductus, ere** (CON + DŪCŌ), *to draw together, assemble, collect, gather, unite*
- VI **PERSONAL AGENT EXPR. BY per.** THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. II. THE PERSONAL AGENT, WHEN CONSIDERED AS INSTRUMENT OR MEANS, IS OFTEN EXPRESSED BY PER WITH THE ACCUSATIVE, OR BY OPERĀ WITH A GENITIVE OR POSSESSIVE. §405II

**nē<sup>I II</sup> causam diceret**

=*that he might not speak (his) cause*      ~*from the necessity of) pleading his cause*

**sē ēripuit<sup>III</sup>**

=*he tore himself away*      ~*he rescued himself*

### I.IV.V.

CUM CĪVITĀS OB EAM REM INCITĀTA ARMĪS IŪS SUUM  
EXSEQUĪ CŌNĀRĒTUR, MULTITŪDINEMQUE HOMINUM  
EX AGRĪS MAGISTRĀTŪS CŌGERENT, ORGETORĪX  
MORTUUS EST; NEQUE ABEST SUSPĪCIŌ, UT HELVĒTIĪ  
ARBITRANTUR, QUĪN IPSE SIBI MORTEM CŌNSCĪVERIT.

---

I **nē...diceret**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

II **nē**, ADV. AND CONJ., ADV., the primitive Latin negative particle, *no, not*; whereas the negative particle *non* is a derivative; *Ne...quidem*, applies the negation with emphasis to the word between them, *not even*; IN INTENTIONAL CLAUSES, AND AFTER VERBS OF FEARING AND AVOIDING, *ne* BECOMES A CONJUNCTION. IN INTENTIONAL CLAUSES FOR *ut ne, that not, lest*

III **ēripīō, -ipui, -eptus, -ere** (EX + RAPIO), *to tear out, snatch away, wrest, pluck, tear, take away*; WITH PRON. REFLEX, *to break away, rescue oneself, escape*

Cum<sup>I</sup> civitās ob eam rem incitāta<sup>II</sup> armīs<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> iūs suum exsequi<sup>V</sup>  
cōnārētur<sup>VI</sup>

=while, the state, urged on, on ~while the state, incensed at  
account of this thing, attempted such action, attempted to  
to follow to the gave their own enforce its right by arms  
law by arms

multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs<sup>VII</sup> magistrātūs<sup>VIII</sup> cōgerent

=and the magistrates were ~and the magistrates were  
driving together a multitude of convening a large body of men  
men from the countries of the from the country  
body of the magistrates

Orgetorīx mortuus est<sup>IX</sup>

=Orgatorix died

~Orgetorix died

I cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

II **incitō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (IN + CITŌ), to set in rapid motion, urge on, hurry, hasten, accelerate, quicken; Fig, to put in motion, rouse, disturb

III ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **arma, -ōrum**, N., Lit. What is fitted to the body for its protection, defensive armor, as the shield, coat of mail, helmet, etc.; *Implements of war, arms, both of defence and offence* (but of the latter only those which are used in close contest, such as the sword, axe, club; in distinction from tela, which are used in contest at a distance; Trop., means of protection, defence, weapons; war

V **exsequor, -cūtus, -ī**, DEP. (EX + SEQUOR), to follow to the grave; To follow up, prosecute, carry out, enforce, perform, execute, accomplish, fulfil

VI *lubeo*, order, bid, and *veto*, forbid, are regularly used with the Infinitive and Subject Accusative; *conor*, attempt, with the Infinitive; as, *quemque effere iubent, they gave* (Lit. give) *orders that each person carry away...*(I.V); *exsequi conaretur, attempted to enforce* (I.IV)

VII ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

VIII **magistrātus, -ūs**, M. (MAGISTER), the office of master, magisterial office, civil office, magistracy; Collect., the body of magistrates, the municipal administration

IX **morior, mortuus, -ī**, DEP. (MAR-), to die, expire

neque<sup>I</sup> abest suspīciō<sup>II</sup>

=and it is not away from ~and there is not wanting a suspicion

ut Helvētiī arbitrantur<sup>III</sup>

=as the Helvetii testified ~as the Helvetii believed

quīn<sup>IV</sup> ipse sibi mortem<sup>V</sup> cōnscīverit<sup>VI</sup>

=that he himself approved of ~that he committed suicide death to himself

---

I **neque** (OR **ne que**), CONJ. OR ADV., CONJ. In gen. = *et non*, and not, also not; In contrasts, but not, not however

II **suspīciō**, **-ōnis**, F. (SUB + SPEC-), *mistrust, distrust, suspicion*

III **ut** + INDIC. = *as*. COPULATIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS CONNECT SIMILAR CONSTRUCTIONS, AND ARE REGULARLY FOLLOWED BY THE SAME CASE OR MOOD THAT PRECEDES THEM. §323

IV **quin** CLAUSE. THE ORIGINAL MEANING OF QUIN IS HOW NOT? WHY NOT? (QUĪ-NĒ), AND WHEN USED WITH THE INDICATIVE OR (RARELY) WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IT REGULARLY IMPLIES A GENERAL NEGATIVE. THUS, QUIN EGO HŌC ROGEM? WHY SHOULDN'T I ASK THIS? IMPLIES THAT THERE IS NO REASON FOR NOT ASKING. THE IMPLIED NEGATIVE WAS THEN EXPRESSED IN A MAIN CLAUSE, LIKE NULLA CAUSA EST OR FIERĪ NŌN POTEST. HENCE COME THE VARIOUS DEPENDENT CONSTRUCTIONS INTRODUCED BY QUIN. §557 & A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUIN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. §558

V **mors**, **-tis**, F. (MAR-), *death*

VI **conscisco**, **-scīvi**, **-scītum**, **-ere** (CON + SCISCO), Publicists' t. t., *to approve of, decree, determine or resolve upon something in common*; TRANSF. from the sphere of state affairs; *aliquid sibi* or *absol.*; Lit., *to adjudge, appropriate to one's self*; hence, with the access. idea of personal action, *to inflict or bring upon one's self* (most frequently death); WITH SIBI, "*mortem*," *to kill one's self*



# I.V



## THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO MIGRATE.



### I.V.I.



OST EIUS MORTEM NIHILO MINUS HELVETIĪ ID  
QUOD CŌSTITUERANT FACERE CŌNANTUR, UT  
Ē FĪNIBUS SUĪS EXEANT.

Post<sup>I</sup> eius mortem nihil<sup>II</sup> minus Helvētīī id

=after the death of him, less by ~after his death, the Helvetii  
nothing, the Helvetii // the thing nevertheless // that

quod cōstituerant

=/the thing/ which they had ~/that/ which they had resolved  
arranged on

facere cōnantur<sup>III</sup>

=they attempt to do ~attempted to do

---

I **post**, ADV. (POS-), Of place, *behind, back backwards*; Of time, *afterwards, after, later*

II **nīhil**, (OR CONTR. **nīl**), N. INDECL. (NE + HILUM; NOT THE LEAST), *nothing*; **Nihilo**, WITH COMP., *by nothing, no—nīhīlō mīnus, none the less, no less, nevertheless, notwithstanding*; ADV., *not* (as a strengthened non), *in nothing, in no respect, not at all*

III HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRĒSENTATIŌ, §585. B. N.) §469

ut ē fīnibus suīs<sup>IV</sup> exeant<sup>V</sup>

=(namely,) that they go forth from their own territories ~namely, to go forth from their territories

## I.V.II.

VBI IAM SĒ AD EAM REM PARĀTŌS ESSE ARBITRĀTĪ SUNT, OPPIDA SUA OMNIA, NUMERŌ AD DUODECIM, VĪCŌS AD QUADRINGENTŌS, RELIQUA PRĪVĀTA AEDIFICIA INCENDUNT; FRŪMENTUM OMNE, PRÆTERQUAM QUOD SĒCUM PORTĀTŪRĪ ERANT, COMBŪRUNT, UT DOMUM REDITIŌNIS SPĒ SUBLĀTĀ, PARĀTIŌRĒS AD OMNIA PERĪCULA SUBEUNDA ESSENT; TRIUM MĒNSUM MOLITA CIBĀRIA SIBI QUEMQUE DOMŌ EFFERRE IUBENT.

Vbi iam<sup>III</sup>

=when now

~when by this time

sē ad eam rem parātōs esse<sup>IV V</sup>

=that they were prepared for that thing ~that they were prepared for this undertaking

arbitrātī sunt

=they (the Helvetii) thought

~they thought

IV ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DĒ, OR EX. §426

V SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE AFTER **ut**. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

III **iam**, ADV. (IA), Of time, denoting a point or moment of time as coinciding with that of the action, etc., described. Of present time, at this time, now, just now, at present; In contrast with the time at which something was expected. Of that which occurs sooner, already, so soon; As continued from the past, already, by this time, ere now, till now, hitherto; Like English now, by this time, already; WITH NEGATIVES, DENOTING CESSATION OF PREVIOUS CONDITION, iam non, no more, no longer

oppida<sup>I</sup> sua omnia, numero<sup>II</sup> ad duodecim, vicōs<sup>III</sup> ad  
quadringentōs reliqua prīvāta<sup>IV</sup> ædificia<sup>V</sup>

=all their own towns—in a ~all their towns—about twelve  
number towards twelve; (their) in number; to their villages—  
villages—toward (a number of) about four hundred, and to the  
four-hundred, (and) the private buildings that remained  
remaining private edifices

incendunt<sup>VI</sup>

=(the Helvetii) set fire to

~they set fire to

frūmentum omne

=all the grain

~all the corn

---

IV **sē...parātōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrātī sunt**. THE ESSENTIAL CHARACTER OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS, THAT THE LANGUAGE OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER IS COMPRESSED INTO A KIND OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, THE VERB OF THE MAIN CLAUSE BECOMING INFINITIVE, WHILE MODIFYING CLAUSES, AS WELL AS ALL HORTATORY FORMS OF SPEECH, TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PERSON OF THE VERB NECESSARILY CONFORMS TO THE NEW RELATION OF PERSONS. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE, HOWEVER, IS NOT LIMITED TO REPORTS OF THE LANGUAGE OF SOME PERSON OTHER THAN THE SPEAKER; IT MAY BE USED TO EXPRESS WHAT ANY ONE—WHETHER THE SPEAKER OR SOME ONE ELSE—SAYS, THINKS, OR PERCEIVES, WHENEVER THAT WHICH IS SAID, THOUGHT, OR PERCEIVED IS CAPABLE OF BEING EXPRESSED IN THE FORM OF A COMPLETE SENTENCE. FOR ANYTHING THAT CAN BE SAID ETC. CAN ALSO BE REPORTED INDIRECTLY AS WELL AS DIRECTLY. (ADD. INFO. §577)

V **parō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PAR-), to make ready, prepare, furnish, provide, arrange, order, contrive, design; TRANSF., to procure, acquire, get, obtain

I **oppidum, -i**, N. (OB + PED-), a town, city, collection of dwellings

II ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

III **vīcus, -i**, M. (VIC-), a row of houses, street, quarter, ward; A village, hamlet

IV **prīvātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (P. OF PRIVO), apart from the State, peculiar, personal, individual, private

V **ædificium, i**, N. (ÆDIFICO), a building, edifice, structure

VI **incendō, -di, -sus, -ere** (CAND-), to set fire to, kindle, burn

*præter<sup>I</sup> quod sēcum<sup>II</sup> portātūrī erant<sup>III</sup>*

*=except (that) which they were about to bear with them*      *~except what they intended to carry along with them*

*combūrunt<sup>IV</sup>*

*=they burn up*      *~they burned up*

*ut*

*=<in order> that*      *~so that*

- 
- I    **præter**, ADV. (PRO-), *except, besides, unless, save, other than, not*  
 II    With the Ablative of the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns *cum* is ordinarily joined; thus *vobiscum*, *with us* (V.XVII); *sēcum*, *with him* (I.VIII), *with himself* (I.XXXVI); *quibuscum*, *with whom* (I.I)  
 III   **portō, -āvi, -ātus, -are** (PAR-), *to bear, carry, convey, take*  
 IV   **combūrō, -ūssi, -ūstus, -ere** (PVR-), *to burn up, consume*

**domum<sup>I II</sup> reditiōnis<sup>III IV</sup> spē<sup>V</sup> sublātā<sup>VI VII</sup>**

=with the hope of going back ~after destroying the hope of a home <having been> taken away return home

**parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula<sup>VIII</sup> subeunda essent<sup>IX X</sup>**

=they might be more prepared ~they might be the more ready for <the purpose of> undergoing for undergoing all dangers all dangers

---

**I** ACC. OF PLACE WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE TO WHICH, BY THE ACCUSATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427<sup>II</sup>

**II domus, -ūs, f. (DOM-), a house, dwelling-house, building, mansion, palace; A home, dwelling, abode, residence**

**III** OBJECTIVE. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

**IV reditiō, -ōnis, f. (RED- + I-), a going back, coming back, returning, return**

**V spēs, speī, f. (SPA-), hope**

**VI tollō, sustulī, sublātus, -ere (TAL-), to lift, take up, raise, elevate, exalt; To take up, take away, remove, carry off, make way with**

**VII spē sublātā, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420**

**VIII periculum, -i, n. (PAR-), a trial, experiment, attempt, test, proof, essay; Risk, hazard, danger, peril (which accompanies an attempt)**

**IX ut...essent. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE AFTER ut. §531**

**X subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus (SUB + EŌ), to come under, go under, enter; HENCE, WITH tectum, i.e. enter a house; To subject oneself to, take upon oneself, undergo, submit to, sustain, accept, endure, suffer**

trium mēsum<sup>I</sup> II molita<sup>III</sup> cibāria<sup>IV</sup> sibi<sup>V</sup> quemque<sup>VI</sup> domō<sup>VII</sup>  
efferre<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=each (man) to bear three of months ground food, for himself, from home ~every man to carry forth from home for himself three months ground rations

iubent<sup>X</sup>

=(and) they order ~they ordered

- 
- I **trium mēsum**, GEN. OF QUALITY. §326
- II **mēnsis, -is**, M. (MA-), a month
- III **molō, -ere, -uī, -itus**, to grind
- IV **cibāria, -ōrum**, N., food, nutriment, victuals, provisions, fare, ration, fodder
- V DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376
- VI **quisque, quæque, quidque**, AND (ADJ.) **quodque**, PRON. INDEF. (QUIS, QUÆ, QUID... + QUE), whoever it be, whatever, each, each one, every, everybody, every one, everything (of more than two); WITH SUP., to express universality (*quisque* IS THEN PLACED AFTER THE SUP.; WITH SG. AND NEUT. PL.; RARE WITH PL. M. AND F.)
- VII ABL. FROM PLACE WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §4271
- VIII **quemque...efferre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iubent**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- IX **efferō, extulī, elātus, ferre** (EX + FERO), to carry out, take out, bring forth, take away, remove; Fig., to set forth, spread abroad, utter, publish, proclaim, express
- X **iūbēō, -iussi, -iussum, -iusse**, to order one to do something, to bid, tell, command

## I.V.III.

PERSUĀDENT RAURACĪS ET TULINGĪS ET LATOVICĪS  
FĪNITIMĪS, UTĪ EŌDEM ŪSĪ CŌNSILIŌ, OPPIDĪS SUĪS  
VĪCĪSQUE EXUSTĪS, ŪNĀ CUM IĪS PROFICĪSCANTUR,  
BOIŌSQUE, QUĪ TRĀNS RHĒNUM INCOLUERANT ET IN  
AGRUM NŌRICUM TRĀNSIERANT NŌREIAMQUE  
OPPUGNĀBANT, RECEPTŌS AD SĒ SOCIŌS SIBI  
ADSCĪSCUNT.

Persuādent Rauracīs<sup>I</sup> et Tulingīs<sup>II</sup> et Latovicīs<sup>III</sup> finitimīs<sup>IV</sup> suīs

=they persuade the Rauraci, and ~they persuaded the Rauraci,  
the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi, and the Tulingi, and the  
their neighbors Latobrigi, their neighbors

utī

=that

~to

eōdem ūsī<sup>V VI</sup> cōnsiliō<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=(those men) use the same plan ~adopt the same plan

- 
- I **Rauracī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people along the upper Rhine, north of the Helvetians
- II **Tulingī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people near the Helvetians
- III **Latobrigī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people near people near the Helvetians
- IV **Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs**. DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuādent**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- V **ūtor, ūsus, -ī**, DEP. TAKES ABL., *to use, make use of, employ, profit by, take advantage of, enjoy, serve oneself with*
- VI PPP. PL. MASC. NOM.
- VII ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūsī**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410
- VIII **consīlīum, -ii**, N. (CON + SAL-), *deliberation, consultation, a considering together, counsel; Meton. In abstr., A conclusion made with consideration, a determination, resolution, measure, plan, purpose, intention*

*oppidīs suis vicisque exustīs*<sup>I II</sup>

=(and) with their towns and villages <having been> burned down  
~and after burning down their towns and villages

*unā cum iīs proficiscantur*<sup>III</sup>

=to set forward together with them  
~to set out with them

*Boiōsque*<sup>IV</sup>

=and the Boii  
~and the Boii

*quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant*

=who had dwelt on the across the Rhine  
~who had dwelt across the Rhine

---

I *oppidīs suis vicisque exustīs*, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

II *exūrō, -ūssi, -ūstus, -ere* (EX + ŪRŌ), to burn out, burn up, consume; To consume, destroy

III *utī...proficiscantur*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

IV *Boiī, -ōrum*, M. PL., Boians, Boii, a Celtic people once widely diffused over Europe



et in agrum<sup>I</sup> Nōricum<sup>II</sup> trānsierant<sup>III</sup>

=and (the Boii) had gone over ~and had crossed over into the  
into the territory of the Norici Norican territory

Nōreiamque oppugnābant<sup>IV</sup>

=and they (the Boii) were ~and had stormed Noreia  
fighting against Noreia

receptōs<sup>V</sup> [Helvētīū] ad sē sociōs<sup>VI</sup> sibi<sup>VII</sup> adscīscunt<sup>VIII</sup>

=[the Helvetiū] accepted to ~and they received to their  
themselves (the Boii) <having number and united to  
been> received again, as allies to themselves as allies  
themselves

---

I **ager, agrī**, M., *productive land, a field, farm, estate, arable land, pasture; A territory, district, domain*

II **Nōricus, -ī**, M., *of the Norici, Norican—now Neumarks*

III **trānseō, -ī, -itus, -ire** (TRĀNS + EŌ), *to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass*

IV **oppugnō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (OB + PUGNO), *to fight against, attack, assail, assault, storm, besiege, war with*

V **recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (RE + CAPIO), *To take back, bring back, carry back, retake, get back, regain, recover; To get back, receive again, regain, recover, repossess; With se, to draw back, withdraw from or to any place, to betake one's self anywhere; In milit. lang., to retire, retreat*

VI **socius, -ī**, M., *a fellow, sharer, partner, comrade, companion, associate*

VII **sibi**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **adscīscunt**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VIII **sciscō, scivī, scitus, -ere**, INCH. (SCIO), *Of the people, to accept, approve, assent to, enact, decree, ordain*



## I.VI



TWO POSSIBLE ROUTES THROUGH THE PROVINCE.



### I.VI.I.

**E**RANT OMNĪNŌ ITINERA DUO, QUIBUS ITINERIBUS DOMŌ EXĪRE POSSENT: ŪNUM PER SĒQUANŌS, ANGUSTUM ET DIFFICILE, INTER MONTEM IŪRAM ET FLŪMEN RHODANUM, VIX QUĀ SINGULĪ CARRĪ DŪCERENTUR; MŌNS AUTEM ALTISSIMUS IMPENDĒBAT, UT FACILE PERPAUCĪ PROHIBĒRE POSSENT: ALTERUM PER PRŌVINCIAM NOSTRAM, MULTŌ FACILIUS ATQUE EXPEDĪTIUS, PROPTEREĀ QUOD INTER FĪNĒS HELVĒTIŌRUM ET ALLOBROGUM, QUĪ NŪPER PĀCĀTĪ ERANT, RHODANUS FLUIT, ISQUE NŌN NŪLLĪS LOCĪS VADŌ TRĀNSĪTUR.

**Erant omnīnō<sup>1</sup> itinera duo**

=there were altogether two ~there were only two routes

---

I **omnīnō**, ADV. (OMNIS), *altogether, wholly, entirely, utterly, at all*; IN PARTIC. WITH NUMERALS, *in all, altogether, only, but, just*

quibus itineribus domō<sup>I</sup> exīre possent<sup>II</sup>

=routes in which (of such a character that by them) they (the Helvetii) could be able to go forth from (their) home ~by which they could go forth from their country

ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum<sup>III</sup> et difficile<sup>IV</sup>, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum

=one (route), through the Sequani, narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone ~one through the Sequani, narrow and difficult, between Mount Jura and the river Rhone

vix<sup>V</sup> quā singulī<sup>VI</sup> carrī dūcerentur<sup>VII</sup>

=by which (way) with difficulty single carts (only) would be led ~where scarcely one wagon at a time could be led

mōns autem altissimus impendēbat<sup>VIII</sup>

=there was, moreover, a very high mountain overhanging ~there was, moreover, a very high mountain overhanging

---

I ABL. PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

II **quibus itineribus...possent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

III **angustum, ī**, N. (ANGUSTUS), a narrow place

IV **difficilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (DIS- + FACILIS), hard, difficult, troublesome, impracticable, laborious, perilous

V **vix**, ADV., with difficulty, scarcely, barely

VI **singulus, -a, -um**, single; apiece; every; one each, one at a time

VII **quā...dūcerentur**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

VIII **impendeō, —, —, -ēre** (IN + PENDEŌ), to hang over, overhang

ut facile [eōs] perpaucī<sup>I</sup> prohibēre<sup>II</sup> possent<sup>III</sup>

=so that a very few [men] might ~so that a very few men might  
be able to easily intercept (them) easily intercept them

alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō<sup>IV</sup> facilius atque expeditius<sup>V</sup>

=another (route) through our ~the other, through our  
province, more easy and more Province, much easier and freer  
disengaged (from obstacles) by from obstacles  
much

propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum<sup>VI</sup>

=on account of this because // ~because // between the  
between the boundaries of the boundaries of the Helvetii and  
helvetii and of the Allobroges those of the Allobroges

quī nūper<sup>VII</sup> pācātī erant<sup>VIII</sup>

=(the Helvetii and Allobroges) ~who had lately been subdued  
who were newly pacified

---

I **perpaucus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PER + PAUCUS), *very little, very few*

II DIR. OBJ. OF **prohibēre** IS OMITTED

III **ut...possent**, CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537

IV ABL. DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

V **expediō, -ivī, -ītus, -īre** (EX + PES), *to extricate, disengage, let loose, set free, liberate; expēditus, -a, -um*, (P. A.), *unimpeded, unincumbered, disengaged, free, easy, ready, at hand*

VI **Allobrogēs, -um**, M., a Gallic people in the northern part of the province—Acc. SG., **Allobrogem**, *an Allobrogian*

VII **nūper**, ADV. (NV-), *newly, lately, recently, freshly, not long ago, just*

VIII **pāco, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (PAX), *to bring into a state of peace and quietness, to make peaceful, to quiet, pacify, subdue, soothe*

Rhodanus fluit<sup>I</sup>

=*the Rhone flows*

~*the Rhone flows*

isque nōn nūllis<sup>II</sup> locis vadō<sup>IV V</sup> trānsitur

=*and it (the Rhone) in not not any places is crossed by a shallow place* ~*and is in some places crossed by a ford*

## I.VI.II.

EXTRĒMUM OPPIDUM ALLOBROGUM EST PROXIMUMQUE  
HELVĒTIŌRUM FĪNIBUS GENAVA.

---

I **fluō, fluxī, fluxus, -ere** (FLV-), *to flow, stream*

II **nūllus, nūllius**, ADJ. (NE + ULLUS), *not any, none, no* (SEE CHART: NŪLLUS, NO, NONE §113)

III **nōn nūllis locis**, TWO NEGATIVES MAKE AN AFFIRMATIVE. AS, *in not not any places = in several places*. TWO NEGATIVES ARE EQUIVALENT TO AN AFFIRMATIVE. MANY COMPOUNDS OR PHRASES OF WHICH NŌN IS THE FIRST PART EXPRESS AN INDEFINITE AFFIRMATIVE: NŌN NŪLLUS, SOME; NŌN NŪLLI (=ALIQU), SOME FEW. §326i

IV ABL. OF MEANS. MEANS, INSTRUMENT, MANNER, AND ACCOMPANIMENT ARE DENOTED BY THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE (SEE §398), BUT SOME OF THESE USES MORE COMMONLY REQUIRE A PREPOSITION. AS THEY ALL COME FROM ONE SOURCE (THE OLD INSTRUMENTAL CASE) NO SHARP LINE CAN BE DRAWN BETWEEN THEM, AND INDEED THE ROMANS THEMSELVES CAN HARDLY HAVE THOUGHT OF ANY DISTINCTION. THUS, IN OMNIBUS PRECIBUS ŌRĀBANT, THEY ENTREATED WITH EVERY [KIND OF] PRAYER, THE ABLATIVE, PROPERLY THAT OF MEANS, CANNOT BE DISTINGUISHED FROM THAT OF MANNER. §408

V **vadum, -ī**, N. (BA-), *a shallow place, shallow, shoal, ford*

Extrēmum<sup>I</sup> oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum  
finibus<sup>II</sup> Genava<sup>III</sup>

=the outermost town of the  
Allobroges, and the nearest to  
the territories of the Helvetii, is  
Geneva

~the farthest town of the  
Allobroges, and the nearest to  
the territories of the Helvetii, is  
Geneva

### I.VI.III.

EX EŌ OPPIDŌ PŌNS AD HĒLVETIŌS PERTINET.

Ex eō oppidō pōns<sup>IV</sup> ad Hēlvetiōs pertinet

=out from this town a bridge  
extends to the Helvetii

~from this town a bridge extends  
to the Helvetii

### I.VI.IV.

ALLOBROGIBUS SĒSĒ VEL PERSUĀSŪRŌS, QUOD NŌNDUM  
BONŌ ANIMŌ IN POPULUM RŌMĀNUM VIDĒRENTUR,  
EXĪSTIMĀBANT VEL VĪ COĀCTŪRŌS UT PER SUŌS FĪNĒS  
EŌS ĪRE PATERENTUR.

---

I **extrēmus, -a, -um** ADJ. SUP. (EXTER), *outermost, utmost, extreme, farthest, last*

II ABL. WITH **proximum** USED AS A PRÆP. CERTAIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES ARE SOMETIMES USED AS PREPOSITIONS: THE ADVERBS PRĪDIĒ, POSTRĪDIĒ, PROPIUS, PROXIMĒ, LESS FREQUENTLY THE ADJECTIVES PROPIOR AND PROXIMUS, MAY BE FOLLOWED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §432<sup>1</sup>

III **Geneva, -ae**, M., a city of the Allobroges, on the Lacus Lemanus, now Geneva

IV **pōns, -ontis**, M. (PAT-), *a bridge*

Allobrogibus<sup>I</sup> sēsē vel<sup>II</sup> persuāsūrōs [esse]

=that they (the Helvetians) ~that they should either  
would either persuade the persuade the Allobroges  
Allobroges

quod nōndum<sup>III</sup> bonō<sup>IV</sup> animō<sup>V</sup> VI in populum Rōmānum  
vidērentur<sup>VII</sup> VIII

=because they not yet seemed in ~because they did not seem as  
good rational soul toward the yet in a good mind toward the  
Roman people Roman people

exīstimābant<sup>IX</sup>

=they were estimating ~they thought

---

I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuāsūrōs**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §36

II **vel**, CONJ., *or; and...or*

III **nōndum**, ADV. (NON + DUM), *the while, a while, now, yet, not yet*

IV **bonus**, -a, -um, ADJ., AS COMP. IN USE **melior**, -ōris, BETTER; AS SUP. **optimus**, best. (AP-, OP-), *good; WITH animus, good spirits, kindly*

V **animus**, -ī, M. (AN-), *the rational soul; Of the mind, the mental powers, intelligence, reason, intellect, mind*

VI **bonō animō**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY THE GENITIVE OR THE ABLATIVE MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT PHYSICAL QUALITIES ARE OFTENER DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE. §415

VII **quod...vidērentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VIII **videō, vidī, visus, -ēre** (VID-), *to see, discern, perceive; PASS, to be looked upon, be regarded, seem, appear*

IX **exīstimō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (EX + ÆSTIMO), *to value, estimate, reckon; To appreciate, value, esteem, judge, consider, suppose, think, expect*



[sēsē] vel vī<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> [eos] coāctūrōs [esse]

=or [those men (the Helvetians)] ~or compel them performe  
would drive together [those  
men] (the Allobroges) by  
strength

ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur<sup>III</sup>

=<in order> that they might bear ~to permit them to pass through  
them (the Helvetians) to go their territories  
through their own (the  
Allobroges') territories

### I.VI.V.

OMNIBUS RĒBUS AD PROFECTIONEM COMPARATIS DIEM  
DICUNT, QUĀ DIĒ AD RĪPAM RHODANĪ OMNĒS  
CONVENIANT.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis

=with all things <having been> ~having provided everything for  
prepared for <the purpose of> departure  
departing

diem dicunt<sup>IV</sup>

=they say a day ~they appoint a day

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §408

II **vīs**, —, ABL. **vī**, F., strength, force, vigor, power, energy, virtue; Hostile strength, force, violence, compulsion

III **ut...paterentur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

IV **dicō, dixī, dictus, -ere** (DIC-), to say, speak, utter, tell, mention, relate, affirm, declare, state, assert; To appoint, set apart, fix upon, settle

quā diē<sup>I</sup> ad rīpam<sup>II</sup> Rhodanī omnēs conveniant<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup>

=~~a day in~~ which all (the men) ~they should all meet on the  
would come together toward the bank of the Rhone  
bank of the Rhone

## I.VI.VI.

IS DIĒS ERAT A.D. V. KAL. APRIL., L. PĪSŌNE A. GABĪNIŌ  
CŌNSULIBUS.

Is diēs erat a[nte]<sup>V</sup> d[iem] quīntum Kal[endās]<sup>VI</sup> Aprīl[ēs]<sup>VII</sup>  
L[ūciō]<sup>VIII</sup> Pīsōne, A[ulō]<sup>IX</sup> Gabīniō<sup>X</sup> cōnsulibus<sup>XI</sup>

=this day was the fifth day ~this day was the fifth before the  
before the April kalends (i.e. the kalends of April, in the  
28th of March), with Lucius Piso consulship of Lucius Piso and  
(and) Aulus Gabinius being Aulus Gabinius  
consuls (B.C. 58.)

---

I REDUNDANT PRON. AND MAY BE OMITTED IN ENGLISH TRANSLATION

II **rīpa, -æ**, F. (RIC-), a bank, margin (of a river)

III **quā diē...convenient**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

IV **conveniō, -vēnī, -ventus, -ire** (CON + VENIŌ), to come together, meet, assemble, gather, come in a body; To address, accost, meet, visit, obtain an interview with; Trop, to come to a decision, be concluded, be agreed on, be settled

V **ante**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (ANT-), ADV., of space, before, in front, forwards; PRÆP. WITH ACC, before

VI **Kalendæ, -ārum**, F. (CAL-), PROP. the day when the order of days was proclaimed; hence, the Calends, the first day of the month

VII **april, -is**, the month of April, April

VIII **Lūcius, -ī**, M., a Roman first name; ABR., L.

IX **Aulus, -ī**, M., a Roman first name

X **Gabinius, -ī**, M., Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C.

XI **L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus**, ABL. ABS. TRANS. WITH being. §420

# I.VII



CÆSAR HASTENS TO GENEVA.



## I.VIII.



CÆSARĪ CUM ID NŪNTIĀTUM ESSET, EŌS PER PRŌVINCIAM NOSTRAM ITER FACERE CŌNĀRĪ, MĀTŪRAT AB URBE PROFICĪSCĪ ET QUAM MAXIMĪS POTEST ITINERIBUS IN GALLIAM ULTERIŌREM CONTENDIT, ET AD GENAVAM PERVENIT.

Cæsarī cum id nūntiātum esset<sup>I</sup>

=*when it had been reported to* ~*when it was reported to Cæsar*  
Cæsar

eōs per prŏvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī<sup>II</sup>

=*that they are attempting to* ~*that they were attempting to*  
*make a journey through our* *make their route through our*  
*Province* *Province*

---

I **cum...nūntiātum esset, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **eōs...cōnārī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum esset**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

mātūrat<sup>III IV</sup> ab urbe proficisci

=he (Cæsar) makes haste to depart from the city (Rome) ~he hastened to set out from the city

et quam maximīs<sup>III</sup> potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem<sup>IV</sup> contendit<sup>V VI</sup>

=and, by as great marches as he (Cæsar) is able, strives into Further Gaul ~and, by as great marches as he can, pressed on to Further Gaul

et ad Genavam pervenit<sup>VII</sup>

=and he arrives at Geneva ~and arrived at Geneva

## I.VII.II.

PRŌVINCIAE TŌTĪ QUAM MAXIMUM POTEST MĪLITUM  
NUMERUM IMPERAT (ERAT OMNĪNŌ IN GALLIĀ  
ULTERIŌRE LEGIŌ ŪNA), PONTEM, QUĪ ERAT AD  
GENAVAM IUBET RESCINDĪ.

---

III HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIŌ. §585. P. N.) §469

IV **mātūrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (MATURUS), *to make ripe, ripen, bring to maturity; Fig., to make haste, hasten, accelerate, quicken, despatch, expedite*

III **quam** + SUPER = *as...as possible*. BESIDES THEIR REGULAR SIGNIFICATION (AS IN ENGLISH), THE FORMS OF COMPARISON ARE USED AS FOLLOWS: WITH QUAM, VEL, OR UNUS THE SUPERLATIVE DENOTES THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEGREE. §291<sup>III</sup>

IV **ūterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP., *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*

V HIST. PRES. §469

VI **contendō, -dī, -tus, -ere** (CON + TENDŌ), *to stretch, bend, draw tight, strain; To strive for, press, pursue, prosecute, hasten, exert oneself; To march, press on, seek, journey hastily, hasten*

VII HIST. PRES. §469

Prōvinciæ<sup>I</sup> tōtī quam maximum<sup>II</sup> potest mīlitum<sup>III</sup> [cōgendum]  
 numerum imperat<sup>IV</sup>

=*he orders the whole Province a  
 greatest number of soldiers as it  
 is able [to be gathered]*

~*he ordered the whole Province  
 [to furnish] as great a number of  
 soldiers as possible*

erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna

=(as) *there was altogether one  
 legion in Further Gaul*

~*as there was in all only one  
 legion in Further Gaul*

pontem

=*the bridge*

~*the bridge*

quī erat ad<sup>V</sup> Genavam<sup>VI</sup>

=*which was toward Geneva*

~*at Geneva*

iubet<sup>VII</sup>

=*he orders*

~*he orders*

---

I DAT. OF SPECIAL V. **imperat.** MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

II **quam** + SUPER = *as...as possible.* §291<sup>III</sup>

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE **alius**, **alter**, **nūllus**, ETC. §346<sup>I</sup>

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V **ad**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., Of approach. In space, *to, toward*; Of nearness or proximity. In gen., *near to, by, at, close by*

VI **ad Genavam**, ACC. OF PLACE TO WHICH. I. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS **ad** IS OFTEN USED TO DENOTE FROM THE VICINITY OF, AND **ad** TO DENOTE TOWARDS, TO THE NEIGHBORHOOD OF. §428<sup>I</sup>

VII HIST. PRES. §469

rescindī<sup>I II</sup>

=to be broken down

~to be broken down

### I.VII.III.

VBI DĒ EIUS ADVENTŪ HELVĒTĪ CERTIŌRĒS FACTĪ SUNT, LĒGĀTŌS AD EUM MITTUNT NŌBILISSIMŌS CĪVITĀTIS, CUIUS LĒGĀTIŌNIS NAMMEIUS ET VERUCLĒTIUS PRĪNCIPEM LOCUM OBTINĒBANT, QUĪ DĪCERENT SIBI ESSE IN ANIMŌ SINE ŪLLŌ MALEFICIŌ ITER PER PRŌVINCIAM FACERE, PROPTERĒA QUOD ALIUD ITER HABĒRENT NŪLLUM: ROGĀRE UT EIUS VOLUNTĀTE ID SIBI FACERE LICEAT.

"NOBIS EST IN ANIMO SINE ULLO MALEFICIO ITER PER PROVINCIAM FACERE, PROPTEREA QUOD ALIUD ITER HABEMUS NULLUM; ROGAMUS, UT TUA VOLUNTATE ID NOBIS FACERE LICEAT."

Vbi dē eius adventū<sup>III</sup> Helvētīī certiōrēs<sup>IV V</sup> factī sunt

=when the Helvetii are made ~when the Helvetii were more certain concerning his informed of his arrival arrival

I **rescindō -scidī, -scissus, -ere**, (RE + SCINDŌ), to cut off, cut loose, cut down, tear open: pontem, i.e. break down

II **pontem...rescindī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iubet**. §580

III **adventus, ūs, M** (AD + BA-, VEN-), a coming, approach, arrival

IV PRED. ADJ. WITH SUM AND A FEW OTHER INTRANSITIVE OR PASSIVE VERBS, A NOUN OR AN ADJECTIVE DESCRIBING OR DEFINING THE SUBJECT MAY STAND IN THE PREDICATE. THIS IS CALLED A PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE. THE VERB SUM IS ESPECIALLY COMMON IN THIS CONSTRUCTION, AND WHEN SO USED IS CALLED THE COPULA (I.E. CONNECTIVE). §283

V **certus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PPP. OF CERNO), determined, resolved, fixed, settled, purposed, certain; With facere, to inform, apprise one of a thing

**lĕgātōs ad eum mittunt<sup>I</sup> nōbilissimōs<sup>II</sup> cīvitātis**

=they send to him the most well-known men of (their) state as ambassadors  
~they sent to him, as ambassadors, the most celebrated men of their state

**cuius lĕgātiōnis Nammeius<sup>III</sup> et Veruclōetius<sup>IV</sup> prīncipem<sup>V</sup> locum obtinēbant**

=of which embassy Numeius and Verudoctius were holding the chief place  
~in which embassy Numeius and Verudoctius possessed the chief place

**quī dīcerent<sup>VI</sup>**

=who should say  
~to say

---

I HIST. PRES. §469

II Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, *veri* (Neuter) *simile*, *probable*, lit. *like truth* (III.XIII); *nostri*, *our men* (I.LII); *novissimis* (Masculine), *for the rear*, Lit. *for those last* (I.XXV); *sua*, *their possessions* (I.XI); *pro viso*, *as seen*, Lit. *for* (that which was) *seen* (I.XXII)

III **Nammeius, -ī**, M., a Helvetian sent as envoy to Caesar

IV **Veruclōetius, -ī**, M., a Helvetian who went as envoy to Caesar

V **prīnceps, cipis**, ADJ. (PRIMUS + CAP-), *first in order, foremost; The first, chief, most eminent, most noble*

VI **quī dīcerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUO, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

sibi<sup>I</sup> esse<sup>II</sup> in animō sine<sup>III</sup> ūllō<sup>IV</sup> maleficiō<sup>V</sup> iter per prōvinciam  
facere

=*that there is in mind for those men to make a journey through (their) province without (doing) any evil-doing*      ~*that it was their intention to march through the Province without doing any nefarious activities*

proptereā quod aliud iter habērent<sup>VI</sup> nūllum

=*on this account because another route they were having none*      ~*because they had, according to their own representations, no other route*

[se] rogāre<sup>VII</sup>

=(*and*) *that [they] are asking*      ~*that they requested*

---

I    DAT. OF POSS. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. NOTE THE GENITIVE OR A POSSESSIVE WITH ESSE EMPHASIZES THE POSSESSOR; THE DATIVE, THE FACT OF POSSESSION: AS, —LIBER EST MEUS, THE BOOK IS MINE (AND NO ONE'S ELSE); EST MIHI LIBER, I HAVE A BOOK (AMONG OTHER THINGS). §373

II    **esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicere**. §580

III    **sine**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (SI + NE), *without*

IV    **ūllus, -a, -um**, ADJ., WITH A NEGATION, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, *any, any one* (SEE CHART: ŪLLUS, ANY §113)

V    **maleficium, -i**, N. (MALEFICUS), *evil-doing, nefarious, vicious, wicked, criminal*

VI    **proptereā quod...habērent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VII    **rogō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, *to ask, question, interrogate; To ask, beg, request, solicit, implore*



ut eius voluntâte<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> id sibi<sup>III</sup> facere liceat<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup>

=that might be allowed to do it ~to be permitted to do so with  
(i.e. cross their territories) with his consent  
his (Cæsar's) will

#### I.VII.IV.

CÆSAR, QUOD MEMORIĀ TENĒBAT L. CASSIUM  
CŌNSULEM OCCĪSUM EXERCITUMQUE EIUS AB HELVĒTIĪS  
PULSUM ET SUB IUGUM MISSUM, CONCĒDENDUM NON  
PUTĀBAT; NEQUE HOMINĒS INIMĪCŌ ANIMŌ, DATĀ  
FACULTĀTE PER PRŌVINCIAM ITINERIS FACIENDĪ,  
TEMPERĀTŪRŌS AB INIŪRIĀ ET MALEFICIŌ EXĪSTMĀBAT.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

- 
- I **voluntās, -ātis**, F. (VOL-), *will, free-will, wish, choice, desire, inclination*; ABL., *of one's own will, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily*
- II **eius voluntâte**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- III DAT. WITH IMPERS. V. **liceat**. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH THE IMPERSONALS LIBET (LUBET), IT PLEASES, AND LICET, IT IS ALLOWED. §368
- IV **ut...liceat**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563
- V **licet, -cuit and citum est, -ēre**, IMPERS. (LIC-), *It is lawful, is allowed, is permitted*, WITH OR WITHOUT DAT. OF PERSON—WITHOUT SUBJECT

quod memoriā<sup>I</sup> tenēbat<sup>II III</sup>

=was holding this thing in (his) memory ~inasmuch as he kept in remembrance

L[ūcium] Cassium<sup>IV</sup> cōnulem occīsum [esse]<sup>V VI</sup>

=that L[ucius] Cassius, the consul, had been cut down ~that Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain

exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis<sup>VII</sup> pulsum [esse]<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=and his army had been propelled // by the Helvetii ~and his army routed // by the Helvetii

I **memoria, -æ, f.** (MEMOR), *memory, remembrance*

II **quod...tenebat**, CAUSAL CLAUSE. INDIC. AS IT IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE SPEAKER. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

III **teneō, tenuī, —, ēre** (TA-), *to hold, keep, have, grasp, hold fast; Fig., to hold in mind, take in, understand, conceive, comprehend, know*

IV **Cassius, -ī, m.**, Lucius Cassius Longinus, praetor 111 B.C.; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurians in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain

V PERF. PASS. INF; IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **memoria tenebat**. §580

VI **occidō, -cidī, -cīsus, -ere** (OB + CÆDO), *to strike down, knock down; To cut down, cut off, kill, slay*

VII **ab Helvētiis**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES Ā OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

VIII PERF. PASS. INF; IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **memoria tenebat**. §580

IX **pellō, pepulī, pulsus, -ere** (PAL-), *to beat, strike, knock, push, drive, hurl, impel, propel; In partic. To drive out or away, to thrust or turn out, expel, banish; ESP. MILIT., to drive back, discomfit, rout the enemy* —CONSTR. WITH ABL., WITH *ex*, RARELY WITH *de*; ALSO WITH *ab* AND ABL. OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH ONE IS REPELLED OR DRIVEN BACK, BUT HAS NOT ENTERED

et sub<sup>I</sup> iugum<sup>II</sup> missum [esse]<sup>III</sup>

=and (they) were sent under a yoke ~and made to pass under the yoke

concēdendum non [sibi] [esse]<sup>IV</sup>

=that it is not <having> to be granted [by him] ~that (their request) ought not to be granted

putābat<sup>V</sup>

=was thinking ~thought

- 
- I **sub**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. AND ABL., WITH ABL., of position in space, *under, below, beneath, underneath, behind*; TRANSF., of lofty objects, at the foot of which, or in whose immediate neighborhood, any thing is situated, *under, below, beneath, at the foot of, at, by, near, before*; Of time, *in, within, during, at, by*; In gen., of subjection, domination, stipulation, influence, effect, reason, etc., *under, beneath, with*; Trop., *under, subject to, in the power of; during, in the time of, upon, etc.*; WITH ACC., to point out the object under which a thing comes, goes, extends, etc., *under, below, beneath*; Of space, USU. WITH VERBS OF MOTION; Of time, denoting a close approximation, *Before, towards, about, shortly before, up to, until*
- II **iūgum, -i**, N., *a yoke for oxen, a collar for horses*; Esp. as the symbol of humiliation and defeat, *a yoke* (consisting of two upright spears, and a third laid transversely upon them, under which vanquished enemies were made to pass)
- III PERF. PASS. INF; IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **memoria tenebat**. §580
- IV **concēdō, -cessī, -cessus, -ere** (CON + CĒDŌ), INTRANS, *to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove*; *To yield, submit to one's will, comply with one's wishes*—IMPERS.
- V **putō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (PUTUS), *to clean, cleanse, trim, prune*; *To judge, suppose, account, consider, suspect, believe, think, imagine*

neque hominēs inimīcō<sup>I</sup> animō<sup>II</sup>

=nor /was he thinking/ that men  
with hostile mind

~nor /was he of the opinion/ that  
men of hostile intellect

datā facultāte<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> per prōvinciam itineris faciendī<sup>V</sup>

=with the capability <having  
been> given of making a journey  
through the province

~if an opportunity of marching  
through the Province should  
have been granted to them

temperātūrōs [esse]<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup> ab iniūriā<sup>VIII</sup> et maleficiō<sup>IX</sup>

=would abstain from injury and  
misdeed

~would abstain from outrage  
and mischief

- 
- I **inimīcus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (IN + AMICUS), *unfriendly, hostile, inimica*
- II ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY THE GENITIVE OR THE ABLATIVE MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT PHYSICAL QUALITIES ARE OFTENER DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE. §415
- III **facultās, -ātis**, F. (FACILIS), *capability, possibility, power, means, opportunity, skill, ability*
- IV **datā facultāte**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420
- V **itineris faciendī**, OBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504
- VI **temperō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (TEMPUS), *to observe proper measure, be moderate, restrain oneself, forbear, abstain, be temperate, act temperately*
- VII **hominēs...temperātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **existimābat**. §580
- VIII **iniūriā, -ae**, F. (INIURIUS; IN + IŪS), any thing that is done contrary to justice and equity, *injury, wrong, violence*; TRANSF., *injurious, unlawful, or unjust conduct*; ACT., *injustice, wrongdoing*
- IX **ab iniūriā et maleficiō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

exīstimābat

=/nor/ was he thinking

~/nor/ was he of the opinion

## I.VII.V.

TAMEN, UT SPATIUM INTERCĒDERE POSSET DUM MĪLITĒS  
QUŌS IMPERĀVERAT CONVENĪRENT, LĒGĀTĪS RESPONDIT  
DIEM SĒ AD DĒLIBERANDUM SŪMPTŪRUM: SĪ QUID  
VELLENT, AD ĪD. APRIL. REVERTERENTUR.

"AD DELIBERANDUM SUMAM; SI QUID VULTIS, AD. ID. APR.  
REVERTIMINI."

Tamen<sup>I</sup>

=nevertheless

~yet

ut spatium<sup>II</sup> intercēdere<sup>III</sup> posset<sup>IV</sup>

=<in order> that a space (of ~in order that a period might  
time) might be able to come intervene  
between

dum<sup>V</sup> mīlitēs<sup>VI</sup>

=until the soldiers

~until the soldiers

---

I **tamen**, ADV. (TA-), AFTER A CONCESSIVE OR COND. PARTICLE, *notwithstanding, nevertheless, for all that, however, yet, still* (BEGINNING THE CLAUSE OR AFTER ITS EMPHATIC WORD)

II **spatium**, -ī, N. (SPA-), *a space, room, extent; A portion of time, space, interval, period*

III **intercēdō**, -cessī, -cessus, -ere (inter + cēdō), *to come between, intervene, be between*

IV **ut...posset**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

V **dum**, CONJ. (DUM), *while, whilst, at the time that, during the time in which, where; Of immediate succession, to the time when, all the time till, until*

VI **mīles**, -itis, M. AND F. (MIL-), *a soldier*

quōs imperāverat<sup>I</sup>

=whom he had ordered (to be furnished)

~whom he had ordered (to be furnished)

convenirent<sup>II</sup>

=should assemble

~should assemble

lēgātīs<sup>III</sup> respondit<sup>IV</sup>

=he replied to the ambassadors

~he replied to the ambassadors

diem sē ad dēliberandum<sup>V VI</sup> sūmptūrum [esse]<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=that he would take up a day for  
<the purpose of> deliberating

~that he would take time to  
deliberate

- 
- I **imperō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (IN + PARO), to command, order, enjoin, bid, give an order; To exercise authority, command, rule, control, govern
- II **dum...convenirent, dum** TEMPORAL CLAUSE; *Dum* + PRES. OR IMPER. SUBJ. = INTENTION OR EXPECTANCY. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §553
- III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **respondit. §367**
- IV **respondeō, -spondī, -spōnsus, -ēre** (RE + SPONDEŌ), to answer, reply, respond, make answer
- V **ad dēliberandum**, ACC. OF THE GERUND EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506
- VI **dēliberō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre** (DE + LIBRA, balance), to weigh well in one's mind, to consider maturely, deliberate respecting a thing; to take counsel, consult, advise upon
- VII **sūmō, sūmpsi, sūmptus, -ere** (SUB + EMO), to take, take up, take in hand, lay hold of, assume; Fig., to take, take up, assume
- VIII **sē...sūmptūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit. §580**

sī quid<sup>I</sup> vellent<sup>II</sup>

=if they wanted anything

~if they wanted anything

ad Īd[ūs]<sup>III</sup> Aprīl[ēs] reverterentur<sup>IV</sup> V

=they might return towards the  
ides of April

~they might return on the ides of  
April (on April 2th)

- 
- I **quis, quis, quid**, PRON INDEF. (CA-), *any one, anybody, anything, some one, somebody, something*; *aliquis, aliquid* IS A COMMON INDEFINITE PRONOUN (*anyone, anything*), BUT *quis, quid* ARE COMMONLY USED AFTER *sī, nisi, num*, AND *nē* AS AN INDEFINITE—who = *anyone*; *what* = *anything* (SEE INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS §148)
- II **volō, voluī, velle** (VOL-), *to will, wish, want, purpose, be minded, determine*
- III **Id, -ūs** (4TH DECL.), **Ides**, *the 13th of April*—the *Ides* denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon
- IV **sī...vellent...reverterentur**, COND. IN INDIR. DISC. THE APODOSIS IS SUBJUNCTIVE BECAUSE IT WOULD HAVE BEEN IMPERATIVE IN DIRECT DISCOURSE. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588 & CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589
- V **rēverto** and **rēvertor, versus** (RE + VERTO), *to turn back, turn about; to come back, return*





# I.VIII



## CAESAR FORBIDS THE HELVTIANS ENTRY.



### I.VIII.I.



INTEREĀ EĀ LEGIŌNE QUAM SĒCUM HABĒBAT  
MĪLITIBUSQUE QUĪ EX PRŌVINCĪA  
CONVĒNERANT Ā LACŪ LEMANNŌ, QUĪ IN  
FLŪMEN RHODANUM ĪNFLUIT, AD MONTEM  
IŪRAM, QUĪ FĪNĒS SĒQUANŌRUM AB HELVĒTIĪS DĪVIDIT,  
MĪLIA PASSUUM ŪNDĒVĪGINTĪ MŪRUM IN ALTITŪDINEM  
PEDUM SĒDECIM FOSSAMQUE PERDŪCIT.

Intereā<sup>I</sup> eā legiōne<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=*meanwhile, with that legion*

~*meanwhile, with the legion*

quam sēcum habēbat

=*which he was having with him*

~*which he had with him*

---

I **intereā**, ADV. (INTER + EA), *meanwhile, in the meantime, in the interim*

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **legiō, ōnis**, F. (LEG-), *a body of soldiers, legion* (containing 10 cohorts of foot-soldiers and 300 cavalry, in all between 4200 and 6000 men. These were Roman citizens; only on pressing necessity were slaves admitted. The legions were numbered in the order of their levy, but were often known by particular names); PL., *legions, soldiers*

**militibusque<sup>I</sup>**

=*and the soldiers*

~*and the soldiers*

**quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant**

=*who had come together from the Province*

~*which had assembled from the Province*

**ā lacū Lemannō<sup>II</sup>**

=*from the Lake of Geneva*

~*from the Lake of Geneva*

**quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit<sup>III</sup>**

=*which flows into the river Rhone*

~*which flows into the river Rhone*

**ad montem Iūram**

=*to Mount Jura*

~*to Mount Jura*

**quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs<sup>IV</sup> dīvidit**

=*which separates the territories of the Sequani from (those territories of) the Helvetii*

~*which separates the territories of the Sequani from those of the Helvetii*

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **ā lacū Lemannō**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426I

III **influo**, -uxī, uxor, -ere (IN + FLUO), to flow in, run in

IV **ab Helvētiīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

mīlia<sup>I</sup> passuum<sup>II</sup> ūndēvīgintī mūrum<sup>III</sup> in altitūdinem<sup>IV</sup> pedum<sup>V</sup>  
sēdecim fossamque<sup>VI</sup> perdūcit<sup>VII</sup>

=he had drew up for nineteen ~he constructed, for nineteen  
thousands of paces, into the miles a wall, to the height of  
height of sixteen feet, a wall and sixteen feet, a wall and a trench  
a trench

## I.VIII.II.

EŌ OPERE PERFECTŌ, PRÆSIDIA DISPŌNIT, CASTELLA  
COMMŪNIT, QUŌ FACILIUS, SĪ SĒ INVĪTŌ TRĀNSĪRE  
CŌNĀRENTUR, PROHIBĒRE POSSET.

Eō opere<sup>VIII</sup> perfectō<sup>IX</sup>

=with that work <having been> ~when that work was finished  
completed

- 
- I ACC. OF EXTENT OF SPACE. EXTENT OF SPACE IS EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §425
- II PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346
- III **mūrus, -ī**, M. (MV-), *a wall, city wall*
- IV **altitūdō, -dīnis**, F. (ALTUS), *height, altitude; Meton., depth*
- V GEN. OF QUALITY. THE GENITIVE IS USED TO DENOTE QUALITY, BUT ONLY WHEN THE QUALITY IS MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE. THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY, WITH NUMERALS, IS USED TO DEFINE MEASURES OF LENGTH, DEPTH, ETC. (GENITIVE OF MEASURE.) §345
- VI **fossa, -æ**, F. (FOSSUS; TO DIG, FOD-), *a ditch, trench, fosse*
- VII **perdūcō, -dūxī-, ductus, ere** (PER + DŪCŌ), *To lead, bring, conduct, guide a person or thing to any place*
- VIII **opus, -eris**, N. (AP-), *work, labor, toil; TRANSF., ABSTR. IN NOM. AND ACC., need, necessity; hence, Opus est, it is needful, wanting; there is need of, use for—opus est mihi, tibi, etc., I (thou, etc.) have need of, need, want*
- IX **eō opere perfectō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

**præsidia<sup>I</sup> dispōnit<sup>II</sup>**

=he arranges defences

~he distributed the garrisons

**castella<sup>III</sup> commūnit<sup>IV</sup>**

=(and) he fortifies the redoubts

~and closely fortified the redoubts

**quō facilius<sup>V</sup>**

=in which more easily

~in order that he may the more easily

**sī<sup>VI</sup> sē invītō<sup>VII VIII</sup> trānsīre<sup>IX</sup> cōnārentur<sup>X</sup>**

=if they should attempt to cross with him <being> unwilling

~if they should attempt to cross over against his will

I **præsidium, -ī, N. (PRÆSES), defence, protection, guardianship, help, aid, assistance; A guard, escort, convoy, garrison**

II **dispōnō, -posui, -positus, -ere (DIS + PŌNŌ), to place here and there, array, distribute, set in order, arrange, dispose**

III **castellum, -ī, N. dim. (CASTRUM), a castle, fort, citadel, fortress, stronghold**

IV **commūniō, -īvi or -ii, -itum, -ire (COM + MŪNIŌ), to fortify on all sides or strongly, to secure, barricade, intrench**

V **facilis, -e, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FAC-), easy to do, easy, without difficulty**

VI **sī, CONJ. (SOVO-), AS A COND. PARTICLE.—WITH INDIC., in conditions assumed as true, or (WITH FUT.) which will probably be fulfilled, if, when, inasmuch as, since; WITH quod, and if, but if, if however, if**

VII **sē...invītō, ABL. ABS.; ADD 'being' FOR PROPER TRANSLATION, AS, with him being unwilling. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419**

VIII **invītus, -a, -um, ADJ. (IN + VICITUS?), against one's will, unwilling, reluctant; AS SUBST. M., reluctant, unwilling**

IX **trānsēō, -ii, -itus, -ire (TRĀNS + EŌ), to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass**

[eos] prohibēre possit<sup>1</sup>

=he may be able to prohibit ~intercept them  
[those men]

### I.VIII.III.

VBI EA DIĒS QUAM CŌSTITUERAT CUM LĒGĀTĪS VĒNIT  
ET LĒGĀTĪ AD EUM REVERTĒRUNT, NEGAT SĒ MŌRE ET  
EXEMPLŌ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ POSSE ITER ŪLLĪ PER  
PRŌVINCIAM DARE ET, SĪ VIM FACERE CŌNENTUR,  
PROHIBITŪRUM OSTENDIT.

"MORE ET EXEMPLO POPULI ROMANI NON POSSUM ITER  
ULLI PER PROVINCIAM DARE; SI VIM FACERE  
CONABIMINI, PROHIBEBO."

Vbi ea diēs

=when that day

~when the day

---

X ***sī...cōnārentur***, PROTASIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID COND. FUTURE CONDITIONS MAY BE MORE VIVID OR LESS VIVID. IN A LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION, THE SUPPOSITION IS LESS DISTINCT, THE APODOSIS EXPRESSING WHAT WOULD BE THE RESULT IN THE CASE SUPPOSED: IN THE LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN BOTH PROTASIS AND APODOSIS. §526 FUTURE CONDITIONS MAY BE MORE VIVID OR LESS VIVID. IN A LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION, THE SUPPOSITION IS LESS DISTINCT, THE APODOSIS EXPRESSING WHAT WOULD BE THE RESULT IN THE CASE SUPPOSED: IN THE LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN BOTH PROTASIS AND APODOSIS. §516II

I ***quō facilius...possit***, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §539 RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. THE ABLATIVE QUŌ (= UT EO) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531

quam cōstituerat<sup>II</sup> cum lēgātīs

=which he had appointed with  
the ambassadors

~which he had appointed with  
the ambassadors

vēnit<sup>II</sup>

=came

~came

et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt

=and the the ambassadors  
returned to him

~and they returned to him

negat<sup>III</sup>

=he denies

~he refused

se mōre<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup> et exemplō <sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup> populī Rōmānī posse<sup>VIII</sup> iter ūllī per  
prōvinciam dare

=that, by the habit and by the  
manner of the Roman people, he  
was able to grant the journey to  
anyone through the province

~that in accordance with the  
custom and (in accordance with)  
precedent of the Roman people,  
he will grant any one a passage  
through the Province

---

II cōstituō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere (COM- + STATUO; STA-), to put, place, set, station; To designate, select, assign, appoint

II veniō, vēnī, ventus, -īre (BA-), to come; Fig. to come into, fall into any state or condition; PASS, we, they, etc., came or have come, etc

III negō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (AG-), to say no, deny, refuse

IV ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

V mōs, mōris, M. (MA-), a will, way, habit, manner, fashion, caprice, humor

VI ABL. OF SPEC. §418

VII exemplum, -ī, N. (EM-), a sample, specimen; A way, manner, kind, nature

VIII sē...posse. INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **negat**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

et sī vim facere cōnentur

=and if they should attempt to  
make force

~if they should attempt to  
execute violence

[se] [eos] prohibītūrum [esse]<sup>I</sup>

=[he] (Cæsar) would oppose  
[those men]

~that he would oppose them

ostendit<sup>II</sup>

=he pointed out

~and he gives them to  
understand

#### I.VIII.IV.

HELVĒTIĪ EĀ SPĒ DĒIECTĪ, NĀVIBUS IŪNCTĪS RATIBUSQUE  
COMPLŪRIBUS FACTĪS ALIĪ VADĪS RHODANĪ, QUĀ  
MINIMA ALTITŪDŌ FLŪMINIS ERAT, NŌN NUMQUAM  
INTERDIŪ, SÆPIUS NOCTŪ, SĪ PERRUMPERE POSSENT  
CŌNĀTĪ, OPERIS MŪNĪTIŌNE ET MĪLITUM CONCURSŪ ET  
TĒLĪS REPULSĪ, HŌC CŌNĀTŪ DĒSTITĒRUNT.

---

I **sī...cōnentur...prohibītūrum**, FUT. LESS VIVID COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II **ostendō, -dī, -tus, -ere** (OBS + TENDO), *to stretch out, spread before, expose to view, show, point out, exhibit, display*

Helvētīi eā spē<sup>I</sup> dēiectī<sup>II</sup>, [aliī] nāvibus iūctīs<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> ratibusque complūribus factīs<sup>V</sup>, aliī vadīs<sup>VI</sup> Rhodanī

=the Helvetii, thrown down from that hope // [some men] with boats <having been> joined together, and with several rafts <having been> made, other (men) in the fords of the Rhone  
~The Helvetii, deprived of this hope // some by means of a bridge of boats and numerous rafts constructed for the purpose, others by the fords of the Rhone

quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat

=in which the depth of the river was least  
~where the depth of the river was least

nōn numquam<sup>VII</sup> interdiū<sup>VIII</sup>, sēpius<sup>IX</sup> noctū<sup>X</sup>

=not never by day, (but) more often by night  
~sometimes by day, but more frequently at night

---

I ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

II **dēiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (DE + IACIO), to throw down, hurl down, precipitate, prostrate, raze, fell, cut down, tear down, destroy; To prevent from obtaining, deprive, rob of

III **iungo, -nxi, -nctum**, to join or unite together, connect, attach, fasten, yoke, harness

IV **nāvībus iūctīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **ratibusque complūribus factīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **vadīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VII **numquam**, ADV. (NE + UMQUAM), at no time, never

VIII **interdiū**, ADV. (DIV-), during the day, in the daytime, by day

IX **sēpis, -e**, ADJ., that happens often, frequent

X **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), night—ad multam noctem: (up) to late in the night



sī perrumpere<sup>I</sup> possent<sup>II</sup>

=(to see) if they should be able to  
break through

~to see whether they could break  
through

cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> et mīlitum concursū<sup>V</sup> <sup>VI</sup> et tēlis<sup>VII</sup> <sup>VIII</sup>  
repulsī<sup>IX</sup>, hōc cōnātū<sup>X</sup> dēstitērunt<sup>XI</sup>

=<having> tried // (those men,)  
<having been> repulsed by the  
fortification of the works, ~~and~~ by  
the running together of the  
soldiers, and by the spears, they  
left off from this attempt

~trying // but being kept at bay  
by the strength of our works,  
and by the concourse of the  
soldiers, and by the missiles,  
they desisted from this attempt

---

I **perrumpō, -rūpī, -ruptus, -ere** (PER + RUMPO; RVP-), to break through, force a way through, get across

II **sī...possent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS OCCASIONALLY INTRODUCED BY SĪ IN THE SENSE OF WHETHER. §576I

III ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **mūnitiō, -ōnis**, F. (MUNIO), a defending, fortifying, protecting; A defence, fortification, rampart, bulwark, intrenchment, walls

V ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **concursum, -ūs**, M. (CON + CURRO), a running together, concourse, throng, mob, tumult; An assault, onset, attack, charge

VII ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VIII **tēlum, -ī**, N. (TEC-), a missile weapon, missile, dart, spear, shaft, javelin

IX **repellō, reppulī, repulsus, -ere** (RE + PELLŌ), to drive back, thrust back, drive away, reject, repulse, repel

X ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

XI **dēsistō, -stitī, -stitus, -ere** (DE + SISTŌ; TO STAND, STA-), to leave off, cease, give over, desist from



# I.IX



## THE HELVETIANS DEPART.



### I.IX.I.



RELINQUĒBĀTUR ŪNA PER SĒQUANŌS VIA, QUĀ  
SĒQUANĪS INVĪTĪS PROPTER ANGUSTIĀS ĪRE NŌN  
POTERANT.

Relinquēbātur<sup>I</sup> ūna per Sēquanōs via<sup>II</sup>

=there was remaining one path, ~there was left one way,  
(namely,) through the Sequani [namely] through the Sequani

quā<sup>III</sup>

=by which

~where

Sēquanīs invītīs<sup>IV</sup>

=with the Sequani <being> ~if the Sequani were unwilling  
unwilling

- 
- I **relinquo, -liqui, -lictus, -ere** (RE + LINQUO), to leave behind, not take along, not stay with, leave, move away from, quit, abandon; To leave a thing behind; to leave remaining; to allow or permit to remain, to let remain, leave; PASS., to be left, to remain
- II **via, -æ**, F. (VAG-), a way, highway, road, path, street; A way, passage, channel, pipe, entrance
- III ABL. OF PLACE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429

propter angustias ire<sup>1</sup> nōn poterant

=on account of the narrowness, ~on account of its narrowness,  
they (the Helvetii) were not able they could not pass  
to pass

## I.IX.II.

HIS CUM SUĀ SPONTE PERSUĀDĒRE NŌN POSSENT,  
LĒGĀTŌS AD DUMNORĪGEM ĀDUUM MITTUNT, UT EŌ  
DĒPRECĀTŌRE Ā SĒQUANĪS IMPETRĀRENT.

---

IV **Sēquanīs invitīs**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

I **eō**, **ivī** OR **ī**, **itūrus**, **ire** (I-), to go, walk, ride, sail, fly, move, pass; To go, march, move, advance (against a foe)

Hīs<sup>I</sup> cum suā<sup>II</sup> sponte<sup>III IV</sup> persuādēre nōn possent<sup>V</sup>

=when they were not able to ~as they could not of themselves  
persuade these (men) (the Sequani) by their own free will  
prevail on them

lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Æduum mittunt<sup>VI VII</sup>

=they send ambassadors to ~they sent ambassadors to  
Dumnorix the Æduan Dumnorix the Æduan

ut

=<in order> that ~in order that

- 
- I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuādēre**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- II When expressed for Clearness, and unemphatically, the Possessive Pronoun follows its Noun, as, *in civitate sua*, in his state (I.III); when used for Emphasis or Contrast, the Possessive Pronoun precedes its Noun, as, *meum officium*, my duty (IV.XXV)
- III **spons, spontis**, F., **sponte**, IN GOOD PROSE ALWAYS JOINED WITH *meā, tuā, suā*—of free will, of one's own accord, of one's self, freely, willingly, voluntarily, spontaneously
- IV **suā sponte**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409
- V **cum...possent, cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549
- VI HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469
- VII **mitto, mīsi, missum, -ere**, to set in motion, to cause to go, let go, send, to send off, despatch, etc.; To send, throw, hurl, cast, launch

**eō dēprecātore<sup>I II</sup>**

=with that (man) <being> an ~through his intercession  
intercessor

**ā Sēquanīs impetrārent<sup>III IV</sup>**

=they might achieve (their ~to obtain their request from the  
request) from the Sequani Sequani

### I.IX.III.

DUMNORĪX GRĀTIĀ ET LARGĪTIŌNE APUD SĒQUANŌS  
PLŪRIMUM POTERAT ET HELVĒTIĪS ERAT AMĪCUS, QUOD  
EX EĀ CĪVITĀTE ORGETORĪGIS FĪLIAM IN MĀTRIMŌNIUM  
DŪXERAT ET, CUPIDITĀTE RĒGNĪ ADDUCTUS, NOVĪS  
RĒBUS STUDĒBAT ET QUAM PLŪRIMĀS CĪVITĀTĒS SUŌ  
BENEFICIŌ HABĒRE OBSTRICĀS VOLĒBAT.

---

I **eō dēprecātore**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

II **dēprecātor, -ōris**, M. (DEPRECOR), *an averter, intercessor*

III **impetrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (IN + PATRO; PAT-), *to gain one's end, achieve, bring to pass, effect, get, obtain, procure*

IV **ut...impetrārent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

Dumnorix grātiā<sup>I</sup> et largitiōne<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat

=Dumnorix, because of (his) favor and because of (his) giving freely among the Sequani, was very able ~Dumnorix, by his friendship and generousoty, had great influence among the Sequani

et Helvētiis<sup>IV</sup> erat amīcus

=and he was a friend to the Helveti ~and was friendly to the Helvetii

quod ex eā cīvitatē<sup>V</sup> Orgetorīgis filiam<sup>VI</sup> in mātirimōnium dūxerat<sup>VII</sup>

=because out from that state he had led the daughter of Orgetorix into matrimony ~because out of that state he had married the daughter of Orgetorix

- 
- I **grātiā, -æ**, F. (GRATUS), favor, esteem, regard, liking, love, friendship, partiality
- II **grātiā et largitiōne**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404
- III **largitiō, -ōnis**, F. (LARGIOR), a giving freely, granting, bestowing, dispensing, generosity, largess
- IV DAT. WITH ADJ. **amīcus**. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APTUS; AMICUS, INIMICUS, INFESTUS, INVISUS, MOLESTUS; IDONEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS; UTILIS, INUTILIS; AFFINIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICINUS; PAR, DISPAR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IUCUNDUS, GRATUS; NOTUS, IGNOTUS, AND OTHERS. §384
- V **ex eā cīvitatē**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403
- VI **filia, -æ**, F. (FE-), a daughter
- VII **quod...dūxerat, quod** CLAUSE. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

et cupiditatē<sup>I</sup> rēgnī<sup>II</sup> adductus novīs rēbus<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> studēbat

=and <having been> led by ~and, incited by lust of  
desire of reign, he was eager for sovereignty, was devoted to  
new things making a revolution

et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō<sup>V</sup> <sup>VI</sup> habēre obstrictās<sup>VII</sup>  
volēbat

=and he was wishing to have as ~and wished to have as many  
many states as possible bound states as possible obliged to him  
(to him) by his own beneficence by his kindness toward them

#### I.IX.IV.

ITAQUE REM SUSCIPIT ET Ā SĒQUANĪS IMPETRAT UT PER  
FĪNĒS SUŌS HELVĒTIŌS ĪRE PATIANTUR, OBSIDĒSQUE UTĪ  
INTER SĒSĒ DENT PERFICIT: SĒQUANĪ, NĒ ITINERE  
HELVĒTIŌS PROHIBEANT; HELVĒTIŪ, UT SINE MALEFICIŌ  
ET INIŪRIĀ TRĀNSEANT.

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODĪUM CĒSARIS, HATE OF CĒSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CĒSAR, AS ODĪUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

III **rēs, rei**, F. (RA-), a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case; thus, res + novus, as, revolution; Effects, substance, property, possessions

IV **novīs rēbus**, DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **studēbat**. §367

V **suō beneficiō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **beneficium**, -i, N. (BENE + FAC-), a favor, benefit, service, kindness

VII **obstringo**, -strinxi, -strictum (OB + STRINGO), To bind, bind up, close up by binding; PPP. **obstrictus**, -a, -us, bound, obliged



Itaque<sup>VIII</sup> rem suscipit

=he, therefore, undertakes the affair

~he, therefore, undertook the affair

et ā Sēquanīs impetrat

=and he obtains from the Sequani

~and procures upon the Sequani

ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre<sup>II</sup> patiantur<sup>III IV</sup>

=that they bear the Helvetii to go through their own territories

~to allow the Helvetii to march through their territories

obsidēsque<sup>V VI</sup> utī inter sēsē dent<sup>VII</sup>

=and /(he) carries out/ that they should give hostages among themselves

~and /he arranges/ that they should give hostages to each other

perficit

=(he) carries out

~he arranges

VIII **ita**, ADV. (I-), In gen., referring to what precedes, *in this manner, in this wise, in such a way, so, thus, accordingly, as has been said*; Referring to what follows, *thus, in the following manner, as follows, in this way*; Of a natural consequence or inference, *so, thus, accordingly, under these circumstances, in this manner, therefore*; Prægn., *of kind or quality, so, such, of this nature, of this kind*

II **eō, -ivī or -iī, itūrus, -īre** (I-), *to go, walk, ride, sail, fly, move, pass; To go, march, move, advance (against a foe)*

III **ut...patiantur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

IV **patior, passus, -ī**, DEP., *to bear, support, undergo, suffer, endure; To suffer, endure, bear, allow, permit, let*

V These were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages, usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and punished

VI **obses, obsidis** (OB + SEDEŌ), *a hostage*

VII **utī...dent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. §563

## Sēquanī

=the Sequani (give hostages)

~the Sequani (gave hostages)

nē itinere<sup>I</sup> Helvētiōs prohibeant<sup>II</sup>

=(he arranges) <in order> that they may not prohibit the Helvetii from (their) march  
 ~so that they may not obstruct the Helvetii in their march

## Helvētīi [obsidēs dant]

=the Helvetii [give hostages]

~the Helvetii (gave hostages)

ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant<sup>III IV</sup>

=<in order> that they may cross over without misdeeds and injury  
 ~to pass without mischief and outrage

---

I ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

II **nē...prohibeant**, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

III **ut...trānseant**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

IV **trānseō, -iī, -ivī, -itus, -ire** (TRĀNS + EŌ), to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass

# I.X



## CÆSAR LEARNS OF THEIR PLANS.



### I.X.I.



CÆSARĪ RENŪNTIĀTUR HELVĒTIĪS ESSE IN ANIMŌ PER AGRUM SĒQUANŌRUM ET ÆDUŌRUM ITER IN SANTONUM FĪNĒS FACERE, QUĪ NŌN LONGĒ Ā TOLŌSĀTIUM FĪNIBUS ABSUNT, QUÆ CĪVITĀS EST IN PRŌVINCIĀ.

Cæsarī renūntiātur<sup>I II</sup>

=it is being reported back to ~it is again told Cæsar  
Cæsar

Helvētiīs<sup>III</sup> esse<sup>IV V</sup> in animō

=that it was to the Helvetians in ~that the Helvetii had in mind  
mind

---

I HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTĀTIŌ, §585. B. N.) §469

II renūntiō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (RE + NŪNTIŌ), to bring back word, carry tidings back, report, give notice, declare, announce

III DAT. OF POSS. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. NOTE. THE GENITIVE OR A POSSESSIVE WITH ESSE EMPHASIZES THE POSSESSOR; THE DATIVE, THE FACT OF POSSESSION: AS,—LIBER EST MEUS, THE BOOK IS MINE (AND NO ONE'S ELSE): EST MIHI LIBER, I HAVE A BOOK (AMONG OTHER THINGS). §373

per agrum Sēquanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santonum<sup>i</sup> finēs  
facere<sup>ii</sup>

=to make a journey through the land of the Sequani and of the Ædui into the territories of the Santones  
~to march through the country of the Sequani and the Ædui into the territories of the Santones

quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus<sup>iii</sup> absunt

=(these territories) which are not by far away from the boundaries of the Tolosates  
~which are not far distant from those boundaries of the Tolosates

quæ cīvitās est in prōvinciā

=which is a state in the province  
~which (viz. Tolosa, Toulouse) is a state in the Province

---

IV INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **renūtiātur**. THE ESSENTIAL CHARACTER OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS, THAT THE LANGUAGE OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER IS COMPRESSED INTO A KIND OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, THE VERB OF THE MAIN CLAUSE BECOMING INFINITIVE, WHILE MODIFYING CLAUSES, AS WELL AS ALL HORTATORY FORMS OF SPEECH, TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PERSON OF THE VERB NECESSARILY CONFORMS TO THE NEW RELATION OF PERSONS. §577

V **renūtiātur...esse**, INF. IN INDIR DISC. THE PRESENT, THE PERFECT, OR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE IS USED IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ACCORDING AS THE TIME INDICATED IS PRESENT, PAST, OR FUTURE WITH REFERENCE TO THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. BY WHICH THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS INTRODUCED, SUCH AS: ERROR: REFERENCE SOURCE NOT FOUND SEE CHART: §584

I **Santonēs, -um** (OR PL., **Santonī, ōrum**), M., a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garumna (Garonne)

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ESSE. §577

III **ā Tolōsātium finibus**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

## I.X.II.

ID SĪ FIERET, INTELLEGĒBAT MAGNŌ CUM PERĪCULŌ  
PRŌVINCIAE FUTŪRUM UT HOMINĒS BELLICŌSŌS, POPULI  
RŌMĀNĪ INIMĪCŌS, LOCĪS PATENTIBUS MAXIMĒQUE  
FRŪMENTĀRIIS FĪNITIMŌS HABĒRET.

Id<sup>I</sup> sī fieret<sup>II</sup>

=if it should be done

~if this took place

intellegēbat<sup>III</sup>

=he (Cæsar) was understanding

~he saw

magnō cum periculō<sup>IV</sup> prōvinciae<sup>V</sup> futūrum [esse]<sup>VI</sup>

=that (it) would be (attended) ~that it would be attended with  
with great danger to the great danger to the Province  
province

- 
- I NOM. SG. N. SUBST.; refers to the Helvetii settling among the Santones; SUBJ. OF **fieret**
- II PASS. OF **facio**; **sī fieret**, FUT. COND. IN INDIRECT DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589
- III **intellegō, -ere -ēxi, -ēctus** (INTER + LEGO; LEG-), to come to know, see into, perceive, understand, discern, comprehend, gather
- IV **magnō cum periculō**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412
- V OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODĪUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODĪUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348
- VI INDIR. STATEMENT DEPENDENT ON **intellegēbat**. §577

ut hominēs bellicōsōs<sup>I</sup>, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs

=*that* /*[the province]* *would* ~*that* /*to have/ warlike men,*  
*have/ warlike men, enemies of* *enemies of the Roman people*  
*the Roman people*

[prōvincia] locīs patentibus<sup>II</sup> maximēque frūmentāriīs<sup>III</sup> finitimōs  
 habēret<sup>IV</sup>

=*[the province]* *would have* // ~*to have* // *bordering upon*  
*bordering upon laid open places* *accessible places* *and greatly*  
*(i.e. vulnerable to attack) and* *abounding in corn*  
*greatly (abounding) with corn*

### I.X.III.

OB EĀS CAUSĀS EĪ MŪNĪTIŌNĪ QUAM FĒCERAT T.  
 LABIĒNUM LĒGĀTUM PRÆFICIT; IPSE IN ĪTALIAM MAGNĪS  
 ITINERIBUS CONTENDIT, DUĀSQUE IBI LEGIŌNĒS  
 CŌNSCRĪBIT, ET TRĒS QUÆ CIRCUM AQUILEIAM  
 HIEMĀBANT EX HĪBERNĪS ĒDŪCIT ET, QUĀ PROXIMUM  
 ITER IN ULTERIŌREM GALLIAM PER ALPĒS ERAT, CUM EĪS  
 QUĪNQUE LEGIŌNIBUS ĪRE CONTENDIT.

I **bellicōsus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (BELLICUS; BELLUM), *warlike, martial, valorous, given to fighting*

II **pateō, -uī, —, -ēre** (PAT-), *to stand open, lie open, be open; To lie open, be exposed*

III **locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs**, DAT. WITH ADJ. **finitimōs**. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODĀTUS, APTUS; AMĪCUS, INIMĪCUS, INFESTUS, INVĪSUS, MOLESTUS; IDŌNEUS, OPPORTŪNUS, PROPRIUS; ŪTILIS, INŪTILIS; AFFĪNIS, FĪNITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICĪNUS; PĀR, DISPĀR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IŪCUNDUS, GRĀTUS, NŌTUS, IGNŌTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

IV **ut...habēret**, CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537

Ob<sup>I</sup> eās causās eī mūnitiōnī<sup>II</sup>

=on account of those reasons // ~for these reasons // to the  
(to be a commander) for this command of the fortification  
fortification

quam fēcerat

=which he had made

~which he had made

T[itum]<sup>III</sup> Labiēnum<sup>IV</sup> lēgātum præficit<sup>V</sup>

=he appointed T[itus] Labienus, ~he appointed Titus Labienus,  
(his) lieutenant his lieutenant

ipse in Ītaliā<sup>VI</sup> magnīs itineribus<sup>VII</sup> contendit

=(and) he himself hastens by ~he himself pressed on to Italy  
great marches into Italy by forced marches

duāsque ibi<sup>VIII</sup> legiōnēs cōscribit<sup>IX</sup>

=and there he levies two legions ~and there levied two legions

I **ob**, PRÆP., WITH ACC. WITH VERBS OF MOTION, *towards, to*; TRANSF., to indicate the object or cause, *on account of, for, because of, by reason of*, etc

II DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præficit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

III **Titus, -i**, M., a Roman first name; ABB., T

IV **Labiēnus, -ī**, M., *Titus Labienus*, the mpst prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War; in the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

V **præficiō, -fēci, -fectus, -ere** (PRÆ + FACIO), *to set over, place in authority over, place at the head, appoint to command*

VI **Italia, -ae**, F., *Italy*

VII ABL. OF MANNER. §412

VIII **ibi**, ADV. (I-), *in space, in that place, there*

IX **cōscribō, -ipsī, -iptus, -ere** (CŌN + SCRIBŌ), Lit., *to write together*, i.e., *To write together in a roll or list, to enroll*; very freq. as a milit. t. t., of the levying of troops

et trēs [legiōnēs]

=and the third [legion]

~three

quæ circum<sup>I</sup> Aquileiam<sup>II</sup> hiemābant<sup>III</sup>

=(those men) (the third legion) ~which were wintering near  
which were wintering around Aquileia  
Aquileia

ex hibernīs<sup>IV</sup> v̄ edūcit<sup>VI</sup>

=he leads out from (their)  
winter-quarters

~and led out from winter-  
quarters

et

=and

~and

quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem<sup>VII</sup> Galliam per Alpēs<sup>VIII</sup> erat

=in which the closest route into further Gaul was through the Alps  
~where the nearest route across the Alps into Further Gaul

---

I **circum**, (ACC. OF CIRCUS), ADV. AND PRÆP., ADV., *around, round about, all around*; PRÆP. WITH ACC. (SOMETIMES FOLLOWING ITS CASE), *around, about, all around*; *In the neighborhood of, around, about, at, near by*

II **Aquileia**, -ae, M., a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea

III **hiemō**, -āvi, -ātūrus, -āre (HIEMS), *to winter, pass the winter, keep winter-quarters*

IV **hibernus**, -a, -um, ADJ. (HIEMS), *of winter, wintry, winter-*; PL. N. AS SUBST., *winter-quarters*

V **ex hibernīs**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

VI **edūcō**, dūxī, ductus, -ere (EX + DŪCŌ), *to lead forth, draw out, bring off, take away*

VII **ūlterior**, -ius, ADJ. COMP, *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*

VIII **Alpēs**, -ium, F. PL., *Alps*, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany



cum eīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit

=he hastens to go with those five  
legions

~with these five legions marches  
rapidly

#### I.X.IV.

IBI CEUTRONĒS ET GRAIOCELĪ ET CATURĪGĒS, LOCĪS  
SUPERIŌRIBUS OCCUPĀTIS, ITINERE EXERCITUM  
PROHIBĒRE CŌNANTUR.

Ibi Ceutronēs<sup>I</sup> et Graiocelī<sup>II</sup> et Caturīgēs<sup>III</sup>

=there the Centrones, ~~and~~ the  
Graioceli, and the Caturiges

~there the Centrones and the  
Graioceli and the Caturiges

locīs superiōribus<sup>IV</sup> occupātis<sup>V VI</sup>

=with the higher land <having  
been> seized

~upon taking possession of the  
higher parts

- 
- I **Ceutronēs, um**, M. PL., A Belgic people, subject to the Nervians; A people in the eastern part of the province
- II **Graiocelī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic people in the Alps
- III **Caturīgēs, -um**, M. PL., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the province
- IV **superus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (SUPER), POSIT, *that is above, upper, higher*; COMP. *superior*; Of place, *higher, upper*
- V **locīs superiōribus occupātis**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419
- VI **occupō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (OB + CAP-), *to take into possession, seize, occupy, master, win*

itinere<sup>I</sup> exercitum prohibēre cōnantur

=try to prohibit the troop in ~attempt to obstruct the army in  
(their) journey their march

## I.X.V.

COMPLŪRIBUS EĪS PRĒLIĪS PULSĪS AB OCELŌ, QUOD EST  
CITERIŌRIS PRŌVINCIÆ EXTRĒMUM, IN FĪNĒS  
VOCONTIŌRUM ULTERIŌRIS PRŌVINCIÆ DIĒ SEPTIMŌ  
PERVENIT; INDE IN ALLOBROGUM FĪNĒS, AB  
ALLOBROGIBUS IN SEGUSIĀVŌS EXERCITUM DŪCIT.

Complūeribus<sup>II</sup> hīs<sup>III</sup> praeliis<sup>IV</sup> pulsīs<sup>V VI</sup>

=with these several battles ~after having routed these in  
<having been> repulsed several battles

ab Ocelō<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=from Ocelum ~from Ocelum

quod est [oppidum] citeriōris<sup>IX</sup> prōvinciae extrēmum

=which is the outermost (i.e. the ~which is the most furthest town  
most westerly) [town] of this of the Hither Province  
side of the province

---

I ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

II **complūrēs, -ium**, ADJ. (COM + PLŪRĒS), *more than one, not a few, several, a number, many*

III **his praeliis**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **praelium, -i**, n, *a battle, combat*

V **complūribus...pulsīs**, ABL. ABS. §419

VI **pellō, pepulī, pulsus, -ere** (PAL-), *to beat, strike, knock, push, drive, hurl, impel, propel*

VII **ab Ocelō**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §409

VIII **Ocelum, -i**, a town of the Graioceli in the Alps, west of modern Turin

IX **cīter, -tra, -trum**, ADJ., *on this side*

in finēs Vocontiōrum<sup>I</sup> ulteriōris<sup>II</sup> prōvinciæ<sup>III</sup> diē septimō<sup>IV</sup>  
pervenit<sup>V</sup>

=he arrives in the territories of the further side of the province of the Vocontii on the seventh day ~he arrived in the territories of the Vocontii in the Further Province on the seventh day

inde<sup>VI</sup> in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus<sup>VII</sup> in Segusiāvōs<sup>VIII</sup>  
exercitum dūcit

=then he (Cæsar) leads (his) army into the territories of the Allobroges, (and) from the Allobroges to the Segusiani ~thence he leads his army into the country of the Allobroges, and from the Allobroges to the Segusiani

## I.X.VI.

HĪ SUNT EXTRĀ PRŌVINCIAM TRĀNS RHODANUM PRĪMĪ.

- 
- I **Vocontii, ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic people in the province  
 II **ulterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP., *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*  
 III **ulteriōris prōvinciæ** LIMITS **Vocontiōrum**  
 IV **diē septimō**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423  
 V **pervenio, -venī, -ventus, -ire** (PER + VENIŌ), *to come up, arrive*  
 VI **inde**, ADV. (I + IM-), Of place, *from that place, thence*; Of time, *from that time, thenceforward, since; After that, thereafter, thereupon, then*  
 VII **ab Allobrogibus**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426  
 VIII **Segusiāvi, -ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic people, subject to the Æduans

Hī sunt extrā<sup>I</sup> prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum [populī] prīmī<sup>II</sup>

=these [people] are the first ~these people were the first  
beyond the province (and) beyond the Province on the  
across the Rhone opposite side of the Rhone

- 
- I **extrā**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (EXTER), ADV., *on the outside, without*; PRÆP., WITH ACC., *outside of, without, beyond*
- II **prīmus**, -a, -um, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; First in rank or station, *chief, principal, most excellent, eminent, distinguished, noble*; **prīmum**, *at first, first, in the first place, in the beginning*—IN ENUMERATIONS, FOLLOWING. *deinde, tum*

# I.XI



THE ÆDUANS, AMBARRI, & ALLOBROGES SEEK AID.



## I.XI.I.



ELVĒTĪ IAM PER ANGUSTIĀS ET FĪNĒS  
SĒQUANŌRUM SUĀS CŌPIĀS TRĀDŪXERANT,  
ET IN ÆDUŌRUM FĪNĒS PERVĒNERANT  
EŌRUMQUE AGRŌS POPULĀBANTUR.

Helvētī iam<sup>I</sup> per angustīās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās  
trādūxerant<sup>II</sup>

=the Helvetii had now led their  
forces through the narrow  
(defile) and (through) the  
territories of the Sequani

~the Helvetii had by this time led  
their forces through the narrow  
defile and the territories of the  
Sequani

et in Æduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant

=and had come through in the  
territories of the Ædui

~and had arrived at the  
territories of the Ædui

---

I **iam**, ADV. (IA-), As opp. to past or future, at this time, now, just now, at present; Like English now, by this time, already

II **trādūco, -xi, -ctum, -ere** (TRANS + DUCO), to lead, bring, or conduct across; to lead, bring, or carry over any thing; In partic. To lead or convey across, to transport over a stream or bridge

*eōrumque agrōs populābantur<sup>I</sup>*

*=and they were laying waste the lands of those (men) ~and were ravaging their lands*

## I.XI.II.

ÆDUĪ, CUM SĒ SUAQUE AB EĪS DĒFENDERE NŌN POSSENT, LĒGĀTŌS AD CÆSAREM MITTUNT ROGĀTUM AUXILIUM: ITA SĒ OMNĪ TEMPORE DĒ POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ MERITŌS ESSE UT PÆNE IN CŌNSPECTŪ EXERCITŪS NOSTRĪ AGRĪ VĀSTĀRĪ, LĪBERĪ EORUM IN SERVITŪTEM ABDŪCĪ, OPPIDA EXPUGNĀRĪ NŌN DĒBUERINT.

"ITA [NOS] ... MERITI SUMUS, UT PÆNE IN CONSPECTU EXERCITUS VOSTRI, ... LIBERI NOSTRI ... NON DEBUERINT."

*Æduī*

*=the Ædui*

*~the Ædui*

*cum sē suaque ab eīs<sup>II</sup> dēfendere<sup>III</sup> nōn possent<sup>IV</sup>*

*=as they could not defend themselves and their own (thing) from those men ~as they could not defend themselves and their possessions against them*

*lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittunt*

*=send ambassadors to Cæsar*

*~sent ambassadors to Cæsar*

---

I **populō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (SCAL-), *to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage, spoil*

II **ab eīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

III **dēfendō, -dī, -sus, -ere** (DĒ + FENDŌ), *to ward off, repel, avert, keep off; To defend, guard, protect, cover*

IV **cum...possent**, **cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

rogātum<sup>I</sup> auxilium<sup>II</sup>

=to ask for assistance

~to ask assistance

=ita<sup>III</sup> sē omnī tempore<sup>IV</sup> dē<sup>V</sup> populō Rōmānō meritōs<sup>VI</sup> esse<sup>VII</sup>  
[dixērunt]

=[(those men) said] that they  
had in all times to such a degree  
deserved of the Roman people

~[they said] that they had at all  
times so well deserved of the  
Roman people

ut pæne<sup>VIII</sup> in cōspectū<sup>IX</sup> exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī<sup>X</sup>

=that almost in sight of our  
army, (their) fields were made  
empty

~that almost before the eyes of  
our army, their fields ought not  
to have been laid waste

I **ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE.** THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

II **auxilium, -ī, N. (AVC-), help, aid, assistance, support, succor**

III **ita, ADV. (I-), In gen., referring to what precedes, in this manner, in this wise, in such a way, so, thus, accordingly, as has been said; To denote degree, so, to such a degree, so very, so much**

IV **omnī tempore, ABL. OF TIME.** TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

V **dē, PRÆP., WITH ABL., Of separation, in space, from, away from, down from, out of; Of duration, De nocte, de vigilia, etc., to designate an act which begins or takes its origin from the night time, Eng. during or in the course of the night, at night, by night, etc.—“Cæsar de tertia vigilia e castris profectus,” in the third night-watch; Of origin or source, of, from, from among, out of, proceeding from, derived from; To indicate the producing cause or reason, for, on account of, because of**

VI **mereor, -itus, -ērī, DEP. (SMAR-), to deserve, merit, be entitled to**

VII **sē...esse, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON rogātum.** IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

VIII **pæne, ADV., nearly, almost, as I may say**

IX **cōspectus, -ūs, M. (COM- + SPEC-), a seeing, look, sight, view, range of sight, power of vision—“pæne in conspectu exercitūs nostrī,” before the eyes**

X **vāstō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (VASTUS), to make empty, deprive of occupants, desert, vacate, void, empty, lay 'waste, desolate, ravage, devastate, destroy**

liberī<sup>I</sup> eorum in servitūtem<sup>II</sup> abdūcī<sup>III</sup>

=*that the children of those (men)* ~*their children carried off into*  
*were led away into slavery* *slavery*

oppida expugnārī<sup>IV</sup> nōn dēbuerint<sup>V VI</sup>

=*(and) that their towns ought* ~*their towns stormed*  
*not to have been taken by*  
*assault*

### I.XI.III.

EÖDEM TEMPORE ÆDUĪ AMBARRĪ, NECESSĀRĪ ET  
 CŌNSANGUINEĪ HÆDUÖRUM, CÆSAREM CERTIÖREM  
 FACIUNT SĒSĒ DĒPOPULĀTĪS AGRĪS NŌN FACILE AB  
 OPPIDĪS VIM HOSTIUM PROHIBĒRE.

- 
- I **liberī, -erōrum** (LIBER), *free persons; hence, the children of a family, children*
- II **servitūs, -ūtis**, F. (SERVUS), *the condition of a servant, slavery, serfdom, service, servitude*
- III **abdūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere** (AB-DŪCŌ), *to lead away, take away, carry off, remove, lead aside*
- IV **expūgnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (EX + PŪGNŌ), *to take by assault, storm, capture, reduce, subdue*
- V **ut...nōn dēbuerint**, CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §53 7
- VI **dēbeo, -ui, -itus, -ēre** (DE + HABEO), *to withhold, keep back; WITH INF., to be bound, in duty bound to do something—I ought, must, should, etc., do it (in class. prose always in the sense of moral necessity)*



Eōdem tempore<sup>I</sup> Æduī Ambarri<sup>II</sup>, necessārii<sup>III</sup> et cōsanguineī<sup>IV</sup>  
Hæduōrum

=*at the same time the Ambarri, friends and kinsmen of the Ædui*    ~*at the same time the Ambarri, friends and kinsmen of the Ædui*

Cæsarem certiōrem faciunt<sup>V</sup>

=*make Cæsar more certain*    ~*apprized Cæsar*

sēsē

=*that they*    ~*that they*

dēpopulātīs<sup>VI</sup> agrīs<sup>VII</sup>

=*with (their) fields <having been> laid waste*    ~*now that their fields had been devastated*

---

I **eōdem tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

II **Ambarri, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people east of the Arar (Saone), near its junction with the Rhone

III **necessārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NECESSE), *unavoidable, inevitable, indispensable, pressing, needful, requisite, necessary, compulsory*; SUBST. M. and F., *a relation, relative, kinsman, connection, friend, client, patron*

IV **cōsanguineus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CŌN + SANGUINEUS), *of the same blood, related by blood, kindred, fraternal*; SUBST. M., *a brother*, F. *a sister*; PL., *kindred, kinsmen*

V HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTATIO. §585. B. N.) §469

VI **dēpopulor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (DĒ + POPULOR), *to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage*

VII **dēpopulātīs agrīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

nōn facile<sup>I</sup> ab oppidis<sup>II</sup> vim hostium<sup>III</sup> prohibēre<sup>IV</sup>

=it was not easy for them to prohibit the force of the enemy from (their) towns ~it was not easy for them to ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns

#### I.XI.IV.

ITEM ALLOBROGĒS, QUĪ TRĀNS RHODANUM VĪCŌS POSSESSIŌNĒSQUE HABĒBANT, FUGĀ SĒ AD CÆSAREM RECIPIUNT ET DĒMŌNSTRANT SIBI PRÆTER AGRĪ SOLUM NIHIL ESSE RELIQUĪ.

Item Allobrogēs

=the Allobroges likewise

~the Allobroges likewise

quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque<sup>V</sup> habēbant

=who are having villages and possessions across the Rhone ~who had villages and possessions on the other side of the Rhone

fugā<sup>VI</sup> sē ad Cæsarem recipiunt

=took themselves back in flight towards Cæsar ~withdrew to Cæsar

I **facilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FAC-), *easy to do, easy, without difficulty*

II **ab oppidis**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III **hostis, -is**, M AND F. (HAS-), *a stranger, foreigner; An enemy in arms or of one's country (opp. inimicus, a private enemy, or one who is inimically disposed).*

IV **sēsē...prohibēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **certiōrem faciunt**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **possessiō, -ōnis**, F. (SED-), TRANSF. In abstr., *a possessing, holding, possession, occupation; In concr., a thing possessed, a possession, property, esp. an estate*

VI **fuga, -æ**, F. (FVG-), *a fleeing, flight, running away*

et dēmōnstrant<sup>I</sup>

=and they point out (to him)

~and proved to him

sibi<sup>II</sup> præter agrī solum<sup>III</sup> nihil esse<sup>IV V</sup> reliquī<sup>VI</sup>

=that to them there is nothing of  
remaining except the soil of the  
land

~that they had nothing  
remaining, except the soil of  
their land

### LXI.V.

QUIBUS RĒBUS ADDUCTUS CÆSAR NŌN EXPECTANDUM  
SIBI STATUIT DUM, OMNIBUS FORTŪNĪS SOCIŌRUM  
CŌNSŪMPTĪS, IN SANTONŌS HELVĒTIĪ PERVENĪRENT.

Quibus rēbus<sup>VII</sup> adductus Cæsar

=Cæsar, <having been> induced  
by these things

~Cæsar, induced by these  
circumstances

nōn expectandum<sup>VIII</sup> [esse]<sup>IX</sup> sibi<sup>X</sup>

=that it is not <having> to be  
looked out for by him

~that he ought not to wait

I **dēmōnstrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DE + MŌNSTRŌ), to point out, indicate, designate, show; Fig., to designate, indicate, show, prove, demonstrate, establish

II DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

III **solum, -i**, the lowest part, bottom, ground, base, foundation, floor, pavement, site; The ground, earth, soil

IV **nihil esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dēmōnstrant**. §580

V HIST. PRES. §469

VI PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

VII **quibus rēbus**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VIII **exspectō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (EX + SPECTŌ), to look out for, await, wait for

statuit<sup>I</sup>

=decides

~decided

dum

=until

~until

omnibus fortūnīs<sup>II</sup> sociōrum cōsūptīs<sup>III</sup> IV

=with all the fortunes of the allies <having been> used up ~after destroying all the property of his allies

in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenīrent<sup>V</sup>

=the Helvetii // should come through into the Santones ~the Helvetii // should arrive among the Santones

---

IX FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **statuit**. THERE ARE TWO PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS, KNOWN RESPECTIVELY AS THE FIRST (OR ACTIVE) AND THE SECOND (OR PASSIVE). THE FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION COMBINES THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE WITH THE FORMS OF SUM, AND DENOTES A FUTURE OR INTENDED ACTION. §194

X DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. THIS IS THE REGULAR WAY OF EXPRESSING THE AGENT WITH THE SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (§196). §374

I **statuō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere** (STATUS), to cause to stand, set up, set, station, fix upright, erect, plant; To decide, determine, with reference to a result, to settle, fix, bring about, choose, make a decision; WITH cognoscere, to examine (officially) and decide; WITH INDEF. OBJ., GENERALLY WITH IN AND ACC.—*aliquid gravius in aliquem, to proceed severely against*

II **fortūna, -æ, F. (FORS)**, chance, hap, luck, fate, fortune

III **cōsūmō, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, -ere** (CŌN + SŪMŌ), to use up, eat, devour; Fig., to consume, devour, waste, squander, annihilate, destroy

IV **omnibus fortūnīs...cōsūmptīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

V **dum...pervenīrent**, TEMPORAL CLAUSE IMPLYING INTENTION OR EXPECTANCY. DUM AND QUOAD, UNTIL, TAKE THE PRESENT OR IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN TEMPORAL CLAUSES IMPLYING INTENTION OR EXPECTANCY. §553

## I.XII



### CAESAR CUTS TO PIECES ONE DIVISION



#### I.XII.I.



LŪMEN EST ARAR, QUOD PER FĪNĒS  
ÆDUŌRUM ET SĒQUANŌRUM IN RHODANUM  
INFLUIT, INCREDIBILĪ LĒNITĀTE, ITA UT  
OCULĪS IN UTRAM PARTEM FLUAT IŪDICĀRĪ  
NŌN POSSIT.

Flūmen est Arar<sup>I</sup>

=*there is a river (called) the Arar* ~*there is a river [called] the  
Saone*

---

I **Arar, -aris**, ACC. **-im**, M., presently known as the Saone; pronounced 'Sōn.' It rises the Vosges (vōzh) Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone

quod per finēs Æduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit<sup>I</sup>,  
incrēdibilī<sup>II</sup> lēnitātē<sup>III</sup> IV ita

=which flows in through the territories of the Ædui and Sequani into the Rhone, with such incredible gentleness ~which flows through the territories of the Ædui and Sequani into the Rhone with such incredible gentleness

ut oculis<sup>V</sup> VI

=that by the eyes

~by the eye

in utram<sup>VII</sup> partem fluat<sup>VIII</sup>

=in which part it flows

~in which direction it flows

iūdicārī<sup>IX</sup> nōn possit<sup>X</sup>

=it is not able to be judged

~it can not be determined

I **inflūō, -uxī, -uxus, -ere** (IN + FLUŌ; FLV-), to flow in, run in

II **incrēdibilis, -e**, ADJ. (IN + CRĒDIBILIS), not to be believed, incredible, beyond belief, extraordinary, unparalleled

III **incrēdibilī lēnitātē**, ABLATIVE OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

IV **lēnitās, -ātis**, F. (LENIS), softness, smoothness, gentleness, mildness

V ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VI **oculus, -ī**, M. (AC-), an eye

VII **uter, utra, utrum**, PRON. (CA-), INTERROGATIVE, which of two, which, whether (SEE UTER, -TRŪS, WHICH (OF TWO) §113)

VIII **in utram...fluat**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

IX **iūdicō, -āvi, -ātum, -ere** (IUDEX), to examine judicially, to judge, be a judge, pass judgment, decide; TRANSF. beyond the legal sphere. To judge, judge of a thing; To determine, resolve, conclude

X **ita ut...nōn possit**, CLAUSE OF RESULT. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. §537

## I.XII.II.

ID HELVĒTIĪ RATIBUS AC LINTRIBUS IŪNCTĪS  
TRĀNSĪBANT.

**Id Helvētiī ratibus<sup>I II</sup> ac lintribus<sup>III</sup> iūnctīs<sup>IV</sup> trānsībant**

=*the Helvetii were crossing it* ~*this the Helvetii were crossing*  
(*the Arar*) *by rafts and boats* *by rafts and boats joined*  
<*having been*> *joined together* *together*

## I.XII.III.

VBI PER EXPLŌRĀTŌRĒS CÆSAR CERTIOR FACTUS EST  
TRĒS IAM PARTĒS CŌPIĀRUM HELVĒTIŌS ID FLŪMEN  
TRĀDŪXISSE, QUĀRTAM FERĒ PARTEM CITRĀ FLŪMEN  
ARARIM RELIQUAM ESSE, DĒ TERTIĀ VIGILIĀ CUM  
LEGIŌNIBUS TRIBUS Ē CASTRĪS PROPECTUS AD EAM  
PARTEM PERVĒNIT, QUÆ NŌNDUM FLŪMEN TRĀNSIERAT.

**Vbi per explōrātōrēs<sup>V</sup> Cæsar certior factus est**

=*when Cæsar was made more* ~*when Cæsar was informed by*  
*certain through scouts* *spies*

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **ratīs, -is**, F. (AR-), A vessel made of logs fastened together, a raft

III **linter, -tris**, F., a trough, vat, tub; TRANSF., a boat, skiff, wherry

IV **lintribus iūnctīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **explōrātor, -ōris**, M. (EXPLORO), an explorer, spy, scout

trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse<sup>I</sup>

=that the Helvetii had already led three parts of (their) forces across that river ~that the Helvetii had already conveyed three divisions of their forces across that river

quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam<sup>II</sup> esse<sup>III</sup>

=(but) that the fourth part was just left over on this side of the Arar ~but that the fourth division was, for the most part, remaining on this side of the Saone

dē<sup>IV</sup> tertiā vigiliā<sup>V VI</sup> cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs<sup>VII VIII</sup> profectus ad eam partem pervēnit

=(he) <having> set forward from the camp with three legions from the third watch, came to that part ~he set out from the camp with three legions during the third watch, and came up with that division

---

I **partēs...trādūxisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **certior factus est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **reliquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (RE- + LIC-), left, left over, remaining

III **partem...esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **dē**, PRÆP., WITH ABL., Of separation, in space, from, away from, down from, out of; Of duration, during, in the course of, at, by

V **dē tertiā vigiliā**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

VI **vigilia, -æ**, F. (VIGIL), a watching, wakefulness, sleeplessness, lying awake; In partic. Lit., a keeping awake for the security of a place, esp. of a city or camp, a watching, watch, guard; A watch, i.e. the time of keeping watch by night, among the Romans a fourth part of the night (I.XII.III), (I.XL.XIV); The watch, i. e. those standing on guard, watchmen, sentinels (I.XXI.III)

VII **ē castrīs**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, Dē, OR EX. §426

VIII **castrum, -i**, N. (KINDRED WITH CASA), IN SG., any fortified place, a castle, fort, fortress; IN PL., **castra, -ōrum**, N. Lit., several soldiers' tents situated together; hence, a military camp, an encampment; among the Romans a square (*quadrata*)



quæ nōndum flūmen trānsierat

=(the division) which had not yet  
crossed the river

~which had not yet crossed the  
river

#### I.XII.IV.

EŌS IMPEDĪTŌS ET INOPĪNANTĒS ADGRESSUS MAGNAM  
PARTEM EŌRUM CONCĪDIT: RELIQUĪ SĒSĒ FUGÆ  
MANDĀRUNT ATQUE IN PROXIMĀS SILVĀS ABDIDĒRUNT.

Eōs impedītōs<sup>I</sup> et inopīnantēs<sup>II</sup> adgressus<sup>III</sup> magnam partem eōrum  
concīdit<sup>IV</sup>

=(he) <having> assaulted those  
hampered and unaware men,  
cut to pieces a great part of  
those (men)

~attacking them hindered with  
baggage, and not expecting him,  
he cut to pieces a great part of  
them

reliquī sēsē fugæ<sup>V</sup> mandā[vē]runt<sup>VI</sup>

=the remaining men delivered  
themselves over to flight

~the rest betook themselves to  
flight

- 
- I **impediō, -ivī, -itus, -ire** (PED-), to entangle, ensnare, shackle, hamper, hinder, hold fast; To be in the way, hinder, detain, obstruct, check, prevent, impede
- II **WIKT, inopīnāns, inopīnantis**, M. F. N., unaware; unexpected
- III **aggredior, aggressus, -ī**, DEP., to go against, fall upon, attack, assault
- IV **concīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, -ere** (CON + CĪDO), to cut up, cut through, cut away, cut to pieces, to bring to ruin, destroy, etc; To cut to pieces in war, to cut down, destroy, kill
- V **INDIR. OBJ. WITH SPECIAL V. mandā[vē]runt. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367**
- VI **mandō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (MANUS + DO), to put in hand, deliver over, commit, consign, intrust, confide, commission—"fugæ sese," betake himself to flight

atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt<sup>I</sup>

=and they put away into the nearest forests ~and concealed themselves in the nearest woods

## I.XII.V.

IS PĀGUS APPELLĀBĀTUR TIGURĪNUS: NAM OMNIS CĪVITĀS HELVĒTIA IN QUATTUOR PĀGŌS DĪVĪSA EST.

Is pāgus<sup>II</sup> appellābātur Tigurīnus<sup>III</sup>

=that canton (which was cut down) was called the Tigurine ~that district was called the Tigurine

nam<sup>IV</sup> omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est

=for the whole Helvetian state is divided into four cantons ~for the whole Helvetian state is divided into four cantons

## I.XII.VI.

HIC PĀGUS ŪNUS, CUM DOMŌ EXĪSSET, PATRUM NOSTRŌRUM MEMORIĀ, L. CASSIUM CŌNSULEM INTERFĒCERAT ET EIUS EXERCITUM SUB IUGUM MĪSERAT.

Hic pāgus ūnus

=this single canton ~this single canton

---

I **abdō, -idī, -itus, -ere** (AB + DŌ), to put away, remove, set aside; Prægn., to hide, conceal, put out of sight, keep secret

II **pāgus, -ī**, M. (PAC-), a district, canton, hundred, province, region

III **Tigurīnus, -a, -um**, ADJ., Tigurian. AS A NOUN, **Tigurīnī, -ōrum**, M. PL., the Tigurians, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians

IV **nam**, CONJ., To introduce a confirmation or explanation, for (always in prose beginning the sentence)—Introducing an explanation or fuller statement of something already said

**cum domō<sup>I</sup> exisset<sup>II</sup>**

=when it went forth from (its)  
home

~having withdrawn their native  
country

**patrum nostrōrum memoriā<sup>III</sup>, L[ūcius] Cassium cōsulem  
interfēcerat<sup>IV</sup>**

=in the memory of our fathers,  
/that single canton/ had put out  
of the way L[ūcius] Cassius, the  
consul

~within the recollection of our  
fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius  
the consul

**et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat**

=and had sent the army of him  
under the yoke

~and had made his army pass  
under the yoke

## LXII.VII.

ITA SĪVE CĀSŪ SĪVE CŌNSILIŌ DEŌRUM IMMORTĀLIUM,  
QUÆ PARS CĪVITĀTIS HELVĒTIÆ ĪNSIGNEM  
CALAMITĀTEM POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ INTULERAT, EA  
PRĪNCEPS PCENĀS PERSOLVIT.

---

I ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

II **cum...exisset**, **cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

III **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

IV **interficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (INTER + FACIO), *to put out of the way, destroy, bring to naught; To kill, slay, murder*

Ita sive<sup>I</sup> cāsū<sup>II</sup> sive cōnsiliō deōrum<sup>III</sup> immortalium

=thus, be it by chance, or be it by the council of the immortal gods ~thus, whether by chance, or by the intention of the immortal gods

quæ pars civitatis Helveticæ insignem<sup>IV</sup> calamitatem<sup>V</sup> populō Rōmānō<sup>VI</sup> intulerat

=the part of the Helvetian state which had borne a remarkable calamity to the Roman people ~that part of the Helvetian state which had brought a extraordinary calamity upon the Roman people

ea princeps pœnās persolvit<sup>VII</sup>

=he was the first to pay the penalty ~was the first to pay the penalty

## I.XII.VIII.

QUĀ IN RĒ CÆSAR NŌN SŌLUM PŪBLICĀS, SED ETIAM PRĪVĀTĀS INIŪRIĀS ULTUS EST, QUOD EIUS SOCERĪ L. PĪSŌNIS AVUM, L. PĪSŌNEM LĒGĀTUM, TIGURĪNĪ EŌDEM PRĒLIŌ QUŌ CASSIUM INTERFĒCERANT.

I **sive**, CONJ. (SĪ + VE), or *if*; In the formula, *sive...sive, be it that...or that, if...or if, whether...or*

II **cāsū...cōnsiliō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **deus, -ī**, M. (DIV-), a *god, deity*

IV **insignis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (IN + SIGNUM), *distinguished by a mark, remarkable, noted, eminent, distinguished, prominent, extraordinary; militaria, ornaments, probably on the helmets of the officers*

V **calamitās, -ātis**, F. (SCAL-), *loss, injury, damage, mischief, harm, misfortune, calamity, disaster; Esp., the misfortunes of war, disaster, overthrow, defeat*

VI **populō Rōmānō**, INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP. V. **intulerat**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VII **persolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus** (PER + SOLVŌ), *to unravel, solve, explain; To pay, give, show, render, suffer*

Quā<sup>I</sup> in rē Cæsar nōn solum pūblicās<sup>II</sup>, sed<sup>III</sup> etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus<sup>IV</sup> est<sup>V</sup>

=(and) in which thing Cæsar ~and in this Cæsar took  
avenged (himself) on not only vengeance on not only the public  
the public, but also (his own) but also his own personal  
personal injuries wrongs

quod eius socer<sup>VI</sup> L[ūciū] Pīsōnis avum<sup>VII</sup>, L[ūcium] Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem prœliō<sup>VIII</sup>

=because the Tigurini /had slain/ ~because the Tigurini /had slain/  
L[ucius] Piso the lieutenant (of Lucius Piso the lieutenant (of  
Cassius), the grandfather of Cassius), the grandfather of  
L[ucius] Calpurnius Piso, the Lucius Calpurnius Piso, his  
father-in-law of him, in the same (Cæsar's) father-in-law, in the  
battle same battle

I A Relative is often used at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *Qua de causa, And for this reason, For this reason* (I.I); *Qui...prælium committunt* (Historical Present), *They* (or *And they*)...joined battle (I.XV)

II **pūblicus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CONTR. FROM POPULICUS, FROM POPULUS), *of or belonging to the people, State, or community; that is done for the sake or at the expense of the State; public, common*; ADV., **publicē**, *On account, at the cost, in behalf, or in charge of the State*

III **sed**, CONJ., After a negative clause and introducing a direct opposition, *but, on the contrary, but also, but even, but in fact*; Introducing a climax, usu. in the formula, *non modo or non solum . . . sed* (or *sed etiam*), *not only, not merely . . . but, but also, but even, but indeed*

IV PPP. OF V. **ulcīscor**

V **ulcīscor, -ūltus, -ī**, DEP., *To avenge one's self on, take vengeance on, or punish for wrong done*—WITH A PERSONAL OBJECT; *To take revenge for, to avenge, punish injustice, wrongs, etc.*

VI **socer, -erī**, M., *a father-in-law*

VII **avus, -ī**, M. (AV-), *a grandfather*

VIII **eōdem prœliō**, ABL. OF PLACE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429

quō Cassium [interfēcerant]

=(the same battle) in which [they ~as Cassius himself  
had slain] Cassius

interfēcerant<sup>1</sup>

=they had slain

~had slain

---

I **quod...interfēcerant, quod** INTRODUCES A CAUSAL CLAUSE. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §540. **quō** STARTS A REL. CLAUSE WITH **interfēcerant**, WHICH COMPLETES THE CLAUSE

# I.XIII



CAESAR, BRIDGING THE ARAR, CROSSES.



## I.XIII.I.



HOC PRÆLIŌ FACTŌ, RELIQUAS CŌPIAS  
HELVETIŌRUM UT CŌSEQUI POSSET,  
PONTEM IN ARARE FACIENDUM CŪRAT  
ATQUE ITA EXERCITUM TRĀDŪCIT.

Hoc praeliō factō<sup>1</sup>

=with this battle <having been> ~this battle ended  
done

---

I *hōc praeliō factō*, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī<sup>I</sup> posset<sup>II</sup>

=<in order> that he might be able to follow the remaining forces of the Helvetii ~that he might be able to come up with the remaining forces of the Helvetii

pontem in Arare faciendum<sup>III</sup> [esse] cūrat<sup>IV</sup>

=he sees to it that a bridge is <having> to be made across the Arar ~he orders a bridge must be made across the Saone

atque ita exercitum trādūcit<sup>V</sup>

=and thus he leads (his) army across ~and thus leads his army over across

## I.XIII.II.

HELVĒTIĪ REPENTĪNŌ EIUS ADVENTŪ COMMŌTĪ, CUM ID QUOD IPSĪ DIĒBUS VĪGINTĪ ÆGERRIMĒ CŌNFĒCERANT, UT FLŪMEN TRĀNSĪRENT, ILLUM ŪNŌ DIĒ FĒCISSE INTELLEGERENT, LĒGĀTŌS AD EUM MITTUNT; CUIUS LĒGĀTIŌNIS DĪVICŌ PRĪNCEPS FUT, QUĪ BELLŌ CASSIĀNŌ DŪX HELVĒTIŌRUM FUERAT.

I **cōsequor, secūtus, -ī**, DEP. (CŌN + SEQUOR), *to follow, follow up, press upon, go after, attend, accompany, pursue*

II **ut...posset**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUĪ OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

III **pontem faciendum**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

IV **cūrō, āvī, -ātus, -āre** (cura), *to care for, take pains with, be solicitous for, look to, attend to, regard*; WITH ACC. and gerundive, *to have done, see to, order*

V **trādūco, -xi, -ctum, -ere** (TRANS + DUCO), *to lead, bring, or conduct across; to lead, bring, or carry over any thing*



Helvētīi repentinō<sup>I</sup> eius adventū<sup>II</sup> commōtī

=the Helvetii, <having been> ~the Helvetii, confused by his  
moved by the sudden arrival of sudden arrival  
his

cum id

=since this thing (bridge) ~since

quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī<sup>III</sup> ægerrimē<sup>IV</sup> cōnfēcērant<sup>V</sup>

=(this bridge) which they ~what they, themselves had with  
themselves had, with difficulty, the utmost difficulty  
made together in twenty days accomplished in twenty days

ut flūmen trānsīrent<sup>VI</sup>

=(namely,) that they crossed the ~namely, the crossing of the  
river river

illum ūnō diē<sup>VII</sup> fēcisse<sup>VIII</sup>

=that he (Cæsar) had made in ~that he had effected in one day  
one day

---

I **repentinus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (REPENS), sudden, hasty, unlooked for, unexpected, impetuous

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **diebus vīgintī**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

IV **æger, -gra, -grum**, ADJ., unwell, ill, sick, diseased, suffering, feeble; With difficulty or effort

V **confacio, -ere, -fēci, -fectus** (CON + FACIO), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil

VI **ut...trānsīrent**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

VII **ūnō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

VIII **illum...fēcisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellegent**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

intellegerent<sup>I</sup>

=they were understanding

~they found

lēgātōs ad eum mittunt<sup>II</sup>

=they send ambassadors to him

~sent ambassadors to him

cuius lēgatiōnis Dīvicō<sup>III</sup> prīnceps fuit

=the head of which embassy was

~at the head of which embassy

Divico

was Divico

quī bellō Cassiānō<sup>IV</sup> dūx<sup>V</sup> Helvētiōrum fuerat

=who had been commander of  
the Helvetii, in the war with  
(against) Cassius

~who had been commander of  
the Helvetii, in the war against  
Cassius

### I.XIII.III.

IS ITA CUM CÆSARE ĒGIT: SĪ PĀCEM POPULUS RŌMĀNUS  
CUM HELVĒTIIS FACERET, IN EAM PARTEM ITŪRŌS ATQUE  
IBI FUTŪRŌS HELVĒTIŌS UBI EŌS CÆSAR CŌSTITUISSET  
ATQUE ESSE VOLUISSET; SĪN BELLŌ PERSEQUĪ  
PERSEVĒRĀRET, REMINĪSCERĒTUR ET VETERIS  
INCOMMODĪ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ET PRĪSTINÆ VIRTŪTIS  
HELVĒTIŌRUM.

I **cum...intellegerent, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO. §585. B. N.) §469

III **Dīvicō, -ōnis**, M., leader of the Helvetians in their war with Cassius, 107 B.C., and head of an embassy to Caesar, 58 B.C.

IV **bellō Cassiānō**, ABL. OF TIME. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: MANY EXPRESSIONS HAVE IN LATIN THE CONSTRUCTION OF TIME WHEN WHERE IN ENGLISH THE MAIN IDEA IS RATHER OF PLACE. §424IV

V **dūx, dūcis**, a leader, conductor, guide; In partic., in milit. lang., a leader, commander, general-in-chief.

Is ita cum Cæsare ēgit<sup>i</sup>

=he conducts with Cæsar thus

~he thus treats with Cæsar

sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret<sup>ii</sup>

=that if the Roman people  
should make peace with the  
Helveti

~that if the Roman people would  
make peace with the Helvetii

in eam partem itūrōs [esse]<sup>iii</sup>

=then (those men) (the Helveti)  
would go into that part

~they would go to that region

atque ibi futūrōs [esse] Helvētiōs

=and the Helveti would be there

~and there remain

ubi eōs Cæsar cōstituisset

=where Cæsar had set them

~where Cæsar might appoint

---

I **agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus** (AG-), to put in motion, move, lead, drive, tend, conduct; To pursue, carry on, think, reflect, deliberate, treat, represent, exhibit, exercise, practise, act, perform, deliver, pronounce; Of public transactions, to manage, transact, do, discuss, speak, deliberate; Either in the most general sense, like the Engl. *do*, for every kind of mental or physical employment; or, in a more restricted sense, to exhibit in external action, to act or perform, to deliver or pronounce, etc., so that after the act is completed nothing remains permanent, e.g. a speech, dance, play, etc

II **sī...faceret**, PROTASIS OF FUT. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **ēgit**. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

III APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

atque esse voluisset<sup>I</sup>

=and (where) he desired (them) ~and desire them to be  
to be

sīn<sup>II</sup> bellō [eos] persequī<sup>III</sup> perseverāret<sup>IV V</sup>

=but if he should persist in ~but if he should persist in  
persecuting [those men] with persecuting them with war  
war

- 
- I **ubi...cōstituisset...voluisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A  
SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH  
ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE.  
§583
- II **sīn**, CONJ., AN ADVERSATIVE CONDITIONAL PARTICLE, *if however, if on the*  
*contrary, but if*—WITH A PRECEDING *sī, nisi, quando, dum*. AFTER *sī*, OR  
WITHOUT A PRECEDING *sī, nisi*, etc. (where the foregoing particle is usu.  
clearly implied by the context)
- III **persequor, -cūtus, -ī**, DEP. (PER + SEQUOR), *to follow perseveringly,*  
*follow after, follow up, pursue*
- IV **perseverō, -are, -āvī, -ātus** (PERSEVERUS), *to abide, adhere strictly,*  
*continue steadfastly, persist, persevere*
- V **sīn...perseverāret**, PROTASIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC.  
§589

reminiscerētur<sup>I II</sup> et veteris<sup>III</sup> incommodi<sup>IV</sup> populi Rōmānī et  
prīstinā<sup>V</sup> virtūtis<sup>VI</sup> Helvētiōrum

=he should remember both the ~that he ought to remember  
ancient inconvenience of the both the ancient misfortune of  
Roman people and the former the Roman people and the  
valor of the Helvetii pristine valor of the Helvetii

### I.XIII.IV.

QUOD IMPRŌVISO ŪNUM PĀGUM ADORTUS ESSET, CUM  
EĪ QUĪ FLŪMEN TRĀNSISSENT SUIS AUXILIUM FERRE NŌN  
POSSENT, NĒ OB EAM REM AUT SUÆ MAGNOPERE  
VIRTŪTĪ TRIBUERET AUT IPSŌS DĒSPICERET.

Quod imprŏvisō<sup>VII</sup> ūnum pāgum adortus esset<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=because he (Cæsar) had ~the fact that he had attacked  
attacked one canton by surprise one canton by surprise

- 
- I APODOSIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589 & A CLAUSE  
DEPENDING UPON A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE OR AN EQUIVALENT INFINITIVE WILL ITSELF  
TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IF REGARDED AS AN INTEGRAL PART OF THAT CLAUSE. §593
- II **reminīscor, rementus sum, reminiscī**, DEP., WITH GEN., *recollect or  
remember*
- III **vetus, -a, -um**, ADV., *old, aged, ancient; long-standing; former,  
previous*
- IV **incommodum, -i**, N. (INCOMMODUS), *inconvenience, trouble,  
disadvantage, detriment, injury, misfortune, loss*
- V **prīstinus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRIUS + TINUS; PRO-), *former, early, original,  
primitive, pristine*
- VI **incommodi...virtūtis**, GEN. WITH THE V. **reminiscerētur**. VERBS OF  
REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING TAKE EITHER THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE GENITIVE OF  
THE OBJECT: III. REMINISCOR IS RARE. IT TAKES THE ACCUSATIVE IN THE LITERAL  
SENSE OF CALL TO MIND, RECOLLECT: THE GENITIVE IN THE MORE FIGURATIVE SENSE  
OF BE MINDFUL OF. §350III
- VII **imprŏvisus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + PROVISUS), *not foreseen, unforeseen,  
unexpected; Hence, ADV., imprŏviso, on a sudden, unexpectedly*
- VIII **adorior, -ortus, -iri**, DEP. (AD + ORIOR), *to approach as an enemy, fall  
upon, assail, assault, attack*

cum eī

=(at a time) when those (men)      ~(at a time) when those

quī flūmen trānsissent<sup>I</sup>

=who had crossed the river      ~who had crossed the river

suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent<sup>II</sup>

=were not able to bear assistance to their own (friends)      ~could not bring assistance to their friends

nē ob eam rem aut suæ magnopere<sup>III</sup> virtūtī tribueret<sup>IV</sup> aut ipsōs dēspiceret<sup>V VI</sup>

=on account of that thing, he should not ascribe with great labor (greatly) to his own (valor), nor should he look down on (those men) themselves (the Helvetians)      ~he ought not on that account value highly his own valor, or despise them

---

IX **quod...adortus esset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

I **quī...trānsissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **cum...possent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **māgnoperē** (OR **māgnō opere**), ADV. (ABL. OF MAGNUM OPUS), *very much, greatly, exceedingly, particularly*

IV **tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (TRIBUS), *to assign, impart, allot, bestow, confer, yield, give; WITH multum, plurimum, or magnopere, to value highly, set great store by, make much of*

V **dēspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectus** (DE + SPECIO), *to look down upon; WITH ACC, to look down upon, despise, disdain*

VI **nē...tribueret...dēspiceret**, NEG. COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

## I.XIII.V.

SĒ ITA Ā PATRIBUS MAIŌRIBUSQUE SUĪS DIDICISSE, UT  
MAGIS VIRTŪTE QUAM DOLO CONTENDERENT AUT  
ĪNSIDIĪS NĪTERENTUR.

Sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque<sup>I II</sup> suīs didicisse<sup>III IV</sup>

=(and) that they had so learned ~that they had so learned from  
from their sires and (their) their sires and ancestors  
ancestors

ut magis<sup>V</sup> virtūte quam dolō<sup>VI VII</sup> contenderent

=that they fought more by valor ~as to fight more on valor  
than /depend upon/ artifice than /rely on/ artifice

aut īnsidiīs<sup>VIII IX</sup> nīterentur<sup>X XI</sup>

=depend upon // or traps ~rely on // or artifice

I **ā patribus maiōribusque**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

II SEE MAGNUS, -A, -UM, LIT., OF PHYSICAL SIZE OR QUANTITY, GREAT, LARGE; OF THINGS, VAST, EXTENSIVE, SPACIOUS, ETC.; TROP. IN GEN., GREAT, GRAND, MIGHTY, NOBLE, LOFTY, IMPORTANT, OF GREAT WEIGHT OR IMPORTANCE; ESP. OF MEASURE, WEIGHT, QUANTITY, GREAT, MUCH, ABUNDANT, CONSIDERABLE, ETC.;

III **discō, -ere, didicī**, — (DIC-), to learn, learn to know, acquire, become acquainted with

IV **sē...didicisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **magis**, ADV. COMP. (MAC-), more, in a higher degree, more completely— WITH ADJ. OR ADV.

VI **magis virtūte...quam dolō**, COMPARISON. SOME PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS WHICH IMPLY COMPARISON ARE FOLLOWED, LIKE COMPARATIVES, BY QUAM, WHICH MAY BE SEPARATED BY SEVERAL WORDS, OR EVEN CLAUSES. SUCH WORDS ARE ANTE, PRIUS, POST, POSTEĀ, PRĪDI, POSTRĪDIĒ; ALSO MAGIS AND PRÆ IN COMPOUNDS. §434; ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

VII **dolus, -ī**, M., a device, artifice, contrivance

VIII ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **nīterentur**. SEVERAL VERBS ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. THESE ARE ACQUIESCŌ, DĒLECTOR, LĒTOR, GAUDEŌ, GLŌRIOR, NĪTOR, STŌ, MANEŌ, FIDŌ, CŌNFIDŌ, CŌNSISTŌ, CONTINEOR. §431

## I.XIII.VI.

QUĀRĒ NĒ COMMITTERET UT IS LOCUS UBI  
CŌSTITISSENT EX CALAMITĀTE POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ET  
INTERNECIŌNE EXERCITŪS NŌMEN CAPERET AUT  
MEMORIAM PRŌDERET.

Quārē<sup>I</sup> nē committeret<sup>II III</sup>

=wherefore, he should not give cause ~for which reason, let him not give occasion

ut is locus

=that this place ~that the place

ubi cōstitissent<sup>IV</sup>

=where they had stood ~where they were standing

IX **insidiæ, -ārum**, F. (SED-), a snare, trap; Fig., artifice, crafty device, plot, snare

X **nītor, nīxus, -ī**, DEP. (CNI-), to bear upon, press upon, lean, support oneself; To rest, rely, depend upon

XI **ut...contenderent...nīterentur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537

I **quārē** (or **quā rē**) ADV. (QUĀ + RĒ), INTERROG., by what means? how?; TRANSF., FOR JOINING ON A CONSECUTIVE CLAUSE, for which reason, wherefore, therefore, Lit. by which matter (thing)

II **committō, -ere, -mīi, -missus** (COM + MITTŌ), To bring together, join, combine, put together, connect, unite; WITH ut, to be guilty or be in fault, so that, to give occasion or cause, that, to act so as that; TRANSF., of a battle, war: praelium, certamen, bellum, etc., To arrange a battle or contest, to enter upon, engage in, begin, join, commence

III **nē committerent**, HORTATORY SUBJ. THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN THE PRESENT TENSE TO EXPRESS AN EXHORTATION OR A COMMAND. THE NEGATIVE IS NĒ. §439

IV **ubi cōstitissent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573



ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne<sup>I II</sup> exercitūs nōmen<sup>III</sup>  
caperet<sup>IV</sup>

=should take (it's) name, from  
the calamity of the Roman  
people and from the annihilation  
of the an army (Cæsar's army)

~should inherit a name, from the  
disaster of the Roman people  
and the destruction of their  
army

aut memoriam prōderet<sup>V VI</sup>

=or put forth the memory (of  
such an event to posterity)

~or hand down the  
remembrance [of such an event  
to posterity]

---

I **calamitāte...interneciōne**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

II **interneciō, ōnis**, F. (INTER + NEC-), a massacre, slaughter, carnage, extermination, destruction

III **nōmen, -inis**, N. (GNA-), a means of knowing, name, appellation

IV SUBJ. OF RES. AFTER **ut**

V **prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (PRO + DO); to put forth, exhibit, reveal; To put forth, relate, report, record, hand down, transmit

VI **ut...caperet...prōderet**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531



## I.XIV



CAESAR LAYS DOWN CONDITIONS.



### I.XIV.I.



IS CAESAR ITA RESPONDIT: EŌ SIBI MINUS DUBITATIŌNIS DARĪ, QUOD EĀS RĒS QUĀS LĒGĀTĪ HELVĒTĪ COMMÉMORĀSSENT MEMORIĀ TENĒRET, ATQUE EŌ GRAVIUS FERRE QUŌ MINUS MERITŌ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ACCIDISSENT: QUĪ SĪ ALICUIUS INIŪRIĀE SIBI CŌNSCIUS FUISSET, NŌN FUISSE DIFFICILE CAVĒRE; SED EŌ DĒCEPTUM, QUOD NEQUE COMMISSUM Ā SĒ INTELLERET QUĀRĒ TIMĒRET NEQUE SINE CAUSĀ TIMENDUM PUTĀRET.

"EO MIHI MINUS DUBITATIONIS DATUR, QUOD EAS RES QUAS LEGATI HELVETII COMMEMORAUERUNT (OR VOS COMMEMORASTIS) MEMORIA TENEŌ ATQUE EO GRAVIUS FERRO, QUO MINUS MERITO, POPULI ROMANI ACCIDERUNT, QUI SI...SIBI CONSCIUS FUISSET, NON FUIT DIFFICILE CAVERE, SED EO DECEPTUS EST, QUOD NEQUE COMMISSUM A SE INTELLIGEBAŌ QUA RE TIMERET, NEQUE SINE CAUSE TIMENDUM PUTABAT."

His Cæsar ita respondit

=Cæsar replied to these (men) ~to these words Cæsar thus  
(the Helvetian embassy) thus replied

eō<sup>I</sup> sibi minus dubitātiōnis<sup>III</sup> darī<sup>V</sup>

=that, in this, the less of doubt ~that on that very account the  
was given to him less of hesitation was brought  
about to him

quod eās rēs

=(namely,) because /he held in ~because /he remembered/ those  
memory/ those things circumstances

quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorā[vi]ssent<sup>VI</sup> VII

=which the Helvetian ~which the Helvetian  
ambassadors had recalled to ambassadors had brought to  
memory mind

memoriā<sup>VIII</sup> tenēret<sup>IX</sup>

=he held in memory ~he remembered

I ABL. OF CAUSE. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §404

II eō, ADV. ABL. OF PRON. (I-), LOCAT. AND ABL. USES, *there, in that place*; IN DAT. USES, With the idea of motion, *to that place, thither* (=in eum locum); Fig., *Therefore, on that account, for that reason*

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

IV dubitātiō, -ōnis, F. (DUBITO), *uncertainty, doubt, perplexity; A wavering, hesitating, hesitancy, irresolution, delay*

V minus...darī, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *respondit*. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

VI quās...commemorāssent, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VII commemorō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (COM + MEMORŌ), *to recall to memory, call to mind, be mindful of, keep in mind, remember; To bring to mind, remind of, recall*

atque eō [se] gravius<sup>i</sup> ferre quō minus<sup>ii</sup> meritō<sup>iii</sup> <sup>iv</sup> populī Rōmānī<sup>v</sup>  
accidissent<sup>vi</sup> <sup>vii</sup>

=and that by the more harshly  
[he] (Cæsar) was bearing, by  
which the less deservedly (those  
circumstances which he was  
holding in memory) had fallen of  
the Roman people

~and that he felt the more  
indignant at them, in proportion  
as they had happened  
undeservedly to the Roman  
people

---

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IX **quod...tenēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. II. CAUSAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, AND QUANDŌ TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, LIKE ANY OTHER DEPENDENT CLAUSE (SEE §580). §540<sup>ii</sup> & §583

I **gravis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. **gravior**, AND SUP. **gravissimus** (GAR-), heavy, weighty, ponderous, burdensome, loaded, laden, burdened; Trop. In a bad sense, heavy, burdensome, oppressive, troublesome, grievous, painful, hard, harsh, severe, disagreeable, unpleasant

II **eō gravius...quō minus**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. I. THE ABLATIVES QUŌ...EŌ (HŌC), AND QUANTŌ...TANTŌ, ARE USED CORRELATIVELY WITH COMPARATIVES, LIKE THE ENGLISH THE...THE. NOTE. TO THIS CONSTRUCTION ARE DOUBTLESS TO BE REFERRED ALL CASES OF QUŌ AND EŌ (HŌC) WITH A COMPARATIVE, EVEN WHEN THEY HAVE CEASED TO BE DISTINCTLY FELT AS DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE AND APPROACH THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. §414<sup>i</sup>

III ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §481

IV **mērēo, -ūi, -itum, -ere**, AND **mērēor, itus, -ērī**, DEP., to deserve, merit, to be entitled to, be worthy of a thing; constr. WITH ACC., WITH ut, WITH ne, WITH INF., AND ABSOL; **mērītō**, ADV., according to desert, deservedly, justly

quī sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi<sup>VIII</sup> cōnsciū<sup>IX</sup> fuisset<sup>X</sup>

=which if (the Roman people) ~for if they had been conscious  
had been conscious, to itself, of of any wrong-doing  
any wrong-doing

nōn fuisse difficile<sup>IV</sup> cavēre<sup>V</sup>

=it would not have been difficult ~it would not have been difficult  
to be on (their) guard to be on their guard

V **populī Rōmānī**, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

VI CLAUSE OF PURPOSE CONTAINING A COMP. CONDITIONS ARE EITHER (I) PARTICULAR OR (II) GENERAL: A PARTICULAR CONDITION REFERS TO A DEFINITE ACT OR SERIES OF ACTS OCCURRING AT SOME DEFINITE TIME. §513i

VII **accidō, -cidi, —, -ere** (AD + CADO), to fall upon or down upon a thing, to reach it by falling; In gen., to fall out, come to pass, happen, occur; AND WITH DAT. PERS., to happen to, to befall one. (The distinction between the syn. *evenio*, *accido*, and *contingo* is this: *evenio*, i.e. *ex-venio*, is used of either fortunate or unfortunate events: *accido*, of occurrences which take us by surprise; hence it is used either of an indifferent, or, which is its general use, of an unfortunate occurrence: *contingo*, i.e. *contango*, indicates that an event accords with one's wishes; and hence is generally used of fortunate events.)

VIII DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

IX **cōnsciū**, ADJ. (COM- + SCIO), knowing in common, conscious with, privy, participant, accessory, witnessing

X **sī...fuisset**, PROTASIS OF PAST CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

sed eō<sup>I</sup> dēceptum [est]<sup>II III</sup>

=but, in this (thing), they (the Roman people) were deceived ~but for that very reason had they been deceived

quod neque

=(namely,) because neither ~because neither

commissum [esse]<sup>IV</sup> ā sē<sup>V</sup>

=that (any crime) had been committed by themselves ~that any offense had been given by them

IV **difficilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (DIS- + FACILIS), *hard, difficult, troublesome, impracticable, laborious, perilous*

V **caveō, cāvī, cautus, -ēre** (CAV-), *to be on one's guard, take care, take heed, beware, guard against, avoid*

I ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

II APODOSIS OF PAST CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. II. IN CHANGING A CONDITION CONTRARY TO FACT (§517) INTO THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE, THE FOLLOWING POINTS REQUIRE NOTICE: THE PROTASIS ALWAYS REMAINS UNCHANGED IN TENSE. THE APODOSIS, IF ACTIVE, TAKES A PECULIAR INFINITIVE FORM, MADE BY COMBINING THE PARTICIPLE IN -ŪRUS WITH FUISSE. IF THE VERB OF THE APODOSIS IS PASSIVE OR HAS NO SUPINE STEM, THE PERIPHRAIS FUTŪRUM FUISSE UT (WITH THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE) MUST BE USED. AN INDICATIVE IN THE APODOSIS BECOMES A PERFECT INFINITIVE. §589II

III **dēcipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (DE + CAPIO), *to catch, ensnare, entrap, beguile, elude, deceive, cheat; FIG., to deceive, elude*

IV INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellegeret**. §580

V ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES A OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

intellegeret

=*he was aware*

~*were they aware*

[quicquam]<sup>I</sup> quārē timēret<sup>II</sup>

=*for which reason [anyone]*  
*should fear*

~*on account of which they*  
*should be afraid*

neque

=*nor*

~*nor*

sine causā timendum [esse]<sup>III</sup>

=*that it is <having> to be feared*  
*(by them) without cause*

~*that they ought to be afraid*  
*without cause*

putāret<sup>IV</sup>

=*did he think*

~*did they think*

## I.XIV.II.

QUOD SĪ VETERIS CONTUMĒLIÆ OBLĪVĪSCĪ VELLE, NUM  
ETIAM RECENTIUM INIŪRIĀRUM, QUOD EŌ INVĪTŌ ITER  
PER PRŌVINCIAM PER VIM TEMPTĀSENT, QUOD ÆDUŌS,  
QUOD AMBARRŌS, QUOD ALLOBROGAS VEXĀSENT,  
MEMORIAM DĒPŌNERE POSSE?

---

I **quisquam** M., **quicquam**, N. PRON. INDEF. (QUIS, QUID + QUAM), AS ADJ., *any, any one*; AS SUBST., *any man, anybody, any person, any one whatever, anything*

II **quārē timēret**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

III **timeō, uī, —, ēre** (TEM-), *to fear, be afraid, be fearful, be apprehensive, be afraid of, dread, apprehend*

IV **quod...intellegeret...putāret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §540 & §583



"QUOD SI...OBLIVISCI VELIT (VELIM), NUM ETIAM RECENTIUM INIURIARUM, QUOD ME INVITO ITER ... TEMPTASTIS, QUOD HÆDUOS, ...VEXASTIS, MEMORIAM DEPONERE POTEST (POSSUM)."

Quod sī veteris contumēliæ<sup>I</sup> II oblīvīscī<sup>III</sup> vellet<sup>IV</sup>

=which (thing) if he (Cæsar) was ~but if he were willing to forget  
willing to forget the old insult their former outrage

num<sup>V</sup> etiam recentium<sup>VI</sup> iniūriārum<sup>VII</sup>

=then // also, of the recent ~now, also, of the late wrongs  
wrongs

quod

=which ~in that

eō invītō<sup>VIII</sup>

=with him (Cæsar) <being> ~they had against his will  
unwilling

---

I GEN. WITH V. **oblīvīscī**. VERBS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING TAKE EITHER THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT; II. MEMINI TAKES THE GENITIVE WHEN IT MEANS TO BE MINDFUL OR REGARDFUL OF A PERSON OR THING, TO THINK OF SOMEBODY OR SOMETHING (OFTEN WITH SPECIAL INTEREST OR WARMTH OF FEELING). SO OBLIVISCOR IN THE OPPOSITE SENSE,—TO DISREGARD, OR DISMISS FROM THE MIND,—AND THE ADJECTIVE OBLĪTUS, CARELESS OR REGARDLESS. §350

II **contumēlia**, -æ, F. (COM- + TEM-), *insult, abuse, affront, reproach, invective, contumely*

III **oblīvīscor**, -lītus, -ī, DEP. (OB + LIV-), WITH GEN. of person or thing, *to forget; To forget, disregard, omit, neglect, be indifferent to, cease from*

IV **quod sī...vellet**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V **num**, ADV. (NV-), Of time, *now*; AS INTERROG PARTICLE. INTRODUCING A DIRECT QUESTION, USU. EXPECTING A NEGATIVE ANSWER, *then, now* (often only rendered by the interrogative form of the sentence): *num videntur convenire hæc nuptiis? does this look like a wedding?*

VI **recēns**, -entis, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., *lately arisen, not long in existence, fresh, young, recent*

VII OBJ. GEN. §348

iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent<sup>I II</sup>

=(namely,) that they had ~in that they attempted a route  
attempted a route through the through the Province perforce  
Province by <the agency of>  
force

quod Æduōs [vexāssent]<sup>III</sup>

=that [they had harassed] the ~the Ædui  
Ædui

quod Ambarrōs [vexāssent]

=that [they had harassed] the ~the Ambarri  
Ambarri

quod Allobrogas [vexāssent]

=that [they had harassed] the ~and the Allobroges  
Allobroges

vexāssent<sup>IV</sup>

=they had harassed ~they had plagued

VIII **eō invītō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

I **quod...temptāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §572 & §583

II **tempto, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (tendo), to handle, touch, feel a thing; to try; to prove, put to the test; to attempt, essay a course of action, etc.—IN GEN., CONSTR. WITH ACC., WITH INF., WITH REL.-CLAUSE, WITH *ut*, OR ABSOL.

III **vexō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (veho), to shake, jolt, toss violently; TRANS., IN GEN., to injure, damage, molest, annoy, distress, plague, trouble, maltreat, abuse, vex, harass, disquiet, disturb, torment, etc.

IV **quod...vexāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A PECULIAR FORM OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE CONSISTS OF QUOD (IN THE SENSE OF THAT, THE FACT THAT) WITH THE INDICATIVE. THE CLAUSE IN THE INDICATIVE WITH QUOD IS USED WHEN THE STATEMENT IS REGARDED AS A FACT. NOTE. LIKE OTHER SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES, THE CLAUSE WITH QUOD MAY BE USED AS SUBJECT, AS OBJECT, AS APPOSITIVE, ETC., BUT IT IS COMMONLY EITHER THE SUBJECT OR IN APPPOSITION WITH THE SUBJECT. §572 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

memoriam dēpōnere<sup>i</sup> posse<sup>ii</sup>

=/then/ could (he) lay aside the  
memory?

~could he also lay aside the  
memory?

### I.XIV.III.

QUOD SUĀ VICTORIĀ TAM ĪNSOLENTER GLŌRIĀRENTUR,  
QUODQUE TAM DIŪ SĒ IMPŪNE INIŪRIĀS TULISSE  
ADMĪRĀRENTUR, EŌDEM PERTINĒRE.

"QUOD VESTRA VICTORIA...GLORIAMINI, QUODQUE TAM  
DIU VOS IMPUNE INIURIAS TULISSE ADMIRAMINI, EODEM  
PERTINET."

Quod suā victoriā<sup>iii</sup> <sup>iv</sup> tam<sup>v</sup> īnsolenter<sup>vi</sup> glōriārentur<sup>vii</sup> <sup>viii</sup>

=<as to> what they gloried so  
insolently in their own victory

~that as to their so insolently  
boasting of their victory

I **dēpōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (DĒ + PŌNŌ), to lay away, put aside, set down, lay, place, set, deposit; Trop. With a predominant notion of putting away, removing, etc., to lay down, lay aside, give up, resign, get rid of

II **num...posse**, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. A REAL QUESTION, ASKING FOR AN ANSWER, IS GENERALLY PUT IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE; A RHETORICAL QUESTION, ASKED FOR EFFECT AND IMPLYING ITS OWN ANSWER, IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE. §586

III ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

IV **vīctōria, -æ**, F. (VICTOR), In war, victory

V **tam**, ADV. (TA-), CORREL. WITH *quam* IN COMPARISONS, IMPLYING EQUALITY OF DEGREE, in such a degree, as much, so, so much; WITH A GENERAL COMP. CLAUSE UNDERSTOOD ( = SIC, ITA), so (so much) as I do, as you do, as he did, as I said before, as he is, as you are, etc. WITH ADJ.—“*tam necessario tempore*,” *tam propinquis hostibus*,” at so urgent a time as this (I.XVI.IV)

VI **īnsolenter**, ADV. WITH COMP. (INSOLENS), unusually, contrary to custom; Immoderately, haughtily, insolently

VII **glōrior, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (GLORIA), to boast, vaunt, glory, brag, pride oneself

VIII **quod...glōriārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §572 & §583

quodque

=and <as to> what

~and that

tam diū<sup>I</sup> sē impūne<sup>II</sup> iniūriās tulisse<sup>III IV</sup>

=that for so long to have borne  
injuries with impunity

~that they had so long  
conducted their outrages with  
impunity

admīrārentur<sup>V VI</sup>

=they wondered

~they were being astonished

eōdem pertinēre<sup>VII</sup>

=(both of these things) tend to  
the same (thing)

~[both these things] tended to  
the same point

#### I.XIV.IV.

CŌNSUĒSSE ENIM DEŌS IMMORTĀLĒS, QUŌ GRAVIUS  
HOMINĒS EX COMMŪTĀTIŌNE RĒRUM DOLEANT, QUŌS  
PRŌ SCELERE EŌRUM ULCĪSCĪ VELINT, EĪS SECUNDIŌRĒS  
INTERDUM RĒS ET DIŪTURNIŌREM IMPŪNITĀTEM  
CONCĒDERE.

I **diū**, ADV. WITH COMP. **diūtius**, AND SUP. **diūtissimē** (DIV-), by day, all day; Lit., a space of time, *a while*; HENCE, WITH INTENS. SIGNIF., *A long time, long while, long*; COMP., **diūtius**, *longer*; In the historians freq. = *a long while, very long*, no comparison being intended

II **impūne**, ADV. WITH COMP. (IMPUNIS), *without punishment, unpunished, with impunity*

III **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, ferre** (FER-, TAL-), *to bear, carry, support, lift, hold, take up; To carry, take, fetch, move, bear, lead, conduct, drive, direct*

IV **se...tulisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **admīrarentur**. §580

V **admīror, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (AD + MĪROR), *to regard with wonder, admire; To regard with wonder, wonder at, be astonished*

VI **quod...admīrārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §572 & §583

VII INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

"CONSUEVERUNT ENIM DI IMMORTALES QUO GRAVIUS HOMINES...DOLEANT, QUOS PRO SCELERE EORUM ULCISCI VOLUNT...HIS IMPUNITATEM CONCEDERE."

Cōnsuē[vi]sse<sup>i II</sup> enim<sup>III</sup> deōs immortalēs<sup>IV</sup>

=for the immortal gods had been ~for the immortal gods are wont  
wont

quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne<sup>V VI</sup> rērum doleant<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=<in order> that the men may ~in order that they may suffer  
suffer the more severely from a change of circumstances the more severely from a reverse  
of circumstances

quōs prō scelere<sup>IX</sup> eōrum ulcisci velint<sup>X XI</sup>

=(those men) whom, on account ~to those persons whom they  
of the wickedness of those (men), wish to punish for their  
they wish to punish wickedness

I INDIR. DISC. §580

II **consuēscō, -suēvī, -suētus, -ere**, INCH., to become used, accustom oneself—Hence, PERF, to be wont, be accustomed

III **enim**, CONJ. (USU. AFTER THE FIRST WORD IN ITS CLAUSE). In explaining or specifying, for, for instance, namely, that is to say, I mean, in fact

IV **immortalis, -e**, ADJ., undying, immortal

V **ex commūtātiōne**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

VI **commūtātiō, -ōnis**, F. (COMMUTO), a changing, change, alteration

VII **quō...doleant**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE ABLATIVE QUŌ (= UT EO) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531 & §583

VIII **doleō, -ui, -itūrus, -ēre** (DAL-), Corporeally, to feel pain, suffer, be in pain, ache; Mentally. Of personal subjects, to grieve for, deplore, lament, be sorry for, be afflicted at or on account of any thing—WITH de OR ex

IX **scelus, -eris**, N. (SCEL-), a wicked deed, heinous act, crime, sin, enormity, wickedness

X **Cupio, malo, nolo, studeo, and volo** frequently have the Infinitive without a Subject Accusative (Complementary Infinitive); as, *ulcisci velint*, may wish to punish (LXIV)

XI **quōs...velint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

eīs<sup>I</sup> secundiōrēs<sup>II</sup> interdum<sup>III</sup> rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem<sup>IV</sup>  
 concēdere

=to sometimes concede to those ~to sometimes allow those  
 (men) // more favorable things men // a greater prosperity and  
 and a longer impunity longer impunity

### IX.IV.V.

CUM EA ITA SINT, TAMEN, SĪ OBSIDĒS AB EĪS SIBI DENTUR,  
 UTĪ EA QUÆ POLLICEANTUR FACTŪRŌS INTELLEGAT, ET  
 SĪ ÆDUĪS DĒ INIŪRIĪS QUĀS IPSĪS SOCIĪSQUE EŌRUM  
 INTULERINT, ITEM SĪ ALLOBROGIBUS SATISFACIANT, SĒSĒ  
 CUM EĪS PĀCEM ESSE FACTŪRUM.

"CUM EA ITA SINT, TAMEN SI OBSIDES A VOBIS MIHI  
 DABUNTUR, UTI EA QUÆ POLLICEMINI (VOS) FACTUROS  
 INTELLEGAM, ET SI HÆDUIS DE INIURIIS QUAS...  
 INTULISTIS...SATISFACIETIS, (EGO) VOBIS CUM PACEM  
 FACIAM."

Cum ea ita sint<sup>V</sup>, tamen

=though these (things) are so, ~although these things are so,  
 yet yet

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **concēdere**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **secundus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (SEQUOR), In time or order, following, next, second; PL. N. AS SUBST., favorable circumstances, good fortune

III **interdum**, ADV. (INTER + DUM), sometimes, occasionally, now and then

IV **impūnitās, -ātis**, F. (IMPUNIS), freedom from punishment, safety, impunity

V **cum...sint, cum** CONCESSIVE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549 & §583

*sī obsidēs ab eīs<sup>I</sup> sibi dentur<sup>II</sup>*

*=if hostages should be given to  
him by those (men)*

*~if hostages were to be given  
him by them*

*utī*

*=<in order> that*

*~in order that*

*ea*

*=the things*

*~the things*

*quæ polliceantur<sup>III</sup> IV*

*=which they promised*

*~which they promise*

*[eos] factūrōs [esse]<sup>V</sup>*

*=[those (men)] would do*

*~these will do*

*intellegat<sup>VI</sup>*

*=he (Cæsar) may know*

*~he may be assured*

*et sī Æduīs dē iniuriīs*

*=and if, for the injuries, to the  
Ædui*

*~for the outrages*

I AB EIS, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

II ***sī...dentur***, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. I. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE APODOSIS OF LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS (§516ii) BECOMES THE FUTURE INFINITIVE LIKE THE FUTURE INDICATIVE IN THE APODOSIS OF MORE VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS. THUS THERE IS NO DISTINCTION BETWEEN MORE AND LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS IN THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §589i

III ***quæ polliceantur***, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV ***polliceor, -itus, -ērī***, DEP. (PRO + LICEOR), *to hold forth, offer, promise*

V ***factūrōs [esse]***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***intellegat***. §580

quās ipsīs sociisque<sup>VII</sup> eōrum intulerint<sup>VIII</sup>

=(those things) which they had borne upon themselves (Hædui) and their allies (the Ambarri) ~which they had committed against them and their allies

item sī Allobrogibus<sup>III</sup> satisfaciant<sup>IV V</sup>

=(and) likewise, if they should give satisfaction to the Allobroges ~and provided they will give satisfaction to the Ædui, and likewise to the Allobroges

VI **uti...intellegat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536 & THE RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS A DEVELOPMENT PECULIAR TO LATIN. A RELATIVE CLAUSE IN THE INDICATIVE MERELY STATES SOMETHING AS A FACT WHICH IS TRUE OF THE ANTECEDENT; A CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSE (IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE) DEFINES THE ANTECEDENT AS A PERSON OR THING OF SUCH A CHARACTER THAT THE STATEMENT MADE IS TRUE OF HIM OR IT AND OF ALL OTHERS BELONGING TO THE SAME CLASS. THUS,— *NŌN POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINĒRE IMPERĀTOR QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINET* (INDICATIVE) MEANS SIMPLY, THAT COMMANDER WHO DOES NOT (AS A FACT) RESTRAIN HIMSELF CANNOT RESTRAIN HIS ARMY; WHEREAS *NŌN POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINĒRE IMPERĀTOR QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINEAT* (SUBJUNCTIVE) WOULD MEAN, THAT COMMANDER WHO IS NOT SUCH A MAN AS TO RESTRAIN HIMSELF, ETC., THAT IS, WHO IS NOT CHARACTERIZED BY SELF-RESTRAINT. THIS CONSTRUCTION HAS ITS ORIGIN IN THE POTENTIAL USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE (§445). THUS, IN THE EXAMPLE JUST GIVEN, *QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINEAT* WOULD MEAN LITERALLY, WHO WOULD NOT RESTRAIN HIMSELF (IN ANY SUPPOSABLE CASE), AND THIS POTENTIAL IDEA PASSES OVER EASILY INTO THAT OF GENERAL QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC. THE CHARACTERIZING FORCE IS MOST EASILY FELT WHEN THE ANTECEDENT IS INDEFINITE OR GENERAL. BUT THIS USAGE IS EXTENDED IN LATIN TO CASES WHICH DIFFER BUT SLIGHTLY FROM STATEMENTS OF FACT, AS IN SOME OF THE EXAMPLES BELOW. THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE TO EXPRESS RESULT COMES FROM ITS USE IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. THUS, *NŌN SUM ITA HEBES UT HÆC DĪCAM* MEANS LITERALLY, I AM NOT DULL IN THE MANNER (DEGREE) IN WHICH I SHOULD SAY THIS, HENCE, I AM NOT SO DULL AS TO SAY THIS. SINCE, THEN, THE CHARACTERISTIC OFTEN APPEARS IN THE FORM OF A SUPPOSED RESULT, THE CONSTRUCTION READILY PASSES OVER INTO PURE RESULT, WITH NO IDEA OF CHARACTERISTIC; AS,— “*TANTUS IN CŪRIĀ CLĀMOR FACTUS EST UT POPULUS CONCURRERET*” (VERR. 2.47), SUCH AN OUTCRY WAS MADE IN THE SENATE-HOUSE THAT THE PEOPLE HURRIED TOGETHER. §534 & §583

VII **ipsīs sociisque**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **intulerint**. §370

VIII **quās...intulerint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **satisfaciant**. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH SATIS, BENE, AND MALE. §368II



sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum<sup>I</sup>

=he (Cæsar) would make peace ~he [Cæsar] will make peace  
with them (the Helvetians) with them

## I.XIV.VI.

DĪVICŌ RESPONDIT: ITA HELVĒTIŌS Ā MAIŌRIBUS SUĪS  
ĪNSTITŪTŌS ESSE UTĪ OBSIDĒS ACCIPERE, NŌN DARE,  
CŌNSUĒRINT: EIUS REĪ POPULUM RŌMĀNUM ESSE  
TESTEM.

Dīvicō respondit

=Divicus responded

~Divico replied

ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs<sup>II</sup> īnstitūtōs esse<sup>III IV</sup>

=that the Helvetii had been fixed ~that the Helvetii had been so  
by their own ancestors thus taught by their ancestors

utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint<sup>V</sup>

=that they have been wont to ~that they were accustomed to  
receive hostages, not to give receive, not to give hostages  
(hostages)

---

IV **satisfaciō** (or **satis faciō**), **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-factus** (SATIS + FACIO; FAC-), to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; To give satisfaction, make amends, make reparation, make excuse, apologize

V **sī...satisfaciant**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589<sup>I</sup>

I **sēsē...esse factūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON RESPONDIT. §580

II **ā maiōribus suīs**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

III **Helvētiōs...īnstitūtōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **īnstituō**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, **-ere** (IN + STATUO), to put in place, plant, fix, set; To teach, instruct, train up, educate

V **utī...cōnsuērint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §536 & §583

eius rei populum Rōmānum esse<sup>I</sup> testem<sup>II</sup>

=*of that thing the Roman people*    ~*of that fact the Roman people*  
 were witness                                were witness

## I.XIV.VII.

Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Hōc respōnsō datō<sup>III</sup>

=*with this reply <having been>*    ~*having given this reply*  
 given

discessit<sup>IV</sup>

=*he departed*                                ~*he withdrew*

---

I *populum Rōmānum...esse*, INDIR. DISC. §580

II *testis, -is*, COMM., *one who attests* any thing (orally or in writing), *a witness*

III *hōc respōnsō datō*, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

IV *discēdō, -cessī, -cessus, -ere* (DIS + CĒDŌ), *to go apart, part asunder, divide, separate, disperse, scatter*; (With the notion of *cedere* predominating), *to depart from* any place or person, *to go away from, to leave*—Lit. IN GEN. CONSTR. WITH *ab, ex*, OR ABSOL.; Trop. In gen., *to depart, deviate, swerve from; to leave, forsake, give up*

# I.XV



## THE HELVETIANS RESUME THEIR MARCH.



### I.XV.I.

POSTERŌ DIĒ CASTRA EX EŌ LOCŌ MOVENT.

Posterō<sup>I</sup> diē castra<sup>II</sup> ex eō locō<sup>III</sup> movent<sup>IV</sup>

=on the day after they (the ~on the following day they move  
Helveti) moved (their) camp out their camp from that place  
from that place

### I.XV.II.

IDEM FACIT CÆSAR EQUITĀTUMQUE OMNEM, AD  
NUMERUM QUATTUOR MĪLIUM, QUEM EX OMNĪ  
PRŌVINCIĀ ET ÆDUĪS ATQUE EŌRUM SOCIĪS COĀCTUM  
HABĒBAT, PRÆMITTIT, QUĪ VIDEANT QUĀS IN PARTĒS  
HOSTĒS ITER FACIANT.

- 
- I **posterus**, ADJ. WITH COMP. **posterior**, -us, AND SUP. **postremus** (POST), POSIT., *coming after, following, next, ensuing, subsequent, future*
- II **posterō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- III **ex eō locō**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426
- IV **moveō**, **mōvi**, **mōtus**, -ēre (MV-), *to move, stir, set in motion, shake, disturb, remove*

Idem facit Cæsar

=*Cæsar did the same thing*

~*Cæsar does the same*

equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium<sup>I</sup>

=*and // all the cavalry, near the  
number of four of thousands*

~*and // forward all his cavalry,  
to the number of four thousand*

quem ex omni provinciâ et Æduis atque eorum sociis<sup>II</sup> coactum<sup>III</sup>  
habebat

=*which (he) drove together from  
every province and from the  
Ædui and from the allies of  
those men, he was having*

~*which he had drawn together  
from all parts of the Province  
and from the Ædui and their  
allies*

præmittit<sup>IV</sup> V

=*he sends forward*

~*sent*

quī videant<sup>VI</sup>

=*who would watch*

~*to observe*

I **mīlium**, PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NULLUS, ETC. §346<sup>III</sup>

II **ex omni provinciâ...Hæduis...sociis**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

III **habeo** with a PPP. in agreement with its Object may have almost the force of a Perfect or Pluperfect tense; as, *quem...coactum habebat*, *which he had collected*, Lit. *which, having been collected, he was having* (I.XV)

IV HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO. §585. B. N.) §469

V **præmittō, -mīsi, -missus, -ere** (PRÆ + MITTŌ), *to send forward, despatch in advance*

VI **quī videant**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE IS HORTATORY IN ORIGIN, COMING THROUGH A KIND OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE CONSTRUCTION. §529

**quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant<sup>I</sup>**

=in what direction the enemy made the journey ~toward what parts the enemy are directing their march

### I.XV.III.

QUĪ, CUPIDIUS NOVISSIMUM AGMEN ĪNSECŪTĪ, ALIĒNŌ LOCŌ CUM EQUITĀTŪ HELVĒTIŌRUM PRĒLIUM COMMITTUNT; ET PAUCĪ DĒ NOSTRĪS CADUNT.

**Quī, cupidius<sup>II</sup> novissimum agmen īnsecūtī<sup>III</sup>, aliēnō<sup>IV</sup> locō<sup>V</sup>**

=(these men) who, too eagerly followed the (enemy's) most recent battle line // in a disadvantageous place ~these, having too passionately pursued the enemy's rear // in a disadvantageous place

**cum equitātū<sup>VI</sup> Helvētiōrum prōelium committunt**

=they join together battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii ~commence battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii

---

I **quās...faciant**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

II **cupidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CVP-), *longing, desiring, desirous, eager, zealous, wishing, loving, fond; Excessively desirous, passionate, eager, greedy, lustful, covetous; Hence, cūpīdē*, ADV., *eagerly, in a good and bad sense, zealously, passionately, vehemently, ardently, warmly, partial*

III **īnsequor, -cūtus, -ī**, DEP. (IN + SEQUOR), *to follow, follow after, come next; To pursue, follow up, press upon*

IV **ālīenus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ALIUS). In gen., *that belongs to another person, place, object, etc., not one's own, another's, of another, foreign, alien; Averse, hostile, unfriendly, unfavorable to; TRANSF. TO THINGS, as in the histt., alienus locus, a place or ground unfavorable for an engagement, disadvantageous*

V **locō**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. §429

VI **equitātus, -ūs**, M. (EQUITO), *cavalry*

et paucī<sup>I</sup> dē nostrīs<sup>II III</sup> cadunt<sup>IV V</sup>

=and concerning a few (of) our ~and a few of our men fell off  
men (a few of our men) fell

#### I.XV.IV.

QUŌ PRĒLIŌ SUBLĀTĪ HELVĒTĪ, QUOD QUĪNGENTĪS  
EQUITIBUS TANTAM MULTITŪDINEM EQUITUM  
PRŌPULERANT, AUDĀCIUS SUBSISTERE NŌN NUMQUAM  
ET NOVISSIMŌ AGMINE PRĒLIŌ NOSTRŌS LACESSERE  
CĒPĒRUNT.

Quō praeliō<sup>VI</sup> sublātī Helvētī

=the Helvetii, lifted by which ~the Helvetii, elated with this  
(this) battle battle

- 
- I **paucus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PAV-), *few, little*
- II **dē nostrīs**, ABL. WITH CARDINAL NUMERALS. §346II
- III *de* or *ex* are often used with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with *quidam* and words referring to Number. Thus, *quidam ex his, some of these* (II.XVII); *pauci de nostris, a few of our men* (I.XV)
- IV HIST. PRES. §469
- V **cadō, cecidī, casūrus, -ere** (CAD-), *to fall, fall down, descend; To fall off, fall away, fall out, drop off, be shed*
- VI **quō praeliō**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

quod quīgentīs equitibus<sup>I</sup> tantam<sup>II</sup> multitūdinem equitum  
prōpulerant<sup>III</sup>

=because they had with five  
hundred horse drove forward so  
large a body of horse

~because they had with five  
hundred horse driven away so  
large a body of horse

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **tantus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TA-), FOL. BY A CLAUSE OF COMP., *of such size, of such a measure, so great, such; to be valued, prized, or esteemed so highly; to be of such consequence or importance*; FOLLOWED BY A CLAUSE OF RES., *so great, such*; Esp. in phrase **tantō ōpēre**; freq. as one word, **tantōpēre**, *so greatly, in so high a degree, so very, etc*

III **prōpellō, -pulī, -pulsus, -ere** (PRŌ + PELLŌ), *to drive forward, drive forth, drive away, drive out; To drive away, keep off*

audācius<sup>I</sup> subsistere<sup>II</sup> nōn numquam<sup>III</sup> et novissimō<sup>IV</sup> agmine<sup>V</sup>  
praeliō<sup>VI</sup> nostrōs lacessere<sup>VII</sup> cœpērunt<sup>VIII</sup>

=*began to take a stand more boldly, not never with (their) newest battle line to provoke our men with battle* ~*began to take a stand more boldly, sometimes too from their rear to provoke our men by an attack*

### I.XV.V.

CÆSAR SUOS Ā PRÆLIO CONTINĒBAT, AC SATIS HABĒBAT  
IN PRÆSENTIĀ HOSTEM RAPĪNĪS PĀBULĀTIŌNIBUS  
POPULĀTIŌNIBUSQUE PROHIBĒRE.

Cæsar suos ā praeliō<sup>IX</sup> continēbat

=*Cæsar (however) was restraining his own men from battle* ~*Cæsar [however] restrained his men from battle*

I **audax, -ācis**, ADJ. (FROM AUDEO), *daring*, in a good, but oftener in a bad sense, *bold, courageous, spirited; audacious, rash, presumptuous, foolhardy*; Meton., *violent, fierce, proud*—**audacter**, COMP

II **subsistō, -stiti, —, -ere** (SUB + SISTŌ), *to take a stand, take position, stand still, remain standing, stop, halt*

III **numquam**, ADV. (NE + UMQUAM), *at no time, never*

IV Certain Adjectives often designate a part of that to which they refer; as, in *colle medio*, *halfway up the hill* (I.XXIV); *prima nocte*, *in the first part of the night* (I.XXVII); *summus mons*, *the top of the height* (I.XXII). The Adjectives thus used by Cæsar are *extremus* (as II.V); *infimus* (II.XVIII); *medius*; *multus* (I.XXII); *novissimus*, in *novissimum agmen* (I.XV and often), *the rear of a marching column* as the latest part of a column to pass a given point; *primus* and *summus*

V **novissimō agmine**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **lacessere**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

VII **laccēsō, -īvi, -itus, -ere** (LAC-), *to excite, provoke, challenge, exasperate, irritate*

VIII **cœpiō, cœpi, cœptus, -ere** (COM- + AP-), *to begin, commence*

IX **ā praeliō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401



ac satis [esse] habēbat<sup>I</sup> in præsentiā<sup>II</sup> hostem rapīnīs<sup>III</sup>  
pābulātiōnibus<sup>IV</sup> populātiōnibusque<sup>V</sup> prohibēre

=and he was held (the defense) ~thought it sufficient for the  
[to be] sufficient in the present present to prevent the enemy  
to prohibit the enemy from from rapine, forage, and  
rapine, from forage, and from depredation  
depredation

### I.XV.VI.

ITA DIĒS CIRCITER QUINDECIM ITER FĒCĒRUNT UTĪ  
INTER NOVISSIMUM HOSTIUM AGMEN ET NOSTRUM  
PRĪMUM NŌN AMPLIUS QUĪNĪS AUT SĒNĪS MĪLIBUS  
PASSUUM INTERESSET.

Ita diēs circiter<sup>VI</sup> quīndecim iter fēcērunt

=for around fifteen days they did ~they marched for about fifteen  
the journey in such a manner days in such a manner

---

I **habeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (HAB-), *to have, hold, support, carry, wear; To hold, account, esteem, consider, regard a person or thing in any manner or as any thing; to think or believe a person or thing to be so or so*

II **præsentiā, -æ**, F. (PRÆSENS), *a being at hand, presence*

III **rapīna, -æ**, F. (RAP-), *an act of robbery, robbery, plunder; Esp. in pl., robbery, plundering, pillage, rapine*

IV **pābulātiō, -ōnis**, F. (PABULOR), *pasture; TRANSF., in milit. language, a collecting of fodder, a foraging*

V **rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VI **circiter**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (CIRCUS), ADV. OF DURATION OR DISTANCE, WITH NUMERALS, *about, not far from; PRÆP. WITH ACC., of time, about, near*

utī<sup>I</sup> inter novissimum hostium agmen

=so that between the newest battle line of the enemy ~that between the enemy's rear and our van

et nostrum [agmen] primum nōn amplius<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus<sup>IV</sup> passuum<sup>V</sup> interesset<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup>

=and our first [battle line], there had been not more than five or six miles between ~and our first [battle line], there had been not more than five or six miles between

---

I Clauses of Result are often preceded by a word of Measure or Quality, *tam, tantus, ita, sic*, etc.; as, *tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri...prælium redintegrarent*, so great a change was brought about that our (men) renewed the fight (II.XXVII); *sic muniebatur, ut magnam...daret facultatem*, was so fortified that it afforded a great resource (I.XXXVIII)

II Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, *veri* (Neuter) *simile, probable, lit, like truth* (II.XIII); *nostri*, our men (I.LII); *novissimis* (Masculine), for the rear, Lit. for those last (I.XXV); *sua*, their possessions (I.XI); *pro viso*, as seen, Lit. for (that which was) seen (I.XXII)

III **amplus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (AM- (FOR AMBI-) + PLE-), of large extent, great, ample, spacious, roomy; Of external splendor, great, handsome, magnificent, splendid, glorious; COMP., **amplius**, more, longer, further, besides—OF TIME, NUMBER, AND ACTION (WHILE *plus* DENOTES MORE IN QUANTITY, MEASURE, ETC.; *magis, more*, IN THE COMPARISON OF QUALITY, AND SOMETIMES OF ACTION; AND *potius*, RATHER, THE CHOICE BETWEEN DIFFERENT OBJECTS OR ACTS), CONSTR. ABSOL., WITH COMP. ABL., AND, IN THE CASE OF NUMERALS, LIKE *minus, plus, propius*, Q. V., WITHOUT *quam* WITH THE NOM., ACC., OR GEN., OR RARELY WITH THE ABL. COMP., OR WITH *quam*

IV **quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus**, ABL. OF COMP. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE IS OFTEN FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE (THIS IS A BRANCH OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. THE OBJECT WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS COMPARED IS THE STARTING-POINT FROM WHICH WE RECKON. THUS, "CICERO IS ELOQUENT"; BUT, STARTING FROM HIM WE COME TO CATO, WHO IS "MORE SO THAN HE.") SIGNIFYING THAN. §406

V PARTITIVE. GEN. §346II

VI **intersum, -fui, -futurus, -esse** (INTER + SUM), to be between, lie between

VII **utī...interesset**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

# I.XVI



THE ÆDUANS DO NOT BRING THE PROMISED GRAIN.



## I.XVII.I.

**I**NTERIM COTĪDIĒ CÆSAR ÆDUŌS FRŪMENTUM  
QUOD ESSENT PŪBLICĒ POLLICITĪ FLĀGITĀRE.

Interim<sup>I</sup> cotīdiē<sup>II</sup> Cæsar Æduōs frūmentum<sup>III</sup>

=meanwhile, Cæsar, daily ~meanwhile, Cæsar, daily // the  
/keptdemanding/ (from) the Ædui for the corn  
Ædui, the grain

quod essent pūblicē<sup>IV</sup> pollicitī<sup>V</sup>

=which they had promised at the ~which they had promised in the  
expense of the State (the name of their state  
Æduans)

flāgitāre<sup>VI VII</sup>

=kept demanding ~kept pressing

---

I **interim**, ADV. (INTER + I-), *meanwhile, in the meantime*

II **cotīdiē**, ADV. (QUOT- + DIES), *daily, every day*

III **Æduōs frūmentum**, TWO ACC.—DIRECT OBJ. AND SECONDARY OBJ. SOME VERBS OF ASKING AND TEACHING MAY TAKE TWO ACCUSATIVES, ONE OF THE PERSON (DIRECT OBJECT), AND THE OTHER OF THE THING (SECONDARY OBJECT). §396

IV ABL. OF PRICE. THE PRICE OF A THING IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE. NOTE. TO THIS HEAD IS TO BE REFERRED THE ABLATIVE OF THE PENALTY. §416

V **quod essent...pollicitī**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

## I.XVI.II.

NAM PROPTER FRĪGORA, QUOD GALLIA SUB SEPTENTRIŌNIBUS, UT ANTE DICTUM EST, POSITA EST, NŌN MODO FRŪMENTA IN AGRĪS MĀTŪRA NŌN ERANT, SED NĒ PĀBULĪ QUIDEM SATIS MAGNA CŌPIA SUPPETĒBAT: EŌ AUTEM FRŪMENTŌ QUOD FLŪMINE ARARE NĀVIBUS SUBVEXERAT PROPTEREĀ ŪTĪ MINUS POTERAT QUOD ITER AB ARARĪ HELVĒTIĪ ĀVERTERANT, Ā QUIBUS DISCĒDERE NŌLĒBAT.

Nam propter<sup>i</sup> frīgora<sup>ii</sup>

=for, on account of the cold (weather) ~for, in consequence of the coldness

quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus

=because Gaul // under the 'constellation of stars in the north' ~as Gaul // toward the north

ut ante dictum est

=as was said before ~as previously said

---

VI HIST. INF. THE INFINITIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE IN NARRATION, AND TAKES A SUBJECT IN THE NOMINATIVE. NOTE. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS NOT STRICTLY HISTORICAL, BUT RATHER DESCRIPTIVE, AND IS NEVER USED TO STATE A MERE HISTORICAL FACT. IT IS RARELY FOUND IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, THOUGH OCCURRING IN MOST OF THE WRITERS OF ALL PERIODS, IT IS MOST FREQUENT IN THE HISTORIANS SALLUST, LIVY, TACITUS. IT DOES NOT OCCUR IN SUETONIUS. §463

VII **flāgitō**, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, -**āre** (FLAG-), to demand urgently, require, entreat, solicit, press, importune, dun

I **propter**, ADV. AND PREP. CONTR. FOR *propiter*, (FROM PROPE), ADV., near, hard by, at hand; Trop., in stating a cause, On account of, by reason of, from, for, because of

II **frīgus**, -**oris**, N. (FRIG-), cold, coldness, coolness, chilliness—IN PL.

posita est<sup>I</sup>

=was placed

~was situated

nōn modo<sup>II</sup> frūmenta in agrīs mātūra<sup>III</sup> nōn erant

=not only was the grain in the  
fields not mature

~not only was the corn in the  
fields not ripe

sed nē pābuli<sup>IV</sup> quidem<sup>V</sup> satis magna cōpia suppetēbat

=but there was not even a  
sufficiently great supply of  
fodder in store

~but there was not in store a  
sufficiently large quantity even  
of fodder

eō autem frūmentō<sup>VI</sup>

=but // that corn

~however // the corn

- 
- I **pōnō, posuī, positus, -ere** (PORT- (PRO) + SINO), to put down, set down, put, place, set, fix, lay, deposit; To place, set, appoint a person as a watch or guard, accuser, etc.; Of troops and guards, to place, post, set, station, fix
- II **mōdō**, ADV. (ORIG. ABL. OF MODUS), Qs., by measure, expressing, like *tantum*, a restriction of the idea, *only, merely, but*; Negatively, *non modo...sed (verum) etiam (et, or simply sed), not only...but also*
- III **mātūrus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. *mātūrior*, AND SUP. *mātūrissimus*, OR *mātūrrimus*, ripe, mature; ripe, mature, of age, proper, fit, seasonable, timely
- IV PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346
- V **quidem**, ADV. Expressing emphasis or assurance, *assuredly, certainly, in fact, indeed*; In the phrase, *Ne...quidem, not even*—"ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem redimere potuisse"
- VI ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūtī**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

quod flūmine<sup>I</sup> Ararī nāvibus<sup>II III</sup> subvexerat<sup>IV</sup> proptereā  
 =which he had drawn by ships ~which he had conveyed in ships  
 up the river Arar (Saone), for up the river Saone  
 this reason

ūtī<sup>V</sup> minus poterat  
 =he was less able to use ~he was unable to use

quod iter ab Arare<sup>VI</sup> Helvētīi āverterant<sup>VII</sup>  
 =because the Helvetii // had ~because the Helvetii // had  
 turned away (their) march from averted their march from the  
 the Arar (Saone) Saone

ā quibus<sup>VIII</sup> discēdere nōlēbat<sup>IX</sup>  
 =(the Helvetii) from whom he ~from whom he was unwilling to  
 was unwilling to depart retire

---

I ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: I. THE WAY BY WHICH IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. NOTE. IN THIS USE THE WAY BY WHICH IS CONCEIVED AS THE MEANS OF PASSAGE. §429I

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **nāvis, -is**, F. (NA-), a ship

IV **subvehō, -vexī, -vectus, -ere** (SUB + VEHO), to bear, carry, convey, draw), to support and convey, bring up, transport, conduct, carry up

V **ūtōr, ūsus, uti**, DEP., Prop., to use; WITH ABL. To make use of, employ; Of a form or style of speech, sentiment, etc., to make, adopt, employ

VI **ab Arare**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

VII **āvertō, -tī, -sus, -ere** (Ā + VERTO), to turn away, avert, turn off, remove; To avert, ward off, turn away

VIII **ā quibus**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

IX **nōlō, nōlūi, —, nōlle** (NE + VOLO), to wish...not, will...not, not to wish, to be unwilling

## I.XVI.III.

DIEM EX DIĒ DŪCERE ÆDUĪ: CŌNFERRĪ, COMPORTĀRĪ,  
ADESSE DĪCERE.

Diem ex diē [eum] dūcere<sup>I</sup> Æduī

=day from day the Ædui kept leading [him (Cæsar)] (on) ~the Ædui kept delaying from day to day

[frūmentum] cōnferrī<sup>II</sup> III

=that [the grain] was being brought together ~that it was being collected

[id] comportārī<sup>IV</sup> V

=that [it (the grain)] was being carried together ~brought in

[id] adesse<sup>VI</sup> VII

=that [it (the grain)] was present (at hand) ~on the road

[Æduī] dīcere<sup>VIII</sup>

=[the Ædui] kept saying ~and saying

I HIST. INF. §463

II HIST. INF. §463; INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicere**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **cōnferō, contulī, conlātus, cōnferrē** (CŌN + FERRŌ), *To bring together, collect, gather, unite, join; WITH se, to betake oneself, turn, have recourse*

IV HIST. INF. §463; INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicere**. §580

V **comportō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (COM + PORTŌ), *to bring in, carry together, collect, accumulate, gather*

VI HIST. INF. §463; INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicere**. §580

VII **adsum, adfui, adesse** (AD + SUM), *to be at, be present, be at hand*

VIII HIST. INF. §463

## I.XVI.IV.

VBI SĒ DIŪTIUS DŪCĪ INTELLĒXIT ET DIEM ĪNSTĀRE, QUŌ  
 DIĒ FRŪMENTUM MĪLITIBUS MĒTĪRĪ OPORTĒRET,  
 CONVOCĀTIS EŌRUM PRĪNCIPIBUS QUŌRUM MAGNAM  
 CŌPIAM IN CASTRĪS HABĒBAT, IN HĪS DĪVICIĀCŌ ET  
 LISCŌ, QUĪ SUMMŌ MAGISTRĀTUĪ PRÆERAT, QUEM  
 VERGOBRETUM APPELLANT ÆDUĪ, QUĪ CREĀTUR  
 ANNUUS ET VĪTÆ NECISQUE IN SUŌS HABET  
 POTESTĀTEM, GRAVITER EŌS ACCŪSAT QUOD, CUM  
 NEQUE EMĪ NEQUE EX AGRĪS SŪMĪ POSSIT, TAM  
 NECESSĀRĪŌ TEMPORE, TAM PROPINQUĪS HOSTIBUS, AB  
 EĪS NŌN SUBLEVĒTUR; PRÆSERTIM CUM MAGNĀ EX  
 PARTE EŌRUM PRECIBUS ADDUCTUS BELLUM SUSCĒPERIT,  
 MULTŌ ETIAM GRAVIUS QUOD SIT DĒSTITŪTUS  
 QUERITUR.

Vbi

=when

~when

sē diŭtius dūcĭ<sup>1</sup>=that he was being lead (on) too  
long

~that he was put off too long

intellēxit

=he understood

~he saw

---

I **se...dūcĭ**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellēxit**. §580



et diem īnstāre<sup>I II</sup>

=and that the day was drawing nigh ~and that the day was approaching

quō diē<sup>III</sup> frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī<sup>IV</sup> oportēret<sup>V</sup>

=the day on which he ought to measure out the grain for (his) soldiers ~on which he ought to distribute the corn to his soldiers

convocātis<sup>VI</sup> eōrum prīncipibus<sup>VII</sup>

=with their principal leaders ~having called together their chiefs  
<having been> called together

---

I **INDIR. DISC. §580**

II **īnstō, -stitī, -statūrus, -āre** (IN + STŌ), to stand upon, take a position; ABSOL., to draw nigh, approach; to impend, threaten

III **quō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

IV **mētior, mēnsus, -īrī, -ātus, -āre** (MA-), to measure, mete; To measure out, deal out, distribute

V **quō diē...oportēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §583

VI **convocō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (CON + VOCŌ), to call together, convoke, assemble, summon

VII **convocātis...prīncipibus**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs<sup>I</sup> habēbat

=(the principle leaders) of whom ~of whom he had a great  
he was having a great number in his camp  
abundance in (his) camp

in hīs

=among those (men)

~among them

Dīviciācō et Liscō<sup>II</sup> III

=Divitiacus and Liscus

~Divitiacus and Liscus

quī summō<sup>IV</sup> magistrātū<sup>V</sup> præerat<sup>VI</sup>

=who presided over the ~who was invested with the  
uppermost magistracy supreme magistracy

quem Vergobretum<sup>VII</sup> VIII appellant Æduī

=whom the Ædui call the ~whom the Ædui style the  
Vergobretus Vergobretus

I **castrum, -i**, N. (KINDRED WITH CASA), IN SG., any fortified place, a castle, fort, fortress; IN PL., **castra, -ōrum**, N. Lit., several soldiers' tents situated together; hence, a military camp, an encampment; among the Romans a square (*quadrata*)

II **Dīviciācō et Liscō**, IN APPPOSITION WITH **principibus** AND THEREFORE PART OF THE ABL. ABS.

III **Liscus, -i**, M., a prominent Æduan

IV **summus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP., uppermost, highest, topmost; Of rank or degree, highest, greatest, loftiest, first, supreme, best, utmost, extreme

V **summō magistrātū**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præerat**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VI **præsum, -fuī, esse** (PRÆ + SUM), to be before, be set over, preside over, rule, have charge of, command, superintend

VII **quem Vergobretum**, PRED. ACC. VERBS OF NAMING, CHOOSING, APPOINTING, MAKING, ESTEEMING, SHOWING, AND THE LIKE, MAY TAKE A PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE ALONG WITH THE DIRECT OBJECT. §393

VIII **Vergobretus, -i**, M., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Æduans

quī creātur<sup>I</sup> annuus<sup>II</sup>

=(and) who is brought forth ~and who is elected annually  
annually

et vītā<sup>III</sup> necisque<sup>IV</sup> in suōs habet potestātem<sup>V</sup>

=and (whom) has the power of ~and has power of life or death  
both life and of death over his over his countrymen  
own (men)

graviter<sup>VI</sup> eōs accūsāt<sup>VII</sup>

=he severely calls them to ~he severely reprimands them  
account

quod

=because

~because

I **creō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (CER-), to bring forth, produce, make, create, beget, give origin to; In partic., to make or create for any jurisdiction or office, i.e. to choose, elect

II **annuus, -a, -us**, ADJ. (ANNUS), of a year, lasting a year; That returns, recurs, or happens every year, yearly, annual

III **vīta, -æ**, F. (VIV-), life

IV **vītā necisque**, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE *ODIUM CÆSARIS*, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS *ODIUM*, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE *AMOR PATRIS*, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

V **potestās, -ātis**, F. (POTIS), Lit., in gen., ability, power of doing any thing; Power, ability, possibility, opportunity—"potestatem sui facere," to give an opportunity of fighting with one

VI **graviter**, ADV. WITH COMP. *gravius*, AND SUP. *gravissimē* (GRAVIS), weightily, heavily, ponderously; Vehemently, strongly, violently; Fig., vehemently, violently, deeply, severely, harshly, unpleasantly, disagreeably, sadly

VII **accūsō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (AD + CAUSA), to call to account, make complaint against, reproach, blame, accuse

**cum [frumentum] neque emī<sup>I</sup> neque ex agrīs sūmī possit<sup>II</sup>**

=*when [the grain] could neither be able to be bought nor to be taken up from the fields* ~*and when [corn] could neither be bought nor taken from the fields*

**tam necessāriō<sup>III IV</sup> tempore<sup>V</sup>**

=*at such a pressing time* ~*in such a time of need*

**tam propinquīs<sup>VI</sup> hostibus<sup>VII</sup>**

=*with the enemy <being> so near* ~*when the enemy were so close at hand*

**ab eīs<sup>VIII</sup> nōn sublevētur<sup>IX</sup>**

=*he is not supported by those (men)* ~*he is not assisted by them*

---

**I emō, ēmī, ēmptus, -ere (EM-), to buy, purchase**

**II cum...possit, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

**III necessario tempore, ABL. ABS.** THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

**IV necessārius, -a, -um, ADJ. (NECESSE), unavoidable, inevitable, indispensable, pressing, needful, requisite, necessary, compulsory** —“tam necessario tempore,” time of need; TRANSF., connected with another by natural or moral ties (of blood, friendship, clientship), belonging, related, connected, bound—SUBST., **nēcessāriō, -i, M., a relation, relative, kinsman, connection, friend, client, patro**

**V ABL. OF TIME WHEN. §423**

**VI propinquus, -a, -um, ADJ. WITH COMP. (PROPE), near, nigh, neighboring;** SUBST. M. AND F., *a relation, relative, kinsman, kinswoman*

**VII propinquīs hostibus, ABL. ABS. §420**

præsertim<sup>I</sup> cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> adductus bellum suscēperit<sup>IV</sup>

=especially since he, <having been> led, from a great part by the entreaties of those (men), ~particularly as, in a great measure urged by their prayers, he had undertaken the war had undertaken war

multō etiam gravius<sup>V</sup>

=(and) even more grave by much ~yet much more bitterly

quod sit dēstitūtus<sup>VI</sup>

=because he had been betrayed ~as he had been forsaken

VIII **ab eis**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **ā** OR **ab**. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES **ā** OR **ab**) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS **occisus gladiō**, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT **occisus ab hoste**, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

IX **sublevō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (SUB + LEVŌ), to lift from beneath, raise up, hold up, support; To sustain, support, assist, encourage, console, relieve

I **præsertim**, ADV. (SER-), especially, chiefly, principally, particularly

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **prex, precis**, F. (PREC-), a prayer, request, entreat

IV **cum...suscēperit**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

V **multō...gravius**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

VI **dēstituō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere** (DE + STATUO), to set down, set forth, put away, bring forward, leave alone; Fig., to forsake, abandon, desert, betray

queritur<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=*he complains*

~*he complained*

---

VII HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

VIII **queror, questus, -i**, DEP. (QVES-), *to express grief, complain, lament, bewail*

# I.XVII



## LISCUS DISCLOSES THE TREACHERY.



### I.XVII.I.



TUM DĒMUM LISCUS ŌRĀTIŌNE CÆSARIS  
ADDUCTUS, QUOD ANTEĀ TACUERAT  
PRŌPŌNIT: ESSE NŌN NŪLLŌS, QUŌRUM  
AUCTŌRITĀS APUD PLĒBEM PLŪRIMUM  
VALEAT, QUĪ PRĪVĀTIM PLŪS POSSINT QUAM IPSĪ  
MAGISTRĀTŪS.

Tum dēmum<sup>I</sup> Liscus ōrātiōne<sup>II</sup> Cæsaris adductus

=then at last, Liscus, led by a ~then at length Liscus, moved by  
speech of Cæsar Cæsar's speech

quod anteā<sup>III</sup> tacuerat<sup>IV</sup>

=(the thing) which he had before ~what he had previously kept  
concealed secret

prōpōnit<sup>V</sup>

=(he) puts forth ~says

---

I **dēmum**, ADV. (DE) WITH SUP. *ending, at length, at last, not till then, just, precisely, only*; WITH *tum*, *then at length, then indeed, not till then*

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **anteā**, ADV., *before, earlier, formerly, aforesaid, previously*

IV **taceō, -cui, -citus, -ēre** (TAC-), *to be silent, not speak, say nothing, hold one's peace*

esse nōn nullōs<sup>I</sup>

=that there are not none

~that there are some

quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum<sup>II</sup> valeat<sup>III IV</sup>

=of whose authority among the common folk has very much strength ~whose influences with the people is very great

quī prīvātim<sup>V</sup> plūs possint<sup>VI</sup> quam ipsī magistrātūs

=(some men) who, in a private capacity, are more able than the magistrates themselves ~who, though private men, have more power than the magistrates themselves

V **prōpōnō, posuī, positus, -ere** (PRŌ + PŌNŌ), to put forth, set forth, lay out, place before, expose to view, display; To point out, declare, represent, report, say, relate, set forth, publish

I **esse nōn nullōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prōpōnit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **multus, -a, -um**, ADJ., PL. WITH SUBST. OR WITH ADJ. USED AS SUBST, MANY, A GREAT NUMBER; ADV., **plūrimum**, very much indeed

III **valeō, -uī, -itūrus, -ēre** (VAL-), to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able; To have power, be valid, be effective, have influence, avail, prevail, be strong, succeed

IV **quōrum...valeat**, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V **prīvātim** ADV. (PRIVATUS), apart from State affairs, as an individual, in private, privately, in a private capacity

VI **quī...possint**, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583



## I.XVII.II.

HŌS SĒDITIŌSĀ ATQUE IMPROBĀ ŌRĀTIŌNE  
 MULTITŪDINEM DĒTERRĒRE NĒ FRŪMENTUM  
 CŌNFERANT QUOD DĒBEANT: PRĒSTĀRE, SĪ IAM  
 PRĪNCIPĀTUM GALLIÆ OBTINĒRE NŌN POSSENT,  
 GALLŌRUM QUAM RŌMĀNŌRUM IMPERIA PERFERRE;  
 NEQUE DUBITĀRE QUĪN, SĪ HELVĒTIŌS SUPERĀVERINT  
 RŌMĀNĪ, ŪNĀ CUM RELIQUĀ GALLIĀ ÆDUĪS LĪBERTĀTEM  
 SINT ĒREPTŪRĪ.

Hōs sēditiōsā<sup>I</sup> atque improbā<sup>II</sup> ōrātiōne<sup>III</sup> multitūdinem dēterrēre<sup>IV</sup>  
 v

=that these men by seditions and  
 violent speech are deterring the  
 populace

~that these by seditions and  
 violent speech are deterring the  
 populace

nē frūmentum cōnferant<sup>VI</sup>

=that they not bringing together  
 the corn

~from contributing the corn

- 
- I **sēditiōsus**, ADJ. WITH SUP. (SEDITIO), *full of discord, factious, turbulent, mutinous, seditious*
- II **improbus**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP (IN + PROBUS), *not good, bad, wicked, reprobate, abandoned, vile, base, impious, bold, shameless, wanton*
- III **ōrātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409
- IV **hōs...dēterrēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prōpōnit**. §580
- V **dēterreō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (DĒ + TERREŌ), *to frighten off, deter, discourage, prevent, hinder*
- VI **nē...cōnferant**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE, PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

**quod dēbeant<sup>I</sup>**

=(the corn) which they ought (to supply) ~which they ought to supply

**præstāre<sup>II</sup>**

=(it) is preferable ~it were better

**sī iam prīncipātum Galliæ obtinēre nōn possent<sup>III</sup>**

=[by telling them] that, if they were no longer able to hold fast the supremacy of Gaul ~[by telling them] that, if they can not any longer retain the supremacy of Gaul

**Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre<sup>IV</sup>**

=to bear through the government of the Gauls than (the government) of Romans ~to submit to the government of Gauls than of Romans

**neque [se] dubitāre<sup>V</sup> [debeant]**

=nor [ought] [they] to doubt ~nor ought they to doubt that

**quīn**

=not, that ~not, that

I **quod dēbeant**, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **ōrātiōne**. §580

III **sī...possent**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

IV **perferō, -tulī, -lātus, -ferre** (PER + FERŌ), to bear through, bring home; To bear, support, endure to the end; In gen., to bear, suffer, put up with, brook, submit to, endure

V **dubitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DUBIUS), to waver in opinion, be uncertain, be in doubt, be perplexed, doubt, question; de quā (legione) non dubitaret, had full confidence

**sī Helvētiōs superāverint<sup>i</sup> Rōmānī**

=if the Romans should overcome the Helvetii ~if the Romans should overpower the Helvetii

**ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Æduīs<sup>iii</sup> libertātem<sup>iv</sup> sint ēreptūrī<sup>v</sup>**

=they (the Romans) would tear out [their] freedom from the Ædui together with remaining Gaul ~they would wrest their freedom from the Ædui together with the remainder of Gaul

### I.XVII.III.

AB EĪSDEM NOSTRA CŌNSILIA QUÆQUE IN CASTRĪS GERANTUR HOSTIBUS ĒNŪNTIĀRĪ: HŌS Ā SĒ CĒRCĒRĪ NŌN POSSE.

**Ab eīsdem<sup>vi</sup> nostra cōnsilia**

=by these (very) men, [said he], our plans ~by these very men, [said he], are our plans

**quæque in castrīs gerantur<sup>vii</sup>**

=and whatever (things) were carried (out) in the camp ~and whatever is done in the camp

---

I **sī...superāverint**, PROTASIS OF FUT. MORE VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

II **superō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (SUPERUS), to go over, rise above, overtop, surmount, transcend; In partic., in milit. lang., to overcome, subdue, conquer, vanquish

III **ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT. TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401**

IV **libertās, -ātis**, F. (LIBER), freedom, liberty, absence of restraint, permission

V **quīn...sint ēreptūrī**, quīn CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. I. QUĪN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH NŌN DUBITŌ, I DO NOT DOUBT, NŌN EST DUBIUM, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. §558i

hostibus ēnūntiārī<sup>I</sup>

=disclosed to the enemy

~disclosed to the enemy

hōs ā sē<sup>II</sup> cōercērī<sup>III</sup> nōn posse<sup>IV</sup>

=that they were not able to be  
restrained by him (Liscus)

~that they could not be  
restrained by him

#### I.XVII.IV.

QUĪN ETIAM, QUOD NECESSĀRIAM REM COĀCTUS  
CÆSARĪ ĒNŪNTIĀRIT, INTELLEGERE SĒSĒ QUANTŌ ID  
CUM PERĪCULŌ FĒCERIT, ET OB EAM CAUSAM QUAM DIŪ  
POTUERIT TACUISSE.

Quīn etiam

=yet

~nay more

---

VI ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES Ā OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCISUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCISUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

VII REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

I INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *prōpōnit*. §580

II *ā sē*, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

III *cōerceō-* *-cui*, *-citus*, *-ēre* (COM- + ARCEO), *to enclose on all sides, hold together, surround, encompass*; Morally, *to hold* (some fault, some passion, etc., or the erring or passionate person) *in check, to curb, restrain, tame, correct, etc.*

IV *hōs...posse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *ēnūntiārī*. §580

**quod necessāriam rem coāctus Cæsari ēnūntiā[ve]rit<sup>v</sup>**

=*that he, compelled, announced* ~*that though compelled by the unavoidable situation to necessity, he had disclosed the matter to Cæsar*

**intelligere sēsē<sup>II</sup>**

=*that he (Liscus) was* ~*he was well aware understanding*

**quantō<sup>III</sup> id cum periculō<sup>IV</sup> fēcerit<sup>v</sup>**

=*with how much danger he did it* ~*at how great a risk he had done it*

**et**

=*and* ~*and*

**ob eam causam**

=*for that reason* ~*for that reason*

**V quod** CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. II. CAUSAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, AND QUANDŌ TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, LIKE ANY OTHER DEPENDENT CLAUSE (SEE §580). §540 & §583

**II intelligere sēsē**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prōpōnit**. §580

**III quantus, -a, -um**, PRONOM. ADJ. (CA-), RELAT., CORREL. WITH *tantus*, of what size, how much, AS INTERROG OR ADJ., how great? how much? of what amount

**IV quantō...cum periculō**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

**V quantō...fēcerit**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

quam<sup>i</sup> diū potuerit<sup>ii</sup>

=*how long he was able*

~*as long as he could*

[se] tacuisse<sup>iii</sup>

=*[he (Liscus)] had said been silent*

~*he had been passed over in silence*

---

I **quam**, ADV. (QUI), RELAT., *in what manner, to what degree, how greatly, how, how much*; WITH ELLIPS. OF *tam, as much as, to the extent that, as...as*; In partic. In comparisons, *as, than*

II **quam...potuerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. DUM, DŌNEC, AND QUOAD, AS LONG AS, TAKE THE INDICATIVE. §555 & §583

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intelligere**. §580

# I.XVIII



CÆSAR LEARNS THAT DUMNORIX IS A TRAITOR.



## I.XVIII.I.



CÆSAR HĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE LISCĪ DUMNORĪGEM  
DĪVICIĀCĪ FRĀTREM DĒSIGNĀRĪ SENTIĒBAT;  
SED, QUOD PLŪRIBUS PRÆSENTIBUS EĀS RĒS  
IACTĀRĪ NŌLĒBAT, CELERITER CONCILIUM  
DĪMITTIT, LISCUM RETINET.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

hāc ōrātiōne<sup>I</sup> Liscī Dumnorīgem Dīviciācī frātrem dēsignārī<sup>II</sup>

=by this speech of Liscus, ~that by this speech of Liscus,  
Dumnorix, the brother of Dumnorix, the brother of  
Divitiacus, was marked out Divitiacus, was pointed out

sentiēbat<sup>III</sup>

=he as discerning by sense

~perceived

---

I **hāc ōrātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **dēsignō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DE + SIGNŌ), to mark out, point out, trace, designate, define; Fig., to point out, mark, denote, designate, describe, represent

III **sentiō, sēnsī, sēnsus, -ire** (SENT-), to discern by sense, feel, hear, see, perceive, be sensible of

sed

=but

~but

quod

=that

~as

plūribus præsētib<sup>I</sup>

=with several men (being) ~while so many were present  
present

eās rēs iactārī<sup>II</sup> nōlēbat

=he was not willing that those ~he was unwilling that these  
things be thrown about (in matters should be discussed  
conversation)

celeriter<sup>III</sup> concilium<sup>IV</sup> dīmīttit<sup>V</sup>

=he quickly departs the ~he speedily dismisses the  
conference council

I **plūribus præsētib<sup>I</sup>**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

II **iacto, -āvi, -ātum, -āre**, to throw, cast, hurl; Lit.—“semen,” to scatter; To discuss, mention, intimate, pronounce, throw out, utter, speak, say, name, propose a thing

III **celeriter**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CELER), quickly, swiftly, speedily, in haste, immediately, promptly

IV **concilium, -i**, N. (COM- + CAL-), a meeting, rendezvous; A collection of people, meeting, assembly

V **dīmīttō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere** (DĪ + MITTŌ), to send different ways, send out, send forth, send about, scatter, distribute; To separate a multitude, to break up, dissolve; and subjectively, to dismiss (from one's self), to discharge, disban



Liscum retinet<sup>I</sup> II

=(but) he holds back Liscus

~but detains Liscus

## I.XVIII.II.

QUÆRIT EX SŌLŌ EA QUÆ IN CONVENTŪ DĪXERAT.

Quærit<sup>III</sup> ex [ea] sŏlŏ<sup>IV</sup> ea

=he (Cæsar) sought from [him]

~he inquires from him when

<being> alone those (things)

alone, about those things

quæ in conventū<sup>V</sup> dīxerat

=(those things) which he had  
said in the meeting

~which he had said in the  
meeting

## I.XVIII.III.

DĪCIT LĪBERIUS ATQUE AUDĀCIUS.

---

I **dimittit, Liscum retinet**, ASYNDETON. IN THE STRUCTURE OF THE PERIOD, THE FOLLOWING RULES ARE TO BE OBSERVED: III. IN COÖRDINATE CLAUSES, THE COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS ARE FREQUENTLY OMITTED (ASYNDETON). IN SUCH CASES THE CONNECTION IS MADE CLEAR BY SOME ANTITHESIS INDICATED BY THE POSITION OF WORDS. §601III

II **retineō, -tinui, -tentus, -ēre** (RE- + TENEO), to hold back, keep back, keep, detain, retain, restrain

III **quaerō, -sivi, -situs, -ere** (QVÆS-), to seek, look for; To seek to learn, make inquiry, ask, inquire, interrogate

IV **ex sŏlŏ, quaerit** TAKING THE ABL. WITH PRÆP. SOME VERBS OF ASKING AND TEACHING MAY TAKE TWO ACCUSATIVES, ONE OF THE PERSON (DIRECT OBJECT), AND THE OTHER OF THE THING (SECONDARY OBJECT). I. SOME VERBS OF ASKING TAKE THE ABLATIVE OF THE PERSON WITH A PREPOSITION INSTEAD OF THE ACCUSATIVE. SO, ALWAYS, PETŌ (AB), QUÆRŌ (EX, AB, DE); USUALLY POSCŌ (AB), FLAGITŌ (AB), POSTULŌ (AB), AND OCCASIONALLY OTHERS. §396I

V **conventus, -ūs**, M. (COM- +BA-, VEN-), a meeting, assembly, throng

**Dīcit liberius<sup>I</sup> atque audācius**

=he (Liscus) speaks more freely  
and boldly

~he [Liscus] speaks more  
unreservedly and boldly

#### I.XVIII.IV.

EADEM SĒCRĒTŌ AB ALIIS QUÆRIT; REPERIT ESSE VĒRA:  
IPSUM ESSE DUMNORĪGEM, SUMMĀ AUDĀCIĀ, MAGNĀ  
APUD PLĒBEM PROPTER LĪBERĀLITĀTEM GRĀTIĀ,  
CUPIDUM RĒRUM NOVĀRUM.

**Eadem sēcrētō<sup>II</sup> ab aliis<sup>III</sup> quærit**

=he seeks in secret from the  
other men

~he [Cæsar] makes inquiries on  
the same points privately of  
others

**reperit<sup>IV</sup>**

=(amd) he discovers

~and discovered

**[ea] esse vĕra<sup>V VI</sup>**

=that [those things] (Lucis'  
statements) are true

- 
- I **līber, -era, -erum**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (LIB-), *free, unrestricted, unrestrained, unimpeded, unembarrassed, unshackled*; Hence, ADV., **lībĕrĕ**, *freely, unrestrictedly, without let or hinderance; frankly, openly, bold*
- II **sēcrētum, -ī**, N. (PPP. N. OF SECERNO), *a hidden thing, mystery, secret; A hidden place, hiding-place, retirement, solitude, retreat*
- III **ab aliis, quærit** TAKING THE ABL. WITH PRÆP. §396i
- IV **reperiō, repperī, repertus, -īre** (PAR-), *to = again, find, meet with, find out, discover; Fig., to find, find out, discern, get, procure, obtain*
- V **vĕrus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (VEL-), *true, real, actual, genuine; vĕrō, in truth, in fact, certainly, truly, to be sure, surely, assuredly*; TRANSF., AS A STRONGLY CORROBORATIVE ADVERSATIVE PARTICLE, *but in fact, but indeed, however* (always placed after a word)
- VI **esse vĕra**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

*ipsum esse<sup>I</sup> Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā<sup>II</sup>*

*=that Dumnorix was the very (man), (a man) with the highest daring ~that Dumnorix is the person, a man of the highest daring*

*magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem<sup>III</sup> grātiā<sup>IV</sup>, cupidum<sup>V</sup> rērum novārum<sup>VI VII</sup>*

*=(he is) in great favor among the common people on account of (his) liberality; (he is a man) eager of new situations ~in great favor with the people on account of his liberality, a man eager for a revolution*

---

**I** *ipsum esse*, INDIR. DISC. §580

**II** *summā audāciā*, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY THE GENITIVE OR THE ABLATIVE MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT PHYSICAL QUALITIES ARE OFTENER DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE. §415

**III** *liberālitās, -ātis*, F. (LIBERALIS), a characteristic of a freeman, ingenuousness, frankness, affability; In partic., generosity, liberality

**IV** *magnā...grātiā*, ABL. OF QUALITY. §415

**V** *cupidus, -a, -um*, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CVP-), longing, desiring, desirous, eager, zealous, wishing, loving, fond; Hence, *cūpidē*, ADV., eagerly, in a good and bad sense, zealously, passionately, vehemently, ardently, warmly, partially, etc.

**VI** *rērum novārum*, GEN. WITH ADJ. *cupidum*. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING AN OBJECT OF REFERENCE GOVERN THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE INCLUDE: ADJECTIVES DENOTING DESIRE, KNOWLEDGE, MEMORY, FULNESS, POWER, SHARING, GUILT, AND THEIR OPPOSITES GOVERN THE GENITIVE. §349

**VII** *novus, -a, -um*, ADJ. (NV-), new, not old, young, fresh, recent—*novæ res* signifies political innovations, a revolution; TRANSF., IN THE SUP., *nōvissimus, -a, -um*, the latest, last, hindermost, extreme—So AS SUBST., *nōvissīmi, -ōrum*, the rear of an army, the soldiers in the last line

## I.XVIII.V.

COMPLŪRĒS ANNŌS PORTŌRIA RELIQUAQUE OMNIA  
ÆDUŌRUM VECTĪGĀLIA PARVŌ PRETIŌ REDĒMPTA  
HABĒRE, PROPTEREĀ QUOD ILLŌ LICENTE CONTRĀ  
LICĒRĪ AUDEAT NĒMŌ.

**Complūrēs annōs portōria<sup>I</sup>**

=*that for severel years // the  
tariffs*

*~that for a great many years //  
tariffs*

**reliquaque omnia Æduōrum vectīgālia<sup>II</sup> parvō pretiō<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> redēmta<sup>V</sup>  
habēre<sup>VI</sup>**

=*(he) had redeemed /the tariffs/  
and all the remaining taxes of  
the Ædui at a small cost*

*~he has been in the habit of  
redeeming // and all the other  
taxes of the Ædui at a small cost*

**proptereā quod**

=*on account of that because*

*~because*

---

I **portōrium, -ī, N. (PAR-),** a tax, toll, duty, impost, custom, tariff

II **vectīgālis, -e, ADJ. (VECTIGAL),** of imposts, of taxes

III **parvō pretiō,** ABL. OF PRICE. THE PRICE OF A THING IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE.NOTE. TO THIS HEAD IS TO BE REFERRED THE ABLATIVE OF THE PENALTY. §416

IV **pretium, -ī, N. (PRA-),** a price, money value, value in exchange —“*vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere,*” for little money, cheaply (I.XVIII.V)

V **redēmtō —, —, -āre (REDIMO),** to ransom, redeem

VI INDIR. DISC. §580

**illō licente<sup>I II III</sup>**

=with that (man) (Dumnorix) ~when he bids  
bidding

**contrā<sup>IV</sup> [eum] licērī audeat<sup>V VI</sup> nēmō<sup>VII</sup>**

=no one would dare to bid ~no one dares to bid against him  
against [him]

---

**I liceor, licitus, -ērī**, DEP. (LIC-), *to bid, make a bid*

**II** During the collection of taxes, an individual or group bids to collect taxes, and the state collects from the highest bidder in advance; the winner pays the bid and afterward collects taxes in the hope of collecting extra as profit; without a rival Dumnorix allegedly bids low and therefore a low level of taxes from the people

**III illō licente**, ABL. ABS. §419

**IV contrā**, ADV. AND PRÆP., ADV. of position, *in opposition, opposite, face to face, in front, on the other side*; PRÆP., WITH ACC. (IN PROSE BEFORE ITS CASE, EXCEPT SOMETIMES A REL. PRON.), of position, *before, against, facing, towards, opposite to, contrary to, over against; Against, in opposition to, as the opponent of*

**V** SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIC. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §540 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

**VI audeō, ausus sum, -ēre** (AV-), *to venture, dare, be bold, dare to do, risk*

**VII nēmō**, M. AND F. (NE + HOMO), *no man, no one, nobody*

## I.XVIII.VI.

HIS RĒBUS ET SUAM REM FAMILIĀREM AUXISSE ET FACULTĀTĒS AD LARGIENDUM MAGNĀS COMPARĀSSE; MAGNUM NUMERUM EQUITĀTŪS SUŌ SŪMPTŪ SEMPER ALERE ET CIRCUM SĒ HABĒRE; NEQUE SŌLUM DOMĪ SED ETIAM APUD FĪNITIMĀS CĪVITĀTĒS LARGITER POSSE ATQUE HUIUS POTENTIĒ CAUSĀ MĀTREM IN BITURĪGIBUS HOMINĪ ILLĪC NŌBILISSIMŌ AC POTENTISSIMŌ COLLOCĀSSE, IPSUM EX HELVĒTIĪS UXŌREM HABĒRE, SORŌREM EX MĀTRE ET PROPINQUĀS SUĀS NŪPTUM IN ALIĀS CĪVITĀTĒS COLLOCĀSSE.

His rēbus<sup>I</sup> [eum] et suam rem familiārem<sup>II</sup> auxisse<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> et [eum] facultātēs<sup>V</sup> ad largiendum<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup> magnās comparāsse<sup>VIII</sup>

=by these circumstances [he] ~by these means he has both both has both increased his own augmented his own private personal situation and [he] property, and obtained great procured great capabilities for means for giving largesses <the purpose of> bribing

---

I **hīs rēbus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **familiāris, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FAMILIA), of a house, of a household, belonging to a family, household, domestic, private

III INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **augeō, auxī, auctus, -ēre** (AVG-), to increase, augment, enlarge, spread, extend

V **facultās, -ātis**, F. (FACILIS), capability, possibility, power, means, opportunity, skill, ability

VI **largior, -itus, -īrī**, DEP. (LARGUS), to give bountifully, lavish, bestow, dispense, distribute, impart; To give largesses, bribe

VII **ad largiendum**, ACC. OF THE GERUND EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580

magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū<sup>I II III</sup> semper alere<sup>IV V</sup>

=a great number of cavalry // ~that he maintains constantly at  
that (he; Dumnorix) always his own expense // a great  
feeds at his own expense number of cavalry

et circum sē habēre<sup>VI</sup>

=and (he) (Dumnorix) has ~and keeps about his own  
around (himself) person

neque solum domī<sup>VII</sup> sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter<sup>VIII</sup>  
posse<sup>IX</sup>

=(and) that not only at home, ~and that not only at home, but  
but even among the neighboring even among the neighboring  
states, (he) is greatly able states, he had great influence

---

I **sūmptus, -ūs**, M. (SUMO), *outlay, expense, cost, charge*

II **suō sūmptū**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN  
RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

III ABL. OF PRICE. §416

IV INDIR. DISC. §580

V **alō, alui, altus, -ere** (AL-), *to feed, nourish, support, sustain, maintain*

VI INDIR. DISC. §580

VII LOC. CASE. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND  
RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE WHERE, BY  
THE LOCATIVE. §427

VIII WIKT. **largiter**, ADV., *in abundance*

IX INDIR. DISC. §580

[sē] hominī illīc<sup>I</sup> nōbilissimō ac potentissimō<sup>II III</sup> collocāsse<sup>IV V</sup>

=*[he (Dumnorix)] had placed ~has given in marriage // to a together in marriage // to the man the most noble and most most noble and tue most able influential there man there*

atque huius potentiae<sup>VI VII</sup> causā<sup>VIII</sup> mātrem<sup>IX</sup> in Biturīgibus<sup>X</sup>

=*and with the motive of this ~and for the sake of power // (his) mother into the strengthening this influence // Bituriges his mother among the Bituriges*

- 
- I **illīc**, ADV. (ILLI + CE), *in that place, yonder, there*
- II **potēns, -entis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PART. OF *possum*), *able, mighty, strong, powerful, potent; Strong, mighty, powerful, efficacious, potent, influential*
- III **hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **conlocāsse**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370
- IV INDIR. DISC. §580
- V **locō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (LOCUS), *to place, put, lay, set, dispose, arrange; To place in marriage, give away, give in marriage, marry*
- VI **huius potentiae**, GEN. CONSTRUCTION DEPENDENT ON **causā**. PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ, GRĀTIA, FOR THE SAKE OF; ERGŌ, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE INSTAR, LIKE; ALSO WITH PRIDIĒ, THE DAY BEFORE; POSTRIDIĒ, THE DAY AFTER; TENUS, AS FAR AS. §359
- VII **potentia, -æ**, F. (POTEN), *might, force, power; Fig., political power, authority, sway, influence, eminence*
- VIII **huius potentiae causā, causā**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404
- IX **māter, -tris**, F. (MA-), *a mother*
- X **Biturīgēs, -um**, M. PL., *a people in Central Gaul*



ipsum ex Helvētiīs<sup>I</sup> uxōrem<sup>II</sup> habēre<sup>III</sup>

=that (he) himself is having a wife from the Helvetii ~that he has himself taken a wife from among the Helvetii

sorōrem<sup>IV</sup> ex mātrem<sup>V</sup> et propinquās suās nūptum<sup>VI</sup> VII in aliās cīvitatēs collocāsse<sup>VIII</sup>

=and (he) (Orgatorix) had placed together (his) sister from (her) mother (the mother's side of the family) and (he placed together) his own (female) relations to marry into other states ~and has given his sister by the mother's side and his female relations in marriage into other states

## LXVIII.VII.

FAVĒRE ET CUPERE HELVĒTIIS PROPTER EAM  
ADFINITATEM, ŌDISSE ETIAM SUŌ NŌMINE CÆSAREM ET  
RŌMĀNŌS, QUOD EŌRUM ADVENTŪ POTENTIA EIUS  
DĒMINŪTA ET DĪVICIĀCUS FRĀTER IN ANTĪQUUM  
LOCUM GRĀTIÆ ATQUE HONŌRIS SIT RESTITŪTUS.

---

I **ex Helvētiīs**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

II **uxor, -ōris**, F. a wife, spouse, consort

III **ipsum...habēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **soror, -ōris**, F. a sister

V **ex mātrem**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

VI ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

VII **nūbō, nūpsi, nūptum, -ere** (NEB-), to veil oneself, be married, marry, wed

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580

Favēre<sup>I</sup> et cupere<sup>II III</sup> Helvētiīs<sup>IV</sup> propter eam adfinitātem<sup>V</sup>

=that (he) favores and that (he) ~that he favors and wishes well  
desires (success) to the Helvetii to the Helvetii on account of this  
on account of that alliance by connection  
marriage

ōdisse<sup>VI VII</sup> etiam suō nōmine<sup>VIII</sup> Cæsarem et Rōmānōs

=(and) that (he,) in his own ~and that he hates Cæsar and  
name, hated even Cæsar and the the Romans, by his own account  
Romans

quod eōrum adventū<sup>IX</sup> potentia eius dēminūta [sit]<sup>X</sup>

=that by their arrival his power ~because by their arrival his  
was diminished power was diminished

- 
- I **faveō, fāvī, fautūrus, -ēre** (FAV-), to be favorable, be well disposed, be inclined towards, favor, promote, befriend, countenance, protect
- II **favēre et cupere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperit**. §580
- III **cupiō, -īvī, -ītus, -ere** (CVP-), to long for, desire, wish; Pregn., to be well disposed, be favorable or inclined to one, to favor, to wish well, to be interested for, etc.
- IV DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **favēre**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- V **affinitas, -ātis**, F. (AFFINIS), Relationship or alliance by marriage, esp. between a father and son-in-law
- VI INDIR. DISC. §580
- VII **ōdī, -ōsūrus, -ōdisse**, DEFECT. (OD-), to hate
- VIII **suō nōmine**, ABL. OF SPEC. §418
- IX CAN BE ABL. OF CAUSE. §404, OR ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- X **dēminuō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere** (DE + MINUŌ), to make smaller, lessen, diminish

et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum<sup>I</sup> locum grātiæ atque honōris<sup>II</sup> sit  
restitūtus<sup>III IV</sup>

=and (his) brother, Divitiacus,  
restored into the old place of  
influence and dignity

~and his brother, Divitiacus,  
restored to his former position  
of influence and dignity

### I.XVIII.VIII.

SĪ QUID ACCIDAT RŌMĀNĪS, SUMMAM IN SPEM PER  
HELVĒTIŌS RĒGNĪ OBTINENDĪ VENĪRE: IMPERIŌ POPULĪ  
RŌMĀNĪ NŌN MODO DĒ RĒGNŌ SED ETIAM DĒ EĀ QUAM  
HABEAT GRĀTIĀ DĒSPĒRĀRE.

SĪ quid<sup>V</sup> accidat<sup>VI</sup> Rŏmānīs<sup>VII</sup>

=that, if anything should happen  
to the Romans

~that, if any thing should  
happen to the Romans

- 
- I **antīquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (ANTE), *ancient, former, of old times*
- II **honor, -is**, M., *call, honor, repute, esteem* in which a person or thing is held
- III **quod...sit restitūtus**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §540 & §583
- IV **restituō, -ūī, -ūtus, -ere** (RE- + STATUO), *to set up again, replace, restore, reconstruct, rebuild, revive, renew, reform, rearrange*; In partic., *to give back, deliver up, return, restore* a thing belonging to a person or place; Trop., *to restore to a former condition, to re-establish, etc.*
- V **sī quid** = *sī aliquid*
- VI **sī...accidat**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589
- VII DAT. WITH COMP. V. **accidat**. §370

summam in spem per Helvētīos rēgnī obtinendī<sup>I</sup> venīre<sup>II</sup>

=that (he) comes into the highest hope of obtaining kingship through <the means of> the Helvetii ~he entertains the highest hope of gaining the sovereignty by the means of the Helvetii

imperīō<sup>III</sup> populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō sed etiam dē eā

=(but that) in (under) the power of the Roman people // not only concerning the throne but also from that /influence/ ~but that under the government of the Roman people // not only of royalty, but even of that

quam habeat<sup>IV</sup>

=which he has

~which he already has

grātiā dēspērāre<sup>V VI</sup>

=influence // he despairs

~influence // he despairs

---

I **rēgnī obtinendī**, OBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

II INDIR. DISC. §580

III ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

IV **quam habeat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **dēspērō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DĒ + SPĒRŌ), to be hopeless, have no hope, despair of, give up

## I.XVIII.IX.

REPERIĒBAT ETIAM IN QUÆRENDŌ CÆSAR, QUOD  
PRÆLIUM EQUESTRE ADVERSUM PAUCĪS ANTE DIĒBUS  
ESSET FACTUM, INITIUM EIUS FUGÆ FACTUM Ā  
DUMNORĪGE ATQUE EIUS EQUITIBUS (NAM EQUITĀTUĪ  
QUEM AUXILIŌ CÆSARĪ ÆDUĪ MĪSERANT DUMNORĪX  
PRÆERAT): EŌRUM FUGĀ RELIQUUM ESSE EQUITĀTUM  
PERTERRITUM.

Reperiēbat etiam in quærendō<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> Cæsar

=Cæsar was finding too, on ~Cæsar discovered too, on  
inquiring inquiring

quod prælium equestre<sup>III</sup> adversum paucīs ante diēbus<sup>IV</sup> esset  
factum<sup>V</sup>

=<as to the fact> that an ~into the unsuccessful cavalry  
unsuccessful battle of the engagement which had taken  
cavalry had been made before by place a few days before  
a few days

---

I V. SG. GERUNDIVE. NEUT. ABL.

II **in quærendō**, ABL. OF THE GERUND. THE ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED: TO EXPRESS MANNER, MEANS, CAUSE, ETC. AFTER COMPARATIVES. AFTER THE PROPOSITIONS AB, DE, EX, IN, AND (RARELY) PRO. §507

III **equester, -tris, -tre**, ADJ. (EQUES), *of a horseman, equestrian*; In partic. *Of or belonging to cavalry—"prælium" (I.XVIII.IX)*

IV **paucīs...diēbus**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH ADV. **ante**. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

V **quod...esset factum**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

initium eius fugæ factum [esse] ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus<sup>VI</sup>

=*that the beginning of the flight had been made by Dumnorix and his cavalry* ~*that the commencement of that flight had been made by Dumnorix and his cavalry*

nam equitātū<sup>II</sup>

=*for // the cavalry* ~*for // the cavalry*

quem auxiliō Cæsari<sup>III</sup> Æduī miserant

=*(the cavalry) which the Ædui had sent for <a source of> aid to Cæsar* ~*which the Ædui had sent as a source of aid to Cæsar*

Dumnorīx præerat

=*Dumnorix was set over* ~*Dumnorix was commanding*

---

VI **ā Dumnorīge...equitibus**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **Ā** OR **AB**. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES **Ā** OR **AB**) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCISUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCISUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

II DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præerat**. §370

III **auxiliō Cæsari**, DOUBLE DAT. CONSTRUCTION. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

eōrum fugā<sup>I</sup> reliquum esse equitātum perterritum<sup>II III</sup>

=that by their flight, the ~that by their flight the rest of  
remaining cavalry were the cavalry were dismayed  
frightened thoroughly

---

I ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

II **esse...perterritum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperiēbat**. §580

III **perterreō** —, -itus, **ēre** (PER + TERREŌ), to frighten thoroughly, terrify





# I.XIX



## CÆSAR CONSULTS DUMNORIX' BROTHER.



### I.XIX.I.



QUIBUS RĒBUS COGNITĪS, CUM AD HĀS SUSPĪCIŌNĒS CERTISSIMÆ RĒS ACCĒDERENT, QUOD PER FĪNĒS SĒQUANŌRUM HELVĒTIŌS TRĀDŪXISSET, QUOD OBSIDĒS INTER EŌS DANDŌS CŪRĀSSET, QUOD EA OMNIA NŌN MODO INIUSSŪ SUŌ ET CĪVITĀTIS SED ETIAM ĪNSCIENTIBUS IPSĪS FĒCISSET, QUOD Ā MAGISTRĀTŪ ÆDUŌRUM ACCŪSĀRĒTUR, SATIS ESSE CAUSÆ ARBITRĀBĀTUR QUĀRĒ IN EUM AUT IPSE ANIMADVERTERET AUT CĪVITĀTEM ANIMADVERTERE IUBĒRET.

Quibus rēbus cognitīs<sup>I II</sup>

=with these things <having ~after learning these  
been> learned circumstances

I **quibus rēbus cognitīs**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE: HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

II **cōgnōscō, -gnōvī, -gnitus, -ere** (COM- + (G)NŌSCŌ), to become acquainted with, acquire knowledge of, ascertain, learn, perceive, understand; PERF., to know

**cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimāe rēs accēderent<sup>I II</sup>**

=*when most certain things were added to those suspicions* ~*since to these suspicions the most certain facts were added*

**quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset<sup>III</sup>**

=(namely,) *that he had led the Helvetii through the territories of the Sequani* ~*viz., that he had led the Helvetii through the territories of the Sequani*

**quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs [esse]<sup>IV</sup> cūrāssent<sup>V</sup>**

=*that he had took care that (he) the hostages were <having> to be given between them* ~*that he had provided that hostages should be mutually given*

**quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū<sup>VI</sup> suō et cīvitatīs**

=*that // all these things, not only without his own command (Cæsar's) and of (his own) state's* ~*that // all these things, not only without any orders of his [Cæsar's] and of his own state's*

**sed etiam**

=*but even*

~*but even*

I **cum...accēderent**, *cum* CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

II **accēdō, -cessī, cessūrus, -ere** (AD + CĒDŌ), *to go to, come to, come near, draw near, approach, enter*; With the accessory idea of increase, *to be added*, CONSTR. WITH *ad* OR DAT.

III **quod...trādūxisset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

IV **obsides inter eōs dandōs**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

V **quod...cūrāssent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

VI **iniussus, -ūs, M.**, ONLY IN THE ABL. (IN + JUSSUS), *without command*

Inscientibus<sup>I</sup> ipsis<sup>II</sup>

=with (the Æduans) themselves ~without their [the Ædui]  
<being> unaware knowing any thing of it  
themselves

fēcisset<sup>III</sup>

=he had done ~he had done

quod ā magistrātū<sup>IV</sup> Æduōrum accūsārētur<sup>V</sup>

=that he (Dumnorix) was called ~that he [Dumnorix] was  
into account by the (chief) reproached by the [chief]  
magistrate of the Ædui magistrate of the Ædui

satis esse<sup>VI</sup> causæ

=that it was enough of (a) ~that there was sufficient reason  
reason

arbitrābātur

=he was of the opinion ~he [Cæsar] considered

I **insciēns, -entis**, ADJ. (IN + SCIĒNS), *unknowing, without knowledge, unaware*

II **inscientibus ipsis**, ABL. ABS. §419

III **quod...fēcisset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

IV **ā magistrātū**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES A OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCISUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCISUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

V **quod...accūsārētur**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

VI INDI. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrābātur**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

quārē in eum

=from what cause // into him ~why // to him  
(Dumnorix)

aut ipse animadverteret<sup>I</sup> aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret<sup>II</sup>

=either he himself should turn ~he should either punish him  
(his) mind /into him/ or he himself, or order the state to do  
should order the state (of the so  
Æduans) to turn (its) mind (to  
him)

## I.XIX.II.

HIS OMNIBUS RĒBUS ŪNUM REPUGNĀBAT, QUOD  
DĪVICIĀCĪ FRĀTRIS SUMMUM IN POPULUM RŌMĀNUM  
STUDIUM, SUMMUM IN SĒ VOLUNTĀTEM, ĒGREGIAM  
FIDEM, IŪSTITIAM, TEMPERANTIAM COGNŌVERAT; NAM  
NĒ EIUS SUPPLICIŌ DĪVICIĀCĪ ANIMUM OFFENDERET  
VERĒBĀTUR.

His omnibus rēbus<sup>III</sup> ūnum repugnābat<sup>IV</sup>

=one (thing) (however) was ~one thing [however] was  
opposed itself in/to all these opposing in all these situations  
things

---

I **animadvertō, -tī, -sus, -ere** (ANIMUM + ADVERTO), to direct the mind, give attention to, attend to, consider, regard, observe

II **quārē...animadverteret...iubēret**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUĪ OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

III **his omnibus rēbus**, INDIR. OBJ. WITH SPECIAL V. **repugnābat**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

IV **repugnō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (RE + PŪGNŌ), to fight back, oppose, make resistance, resist, struggle, defend oneself; TRANSF., In gen., to resist, make resistance; to oppose, contend against

quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium<sup>I</sup>,  
summum in sē<sup>II</sup> voluntātem, ēgregiam<sup>III</sup> fidem, iūstitiam<sup>IV</sup>,  
temperantiam<sup>V</sup> cognōverat

=that he (Cæsar) had learned of  
the goodwill toward himself  
(Cæsar), the very high zeal of  
(his) brother Divitiacus for the  
Roman people, (of his)  
extraordinary faith, justice,  
(and) moderation

~that he had learned by  
experience his brother  
Divitiacus's very high affection  
for the Roman people, his great  
affection toward him, his  
distinguished faithfulness,  
justice, and moderation

nam

=for

~for

nē eius supplicio<sup>VI VII</sup> Diviciāci animum offenderet<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=lest by his (Dumnorix')  
punishment, he might offend the  
mind of Diviacus

~lest by the punishment of this  
man, he should hurt the feelings  
of Divitiacus

I **studium, -ī**, N. (STUDEO), application, assiduity, zeal, eagerness, fondness, inclination, desire, exertion, endeavor, study; In partic. Zeal for any one; good-will, affection, attachment, devotion, favor, kindness, etc

II ACC. SG.

III **ēgregius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (EX + GREX), extraordinary, distinguished, surpassing, excellent, eminent

IV **iūstitia, -æ**, F. (IUSTUS), justice, equity, righteousness, uprightness

V **temperantia, -æ**, F. (TEMPERANS), moderation, sobriety, discretion, self-control, temperance

VI ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VII **supplicium, -ī**, N. (SUPPLEX), a kneeling, bowing down, humble entreaty, petition, supplication; Punishment, penalty, torture, torment, pain, distress, suffering

VIII **nē...offenderet**, CLAUSE OF FEARING. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH NĒ AFFIRMATIVE AND NĒ NŌN OR UT NEGATIVE. IN THIS USE NĒ IS COMMONLY TO BE TRANSLATED BY THAT, UT AND NĒ NŌN BY THAT NOT. §564

IX **offendō, -fendī, -fēnsus, -ere** (OB + FENDO), to hit, thrust, strike, dash against; To shock, offend, mortify, vex, displease one

verēbātur<sup>I</sup>

=he was fearing

~he was afraid

### I.XIX.III.

ITAQUE PRIUS QUAM QUICQUAM CŌNĀRĒTUR,  
DĪVICIĀCUM AD SĒ VOCĀRĪ IUBET ET, COTĪDIĀNĪS  
INTERPRETIBUS REMŌTĪS, PER C. VALERIUM PROCILLUM,  
PRĪNCIPEM GALLIÆ PRŌVINCIÆ, FAMILIĀREM SUUM, CUI  
SUMMAM OMNIUM RĒRUM FIDEM HABĒBAT, CUM EŌ  
COLLOQUITUR: SIMUL COMMONEFACIT QUÆ IPSŌ  
PRÆSENTE IN CONCILIŌ GALLORUM DĒ DUMNORĪGE  
SINT DICTA, ET OSTENDIT QUÆ SĒPARĀTIM QUISQUE DĒ  
EŌ APUD SĒ DĪXERIT.

Itaque prius<sup>II</sup> quam quicquam<sup>III</sup> cōnārētur<sup>IV</sup>

=therefore, before than he ~therefore, before he attempted  
attempted any thing any thing

Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī<sup>V</sup> VI

=that Divitiacus is to be ~Divitiacus to be summoned to  
summoned to him him

- 
- I **vereor, -itus, -ērī**, DEP. (VEL-), to feel awe of, to reverence, revere, respect; to fear, be afraid of any thing (good or bad); to fear or be afraid to do a thing, etc.; CONSTR. WITH ACC., WITH AN INF., the GEN., A FOLL. ne, ut, A REL.-CLAUSE, OR ABSOL.—WITH A REL.-CLAUSE, to await with fear, to fear, dread
- II **prius, -ōris**, ADJ. COMP. (PRO-), former, previous, prior, first; ADV., before, sooner, first, previously; WITH quam, AND OFTEN JOINED IN ONE WORD—priusquam, before, before that
- III **quicquam**, N. (QUIC + QUAM), PRON INDEF. AS ADJ., any, any one; SUBST., any man, anybody, any person, any one whatever, anything
- IV CLAUSE OF TIME, AKA ANTICIPATORY SUBJ. ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM TAKE SOMETIMES THE INDICATIVE SOMETIMES THE SUBJUNCTIVE: WITH ANTEQUAM OR PRIUSQUAM THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IS COMMON WHEN THE SUBORDINATE VERB IMPLIES PURPOSE OR EXPECTANCY IN PAST TIME, OR WHEN THE ACTION THAT IT DENOTES DID NOT TAKE PLACE. §551

iubet<sup>I</sup>

=he orders

~he ordered

et

=and

~and

cotīdiānīs interpretibus<sup>II</sup> remōtīs<sup>III IV</sup>=with the ordinary interpreters  
<having been> removed~when the ordinary interpreters  
had been withdrawnper C[aium] Valerium Procillum<sup>V</sup>, prīncipem Galliæ prōvinciæ,  
familiārem suum=through C[aius] Valerius  
Procillus, chief of the province of  
Gaul, his intimate acquaintance~converses with him through  
Caius Valerius Procillus, chief of  
the province of Gaul, an intimate  
friend of his

V ***Diviciācum...vocārī***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***iubet***. §580 & SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

VI ***vocō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre*** (VOC-), to call, summon, invoke, call together, convoke

I HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIŌ, §585. B. N.) §469

II ***interpres, -etis***, M. AND F. (PRAT-), a middleman, mediator, broker, factor, negotiator; An explainer, expounder, translator, interpreter—Esp., an interpreter, dragoman

III ***cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs***, ABL. ABS. §419

IV ***removeō, -mōvī, -mōtus, -ēre*** (RE- + MOVEŌ), to move back, take away, set aside, put off, drive away, withdraw, remove—Hence, ***rēmōtus, -a, -um***, P. A., removed, i.e. afar off, distant, remote

V ***Procillus, -ī***, M., a Roman name

*cui<sup>I</sup> summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat*

*=for whom he had the highest faith of all things*      *~in whom he reposed the highest confidence in every thing*

*cum eō colloquitur<sup>II</sup>*

*=he converses with that (man)*      *~converses with him*

*simul<sup>III</sup> commonefacit<sup>IV</sup>*

*=at the same time he brings to mind*      *~at the same time he reminds*

*quæ*

*=(the things) which*      *~what*

*ipsō præsente<sup>V</sup>*

*=with himself <being> present (Diviciacus)*      *~when he himself was present*

*in conciliō Gallorum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta<sup>VI</sup>*

*=had been said about Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls*      *~about Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls*

*et ostendit*

*=and spreads before*      *~and shows*

I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. FIDEM **habēbat**. §367

II **collōquor**, **-cūtus**, **collocūtus sum**, DEP. (COL- + LŌQUOR), *to talk together, converse, to hold a conversation, a parley, or a conference*; CONSTR. COMMONLY *cum aliquo, inter se*, OR ABSOL.

III **simul**, ADV. (SA -), *at the same time, together, at once, simultaneously*; INTRODUCING AN INDEPENDENT SENTENCE, *at the same time, also, likewise*—More freq. *simul et* (= *etiam*)

IV **commonefaciō**, **-fēcī**, **-factus** (COMMONEO + FACIO), *to recall, bring to mind; To remind, put in mind, admonish, impress upon*

V **ipsō præsente**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI **quæ...sint dicta**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573



quæ sēparātim<sup>I</sup>

=*(the things) which // pivately*      ~*what // privately*

quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit<sup>II</sup>

=*each man had said about him //*      ~*each had said of him // in his*  
*near him (Cæsar)*      [*Cæsar's*] *own presence*

#### I.XIX.IV.

PETIT ATQUE HORTĀTUR UT SINE EIUS OFFĒNSIŌNE  
 ANIMĪ VEL IPSE DĒ EŌ CAUSĀ COGNITĀ STATUAT VEL  
 CĪVITĀTEM STATUERE IUBEAT.

Petit<sup>III</sup>

=*he begs*      ~*he begs*

atque hortātur<sup>IV</sup>

=*and he exhorts (him)*      ~*and exhorts him*

ut sine eius offēnsiŏne<sup>V</sup> animī

=*that without offense of the*      ~*that, without offense to his*  
*mind of him*      *feelings*

---

I    **sēparātim**, ADV. (SEPARATUS), *asunder, apart, separately, severally*

II    **quæ...dixerit**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

III    **petō, -īvi, petitus, -ere** (PET-), *to strive for, seek, aim at, repair to, make for, travel to*

IV    **hortor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP., *to urge, press, incite, instigate, encourage, cheer, exhort*

V    **offēnsiō, -ōnis**, F. (OFFENDO), *a striking against, tripping, stumbling; Trop., An offence given to any one, disfavor, aversion, disgust, dislike, hatred, discredit, bad reputation; An offence which one receives; displeasure, vexation*

vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā<sup>I</sup> statuat

=with the cause <having been> ~he may either himself pass  
examined, he should either judgment on him [Dumnorix]  
himself decide about that (man) after trying the case  
(Dumnorix)

vel

=or

~or else

cīvitātem statuere

=the (Æduan) state to decide

~the [Æduan] state to do so

iubeat<sup>II</sup>

=he should order

~order

---

I **causā cognitā**, ABL. ABS. §420

II **ut...statuat...iubeat**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

# I.XX



CÆSAR PARDONS DUMNORIX, BUT WARNS HIM.



## I.XX.I.



DĪVICIĀCUS MULTĪS CUM LACRIMĪS CÆSAREM  
COMPLEXUS OBSECRĀRE CÆPIT NĒ QUID  
GRAVIUS IN FRĀTREM STATUERET: SCĪRE SĒ  
ILLA ESSE VĒRA, NEC QUEMQUAM EX EŌ PLŪS  
QUAM SĒ DOLŌRIS CAPERE, PROPTEREĀ QUOD, CUM IPSE  
GRĀTIĀ PLŪRIMUM DOMĪ ATQUE IN RELIQUĀ GALLIĀ,  
ILLE MINIMUM PROPTER ADULĒSCENTIAM POSSET, PER SĒ  
CRĒVISET; QUIBUS OPIBUS AC NERVĪS NŌN SŌLUM AD  
MINUENDAM GRĀTIAM SED PÆNE AD PERNICIEM SUAM  
ŪTERĒTUR.

Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> Cæsarem complexus<sup>III</sup> [eum]  
obsecrāre<sup>IV</sup> cœpit

=Divitiacus, <having> embraced ~Divitiacus, embracing Cæsar,  
Cæsar, begins to beseech [him], begins to implore him, with  
with many tears many tears

---

I **multīs cum lacrimīs**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

II **lacrima, -æ**, F., a tear

III **complector, -plexus, -ī**, DEP. (PARC-, PLEC-), to clasp, embrace, grasp

IV **obsecrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (OB + SACRO), to beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate, conjure

*nē* quid gravius in frātre*m* statueret<sup>I</sup>

=*that he might not decide* ~*not to pass any very severe anything too severe upon (his) sentence upon his brother brother*

*scīre sē*<sup>II</sup>

=(*saying*) *that he knows* ~*saying, that he knows*

*illa esse*<sup>III</sup> *vēra*

=*that those things are true* ~*that those charges were true*

*nec* quemquam ex eō plūs quam *sē* dolōris<sup>IV</sup> capere<sup>V</sup>

=(*and*) *that was anyone taking more of pain on account of that (man) (Dumnorix) than (he) himself* ~*and that nobody suffered more pain // than he himself did*

propterea *quod*

=*on account of that because* ~*on that account*

---

I *nē...statueret*, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE *NĒ*) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

II *scīre sē*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *obsecrāre*. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III *illa esse*, INDIRECT DISCOURSE DEPENDENT ON *scīre*. §580

IV PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

V *capiō, cēpī, captus, -ere* (CAP-), *to take in hand, take hold of, lay hold of, take, seize, grasp*

*cum ipse grātiā<sup>I</sup> plūrimum domī<sup>II</sup> atque in reliquā Galliā<sup>III</sup> [posset]*  
 =when he himself (Divitiacus) ~for when he himself could effect  
 [was] most [able] by (his) a very great deal by his influence  
 kindness at home (in Ædui) and at home and in the rest of Gaul  
 in remaining Gaul

*ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam<sup>IV</sup> posset<sup>V</sup>*  
 =that (man) (Dumnorix) was ~and he [Dumnorix] very little  
 least able on account of (his) on account of his youth  
 youth

*per sē crēvisset<sup>VI VII</sup>*  
 =he (Dumnorix) had grown (in ~the latter had become powerful  
 resources and strength) by with their help  
 <means of> himself  
 (Divitiacus)

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II LOC. CASE. SPECIAL USES OF PLACE FROM WHICH, TO WHICH, AND WHERE ARE THE FOLLOWING: VI. THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IS USED TO DENOTE THE PLACE FROM WHICH IN CERTAIN IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS. §428vi

III *reliquā Galliā*, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429

IV *adulēscēntia*, -æ, F. (ADULESCENS), youth

V *cum...posset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VI *crēscō, crēvī, crētus, -ere* (CER-), to come into being, spring up, Fig., to grow, increase, be enlarged, be strengthened

VII *propterea quod...crēvisset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

quibus<sup>I</sup> opibus<sup>II</sup> ac nervīs<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> nōn solum ad minuendam<sup>V</sup> <sup>VI</sup> grātiām<sup>VII</sup>

=with which power and strength (he used) not only for <the purpose of> minimising (his) (Divitiacus') influence ~and which power and strength he used not only to the lessening of his [Divitiacus] popularity

sed pæne ad perniciem<sup>VIII</sup> suam ūterētur<sup>IX</sup>

=but it was nearly used toward his own destruction ~but it was almost used for his own ruin

## I.XX.II.

SĒSĒ TAMEN ET AMŌRE FRĀTERNŌ ET EXĪSTIMĀTIŌNE  
VULGĪ COMMOVĒRĪ.

- 
- I A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.I); *qui...prælium committunt* (Historical Present), *they* (or *and they*)...joined battle (I.XV)
- II (**ops**), **opis** (NO NOM. OR DAT. SG.), F. (AP-), *Power, might, strength, ability, in abstr.; In concr., means of any kind that one possesses; property, substance, wealth, riches, treasure; military or political resources, might, power, influence, etc. (IN THIS SIGNIF. MOSTLY IN PL.)*
- III **nervus**, **-ī**, M., *a sinew, tendon, muscle; Fig., a sinew, nerve, vigor, force, power, strength*
- IV **opibus ac nervīs**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. *ūterētur*. THE DEPONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410
- V V. SG. GERUNDIVE. F. ACC.
- VI **minuō**, **-uī**, **-ūtus**, **-ere** (MAN-), *to make small, lessen, diminish, divide into small pieces; Fig., to lessen, diminish, lower, reduce, weaken, abate, restrict*
- VII **ad minuendam grātiām**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506
- VIII **perniciēs**, **-ēī**, F. (PER + NEC-), *destruction, death, ruin, overthrow, disaster, calamity, mischief*
- IX **quibus...ūterētur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Sēsē tamen et amōre<sup>I</sup> frāternō<sup>II</sup> et exīstimātiōne<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> vulgī<sup>V</sup>  
commovērī<sup>VI</sup>

=*but he (Diviciacus) nonetheless* ~*that he, however, was*  
*was moved both by brotherly* *influenced both by fraternal*  
*love and by the judgement of the* *affection and by public opinion*  
*masses*

### I.XX.III.

QUOD SĪ QUID EĪ Ā CÆSARE GRAVIUS ACCIDISSET, CUM  
IPSE EUM LOCUM AMĪCITIÆ APUD EUM TENĒRET,  
NĒMINEM EXĪSTIMĀTŪRUM NŌN SUĀ VOLUNTĀTE  
FACTUM; QUĀ EX RĒ FUTŪRUM UTĪ TŌTĪUS GALLIÆ  
ANIMĪ Ā SĒ ĀVERTERENTUR.

Quod

=*that*

~*but*

sī quid ei<sup>VII</sup> ā Cæsare<sup>VIII</sup> gravius accidisset<sup>IX</sup>

=*if anything too grave should* ~*if any thing very severe by*  
*happen to him (Dumnorix) by* *Cæsar should befall him*  
*(at the hands of) Cæsar*

---

I **amor, -ōris**, M. (AM-), *love* (to friends, parents, etc.; and also in a low sense; hence in gen., like *amo*, while *caritas*, like *diligere*, is esteem, regard, etc.; hence *amor* is used also of brutes, but *caritas* only of men; V. AMO INIT.)

II **frāternus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FRATER), *of a brother, brotherly, fraternal*

III **exīstimātiō, -ōnis**, F. (EXISTIMO), *a judging, judgment, opinion, supposition, decision, estimate, verdict*

IV **amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V WIKI. **vulgus, -i**. M. N., *the great mass, the multitude, the people, public*

VI **sēsē...commovērī**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VII DAT. WITH COMP. V. **accidisset**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret<sup>i</sup>

=since he himself held that place of friendship among him (Cæsar) ~since he himself held such a place in Cæsar's friendship

nēminem exīstimātūrum [esse]<sup>ii</sup>

=no one would think ~no one would think

nōn suā voluntāte<sup>iii</sup> factum [esse]<sup>iv</sup>

=that (it) was not done by his volition ~that it had been done without his consent

VIII *ā Cæsare*, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *A* OR *AB*. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES *A* OR *AB*) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS *occisus gladiō*, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, *occisus ab hoste*, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

IX *sī quid...accidisset*, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *scīre*. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

I *cum...tenēret*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II *quod...nēminem exīstimātūrum*, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

III *suā voluntāte*, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. I. TO THIS HEAD ARE TO BE REFERRED MANY EXPRESSIONS WHERE THE ABLATIVE EXPRESSES THAT IN ACCORDANCE WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. NOTE. AS THE ROMANS HAD NO SUCH CATEGORIES AS WE MAKE, IT IS IMPOSSIBLE TO CLASSIFY ALL USES OF THE ABLATIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (ORIGINALLY INSTRUMENTAL) IS CLOSELY AKIN TO THAT OF MANNER, AND SHOWS SOME RESEMBLANCE TO MEANS AND CAUSE. §418i

IV INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *exīstimātūrum*. §580



*quā ex rē futūrum [esse]*

*=that from which thing it would be*

*~from which circumstance it would arise*

*utī tōtīus Galliæ animī ā sē<sup>I</sup> āverterentur<sup>II</sup>*

*=that the feelings of all Gaul would be turned away (i.e. disinclined) from him*

*~that the affections of the whole of Gaul would be estranged from him*

#### I.XX.IV.

HÆC CUM PLŪRIBUS VERBĪS FLĒNS Ā CÆSARE PETERET, CÆSAR EIUS DEXTRAM PRĒNDIT; CŌNSŌLĀTUS ROGAT FĪNEM ŌRANDI FACIAT; TANTĪ EIUS APUD SĒ GRATIAM ESSE OSTENDIT UTĪ ET REĪ PŪBLICÆ INIŪRIAM ET SUUM DOLŌREM EIUS VOLUNTĀTĪ AC PRECIBUS CONDŌNET.

*Hæc cum plūribus verbīs<sup>III</sup> IV flēns<sup>V</sup> VI ā Cæsare<sup>VII</sup> peteret<sup>VIII</sup>*

*=as he, crying, was begging these (things) from Cæsar with several words*

*~as he was with tears begging these things of Cæsar in many words*

---

I *ā sē*, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

II *quā ex rē futūrum utī...āverterentur*, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

III *plūribus verbīs*, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV *verbum, -ī, N., a word*

V PART. SG. PRES. MASC. NOM.

VI *flēō, flēvī, flētus, -ēre (FLA-), to weep, cry, shed tears, lament, wail*

VII *ā Cæsare*, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

VIII *cum...peteret*, *cum* CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

**Cæsar eius dextram<sup>I</sup> prændit<sup>II</sup>**

=*Cæsar takes his (Diviciacus')* ~*Cæsar takes his right hand right (hand)*

**cōnsōlātus<sup>III</sup> rogat**

=(and) (Cæsar) <having> ~*and, comforting him, begs him comforted (him; Diviciacus), asks*

**finem ōrandi<sup>IV</sup> v faciat<sup>VI</sup>**

=*that he make an end of* ~*to make an end of entreating speaking*

- 
- I **dextra, -æ**, F. (DEXTER), SC. *manus, the right hand* (freq. a sign of greeting, of fidelity; a symbol of strength, courage, etc.)
- II **prēndo, -dī, -sus, -ere** (HED-), *to lay hold of, grasp, snatch, seize, catch, take*
- III **cōnsōlor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (CŌN + SŌLOR), *to encourage, animate, console, cheer, comfort*
- IV SUBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504
- V **ōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (OS), *to speak; To pray, beg, beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate*
- VI HORTATORY SUBJ. EXPRESSING COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. VERBS OF COMMANDING, SUCH AS *rogat*, IN THIS CASE, SOMETIMES TAKE THE SUBJ. WITHOUT *ut*. VOLŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS, THE IMPERSONALS LICET AND OPORTET, AND THE IMPERATIVES DIC AND FAC OFTEN TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITHOUT UT. I. VERBS OF COMMANDING AND THE LIKE OFTEN TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITHOUT UT. NOTE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE USED TO EXPRESS A COMMAND IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §565I & ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

*tantī<sup>i</sup> eius apud sē gratiam esse<sup>ii</sup>*

*=that the regard of him ~that his regard for him is of so  
(Divicius) among him is so great account  
great*

*ostendit*

*=(and) he shows*

*~and makes known*

*utī et reī pūblicæ<sup>iii</sup> iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac  
precibus condōnet<sup>iv</sup> v*

*=that he pardons both the injury ~that he pardons both the  
of the republic and his own pain, injuries of the republic and his  
by his volition and entreaties own anguish, at his volition and  
prayers*

## I.XX.V.

DUMNORĪGEM AD SĒ VOCAT, FRĀTREM ADHIBET; QUÆ IN  
EŌ REPREHENDAT OSTENDIT, QUÆ IPSE INTELLEGAT,  
QUÆ CĪVITĀS QUERĀTUR PRŌPŌNIT; MONET UT IN  
RELIQUUM TEMPUS OMNĒS SUSPĪCĪŌNĒS VĪTET;  
PRÆTERITA SĒ DĪVICIĀCŌ FRĀTRĪ CONDŌNĀRE DĪCIT.

- 
- I GEN. OF QUALITY EXPRESSING INDEFINITE VALUE. TWO NEGATIVES ARE EQUIVALENT TO AN AFFIRMATIVE. MANY COMPOUNDS OR PHRASES OF WHICH *NŌN* IS THE FIRST PART EXPRESS AN INDEFINITE AFFIRMATIVE: *NŌN NŪLLUS*, SOME; *NŌN NŪLLI* (= *ALIQUĪ*), SOME FEW, §326i & CERTAIN ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY ARE USED IN THE GENITIVE TO DENOTE INDEFINITE VALUE. SUCH ARE *MĀGNĪ*, *PARVĪ*, *TANTĪ*, *QUANTĪ*, *PLŪRIS*, *MINŌRIS*. NOTE. THESE ARE REALLY GENITIVES OF QUALITY (§345ii). §417
- II *sē grātiam esse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *ostendit*. §580
- III *reī pūblicæ*, OBJ. GEN. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS USED WITH NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS. §347
- IV *condōnō*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*, *-āre* (CON + *DŌNŌ*), to give, present, deliver, surrender, abandon; To pardon, remit, overlook, forbear to punish
- V *utī...condōnet*, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat

=he calls Dumnorix to himself      ~he summons Dumnorix to him

frātre[m] adhibet<sup>I</sup>

=(and) he summons (his) brother      ~he brings in his brother

quāe in eō reprehendat<sup>II III</sup>

=what (things) he censures in      ~what he censures in him  
that (man)

ostendit

=he points out      ~he points out

quāe ipse intellegat<sup>IV</sup>

=what (things) he himself knows      ~what he of himself perceives

quāe cīvītās querātur<sup>V</sup>

=(and) what (things) the state      ~and what the state complains  
complains of      of

prōpōnit

=he lays forth      ~he lays before him

monet<sup>VI VII</sup>

=he warns (Dumnorix)      ~he warned him

I **adhibeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (AD + HABEŌ), to hold toward, turn to, apply, add to; Esp. Of persons, to bring one to a place, to summon, to employ

II **quāe...reprehendat**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

III **reprehendō, -endī, -ēnsus, -ere** (RE- + PREHENDŌ), to hold back, hold fast, take hold of, seize, catch; In partic., to check, restrain an erring person or (more freq.) the error itself; hence, by meton., to blame, censure, find fault with, reprove, rebuke, reprehend

IV **quāe...intellegat**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

V **quāe...querātur**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet<sup>I</sup> II

=that he should avoid all ~to avoid all grounds of  
suspicions for the remaining suspicion in the future  
time

præterita<sup>III</sup> sē Diviciācō frātrī<sup>IV</sup> condōnāre<sup>V</sup>

=that he pardons the bygones ~that he pardons the past, for  
for (his) brother Divitiacus the sake of his brother,  
Divitiacus

dīcit<sup>VI</sup>

=he says

~he said

## I.XX.VI.

DUMNORĪGĪ CUSTŌDĒS PŌNIT, UT QUÆ AGAT,  
QUIBUSCUM LOQUĀTUR SCĪRE POSSIT.

VI HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIŌ, §585. B. N.) §469

VII moneō, -uī, -itus, -ēre (MAN-), to remind, put in mind of, admonish, advise, warn, instruct, teach

I vītō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (VIC-), to shun, seek to escape, avoid, evade

II ut...vītet, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

III prætereō, -iī, -itus, -ire (PRÆTER + EŌ), to go by, go past, pass by, pass; SUBST., prætērīta, -ōrum, N., things gone by, the past

IV Diviciācō frātrī, DAT. WITH COMP. V. condōnāre. §370

V sē...condōnāre, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON dīcit. §580

VI HIST. PRES. §469

Dumnorīgī<sup>I</sup> custōdēs<sup>II</sup> pōnit<sup>III</sup>

=he places overseers over ~he posted watchers over  
Dumnorix Dumnorix

ut

=<in order> that ~so that

quæ agat<sup>IV</sup>

=what (things) he may do ~what he did

quibuscum loquātur<sup>V VI</sup>

=(and) with whom he may talk ~and with whom he  
communicated

scīre<sup>VII</sup> possit<sup>VIII</sup>

=he may be able to know ~to know

---

I DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

II **custōs, -ōdis**, M. and F. (SCV-), a guard, watch, preserver, keeper, overseer, protector, defender, attendant

III HIST. PRES. §469

IV **quæ...agat**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

V **quibuscum...loquātur**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

VI **loquor, -cūtus, -ī**, DEP. (LAC-), to speak, talk, say, tell, mention, utter

VII **sciō, -ivī, -ītus, -īre** (SAC-), to know, understand, perceive, have knowledge of, be skilled in

VIII **ut...possit**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

# I.XXI



## CÆSAR PLANS TO CRUSH THE HELVETIANS.



### I.XXI.I.



ŌDEM DIĒ AB EXPLŌRĀTŌRIBUS CERTIOR  
FACTUS HOSTĒS SUB MONTE CŌNSĒDISSE  
MĪLIA PASSUUM AB IPSĪUS CASTRĪS OCTŌ,  
QUĀLIS ESSET NĀTŪRA MONTIS ET QUĀLIS IN  
CIRCUITŪ ASCĒNSUS, QUĪ COGNŌSCERENT MĪSIT.

Eōdem diē<sup>I</sup> ab explōrātōribus<sup>II</sup> certior factus

=(him) (Caesar) <having been> ~being on the same day  
made more certain by scouts on informed by his scouts  
the same day

---

I **eōdem diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **ab explōrātōribus**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **ā** OR **ab**. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES **ā** OR **ab**) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse<sup>III</sup> mīlia<sup>IV</sup> passuum<sup>V</sup> ab ipsius castris octō

=that the enemy had settled at the foot of a mountain eight thousand of paces from his own camp ~that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain eight miles from his own camp

quālis<sup>IV</sup> esset<sup>V</sup> nātūra montis

=what sort of nature was of the mountain ~what the nature of the mountain was

et quālis in circuitū<sup>VI</sup> ascēnsus<sup>VII</sup>

=and of what sort of ascent (had been) in a revolution ~and what kind of an ascent on every side

quī cognōscerent<sup>VIII</sup>

=(those men) who might learn ~to ascertain

III **cōnsīdō, -sēdī, -sessus, -ere** (CŌN + SĪDŌ), to sit down, take seats, be seated, settle; To settle, take up an abode, stay, make a home; To encamp, pitch a camp, take post, station oneself

IV ACC. OF EXTENT OF SPACE. EXTENT OF SPACE IS EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. II. DISTANCE WHEN CONSIDERED AS EXTENT OF SPACE IS PUT IN THE ACCUSATIVE; WHEN CONSIDERED AS DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, IN THE ABLATIVE (§414). §425II

V PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

IV **quālis, -e**, PRONOM. ADJ. (CA-), INTERROG. *how constituted, of what sort, of what nature, what kind of a*

V **quālis esset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VI **circuitus, ūs**, M. (CIRCUMEO), *a going round, circling, revolving, revolution; A circuit, compass, way around*

VII **ascēnsus, -ūs**, M. (ASCENDO), *a climbing, ascent*

VIII **quī cognōscerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUĪ OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531



[explōrātōrēs] mīsīt

=*he sent [scouts]*

~*he sent persons*

## I.XXI.II.

RENŪNTIĀTUM EST FACILEM ESSE.

Renūntiātum est

=*it was announced*

~*word was brought back*

facilem esse<sup>I</sup>

=*that (it) was easy*

~*that it was easy*

## I.XXI.III.

DĒ TERTIĀ VIGILIĀ T. LABIĒNUM, LĒGĀTUM PRŌ  
PRÆTŌRE, CUM DUĀBUS LEGIŌNIBUS ET EĪS DUCIBUS QUĪ  
ITER COGNŌVERANT SUMMUM IUGUM MONTIS  
ASCENDERE IUBET; QUID SUĪ CŌNSILĪ SIT OSTENDIT.

Dē tertiā vigiliā<sup>II</sup>

=*concerning the third watch*

~*during the third watch*

T[itum] Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prætōre<sup>III</sup>, cum duābus legiōnibus  
et eīs ducibus

=*T[itus] Labienus, (his)  
lieutenant in behalf of the leader  
// with two legions, and with  
those men (as) guides*

~*Titus Labienus, his lieutenant  
with praetorian powers // with  
two legions, and with those as  
guides*

I **facilem esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **renūntiātum est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **dē tertiā vigiliā**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

III **prætor, -ōris**, M. (PRÆ + I-), a leader, head, chief, president, chief magistrate, chief executive, commander

quī iter cognōverant

=(the two legions and those men as guides) who had become acquainted with the route ~who had examined the road

summum iugum montis ascendere<sup>I</sup>

=to ascend to the highest ridge of the mountain ~to ascend to the highest ridge of the mountain

iubet<sup>II</sup>

=he orders ~he orders

quid suī cōsiliī sit<sup>III</sup>

=what is of his own plan ~what his plan is

ostendit

=he exposes to view ~he explains

#### I.XXI.IV.

IPSE DĒ QUĀRTĀ VIGILIĀ EÖDEM ITINERE QUŌ HOSTĒS  
IERANT AD EŌS CONTENDIT EQUITĀTUMQUE OMNEM  
ANTE SĒ MITTIT.

Ipsē dē quārtā vigiliā<sup>IV</sup> eōdem itinere<sup>V</sup>

=he himself, during the fourth watch // by the same route ~he himself during the fourth watch // by the same route

I ***T. Labiēnum...ascendere***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***iubet***. §580

II HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO. §585. B. N.) §469

III ***quid...sit***, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

IV ***dē tertiā vigiliā***, ABL. OF TIME. §423

V ***eōdem itinere***, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

quō hostēs ierant

=*by which the enemy had gone*      ~*by which the enemy had gone*

ad eōs contendit<sup>I</sup>

=*he hastens toward them*      ~*hastens to them*

equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit<sup>II</sup>

=*and he sends all the cavalry before himself*      ~*and sends on all the cavalry before him*

### I.XXI.V.

P. CŌNSIDIUS, QUĪ REĪ MĪLITĀRIS PERĪTISSIMUS  
HABĒBĀTUR ET IN EXERCITŪ L. SULLÆ ET POSTEĀ IN M.  
CRASSĪ FUERAT, CUM EXPLŌRĀTŌRIBUS PRÆMITTITUR.

P[ūblius]<sup>III</sup> Cōnsidius<sup>IV</sup>

=*P[ublius] Considius*      ~*Publius Considius*

quī rei<sup>V</sup> militāris perītissimus<sup>VI</sup> habēbātur

=*who was held as the most experienced of military affairs*      ~*who was reputed to be very experienced in military affairs*

---

I HIST. PRES. §469

II HIST. PRES. §469

III **Pūblius, -ī**, M., a Roman first name

IV **Cōnsidius, -ī**, M., *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army

V OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. §348

VI **perītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PAR-), WITH COMP. AND SUP. *experienced, practised, trained, skilled, skilful, expert*

et in exercitū L[ūci] Sullæ<sup>I</sup> et postea<sup>II</sup> in M[arci] Crassī<sup>III</sup> fuerat  
 =and he had been in the army of ~and had been in the army of  
 L[ucius] Sulla, and afterward in Lucius Sulla, and afterward in  
 (that of) M[arcus] Crassus that of Marcus Crassus

cum explorātōribus præmittitur<sup>IV</sup>  
 =is sent forward with the scouts ~is sent forward with the scouts

- 
- I **Sulla, -ae**, M., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, born 138 B.C.; consul 88, dictator 81-79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first Civil War, enemy of Marius; died 78 B.C.; *Faustus Cornelius Sulla*, son of the dictator; *Publius Cornelius Sulla*, nephew of the dictator, who fought under Caesar
- II **postea**, ADV. (POST + EA), *after this, after that, hereafter, thereafter, afterwards, later*; **posteaquam** (or separately as, **postea quam**), *after that*
- III **Crassus, -i**, M., *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, member of the triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey, consul in 55 B.C., perished in disastrous Parthian expedition; *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir, lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, 58-56 B.C., returning to Rome in 55 B.C. he followed his father to the East and fell in the same battle, 53 B.C.
- IV HIST. PRES. §469

# I.XXII



THROUGH FALSE INFORMATION THE PLAN FAILS.



## I.XXII.I.



RĪMĀ LŪCE, CUM SUMMUS MŌNS Ā LABIĒNŌ  
TENĒRĒTUR, IPSE AB HOSTIUM CASTRĪS NŌN  
LONGIUS MĪLLE ET QUĪNGENTĪS PASSIBUS  
ABESSET, NEQUE, UT POSTEĀ EX CAPTĪVĪS  
COMPERIT, AUT IPSĪUS ADVENTUS AUT LABIĒNĪ  
COGNITUS ESSET, CŌNSIDIUS EQUŌ ADMISSŌ AD EUM  
ACCURRIT, DĪCIT MONTEM QUEM Ā LABIĒNŌ OCCUPĀRĪ  
VOLUERIT AB HOSTIBUS TENĒRĪ: ID SĒ Ā GALLICĪS ARMĪS  
ATQUE ĪNSIGNIBUS COGNŌVISSE.

Prīmā<sup>1</sup> lūce<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=at first light

~at day-break

- 
- I **prīmus, -a, um**, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; WITH *ut, ubi, simulac, cum.*, *as soon as ever, as soon as*; **prīmum**, *at first, first, in the first place, in the beginning*—In enumerations, WITH A FOLL. *deinde, tum*
- II **prīmā lūce**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- III **lūx, lūcis**, F. (LVC-), *light, brightness*; In partic., *the light of day, daylight, day*; “*prīmā luce ad eum accurrit*,” *at daybreak, dawn of day* (I.XXII.I)

**cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō<sup>I</sup> tenērētur**

=when the top of the mountain  
was held by (Titus) Labienus

~when the summit of the  
mountain was in the possession  
of Titus Labienus

**ipse ab hostium castrīs<sup>II</sup> nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus<sup>III</sup>  
abesset<sup>IV</sup>**

=and he himself was not farther  
than 1000 and 500 of paces from  
the camp of the enemy

~and he himself was not further  
off than a mile and half from the  
enemy's camp

**neque**

=neither

~nor

**ut<sup>V</sup> postea ex captīvīs<sup>VI VII</sup> comperit<sup>VIII</sup>**

=as he afterward obtained  
knowledge from the captives

~as he afterward ascertained  
from the captives

I **ā Labiēnō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **Ā** OR **AB**. §405

II **ab...castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH **AB** OR **EX**). §401

III **mīlle et quīngentīs passibus**, ABL. OF COMPARISON. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE IS OFTEN FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE (THIS IS A BRANCH OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. THE OBJECT WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS COMPARED IS THE STARTING-POINT FROM WHICH WE RECKON. THUS, "CICERO IS ELOQUENT"; BUT, STARTING FROM HIM WE COME TO CATO, WHO IS "MORE SO THAN HE.") SIGNIFYING THAN. §406

IV **cum...tenērētur...abesset**, **cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH **CUM** AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

V **ut** + indic. frequently means *as* or *when*

VI **ex captīvīs**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

VII **captīva**, -**æ**, f. (CAPTIVUS), *a female captive, woman prisoner*

VIII **comperiō**, -**perī**, -**pertus**, -**ire** (PAR-), *to obtain knowledge of, find out, ascertain, learn*

aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset<sup>I</sup>

=had either the arrival of ~had either his arrival or that of himself or (the arrival) of Labienus been discovered  
Labienus been known

Cōnsidius

=Considius

~Considius

equō admissō<sup>II III</sup>

=with (his) horse <having been> ~upon giving his horse reins  
let go

ad eum accurrit

=he runs up to that (man)

~comes up to him

dīcit

=(and) he says

~says

montem

=that the mountain

~that the mountain

quem ā Labiēnō<sup>IV</sup> occupārī voluerit<sup>V</sup>

=which he (Cæsar) wished to be ~which he [Cæsar] wished to be  
seized // by Labienus seized // by Labienus

---

I **cognitus esset**, THIS IS A CONTINUATION OF THE *cum* CLAUSE ABOVE. §406

II **admittō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere** (AD + MITTŌ), to send to, let go, let loose, let come, admit, give access; Of a horse, to let go, give reins

III **equō admissō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

IV **ā Labiēnō**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

V **quem...voluerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

**ab hostibus<sup>VI</sup> tenērī<sup>VII</sup>**

=(that mountain) is held by the enemy ~is in possession of the enemy

**id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus<sup>III IV</sup> cognōvisse<sup>V</sup>**

=that he had known it by the Gallic arms and by ensigns ~that he has discovered this by the Gallic arms and regalia

## I.XXII.II.

CÆSAR SUĀS COPIĀS IN PROXIMUM COLLEM SUBDŪCIT,  
ACIEM ĪNSTRUIT.

**Cæsar suās copiās in proximum collem<sup>VI</sup> subdūcit**

=Cæsar leads up his own forces to the nearest hill ~Cæsar leads off his forces to the next hill

**aciem<sup>VII</sup> ĩnstruit<sup>VIII IX</sup>**

=(and) he inserts a battle line ~[and] drew up in battle-order

VI **ab hostibus**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

VII **montem...tenērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dīcit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **insigne, -is**, N. (INSIGNIS), a mark, indication, proof, sign, token, signal; USU. PL., attire, uniform, costume, regalia

IV **ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

V **sē...cognōvisse**, INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §580

VI **collis, -is**, M. (CEL-), an elevation, high ground, hill

VII **aciēs, -ēī**, F. (AC-), a sharp edge, point, cutting part; TRANSF. Of the sense or faculty of sight, Keeness of look or glance, sharpness of vision or sight; In milit. lang., the front of an army (conceived of as the edge of a sword), line of battle, battle-array; The battlearray; in concr., an army drawn up in order of battle

VIII HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469



## LXXII.III.

LABIĒNUS, UT ERAT EĪ PRÆCEPTUM Ā CÆSARE NĒ  
PRÆLIUM COMMITTERET, NISI IPSIUS CŌPIÆ PROPE  
HOSTIUM CASTRA VĪSÆ ESSENT, UT UNDIQUE ŪNŌ  
TEMPORE IN HOSTĒS IMPETUS FIERET, MONTE OCCUPĀTŌ  
NOSTRŌS EXSPECTĀBAT PRÆLIŌQUE ABSTINĒBAT.

Labiēnus

=*Labienus*

~*Labienus*

ut erat eī præceptum<sup>I</sup> ā Cæsare<sup>II</sup>

=*as it was ordered to him by  
Cæsar*

~*as he had been ordered by  
Cæsar*

nē prœlium committeret<sup>III</sup>

=*that he should not join battle*

~*not to come to an engagement*

nisi ipsius cōpiæ prope<sup>IV</sup> hostium castra vīsæ essent<sup>V</sup>

=*unless his (Cæsar's) own forces  
should be seen near the camp of  
the enemy*

~*unless [Cæsar's] own forces  
were seen near the enemy's  
camp*

---

IX **instruō, -ūxī, -ūctus, -ere** (IN + STRUŌ), *to build in, insert; Of troops, to form, set in order, draw up, array*

I **præcipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (PRÆ + CAPIO), *to take beforehand, get in advance; To give rules, advise, admonish, warn, inform, instruct, teach, enjoin, direct, bid, order*

II **ā Cæsare**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

III **nē...committeret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

IV **prope**, ADV. AND PREP. PRO. AND DEMONSTR. (SUFF. -PE), ADV., *near, nigh*; PREP. WITH ACC., Lit., *in space, near, near by, hard by*

ut undique ūnō tempore<sup>VI</sup> in hostēs impetus<sup>VII</sup> fieret<sup>VIII</sup>

=<in order> that an attack might be made against the enemy from all parts at one time ~that the attack upon the enemy might be made on every side at the same time

monte occupātō<sup>IV</sup>

=with the mountain <having been> seized ~after having taken possession of the mountain

nostrōs [milītēs] exspectābat

=he was waiting for our [soldiers] ~waiting for our men

prœliōque<sup>V</sup> abstinēbat<sup>VI</sup>

=and he was refraining from battle ~and refraining from battle

V **nisi...visæ essent**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

VI **ūnō tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

VII **impetus**, -ūs, M. (IN + PET-), an attack, assault, onset

VIII **ut...fieret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

IV **monte occupātō**, ABL. ABS. §420

V ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VI **abstineō**, -tinuī, -tentum, -ēre (ABS + TENE), to keep back, keep off, hold back; NEUTR., *abstinere*, to abstain from a thing—CONSTR. WITH ABL., *ab*, INF., *quin* or *quominus*, THE GEN., OR ABSOL.

## I.XXII.IV.

MULTŌ DĒNIQUE DIĒ PER EXPLŌRĀTŌRĒS CÆSAR  
COGNŌVIT ET MONTEM Ā SUĪS TENĒRĪ, ET HELVĒTIŌS  
CASTRĀ MŌVISSE, ET CŌNSIDIUM TIMŌRE PERTERRITUM  
QUOD NŌN VĪDISSET PRŌ VĪSŌ SIBI RENŪNTIĀVISSE.

Multō dēnique<sup>I</sup> diē<sup>II</sup> per explōrātōrēs Cæsar cognōvit

=and length, at much day, ~when, at length, the day was  
Cæsar learned through scouts far advanced, Cæsar learned  
through spies

et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse<sup>III</sup>

=and that the Helvetii had ~and that the Helvetii had  
moved (their) camp moved their camp

et montem ā suīs<sup>IV</sup> [militibus] tenērī<sup>V</sup>

=both that the mountain was ~that the mountain was in  
held by his own [soldiers] possession of his own men

et Cōnsidium timōre<sup>VI VII</sup> perterritum

=and that Considius, <having ~and that Considius, struck with  
been> thoroughly terrified by fear  
fear

I **dēnique**, ADV., and thenceforward, and thereafter, at last, at length, finally, lastly, only, not until; In a summary or climax, in a word, in short, in fact, briefly, to sum up, in fine, even, I may say

II **multō...diē**, ABL. OF TIME, at much day, e.g. late in the day—SIMILIAR USAGE TO THE PHRASE "Prīmā lūce," at fight light (I.XXII.I), ALSO, MAY BE TRANS. AS AN ABL. ABS., "the day being much," i.e., late in the day. §423

III **Helvētiōs...mōvisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **ā suīs**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

V **montem...tenērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **cognōvit**. §580

VI ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VII **timor**, -ōris, M. (TEM-), fear, dread, apprehension, timidity, alarm, anxiety

quod nōn vīdisset<sup>I</sup>

=*what (thing) he had not seen*

~*that which he had not seen*

prō vīsō<sup>II</sup> sibi renūntiā[vi]sse<sup>III</sup>

=*(he) had reported to him, as seen*

~*had reported to him, as seen*

## I.XXII.V.

EŌ DIĒ QUŌ CŌNSUĒRAT INTERVĀLLŌ HOSTĒS  
SEQUITUR, ET MĪLIA PASSUUM TRIA AB EŌRUM CASTRĪS  
CASTRĀ PŌNIT.

Eō diē<sup>IV</sup>

=*on that day*

~*on that day*

quō cōnsuē[ve]rat intervāllō<sup>V VI</sup> [eodem]

=*by (at) [the same] interval which he was accustomed*

~*at his usual distance*

hostēs sequitur

=*he follows the enemy*

~*he follows the enemy*

---

I **quod...vīdisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

II PPP. N. OF *videō*

III **Cōnsidium...renūntiāvisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **eō diē**, ABL OF TIME. §423

V **intervāllum, -ī**, N. (INTER + VĀLLUM), PROP., *the space between palisades, an intermediate space, interval, distance*

VI **quō...intervāllō**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

et mīlia passuum<sup>VII</sup> tria ab eōrum castrīs<sup>VIII</sup> castra pōnit

=and he sets (his) camp three ~and pitches his camp three  
thousand of paces from their miles from theirs  
camp

---

VII PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

VIII *ab eōrum castrīs*, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401



# I.XXIII



CÆSAR TURNS TO GO TO BIBRACTE FOR SUPPLIES.



## I.XXIII.I.



OSTRĪDIĒ EUS DIĒI, QUOD OMNĪNŌ BĪDUUM  
SUPERERAT, CUM EXERCITUĪ FRŪMENTUM  
MĒTĪRĪ OPORTĒRET, ET QUOD Ā BIBRACTE,  
OPPIDŌ ÆDUŌRUM LONGĒ MAXIMŌ ET  
CŌPIŌSISSIMŌ, NŌN AMPLIUS MĪLIBUS PASSUUM  
DUODĒVĪGINTĪ ABERAT, REĪ FRŪMENTĀRIÆ  
PRŌSPICIENDUM EXĪSTMĀVIT: ITER AB HELVĒTIĪS  
ĀVERTIT AC BIBRACTE ĪRE CONTENDIT.

Postrīdiē<sup>I</sup> eius diēi

=on the day after of this day

~the next day

quod omnīnŌ bīduum<sup>II</sup> supererat<sup>III</sup>

=as there remained in all (a  
space) of two days

~as there remained in all only  
two day's space

---

I **postrīdiē**, ADV. (POSTERI + DIE), *on the day after, the next day*

II **biduus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (BIS + DIES), *continuing two days, of two days*

III **supersum, -fui, -esse** (SUPER + SUM), *Of a remainder, to be over and above, be left, remain; Fig. To live after, outlive, be still alive, survive*

*cum exercitui frumentum [eum] mētiri oportēret*<sup>I</sup>

=(to the time) when it is necessary [for him (Caesar)] to measure out the grain to the army ~[to the time] when he must distribute the corn to his army

*et quod ā Bibracte*<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>, oppidō Æduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō

=and because // from Bibracte, by far the greatest and most (well) supplied town of the Ædui ~and as // from Bibracte by far the largest and best-stored town of the Ædui

*nōn amplius mīlibus*<sup>IV</sup> *passuum*<sup>V</sup> *duodēvīgintī aberat*

=he was not more than eighteen thousand of paces distant ~he was not more than eighteen miles

---

I *cum...oportēret, cum* CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II *ā Bibracte*, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

III *Bibracte, -is*, M., capital of the Æduans, situated on a mountain now called Mont Beuvray (height 2690')

IV ABL. OF COMPARISON. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE IS OFTEN FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE (THIS IS A BRANCH OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. THE OBJECT WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS COMPARED IS THE STARTING-POINT FROM WHICH WE RECKON. THUS, "CICERO IS ELOQUENT"; BUT, STARTING FROM HIM WE COME TO CATO, WHO IS "MORE SO THAN HE.") SIGNIFYING THAN. §406

V PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NULLUS, ETC. §346



*reī frūmentāriæ<sup>I</sup> prōspiciendum [esse]<sup>II III</sup>*

=it is <having> to be looked ~that he ought to provide for a  
forward (by him) for a thing of supply of corn  
grain

*exīstimāvit*

=he thought ~he thought

*iter ab Helvētiīs<sup>IV</sup> āvertit*

=(and) he turned away (his) ~and diverted his march from  
course from the Helvetii the Helvetii

*ac Bibracte<sup>V</sup> īre contendit*

=and he hastened to go to ~and advanced rapidly to  
Bibracte Bibracte

## LXXIII.II.

EA RĒS PER FUGITĪVŌS L. ÆMILĪ, DECURIŌNIS EQUITUM  
GALLŌRUM, HOSTIBUS NŪNTIĀTUR.

- 
- I *reī frūmentāriæ*, DAT. WITH COMP. V. *prōspiciendum*. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370
- II *prōspiciō, -ēxī, -ectus, -ere* (SPEC-), to look forward, look into the distance, have a view, look out, look, see; Fig., to look to beforehand, see to, exercise foresight, look out for, take care of, provide for
- III FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. §196 & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- IV *ab Helvētiīs*, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DĒ, OR EX. §426
- V ACC. OF PLACE TO WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE TO WHICH, BY THE ACCUSATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs<sup>I</sup> L[ūciū] Æmili<sup>II</sup>, decuriōnis<sup>III</sup> equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur<sup>IV</sup>

*this thing is announced to the enemy through the deserters from L[ucius] Æmilius, of the chief of the decuria cavalry of the Gallic horse* ~*this circumstance is reported to the enemy by some deserters from Lucius Æmilius, a captain, of the Gallic horse*

### I.XXIII.III.

HELVĒTIĪ, SEU QUOD TIMŌRE PERTERRITŌS RŌMĀNŌS DISCĒDERE Ā SĒ EXĪSTIMĀRENT, EŌ MAGIS QUOD PRĪDIĒ SUPERIŌRIBUS LOCĪS OCCUPĀTĪS PRĒLIUM NŌN COMMĪSSENT, SĪVE EŌ QUOD RĒ FRŪMENTĀRIĀ INTERCLŪDĪ POSSE CŌNFĪDERENT, COMMŪTĀTŌ CŌNSILIŌ ATQUE ITINERE CONVERSŌ NOSTRŌS Ā NOVISSIMŌ AGMINE ĪNSEQUĪ AC LACESSERE CĒPĒRUNT.

Helvētīi

=*the Helvetii*

~*the Helvetii*

seu<sup>V</sup> quod

=*whether because*

~*either because*

- 
- I **fugitīvus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FVG-), *fleeing away, fugitive*; SUBST. M., *a runaway, fugitive slave, deserter*
- II **Æmilius, -ī**, M., *Lucius Æmilius*, a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry
- III **decuriō, -ōnis**, M. (DECURIA), *the chief of a decuria, commander of a decuria of cavalry*
- IV **nūntiō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (NUNTIVS), *to announce, declare, report, relate, narrate, make known, inform, give intelligence of*
- V **sive (or sue)**, CONJ. (SI + VE), A DISJUNCTIVE CONDITIONAL PARTICLE, *or if = vel si*; CONNECTING WORDS OR PHRASES IN THE SAME CONSTRUCTION. OR CONDITIONAL CLAUSES WHICH HAVE THE SAME PREDICATE: *sive (seu) ... sive (seu)*, ESP. IN CÆS. often *seu ... seu, if this or if that be the case, placing the counter propositions on an equality, be it that...or that; if...or if; whether...or, i.e. in either case*

timōre<sup>I</sup> perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere<sup>II</sup> ā sē<sup>III</sup>

=*that the Romans, <having been> thoroughly terrified with fear, were retreating from them* ~*that the Romans, struck with terror, were retreating from them*

exīstimārent<sup>IV</sup>

=*they thought*

~*they thought*

eō magis quod<sup>V</sup> prīdiē<sup>VI</sup>

=*more than this (thing) because, on the day before* ~*the more so, as the day before*

superiōribus locis occupātis<sup>VII</sup>

=*with the higher places <having been> seized* ~*though they had seized on the higher grounds*

prœlium nōn commīsissent<sup>VIII</sup>

=*they did not join the battle*

~*they had not engaged in battle*

---

I ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

II **perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimārent**. §580

III **ā sē**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426

IV **quod...exīstimārent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

V **eō magis quod**, *all the more because*, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

VI **prīdiē**, ADV. (PRO-), *on the day before, the previous day*

VII **superiōribus locis occupātis**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

VIII **quod...commīsissent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

sīve eō<sup>I</sup> quod rē frūmentāriā<sup>II</sup> [Rōmānōs] interclūdī<sup>III</sup> posse<sup>IV</sup> cōnfident<sup>V VI</sup>

=or (namely,) because of this ~or because they flattered  
(thing), they trusted that [the themselves that they might be  
Romans] were able to be cut off cut of from the provisions  
from the grain supply

commūtātō<sup>VII</sup> cōnsiliō<sup>VIII</sup> atque itinere conversō<sup>IX</sup> [milītēs] nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī

=with (their) plan <having been> ~altering their plan and  
altered and with the route changing their route, they  
<having been> turned around, pressed upon our men in the  
(those men) pursued our rear  
[soldiers] in the most recent  
battle line

ac lacessere cōpērunt

=and they began to provoke (our ~and began to pursue, and to  
men) irritate them

---

I **sīve eō**, or because, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

II **rē frūmentāriā**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III **interclūdō, -ūsī, -ūsus, -ere** (INTER + CLAUDO), to shut out, shut off, cut off, hinder, stop, block up, intercept

IV INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **cōnfident**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **confido, -fīsus, -sum** (CON + FĪDO), to trust confidently in something, confide in, rely firmly upon, to believe, be assured of

VI **quod...cōnfident**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

VII **commūtō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (COM + MŪTŌ), to alter wholly, change entirely

VIII **commūtātō cōnsiliō**, ABL. ABS. §420

IX **itinere conversō**, ABL. ABS. §420

# I.XXIV



## ROMANS AND HELVETIANS PREPARE FOR BATTLE.



### I.XXIV.I.



POSTQUAM ID ANIMUM ADVERTIT, CŌPIĀS  
SUĀS CÆSAR IN PROXIMUM COLLEM  
SUBDŪCIT, EQUITĀTUMQUE, QUĪ SUSTINĒRET  
HOSTIUM IMPETUM, MĪSIT.

Postquam<sup>I</sup> id animum advertit

=after that, he (Cæsar) turns ~when he observed this  
(his) mind to it

cōpiās suās Cæsar in proximum collem subdūcit<sup>II</sup>

=he leads his own troops up to ~Cæsar draws off his forces to  
the nearest hill the next hill

equitātumque

=and the cavalry ~and the cavalry

---

I **postquam** (or **post quam**), CONJ. (POST + QUAM), *after that, after, as soon as, when*

II **subdūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere** (SUB + DŪCŌ), *to draw away, take away, lead away, carry off, wrest, withdraw, remove*

**quī sustinēret<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> hostium impetum**

=*who might sustain the attack of the enemy*      ~*to sustain the attack of the enemy*

**mīsit**

=*he sent*

~*he sent*

## I.XXIV.II.

IPSE INTERIM IN COLLE MEDIŌ TRIPLICEM ACIEM  
INSTRŪXIT LEGIŌNUM QUATTUOR VETERĀNORUM; IN  
SUMMŌ IUGŌ DUĀS LEGIŌNĒS QUĀS IN GALLIĀ  
CITERIŌRE PROXIMĒ CŌNSCRĪPSE- RAT ET OMNIA AUXILIA  
COLLOCĀRI, AC TŌTUM MONTEM HOMINIBUS COMPLĒRI;  
ET INTEREA SARCINĀSQUE IN UNUM LOCUM CŌNFERRĪ  
ET EUM AB EĪS QUĪ IN SUPERIŌRE ACIĒ CŌNSTITERANT  
MŪNĪRĪ IUSSIT.

---

I ***quī sustinēret***, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUĪ OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

II ***sustineō, -tinuī, -tentus, -ēre*** (SUB + TENEŌ), *to hold up, hold upright, uphold, bear up, keep up, support, sustain*; In partic., *To bear, undergo, endure; to hold out against, withstand*; WITH OBJ.-CLAUSE (MOSTLY WITH A NEGATIVE: *non sustinet, he cannot bear, cannot endure; he does not take upon himself, does not venture*)—*To hold in, stop, stay, check, restrain; to keep back, put off, defer, delay*

Ipse interim in colle mediō<sup>I</sup> triplicem<sup>II</sup> aciem instrūxit legiōnum  
quattuor veterānorum<sup>III</sup> [ita utī suprā]

=he himself, meanwhile, drew up  
a triple battle line of four  
veteran legions on the middle of  
the hill [in such a manner as  
above]

~he himself, meanwhile, drew up  
on the middle of the hill a triple  
line of his four veteran legions  
[in such a manner, that he  
placed above]

in summō iugō duās legiōnēs

=on the highest ridge // the two  
legions

~on the very summit // the two  
legions

quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē<sup>IV</sup> cōscripserat

=/he ordered/ /the two legions/  
which he very lately enrolled on  
this side of Gaul

~which he had lately levied in  
Hither Gaul

et omnia auxilia collocārī<sup>V</sup> VI

=and (he ordered) all the  
auxlaries to be arranged

~and all the auxiliaries to be  
arranged

- 
- I **medius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MED-), *in the middle, in the midst, mid, mean, middle*
- II **triplex, -icis**, ADJ. (TER+ PARC-), *threefold, triple*
- III **veterānus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (VETUS), *old, veteran, i.e. composed of veterans—PL. M. AS SUBST., veteran soldiers, veterans*
- IV **proximē**, ADV. SUP. (PROXIMUS), *Of place, nearest, very near, next; Fig., of time, very lately, just before, most recently, last before*
- V **legiones...auxilia...collocari**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iussit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- VI **collōco, āvi, ātum, -āre** (COL- + LŌCO), *to place together, to arrange, to station, lay, put, place, set; set up, erect, etc., a thing (or person) somewhere; Esp. To give in marriage*

ac tōtum montem hominibus<sup>I</sup> complēri<sup>II</sup> III

=and (also) that the whole mountain should be filled with men  
~that the whole mountain should be covered with men

et interea sarcinās<sup>IV</sup> in unum locum cōferri<sup>V</sup>

=and that in the meantime the (soldiers) sacks should be brought together into one place  
~and that meanwhile the baggage should be brought together into one place

et eum [locum] ab eīs<sup>VI</sup>

=and /he ordered/ that [place] /to be fortified/ by those men  
~and // the position // by those

quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant<sup>VII</sup>

=who had stood in the higher battle line  
~who were posted in the upper line

mūniri<sup>VIII</sup>

=/that [place]/ to be fortified  
~to be fortified

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **montem...complēri**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **compleō, -ēvi, -ētus, -ēre** (COM- + PLE-), to fill up, fill full, fill out, make full, cram, crowd; Esp. In milit. lang., To make the army, a legion, etc., of a full number, to complete, fill up

IV **sarcina, -æ, f.** (SAR-), a package, bundle, burden, load, pack; Pl., packs, luggage, baggage

V **sarcinas...cōferri**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **ab eīs**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

VII **cōstō, stiti, statūrus, āre** (CŌN + STŌ), to agree, accord, be consistent, correspond, fit; To be certain, be ascertained, be known, be settled, be established

VIII **eum...mūniri**, INDIR. DISC. §580



iussit

=he ordered

~he ordered

## I.XXIV.III.

HELVĒTĪ CUM OMNIBUS SUĪS CARRĪS SECŪTĪ  
 IMPEDĪMENTA IN ŪNUM LOCUM CONTULĒRUNT; IPSĪ  
 CŌNFERTISSIMĀ ACIĒ, REIECTŌ NOSTRŌ EQUITĀTŪ,  
 PHALANGE FACTĀ SUB PRĪMAM NOSTRAM ACIEM  
 SUCCESSĒRUNT.

Helvētīi cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta<sup>1</sup> in ūnum  
 locum contulērunt

=the Helvetii <having> followed  
 with all their own wagons,  
 brought together (their) baggage  
 into one place

~the Helvetii having followed  
 with all their wagons, brought  
 together their baggage into one  
 place

ipsī

=(they) themselves

~they themselves

---

I **impedimentum, -i**, N. (IMP-), a hinderance, impediment; PL., travelling  
 equipage, luggage

cōnfertissimā<sup>I II</sup> aciē<sup>III</sup>, reiectō<sup>IV</sup> nostrō equitātū<sup>V</sup>, phalange<sup>VI</sup> factā<sup>VII</sup>  
 =in the most pressed close battle ~in very close order, after  
 line, with our cavalry <having having repulsed our cavalry and  
 been> thrown back, (those men) formed a phalanx  
 with a phalanx <having been>  
 formed

sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt<sup>VIII</sup>  
 =(and) they approached near ~advanced up to our front line  
 our first battle line

- 
- I PPP. OF *confercio*
- II **cōnfertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., *pressed close, crowded, thick, dense; Close, compact, in close array*
- III **cōnfertissimā aciē**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420
- IV **rēiecto, āvi, -ātum, -āre** (RE- + IACTŌ), *To throw or cast back*
- V **reiectō nostrō equitātū**, ABL. ABS. §420
- VI **phalanx, -angis**, F., *a compact body of heavy armed men in battle array, battalion, phalanx*
- VII **phalange factā**, ABL. ABS. §420
- VIII **succēdō, -cessī, -cessus, -ere** (SUB + CEDO), *to go below, come under, enter; To approach, draw near, march on, advance, march up*

# I.XXV



## THE ROMANS CHARGE.



### I.XXVI.



ÆSAR PRĪMUM SUŌ, DEINDE OMNIUM EX  
CŌNSPECTŪ REMŌTĪS EQUĪS, UT ÆQUĀTŌ  
OMNIUM PERĪCULŌ SPEM FUGÆ TOLLERET,  
COHORTĀTUS SUŌS PRÆLIUM COMMĪSIT.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

prĭmum [remŏtō equō] suŏ<sup>I</sup>, deinde<sup>II</sup> omnium ex cōnspectū<sup>III</sup>  
remŏtīs equīs<sup>IV</sup>

=first with his own [horse ~having removed out of sight  
<having been> removed], then first his own horse, then those of  
with the horses of all <having all  
been> removed from sight

- 
- I **[remŏtō equō] suŏ**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420
- II **deinde**, ADV., In space, *then, next, thereafter, thence*
- III **ex cōnspectū**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- IV **remŏtīs equīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

ut æquātō<sup>I</sup> omnium periculō<sup>II</sup> spem fugæ<sup>III</sup> tolleret<sup>IV</sup>

=<in order> that with the danger ~that he might make the danger  
of all <having been> equalised, of all equal, and do away with  
he might take away the hope of the hope of flight  
flight

cohortātus<sup>V</sup> suōs praelium commisit

=he (Cæsar) <having> exhorted ~after encouraging his men,  
his own men, joined the battle joined battle

## I.XXV.II.

MILITĒS Ē LOCŌ SUPERIŌRE PĪLIS MISSĪS FACILE HOSTIUM  
PHALANGEM PERFRĒGĒRUNT.

Militēs ē locō superiōre<sup>VI</sup> pīlis<sup>VII</sup> missis<sup>VIII</sup>

=the soldiers, with heavy ~his soldiers hurling their  
javelins <having been> sent from javelins from the higher ground  
a higher place

---

I **æquō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (ÆQUUS), to make equal, equalize

II **æquātō...periculō**, ABL. ABS. §420

III OBJ. GEN. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS USED WITH NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS. §347

IV **ut...tolleret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

V **cohortor, -ātus, -āri**, DEP. (COM- + HORTOR), to animate, encourage, advise, incite, exhort, admonish; Of a commander, to exhort, encourage, address

VI **ē locō superiōre**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DĒ, OR EX. §426

VII **pīlum, -ī**, N. (PIS-), a heavy javelin, pilum

VIII **pīlis missis**, ABL. ABS. §420

facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt<sup>I</sup>

=they easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy ~easily broke the enemy's phalanx

### I.XXV.III.

EĀ DISIECTĀ GLADIĪS DĒSTRICŢĪS IN EŌS IMPETUM FĒCĒRUNT.

Eā disiectā<sup>II</sup> gladiīs dēstrictīs<sup>IV</sup> V

=with that (phalanx) <having been> hurled apart, with swords <having been> drawn ~that being dispersed; with drawn swords

in eōs impetum fēcērunt

=they made an attack against them ~they made a charge on them

### I.XXV.IV.

GALLĪS MAGNŌ AD PUGNAM ERAT IMPEDĪMENTŌ QUOD PLŪRIBUS EŌRUM SCŪTĪS ŪNŌ ICTŪ PĪLŌRUM TRĀNSFĪXĪS ET COLLIGĀTĪS, CUM FERRUM SĒ ĪNFLEXISSET, NEQUE ĒVELLERE NEQUE SINISTRĀ IMPEDĪTĀ SATIS COMMODĒ PUGNĀRE POTERANT; MULTĪ UT DIŪ IACTĀTŌ BRACCHIŌ PRĒOPTĀRENT SCŪTUM MANŪ ĒMITTERE ET NŪDŌ CORPORE PUGNĀRE.

---

I **perfringō, -frēgī, -fractus, -ere** (PER + FRANGO), to break through, break in pieces, shiver, shatter

II **dīsiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (DIS + IACIO), to throw asunder, drive asunder, scatter, disperse, break up, tear to pieces

III **eā disiectā**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **dēstringo, -inxī, -ictus, -ere** (DE + STRINGO), to strip off; To unsheathe, draw

V **gladiīs dēstrictīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō

=it was a great <source of> ~it was a great impediment to  
hiderance <in respect> to the the Gauls in fighting  
fight for the Gauls

scūtis<sup>I</sup> ūnō ictū<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> pīlōrum trānsfixīs<sup>V</sup> et colligātīs<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup>

=/that with several of their/ ~bucklers had been by one  
shields <having been> transfixed stroke of the (Roman) javelins  
and <having been> bound pierced through and pinned fast  
together by one blow of the together  
javelins

quod plūribus eōrum

=that with several of their ~that, since several of their

---

I **scūtum, -i, n.,** *An oblong shield, made of boards fastened together, and covered with leather, a buckler (whereas clipeus denotes a round shield, target of metal)*

II **Gallis...impedimentō,** DOUBLE DAT. CONSTRUCTION. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF SERVICE, OR THE DOUBLE DATIVE CONSTRUCTION. THE VERB IS USUALLY SUM. THE NOUN EXPRESSING THE END FOR WHICH IS REGULARLY ABSTRACT AND SINGULAR IN NUMBER AND IS NEVER MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE, EXCEPT ONE OF DEGREE (MAGNUS, MINOR, ETC.), OR BY A GENITIVE. §382

III **ictus, -ūs, m. (IC-),** *a blow, stroke, stab, cut, thrust, bite, sting, wound*

IV **ūnō ictū,** ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V **trānsfigō, -fixī, -fixus, -ere** (TRĀNS + FIGŌ), *to pierce through, transpierce, transfix*

VI **colligo, -āvi, -ātum** (COL + LĪGO), *to bind, tie, or fasten together, to connect, bind, tie up*

VII **scūtis...trānsfixīs et conligātīs,** ABL. ABS. §420

**cum ferrum<sup>I</sup> sē inflexisset<sup>II</sup> III**

=since the iron itself had bent

~as the point of the iron had bent itself

**neque ēvellere<sup>IV</sup>**

=neither to tear (it) out

~neither pluck it out

**neque [manus]<sup>V</sup> sinistrā<sup>VI</sup> impedītā<sup>VII</sup>**

=nor with (their) left [hand]  
<being> impeded

~nor with their left hand  
entangled

**satis commodē<sup>VIII</sup> pugnāre poterant**

=were they able to fight  
advantageously enough

~they were able to fight with  
sufficient ease

**multī ut diū**

=that <as a result>, many men,  
all day

~so that many, for long time

---

**I ferrum, ī, N. iron**

**II cum...inflexisset, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

**III inflectō, -ēxī, -exus, -ere** (IN + FLECTŌ), to bend, bow, curve, turn aside

**IV ēvellō, -velli, -volsus, -ere** (Ē + VELLŌ), to tear out, pluck out, extract

**V manus, -ūs, F. (MA-), a hand; Milit., an armed force, corps of soldiers** —“si nova manus cum veteribus copiis se conjunxisset”

**VI sinister, -tra, -trum, ADJ., WITH COMP. A DOUBLE COMP., of uncertain origin, left, on the left, on the left hand, at the left side; SUBST. F. (SC. manus), sinistrā impedītā, with the left hand impeded**

**VII sinistrā impedītā, ABL. ABS. §420**

**VIII commodē, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (COMMODOUS), duly, properly, completely, rightly, well, skilfully**

iactātō bracchiō<sup>I II III</sup>

=with (their) arm <having been> ~after having tossed their arm  
tossed about about

præoptārent<sup>IV V</sup> scūtum manū<sup>VI</sup> ēmittere<sup>VII</sup>

=they chose rather to send out ~they chose rather to cast away  
the shield from (their) arm the buckler from their hand

et nūdō<sup>VIII</sup> corpore<sup>IX</sup> pugnāre

=and (they chose) to fight with ~and fight with their person  
an exposed body unprotected

## I.XXV.V.

TANDEM VULNERIBUS DĒFESSĪ ET PEDEM REFERRE ET,  
QUOD MŌNS SUBERAT CIRCITER MĪLLE PASSUUM, EŌ SĒ  
RECIPERE CĒPĒRUNT.

I ABL. of Attendant Circumstance: *convocatis eorum principibus*, having called together their leading men (I.X); *capto monte et succedentibus nostris*, after they had reached the height and our men were coming up (I.XXV)

II **iactātō bracchiō**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **bracchium, -ī**, N., the forearm, lower arm

IV **præoptō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PRÆ + OPTŌ), to choose rather, desire more, prefer

V **ut...præoptārent**, CLAUSE OF RESULT. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT WITH UT OR UT NŌN EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537

VI ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VII **ēmīttō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere** (Ē + MITTŌ), to send out, send forth —“scutum manu,” to throw away, throw aside (I.XXV.IV)

VIII **nūdus, -a, -um**, ADJ., naked, bare, unclothed, stripped, uncovered, exposed—“nudo corpore pugnare,” without a shield (I.XXV.IV)

IX **nūdō corpore**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412



**Tandem<sup>I</sup> vulneribus<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> dēfessī<sup>IV</sup> et pedem<sup>V</sup> referre<sup>VI</sup>**

=*finally, (those men) <having> ~at length, grown weary with  
became tired by injuries, and wounds, they began to retreat  
(they began) both to bear back  
(their) foot*

**et**

=*and*

*~and*

**quod mōns suberit<sup>VII</sup> circiter mīlle passuum<sup>VIII</sup> spatio<sup>IX</sup>**

=*as a mountain was near—at a ~as a mountain was at hand—at  
space (of) around one thousand a distance of one mile  
of paces*

- 
- I **tandem**, ADV. (TAM + THE DEMONSTR. ENDING DEM), *at length, at last, in the end, finally*
- II ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404
- III **vulnus, -ēris**, N. (VUL-), *a wound*
- IV **dēfetiscor, -fessus, -ī**, DEP., *to become tired, grow weary, faint*
- V **pēs, -pedis**, M. (PED-), *a foot*; **referre pedem**, AS A MILIT., *to draw back, retire, withdraw, retreat*
- VI **referō, rettuli, relātus, referre** (RE- + FERŌ), *to bear back, bring back, drive back, carry back*; *Referre pedem* or *gradum*, as a milit. t. t., *to draw back, retire, withdraw, retreat*; In partic. *To pay back, give back, repay*—Esp. in the phrase *referre gratiam*, *to return thanks, show one's gratitude (by deeds), to recompense, requite*; *To bring, convey, deliver* any thing as an official report, *to report, announce, notify (= renuntiare)*
- VII **subsum** —, **-esse** (SUB + SUM), *to be under, be behind*; Of places and persons, *to be near, to be at hand*
- VIII PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346
- IX Intervals of Space and Duration of Time are sometimes expressed by the Ablative, especially when modified by an Adjective or Genitive; as, *milibus passuum sex*, *six miles (distant)*, Lit. *by six thousands of paces* (I.XLVIII); *tota nocte ierunt*, *all night long they went on* (I.XXVI)

eō sē recipere cōpērunt

=they began to betake ~to betake themselves thither  
themselves thither

## I.XXV.VI.

CAPTŌ MONTE ET SUCCĒDENTIBUS NOSTRĪS, BOĪ ET  
TULINGĪ, QUĪ HOMINUM MĪLIBUS CIRCITER QUINDECIM  
AGMEN HOSTIUM CLAUDĒBANT ET NOVISSIMĪS  
PRÆSIDIŌ ERANT, EX ITINERE NOSTRŌS AB LATERE  
APERTŌ ADGRESSĪ CIRCUMVENĪRE, ET ID CŌNSPICĀTĪ  
HELVĒTIĪ, QUĪ IN MONTEM SĒSĒ RECĒPERANT, RŪRSUS  
ĪNSTĀRE ET PRÆLIUM REDINTEGRĀRE CŌPĒRUNT.

Captō<sup>I</sup> monte<sup>II</sup> et succēdentibus nostrīs<sup>III</sup> [mīlitibus]

=with the mountain <having ~when the mountain had been  
been> seized, and with our gained, and our men were  
[soldiers] <having been> advancing up  
advanced

Boī et Tulingī

=the Boii and Tulingi

~the Boii and Tulingi

quī hominum mīlibus<sup>IV</sup> circiter quindecim agmen hostium  
claudēbant<sup>V</sup>

=(the Boii and Tulingi) who with ~who by means of about 15,000  
around 15 thousands of men, men closed the enemy's line of  
closed the battle line of the march  
enemy

---

I PPP. OF *capiō*

II *captō monte*, ABL. ABS. §420

III *succēdentibus nostrīs*, ABL. ABS. §420

IV ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. §414

V *claudō, -sī, -sus, -ere* (CLAV-), to shut, close, shut up

et [agminīs] novissimīs præsidiō<sup>I</sup> erant

=and they were <a source of> ~and served as protection for  
defence for the newest [battle their rear  
line] (i.e., the rearguard)

ex itinere<sup>II</sup> nostrōs ab latere<sup>III</sup> apertō<sup>IV</sup> adgressī circumvenīre<sup>V</sup>  
(circumvērunt)

=(those men) <having> attacked ~having assailed our men on the  
our men on the open flank on exposed flank as they advanced  
the march, (tried) to surround [prepared] to surround them  
(them)

et id cōspicātī<sup>VI</sup> Helvētīi

=and (after) <having> seen it, the ~upon seeing which, the Helvetii  
Helvetii

quī in montem sēsē recēperant

who took themselves back to the ~who had betaken themselves to  
mountain the mountain

---

I **novissimīs præsidiō**, DBL. DAT. CONSTRUCTION. §382

II **ex itinere**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426

III **latus, -eris**, N. (PLAT-), *the side, flank*—Of an army, *the flank*—Esp., *a (ab) latere*, on or at the side or flank; *a or ab lateribus*, on or at the sides or flanks (opp. *a fronte*, in front, before, and *a tergo*, at the back, behind)

IV **apertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PPP. OF *aperiō*); **aperiō, -erui, -ertus, -ire** (AB + PAR-), *to uncover, lay bare*; *To open, uncover, uncloze, make visible, discover, display, show, reveal*

V **circumveniō, -vēnī, -ventus, -ire** (CIRCUM- + VENIŌ), *to come around, be around, encircle, encompass, surround*; Specif., *to surround in a hostile manner, to encompass, beset, invest*

VI **cōspicor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (COM- + SPEC-), *to get sight of, descry, see, perceive*

rūrsus<sup>I</sup> īnstāre

=to press upon (those men) ~to press on again  
again

et praelium redintegrāre<sup>II</sup> cōpērunt

=began // and to restore the ~began // and renew the battle  
battle

## I.XXV.VII.

RŌMĀNĪ CONVERSA SIGNA BIPERTĪTŌ INTULĒRUNT:  
PRĪMA ET SECUNDA ACIĒS, UT VICTĪS AC SUMMŌTĪS  
RESISTERET; TERTIA, UT VENIENTĒS SUSTINĒRET.

Rōmānī conversa<sup>III</sup> signa<sup>IV</sup> bipertītō<sup>V</sup> intulērunt

=the Romans beared (their) ~the Romans having faced  
<having been> reversed about, advanced to the attack in  
standards (upon the enemy) two divisions  
divided in two parts (divisions)

prīma et secunda aciēs

=the first and second battle line ~the first and second line

ut

=<in order> that ~in order

- 
- I **rūrsus**, ADV. (PPP. OF *revertō*), *turned back, back, backwards*; Denoting return to a former action or its repetition, *back again, again, anew*
- II **redintegrō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (RED + INTEGRŌ), *to make whole again, restore, renew, recruit, refresh*
- III **convertō, -tī, -sus, -ere** (CON + VERTŌ) ACT., *to turn or whirl round, to wheel about, to cause to turn, to turn back, reverse*; In partic. Milit. t., *convertere signa, aciem, etc., to wheel about, change the direction of a march*
- IV **signum, -ī**, N., *a mark, token, sign, indication, proof*; A military standard, ensign, banner; MILIT., *signa (arma) in hostem, or hosti, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon*
- V **bipertitus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (BI + PARS), *divided in two parts*

victīs<sup>I</sup> ac summōtīs<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=(those) men <having been> ~those who had been defeated  
conquered and (those) men and driven off the field  
<having been> removed

resisteret<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup>

=that it (the first and second ~to resist  
battle line) might resist

tertia

=the third (battle line) ~the third battle line

ut [Bōios et Tulingōs] venientēs<sup>VI</sup> sustinēret<sup>VII</sup>

=<in order> that it (the third ~to hold back those who were  
battle line) might sustain the just arriving  
coming [Boii and Tulingi]

- 
- I **vincō, vīcī, victus, -ere** (VIC-), In war, to conquer, overcome, get the better of, defeat, subdue, vanquish, be victorious
- II **summōvēō, -mōvī, -mōtum, -ere** (SUM + MŌVĒO), to send or drive off or away, to remove
- III **victīs ac submōtīs**, ABL. ABS. §420
- IV **resistō, -stitī, —, -ere** (RE + SISTŌ), to stand back, remain standing, stand still, halt, stop, stay, stay behind, remain, continue; In war, to withstand, oppose, resist, make opposition
- V **ut...resisteret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531
- VI PART. PL. PRES. M. ACC. **veniō**
- VII **ut...sustinēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531



# I.XXVI



THE HELVETIANS ARE TOTALLY DEFEATED.



## I.XXVII.I.

**I**TA ANCIPITĪ PRĒLIŌ DIŪ ATQUE ĀCRITER  
PUGNĀTUM EST.

Ita

=thus

~thus

ancipitī<sup>I</sup> praeliō<sup>II</sup>

=in a two-headed battle

~in a battle on two fronts

diū atque ācriter<sup>III</sup> pugnātum est

=it was fought long and fiercely  
(by them)

~they fought long and harsh

---

I **anceps, -cipitis**, ADJ. (AN- + CAP, in caput), two-headed, twofold, double  
—anceps praelium, battle on two fronts

II **ancipitī praeliō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE  
OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A  
CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE  
OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

III **ācriter**, ADV. WITH COMP. **ācrius**, AND SUP. **ācerrimē** (ACER), sharply,  
fiercely

## I.XXVI.II.

DIŪTIUS CUM SUSTINĒRE NOSTRŌRUM IMPETŪS NŌN  
POSSENT, ALTERĪ SĒ, UT CŒPERANT, IN MONTEM  
RECĒPĒRUNT, ALTERĪ AD IMPEDĪMENTA ET CARRŌS SUŌS  
SĒ CONTULĒRUNT.

**Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent<sup>I</sup>**

=*when they were not longer able to sustain their attacks*      ~*when they could no longer withstand the attacks of our men*

**alterī sē**

=*one (division), themselves*      ~*the one division*

**ut cœperant**

=*as they had began (to do)*      ~*as they had begun to do*

**in montem recēpērunt<sup>II</sup>**

=*they take (themselves) back to the mountain*      ~*retreated to the mountain*

**alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt**

=*the other men brought themselves together to the baggage and their own wagons*      ~*the other turned to their baggage and wagons*

---

I ***cum...possent, cum*** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II ***recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere*** (RE + CAPIO), *To take back, bring back, carry back, retake, get back, regain*; WITH PRON. REFLEX., *to draw back, withdraw, betake oneself, retire, retreat, escape*



## I.XXVI.III.

NAM HŌC TŌTŌ PRĒLIŌ, CUM AB HŌRĀ SEPTIMĀ AD  
VESPERUM PUGNĀTUM SIT, ĀVERSUM HOSTEM VIDĒRE  
NĒMŌ POTUIT.

Nam hōc tōtō praeliō<sup>I</sup>

=for in all this battle

~for during the whole of this  
battle

cum ab hōrā<sup>II</sup> septimā ad vesperum<sup>III IV</sup> pugnātum sit<sup>V</sup>

=although it was fought from  
the seventh hour until the  
evening

~although the fight lasted from  
the seventh hour to eventide

āversum<sup>VI</sup> hostem vidēre nēmō potuit

=no one was able to see an  
enemy turned away

~no one could see an enemy with  
his back turned

---

I **hōc tōtō praeliō**, ABL. OF TIME WHEN. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424

II **hōra**, -æ, f., *an hour* (one twelfth of the day between sunrise and sunset)

III **“ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum,”** i.e. 12 (noon) 1 P.M.

IV **vesper**, -erī, m. (VAS-), *the evening-star; The evening, even, eve, eventide*

V **cum...pugnātum sit**, *cum* CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

VI PPP. OF **āvertō**

## LXXVI.IV.

AD MULTAM NOCTEM ETIAM AD IMPEDĪMENTA  
PUGNĀTUM EST, PROPTEREĀ QUOD PRŌ VĀLLŌ CARRŌS  
OBIĒ CERANT, ET Ē LOCŌ SUPERIŌRE IN NOSTRŌS  
VENIENTĒS TĒLA CONICIĒBANT, ET NŌN NŪLLĪ INTER  
CARRŌS ROTĀSQUE MATARĀS AC TRĀGULĀS  
SUBICIĒBANT NOSTRŌSQUE VULNERĀBANT.

Ad multam<sup>I</sup> noctem<sup>II</sup> etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est

=it was fought toward much (of) the night, even to the baggage ~the fight was carried on also at the baggage (up) to late in the night

proptereā quod prŏ vāllō<sup>III</sup> carrŏs obiēcerant<sup>IV</sup>

=on account of that because they threw before (their) wagons as a rampart (for defense) ~for they had cast in the way wagons in the way as a rampart

---

I **multus, -a, -um**, ADJ., PL., WITH SUBST., OR WITH ADJ. USED AS SUBST, *many, a great number*; In SG., to denote quantity, *much, great, abundant*

II **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), *night*—ad multam noctem: (up) to late in the night

III **vāllum, -i**, N. (VALLUS), *a line of palisades, palisaded rampart, intrenchment, circumvallation*; Fig., *a wall, rampart, fortification*

IV **obiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (OB + IACIO), *to throw before, throw to, cast, offer, present, expose*; In partic., *to throw or place before by way of defence or hinderance; to cast in the way, set against, oppose*

et ē locō superiōre<sup>I</sup> in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant<sup>II</sup>

=and from a higher place, they ~and from the higher ground  
threw together projectiles at our kept hurling weapons upon our  
coming men men

et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rotāsque<sup>III</sup> matarās<sup>IV</sup> ac trāgulās<sup>V</sup>  
subiciēbant<sup>VI</sup>

=and not no one between the ~as they came on, and some  
wagons and the wheels were from between the wagons and  
throwing lances and javelins the wheels kept darting their  
(from) below lances and javelins from beneath

nostrōsque [mīlitēs] vulnerābant<sup>VII</sup>

=and they wounded our ~and wounding our men  
[soldiers]

## LXXVI.V.

DIŪ CUM ESSET PUGNĀTUM, IMPEDĪMENTĪS CASTRĪSQUE  
NOSTRĪ POTĪTĪ SUNT.

---

I **ē locō superiōre**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

II **cōniciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (COM- + IACIO), *To throw together, unite, collect; To throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, put, place, etc., a person or thing with force, quickly, etc., to or towards*

III **rota, -æ, f.** (AR-), *a wheel*

IV **matarā, æ, f.**, Celtic, *a javelin, pike, Celtic lance*

V **trāgūla, -æ, f.** (TRAHO), *A kind of javelin or dart attached to a strap by which it was swung when thrown*

VI **subiciō, iēcī, iectus, ere** (SUB + IACIO), *to throw under, place under, cast below*

VII **vulnēro, -āvi, -ātum, -are** (VULNUS), *to wound, to hurt, or injure by a wound*

**Diū cum esset pugnātum<sup>I</sup>**

=when (after) it was fought (for) ~after the fight had lasted some  
a long time time

**impedimentis castrisque<sup>II</sup> nostrī potitī sunt**

=our men gained possession of ~our men gained possession of  
(their) camp and (their) baggage their baggage and camp

### I.XXVI.VI.

IBI ORGETORĪGIS FĪLIA ATQUE ŪNUS Ē FĪLIIS CAPTUS EST.

**Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiis<sup>III</sup> captus est**

=there, the daughter of ~there the daughter and one of  
Orgatorix and one from the sons the sons of Orgetorix was taken  
(of Orgatorix) was captured

### I.XXVI.VII.

EX EŌ PRĒLIŌ CIRCITER HOMINUM MĪLIA CENTUM  
TRĪGINTĀ SUPERFUĒRUNT EĀQUE TŌTĀ NOCTE  
CONTINENTER IĒRUNT: NŪLLAM PARTEM NOCTIS  
ITINERE INTERMISSŌ IN FĪNĒS LINGONUM DIĒ QUĀRTŌ  
PERVĒNĒRUNT, CUM ET PROPTER VULNERA MĪLITUM ET  
PROPTER SEPULTŪRAM OCCĪSŌRUM NOSTRĪ TRĪDUUM  
MORĀTĪ EŌS SEQUĪ NŌN POTUISSENT.

---

I **cum esset pugnātum**, cum CLAUSE. §546

II **impedimentis castrisque**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **potiti sunt**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

III **ē filiis**, ABL. WITH CARDINAL NUMERAL. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. III. CARDINAL NUMERALS (EXCEPT MĪLIA) REGULARLY TAKE THE ABLATIVE WITH Ē (EX) OR DĒ INSTEAD OF THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE. SO ALSO, QUIDAM, A CERTAIN ONE, COMMONLY, AND OTHER WORDS OCCASIONALLY. §346III

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum<sup>I</sup> mīlia centum trīgintā superfuērunt

=from that battle around 100 ~after the battle about 130,000  
(and) 30 thousands of men men [of the enemy] remained  
remained alive

eāque tōtā nocte<sup>II</sup> continenter iērunt

=and in that entire night, they ~who marched incessantly  
went during the whole of that night

nūllam partem<sup>III</sup> noctis

=<for> not any part of the night ~for no part of the night

itinere intermissō<sup>IV</sup> V

=(and) with the march <having ~and after a march discontinued  
been> interrupted

in finēs Lingonum<sup>VI</sup> diē quārtō<sup>VII</sup> pervēnērunt

=they came through into the ~arrived in the territories of the  
territories of the Lingones on the Lingones on the fourth day  
fourth day

I PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

II **tōtā nocte**, ABL. OF DURATION OF TIME. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424II

III ACC. OF TIME DURING. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: TIME DURING WHICH OR WITHIN WHICH MAY BE EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF A NOUN IN THE SINGULAR, WITH AN ORDINAL NUMERAL. §424

IV **intermittō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere** (INTER + MITTO), to leave off, intermit, omit, suspend, interrupt, neglect

V **itinere intermissō**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI **Lingonēs, -um**, M., a Gallic people west of the Sequanians

VII **diē quārtō**, ABL. OF TIME WHEN. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

cum et propter vulnera militum

=since, both on account of the wounds of the soldiers

~while, both on account of the wounds of the soldiers

et propter sepultūram<sup>I</sup> occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī<sup>II</sup> eōs sequī nōn potuissent<sup>III</sup>

=and on account of the burial of the struck of the slain, our men, <having> delayed three days, had not been able to follow them

~our men, having stopped for three days; and the burial of the slain, had not been able to follow them

### I.XXVI.VIII.

CÆSAR AD LINGONĒS LITTERĀS NŪNTIŌSQUE MĪSIT, NĒ EŌS FRŪMENTŌ NĒVE ALIĀ RĒ IUVĀRENT: QUĪ SĪ IŪVISSENT, SĒ EŌDEM LOCŌ QUŌ HELVĒTIŌS HABITŪRUM.

Cæsar ad Lingonēs litterās<sup>IV</sup> nūntiōsque mīsit

=Cæsar sent letters and messengers to the Lingones

~Cæsar sent letters and messengers to the Lingones (with orders)

I **sepultūra**, -æ, F., a burial, interment, funeral obsequies, sepulture

II **moror**, -ātus, -ārī, DEP. (MORA), to delay, tarry, stay, wait, remain, linger, loiter

III **cum...potuissent**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

IV **littera**, -æ, F. (LI-), a letter, alphabetical sign, written sign of a sound; TRANS. USU. PL. **Littēræ**, -ārum, F., a letter, epistle

**nē eōs frūmentō nēve<sup>I</sup> aliā rē<sup>II</sup> iuvārent<sup>III</sup> IV**

=(saying) that they should not ~not assist them with corn or  
aid them with corn or with any with any thing else  
other thing

**qui<sup>V</sup> VI sī [eos] iūvissent<sup>VII</sup>**

=(those men) who, if they should ~and if they should assist them  
have aided [those men (the  
Helvetii)]

**sē [eos] eōdem locō<sup>VIII</sup> quō Helvētiōs habitūrum [esse]<sup>IX</sup>**

=he (Cæsar) would hold [those ~he would regard them in the  
men] in the same place in which same light as the Helvetii  
(he held)<sup>X</sup> the Helvetii

**I nēve (or neu), ADV. and not, nor, and that not, and lest**

**II frūmentō nēve aliā rē, ABL. OF MEANS. §409**

**III iūvo, iūvi, iūtum, -arī (DIV-), to help, aid, assist, support, benefit**

**IV nē...iuvārent, COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH  
TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO  
THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE  
OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588**

**V A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or  
Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or  
without a connective; as, qua de causa, and for this reason, for this  
reason (I.D); qui...prælium committunt (Historical Present), they (or  
and they)...joined battle (I.XV)**

**VI quī, who may be used in transitions, but English prefers the  
demonstrative these**

**VII sī iūvissent, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL  
SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS,  
BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PROTASIS,  
BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF  
INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE  
INFINITIVE. §589**

**VIII eōdem locō, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE  
ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE  
NOUN. §412**

**IX sē...habitūrum, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON litterās nūntiōsque mīsit.  
§580**

**X V. MISSING THROUGH ELLIPSIS**

## I.XXVI.IX.

IPSE TRĪDUŌ INTERMISSŌ CUM OMNIBUS CŌPIĪS EŌS  
SEQUĪ CŒPIT.

**Ipsē**

=*he himself*

~*himself*

**trīduŏ intermissŏ<sup>1</sup>**

=*with three days <having been> left off*    ~*after the three days' interval*

**cum omnibus cōpiīs eŏs sequī cŒpit**

=*he begins to follow them with all (his) troops*

~*he began to pursue them with all his forces*

---

I ***trīduŏ intermissŏ***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420



# I.XXVII



THE HELVETIANS BEG FOR TERMS.



## I.XXVII.I.

**H**ELVĒTĪ OMNIUM RĒRUM INOPIĀ ADDUCTĪ  
LĒGĀTŌS DĒ DĒDITIŌNE AD EUM MĪSĒRUNT.

Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne<sup>III</sup> ad  
eum mīsērunt

=the Helvetii, <having been> led by a want of all things, sent  
embassadors to him concerning a surrender ~the Helvetii, compelled by the  
want of every thing, sent  
embassadors to him about a  
surrender

## I.XXVII.II.

QUĪ CUM EUM IN ITINERE CONVĒNISSENT SĒQUE AD  
PEDĒS PRŌIĒCISSENT SUPPLICITERQUE LOCŪTĪ FLENTĒS  
PĀCEM PETĪSSENT, ATQUE EŌS IN EŌ LOCŌ QUŌ TUM  
ESSENT SUUM ADVENTUM EXPECTĀRE IUSSISSET,  
PĀRUĒRUNT.

---

I **inopia, -æ**, F. (INOPS), *want, lack, scarcity*

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **dēditiō, -ōnis**, F. (DEDO), *a giving up, surrender, capitulation*

Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent

=(those men) who, when they had met him on the journey ~when these had met him on the way

sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent

=and they had thrown forth themselves at (Cæsar's) feet ~and had thrown themselves at his feet

suppliciterque<sup>I</sup> locūtī flentēs pācem petissent

=and <having> humbly spoken, crying, they had sought peace ~and speaking in suppliant tone had, with tears, sued for peace

atque eōs in eō loco

=and (when) // them // in that place ~and [when] // them // in the place

quō<sup>II</sup> tum essent<sup>III</sup>

=in which (where) they then were ~where they then were

suum adventum expectāre

=to await his own coming ~to await his arrival

[eos] iussisset<sup>IV</sup>

=he had ordered [them] ~he had ordered (them)

I **suppliciter**, ADV., like a petitioner, humbly, submissively, suppliantly

II **quō**, ADV. AND CONJ. DAT. AND ABL. (QUI), Trop. For which reason, wherefore, whence; To or in which place, whither, where (REL. AND INTERROG.)

III **quō...essent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

IV **cum...convēnissent...prōiēcissent...petissent...iussisset**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

pāruērunt<sup>I</sup>

=(and) they obeyed (him)

~they obeyed his commands

### I.XXVII.III.

EŌ POSTQUAM CÆSAR PERVĒNIT, OBSIDĒS, ARMA,  
SERVŌS QUĪ AD EŌS PERFŪGISSSENT POPOSCIT.

Eō postquam<sup>II</sup> Cæsar pervēnit

=after that, Cæsar arrived ~when Cæsar arrived there  
thither

obsidēs, arma, servōs<sup>III</sup>

=hostages, arms, (and) slaves

~hostages, their arms, and the  
slaves

quī ad eōs perfūgissent<sup>IV V</sup>

=who (as he said) had fled to ~who had deserted to the enemy  
them

poposcit<sup>VI</sup>

=he demanded

~he demanded

- I **pāreō, -uī, —, -ēre (PAR-)**, to appear, be visible, be at hand; To obey, be obedient, submit, comply
- II Temporal Conjunctions **ubi, ut, as when, postquam, as after, postes quam** (written as two words) as *after that* or *after and simul atque, simul, as soon as*, are often used with the Indicative, usually in the Perfect Tense. Thus, *Quod ubi Cæsar rescit. When Cæsar found this out (I.XXVIII); postquam Cæsar pervenit, after Cæsar arrived (I.XXVII); simul atque se receperunt, so soon as they rallied (IV.XXVII)*
- III **servus (or servos), -ī, m. (SERVUS)**, a slave, servant, serf, serving-man
- IV **quī...perfūgissent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592
- V **perfugiō, -fūgī, —, -ere (PER + FUGIŌ)**, to flee for refuge; In partic., to go over or desert to the enemy (class.)
- VI **pōscō, popōscī, —, -ere (PREC-)**, to ask urgently, beg, demand, request, desire

## LXXVII.IV.

DUM EA CONQUĪRUNTUR ET CŌFERUNTUR, NOCTE INTERMISSĀ, CIRCITER HOMINUM MĪLIA SEX EIUS PĀGĪ QUĪ VERBIGENUS APPELLĀTUR, SĪVE TIMŌRE PERTERRITĪ, NĒ ARMĪS TRĀDITĪS SUPPLICIŌ ADFICERENTUR, SĪVE SPĒ SALŪTIS INDUCTĪ, QUOD IN TANTĀ MULTITŪDINE DĒDITICIŌRUM SUAM FUGAM AUT OCCULTĀRĪ AUT OMNĪNŌ IGNŌRĀRĪ POSSE EXĪSTIMĀRENT, PRĪMĀ NOCTE Ē CASTRĪS HELVĒTIŌRUM ĒGRESSĪ AD RHĒNUM FĪNĒSQUE GERMĀNŌRUM CONTENDĒRUNT.

**Dum ea conquīruntur<sup>I</sup>**

=while those (things) are being sought ~while those things were being sought for

**et cōferuntur**

=and (while these things) are being collected ~and got together

**nocte intermissā<sup>II</sup>**

=with a night <having been> passed ~after a night's interval

**circiter hominum<sup>III</sup> mīlia sex eius pāgī**

=around 6 thousands of men of his canton ~about 6000 men of that canton

---

**I conquīrō, -quīsivī, -quīsitus, -ere** (COM + QUĀERO), to seek for, hunt up, search out, procure, bring together, collect

**II nocte intermissā**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

**III PARTITIVE GEN.** WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

quī Verbigenus<sup>I</sup> appellātur

=which is called the Verbigenus      ~which was called the Verbigene

sive timōre<sup>II</sup> perterriti

=be it (those men) <having been>      ~whether terrified by fear  
thoroughly terrified by fear

nē

=lest      ~lest

armīs trāditīs<sup>III</sup>

=with (their) arms <having      ~after delivering up their arms  
been> handed over

supplicio<sup>IV</sup> v adficerentur<sup>VI</sup> VII

=they would be affected with      ~they should be put to death  
punishment

---

I **Verbigenus, -ī, M.,** *Verbigen, Verbigenus*, a canton of the Helvetians

II **ABL. OF MEANS. §409**

III **armīs trāditīs, ABL. ABS. §420**

IV **supplicō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (SUPPLEX), *to kneel down, humble oneself, pray humbly, beseech, beg, implore, supplicate*

V **ABL. OF MEANS. §409**

VI **afficio, affēci, affectum, affere** (AD + FACIO), *to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; WITH ACC. AND ABL., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon; supplicio affici, to be put to death*

VII **nē...adficerentur,** CLAUSE OF FEARING. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH NĒ AFFIRMATIVE AND NĒ NŌN OR UT NEGATIVE. IN THIS USE NĒ IS COMMONLY TO BE TRANSLATED BY THAT, UT AND NĒ NŌN BY THAT NOT. §564

sīve spē<sup>I</sup> salūtis<sup>II III</sup> inductī

=or be it (those men), <having been> led by the hope of safety ~or else induced by the hope of safety

quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum<sup>IV</sup> suam fugam

=because in so great a multitude of captives, their own flight ~because that amid so vast a multitude of those who had surrendered themselves, their flight

aut occultārī<sup>V</sup>

=/it was possible/ to either be hidden ~might either be concealed

aut omnīnō ignōrārī<sup>VI</sup> posse<sup>VII</sup>

=or /they thought/ it was possible to be entirely unrecognized ~or // entirely overlooked

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II OBJ. GEN. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS USED WITH NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS. §347

III **salūs, -ūtis**, F. (SALVUS), a being safe and sound; a sound or whole condition, health, welfare, prosperity, preservation, safety, deliverance, etc.

IV **dēditicius, -i**, ADJ. (DEDITUS), surrendered; PL. M. AS SUBST., prisoners of war, captives

V **occulō, -culuī, -cultus, -ere** (OB + CAL-), to cover, cover over; To cover up, hide, conceal

VI **ignōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (GNA-), not to know, to be unacquainted, be ignorant, mistake, misunderstand; IN PASS., not to be known or recognized

VII INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimārent**. §592

exīstimārent<sup>I</sup>

=they thought

~they supposed

primā<sup>II</sup> nocte<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> ē castrīs<sup>V</sup> Helvētiōrum ēgressī<sup>VI</sup> ad Rhēnum  
finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt

=in the first part (of) the night, (those men) <having> gone forth from the camp of the Helvetii, (and) they hastened toward the Rhine and the territories of the Germans ~having at nightfall departed out of the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine and the territories of the Germans

---

I **quod...exīstimārent**, INFORMAL INDIC. DISC. §592 & THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

II **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), night; **primā nocte**, at nightfall

III **primus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), the first, first; In time or place, first, fore, foremost, the first part

IV **primā nocte**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

V **ē castrīs**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

VI **ēgredior, -gressus, -ī**, DEP. (EX + GRADIOR), INTRANS, to go out, come forth, march out, go away; TRANS, to go beyond, pass out of, leave





# I.XXVIII



CÆSAR DEALS WITH THE FUGITIVE VERBIGENS.



## I.XXVIII.I.



QUOD UBI CÆSAR RESCIIT, QUŌRUM PER FĪNĒS  
IERANT HĪS UTĪ CONQUĪRERENT ET  
REDŪCERENT, SĪ SIBI PŪRGĀTI ESSE VELLENT,  
IMPERĀVIT: REDUCTŌS IN HOSTIUM NUMERŌ  
HABUIT; RELIQUŌS OMNĒS OBSIDIBUS, ARMĪS, PERFUGĪS  
TRĀDITĪS IN DĒDITIONEM ACCĒPIT.

Quod<sup>I</sup> ubi Cæsar rescit<sup>II</sup>

=which (thing), when Cæsar ~but when Cæsar discovered  
found out (e.g. when Caesar this  
discovered that)

quōrum<sup>III</sup> per finēs ierant

=through the territories of ~through whose territory they  
whom they had gone had gone

---

I this; OBJ. OF **resciit**

II SEE scio

III **quorum** PRECEDES ITS ANTECEDENT **hīs**, WHICH IS DAT. AFTER **imperāvīt**

hīs<sup>I</sup>

=/he commanded/ these men ~these

utī conquīrerent

=that they should seek out ~to seek them out  
(them)et redūcerent<sup>II III</sup>=and they should lead (them) ~and to bring them back again  
backsī sibi<sup>IV</sup> pūrgāti<sup>V</sup> esse vellent<sup>VI</sup>=if they wished to be exculpated ~if they wanted to clear  
to him themselves in his sight

imperāvit

=he commanded ~he commanded

---

I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **imperāvit**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §36  
7

II **utī conquīrerent et redūcerent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

III **redūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere** (RE- + DŪCŌ), to lead back, bring back, conduct back, escort back, accompany

IV DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

V **pūrgō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (PURUS + AG-), to free from what is superfluous, make clean, make pure, clean, cleanse, purify; In partic. To clear from accusation, to excuse, exculpate, justify (syn. excuso)

VI **sī...vellent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

[eos] reductōs<sup>I</sup> in hostium numerō habuit

=*[those men] <having been> led back, he held, among the number of the enemy* ~*and considered them, when brought back, in the light of enemy*

reliquōs omnēs

=*all the remaining men* ~*all the rest*

obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs<sup>II</sup> trāditīs<sup>III</sup>

=*with the hostages, arms, (and) deserters <having been> handed over* ~*upon their delivering up the hostages, arms, and deserters*

in dēditionem accēpit<sup>IV</sup>

=*he received in catipulation* ~*he accepted to a surrender*

## I.XXVIII.II.

HELVĒTIOS, TULINGŌS, LATOVICŌS IN FĪNĒS SUŌS, UNDE ERANT PROPECTĪ, REVERTĪ IUSSIT, ET, QUOD OMNIBUS FRŪGIBUS ĀMISSĪS DOMĪ NIHIL ERAT QUŌ FAMEM TOLERĀRENT, ALLOBROGIBUS IMPERĀVIT UT IĪS FRŪMENTĪ CŌPIAM FACERENT: IPSŌS OPPIDA VĪCŌSQUE, QUŌS INCENDERANT, RESTITUERE IUSSIT.

---

I Expressing Characterization or Description: *victis, venientes, those beaten, those coming up, meaning those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I.XXV)

II **perfuga, -æ**, M. (PER + FVG-), *a deserter*

III **obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (AD + CAPIO), *to take without effort, receive, get, accept*; Of voluntary taking, *to take, accept, take into possession, receive*

Helvētios, Tulingōs, Latovicōs<sup>I</sup> in finēs suōs

=the Helvetii, the Tulingi, (and) ~the Helvetii, the Tulingi, and  
the Latobrigi /to return/ to their ~the Latobrigi /to return/ to their  
own territories territories

unde<sup>II</sup> erant profectī

=from which place they had ~whence they came  
departed

revertī<sup>III IV</sup>

=to return ~to return

iussit

=he ordered ~he ordered

et

=and ~and

quod

=because ~as

omnibus frūgibus āmissīs<sup>V VI</sup>

=with all the grain <having ~all the productions of the earth  
been> lost having been destroyed

I **Latovicī, -ōrum**, M. PL, the Latobrigi, a Celtic tribe who joined the Helvetii in their migration attempt

II **unde**, ADV. Of place. RELAT., from which place, whence

III **revertor, revertī, reversus sum**. DEP. (RE + VERTO), to return

IV **Helvētios, Tulingōs, Latovicōs...revertī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iussit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **omnibus frūgibus āmissīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

VI **āmittō, -isī, -issus, -ere** (AB + MITTO), to send away, dismiss, part with

domī<sup>I</sup> nihil erat

=(and since) there was nothing  
at home

~and as there was nothing at  
home

quō famem<sup>II</sup> tolerārent<sup>III IV</sup>

=by which they (the Helvetii)  
might bear (their) hunger

~whereby they might sustain  
their hunger

Allobrogibus<sup>V</sup> imperāvit

=he commanded the Allobroges

~he commanded the Allobroges

ut iis<sup>VI</sup> frūmentī cōpiam facerent<sup>VII</sup>

=that they should make an  
abundance of grain for them

~to let them have a supply of  
corn

ipsōs oppida vīcōsque

=the town and villages  
themselves

~the towns and villages

quōs incenderant

=which they had burned

~which they had burned

I LOC. CASE. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE WHERE, BY THE LOCATIVE. §427

II famēs, -is, F. (FA-), hunger

III tolerō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (TAL-), to bear, endure, support, sustain, suffer; To support, nourish, maintain, sustain, preserve

IV quō...tolerārent, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

V DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. imperāvit. §367

VI DAT. OF REF. §376

VII ut...facerent, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

restituere<sup>viii</sup>

=to restore

~to rebuild

iussit

=(and) he ordered

~and ordered them

### I.LXXVIII.III.

ID EĀ MAXIMĒ RATIŌNE FĒCIT, QUOD NŌLUIT EUM  
LOCUM UNDE HELVĒTIŪ DISCESSERANT VACĀRE, NĒ  
PROPTER BONITĀTEM AGRŌRUM GERMĀNĪ QUĪ TRĀNS  
RHĒNUM INCOLUNT E SUĪS FĪNIBUS IN HELVĒTIŌRUM  
FĪNĒS TRĀNSĪRENT ET FĪNITIMĪ GALLIÆ PRŌVINCIAE  
ALLOBROGIBUSQUE ESSENT.

Id eā maximē ratiōne<sup>ii iii</sup> fēcit

=he did it (this) especially with  
this reasoning

~this he did, chiefly, on this  
reasoning

quod nōluit

=because he was unwilling

~because he was unwilling

eum locum

=that that place

~that the country

unde Helvētiū discesserant

=from which the Helvetii had  
departed

~whence the Helvetii had  
departed

---

VIII *ipsōs...restituere*, INDIR. DISC. §580

II *ratio, -ōnis*, F. (RA-), a reckoning, numbering, casting up, account, calculation, computation; In rhet., a showing cause, argument, reasoning in support of a proposition

III *eā maximē ratiōne*, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

**vacāre<sup>I</sup>**

=to be uninhabited

~should be untenanted

**nē propter bonitātem<sup>II</sup> agrōrum Germānī**

=lest the Germans // on account  
of the goodness of the lands

~lest the Germans // on account  
of the excellence of the lands

**quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt**

=(the Germans) who dwell  
across the Rhine

~who dwell on the other side of  
the Rhine

**e suis finibus<sup>III</sup> in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent**

=should cross over from their  
own territories into the  
territories of the Helvetii

~should cross over from their  
own territories into those of the  
Helvetii

**et finitimī Galliæ prōvinciæ Allobrogibusque<sup>IV</sup> essent<sup>V</sup>**

=and should be neighbours to  
the Gallic province and the  
Allobroges

~and become borderers upon the  
province of Gaul and the  
Allobroges

---

I **vacō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre**, to be empty, be void, be vacant, be without, not to contain; Lit. of space. uninhabited, uncultivated

II **bōnitas, ātis**, F. (BONUS), the good quality of a thing, goodness, excellence

III **e suis finibus**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426

IV DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **imperāvit**, MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

V **nē...trānsirent...essent**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

## I.LXXVIII.IV.

BOIŌS PETENTIBUS HÆDUĪS, QUOD ĒGREGIĀ VIRTŪTE  
ERANT COGNITĪ, UT IN FĪNIBUS SUĪS COLLOCĀRENT,  
CONCESSIT, QUIBUS ILLĪ AGRŌS DEDĒRUNT QUŌSQUE  
POSTEĀ IN PAREM IŪRIS LĪBERTĀTISQUE CONDICIŌNEM  
ATQUE IPSĪ ERANT RECĒPĒRUNT.

Boiōs<sup>I</sup> petentibus Hæduīs<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=with asking of the Audeans /he ~the petition of the Ædui // the  
conceded to/ the Boii Boii

quod ēgrediā virtūte<sup>IV</sup> erant cognitī

=because they were known <to ~as these were known to be of  
have the attribute of> distinguished valor  
distinguished valor

ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent<sup>V</sup>

=<in order> that they might be ~to settle in their own (i. e. in the  
placed together in their own Æduan) territories  
territories

concessit

=he conceded to ~he granted (them)

---

I ACC. PL., OBJ. OF *concessit*

II *petentibus Hæduīs*, DAT. WITH COMP. V. *concessit*. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

III *Hæduus, -a, -um*, ADJ., of the *Hædui*, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône—As a NOUN, a *Hæduan*, the *Hædui*

IV *ēgrediā virtūte*, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

V *ut...conlocārent*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563



quibus illī agrōs dedērunt

=to (those men) whom they gave ~to whom they gave lands  
(their) lands

quōsque postea in parem<sup>I</sup> iūris libertātisque condiōnem<sup>II</sup>

=and whom afterwards // into an ~and whom they afterward // to  
equal condition of rights and of the same state of rights and  
freedom freedom as themselves

atque ipsī erant

=as they themselves were ~as they themselves were

recēpērunt

=they received ~they admitted

---

I **pār, paris**, ADJ. (PAR-), *equal*

II **condiciō, -ōnis**, F. (COM- + DIC-), *an agreement, stipulation, condition, compact, proposition, terms, demand; Of things, a situation, condition, nature, mode, manner: agri vitæ, manner of living*



# I.XXIX



## A TALLY OF THE HELVETIANS AND THEIR ALLIES.



### I.XXIX.I.



IN CASTRIS HELVETIORUM TABULAE REPERTAE SUNT LITTERIS GRAECIS CONFECTAE ET AD CAESAREM RELATAE, QUIBUS IN TABULIS NOMINATIM RATIO CONFECTA ERAT, QUI NUMERUS DOMO EXISSET EORUM QUI ARMA FERRE POSSENT, ET ITEM SEPARATIM PUERI, SENES MULIERESQUE.

In castris Helvetiorum tabulae<sup>I</sup> repertae sunt

=in the camp of the Helvetii, ~in the camp of the Helvetii, lists  
tablets were found were found

litteris Graecis<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> confectae

=(they were) made in greek ~written up in Greek characters  
letters

---

I **tabula, -ae, f.** (TA-), a board, plank; A writing-tablet, writingbook, slate; also, a tablet written upon, a writing, as a letter, contract, account, list, will, etc.

II **litteris Graecis**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **Graecus, -a, -um**, ADJ., of the Greeks, Greek—As a noun, a Greek, the Greeks

et ad Cæsarem relātæ [sunt]<sup>I</sup>

=and they were brought back to Cæsar ~and were brought back to Cæsar

quibus in tabulīs<sup>II</sup> nōminātim<sup>III</sup> ratiō cōnfecta erat

=in which ~~tablets~~ an account was made, one by one ~in which an estimate had been drawn up, name by name

quī<sup>IV</sup> numerus domō<sup>V</sup> exisset<sup>VI</sup> eōrum

=(and) what number of them had gone from home ~(and) what number had gone forth from their country

quī arma ferre possent<sup>VII</sup>

=(those men) who were able to bear arms ~of those who were able to bear arms

---

I **referō, rettuli, relātus, referre** (RE + FERŌ), to bear back, bring back, drive back, carry back

II An Antecedent is sometimes repeated in a Relative Clause, and should be translated only once; as, *itinerā duo, quibus itineribus, two routes by which* (I.VI), not as, *by which routes*

III **nōminātim**, ADV., by name, expressly, one by one, in detail

IV **quī** introducing an indirect question; as, *what*

V ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

VI **quī...exisset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VII **quī...possent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

et item sēparātim puerī<sup>I</sup>, senēs<sup>II</sup> mulierēsque<sup>III</sup>

=and also, separately, the boys, ~and likewise the boys, the old  
the old men, and the women men, and the women, separately

## I.XXIX.II.

QUARUM OMNIUM RERUM SUMMA ERAT CAPITUM  
HELVĒTIŌRUM MĪLIUM DUCENTŌRUM SEXĀGINTĀ  
TRIUM, TULINGORUM MĪLIUM TRĪGINTĀ SEX,  
LATOVICŌRUM QUATTUORDECIM, RAURICŌRUM VĪGINTĪ  
TRIUM, BOIŌRUM TRĪGINTĀ DUŌRUM: EX HĪS QUĪ ARMA  
FERRE POSSENT AD MĪLIA NŌNĀGINTĀ DUO.

Quarum omnium rerum summa<sup>IV</sup> erat capitem<sup>V</sup> Helvētiŏrum  
mīlium ducentŏrum sexāgintā trium

=of all ~~which~~ things the sum ~of all which items the total  
was: of the Helvetii heads, two was: of the Helvetian people,  
hundred and sixty three 263,000  
thousands

---

I **puer, -erī**, M. (PV-), a male child, boy, lad, young man—Hence, PL. *pueri*, children; In partic. A male child, a boy, lad, young man (strictly till the seventeenth year, but freq. applied to those who are much older)

II **senex, senis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (SENIOR, SEN-), old, aged, advanced in years; SUBST. M. **posit.**, an old man, aged person, graybeard

III **mulier, -eris**, F. (MAL-), a woman, female

IV **summa, -æ**, F. (SUMMUS), Fig., the chief place, highest rank, leadership, supremacy; An amount, sum, aggregate, whole, quantity

V **caput, -itis**, N. (CAP-), the head; Lit. head; Trop. a man, person, or animal

Tulingorum mīlium trīgintā sex, Latovicōrum quattuordecim,  
Rauricōrum vīgintī trium, Boiōrum trīgintā duōrum

=of the Tulingi, thirty-six ~of the Tulingi, 36,000; Of the  
thousands; Of the Latobrigi, Latobrigi, 14,000; Of the  
fourteen (thousands); Of the Rauraci, 23,000; Of the Boii,  
Rauraci, twenty-three 32,000  
(thousands); Of the Boii, thirty-  
two (thousands)

ex hīs

=from them

~out of these

quī arma ferre possent<sup>I</sup>

who were able to bear arms

~such as could bear arms

ad<sup>II</sup> mīlia nōnāgintā duo [fuērunt]

=[were] about ninety-two ~(amounted) to about 92,000  
thousands

### I.LXXIX.III.

SUMMA OMNIUM FUĒRUNT AD MĪLIA TRECENTA  
SEXĀGINTĀ OCTŌ.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia trecenta sexāgintā octō

=the sum of all (the people) were ~the sum of all amounted to  
near three-hundred and sixty- nearly 368,000  
eight thousands

---

I **quī...possent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC. §535

II **ad**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., Of approach. In space, *to, toward*; In number or amount, *near, near to, almost, about, toward*

## I.XXIX.IV.

EŌRUM QUĪ DOMUM REDIĒRUNT CĒNSŪ HABITŌ, UT  
CÆSAR IMPERĀVERAT, REPERTUS EST NUMERUS MĪLIUM  
CENTUM ET DECEM.

Eŏrum

=*of these men*

~*among these*

quĭ domum rediĕrunt<sup>I</sup>

=*who returned home*

~*who returned home*

cĕnsŭ<sup>II</sup> habitŏ<sup>III</sup>

=*with the census <having been>*  
*had*

~*when the census was taken*

ut Cæsar imperāverat

=*as Cæsar had ordered*

~*as Cæsar had commanded*

reptus est numerus mĭlium centum et decem

=*the number was found to be a*  
*hundred and ten thousands*

~*the number was found to be*  
*110,000*

---

I **redeŏ, -iĭ, -itus, -ĭre** (RED + EO), Of persons, *to go back, turn back, return, turn around*

II **cĕnsus, -ŭs**, M. (CENSEO), *a registering of citizens and property by the censors, census, appraisalment; The register of the census, censor's lists*

III **cĕnsŭ habitŏ**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420





# THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.

## I.XXX



THE GALLIC LEADERS CONGRATULATE CÆSAR.



### I.XXX.I.



ELLŌ HELVĒTIŌRUM CŌNFECTŌ, TŌTĪUS FERĒ  
GALLIÆ LĒGĀTĪ, PRĪNCIPĒS CĪVITĀTUM, AD  
CÆSAREM GRĀTULĀTUM CONVĒNĒRUNT:  
INTELLEGERE SĒSĒ, TAMETSĪ PRŌ VETERIBUS  
HELVĒTIŌRUM INIŪRIĪS POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ AB HĪS PCENĀS  
BELLŌ REPETĪSSET, TAMEN EAM REM NŌN MINUS EX ŪSŪ  
TERRÆ GALLIÆ QUAM POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ACCIDISSE;  
PROPTEREĀ QUOD EŌ CŌNSILIŌ FLŌRENTISSIMĪS RĒBUS  
DOMŌS SUĀS HELVĒTIĪ RELĪQUISSENT, UTĪ TŌTĪ GALLIÆ  
BELLUM ĪNFERRENT IMPERIŌQUE POTĪRENTUR,  
LOCUMQUE DOMICILIŌ EX MAGNĀ CŌPIĀ DĒLIGERENT  
QUEM EX OMNĪ GALLIĀ OPORTŪNISSIMUM AC  
FRŪCTUŌSISSIMUM IŪDICĀSENT, RELIQUĀSQUE  
CĪVITĀTĒS STĪPENDIĀRIĀS HABĒRENT.

**Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō<sup>I</sup>**

=*with the war of the Helvetii* ~*when the war with the Helvetii*  
 <*having been*> *completed* ~*was concluded*

**tōtius ferē Galliāe lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvītātum**

=*the ambassadors of nearly all* ~*ambassadors from almost all*  
*of Gaul, the chiefs of the states* ~*parts of Gaul, the chiefs of states*

**ad Cæsarem grātulātum<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> convēnērunt**

=*they (the ambassadors) came* ~*assembled to congratulate*  
*together for <the purpose of>* *Cæsar*  
*congratulating Cæsar*

**intellegere sēsē<sup>IV</sup>**

=(*saying*) *that they know* ~[*saying*] *that they were well aware*

---

I ***bellō...cōfectō***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II ***grātulor, -ātus, -ārī***, DEP. (GRATUS), *to manifest joy, be glad, congratulate, rejoice*; SUPINE. ACC. *To give thanks, render thanks, thank*

III ***ad Cæsarem grātulātum***, *ad* + ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE AFTER V. OF MOTION ***convēnērunt***. THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

IV ***intellegere sēsē***, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

tametsī<sup>i</sup> prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī<sup>ii</sup>

=that, although // on account of ~that, although // for the old  
the old injustices of the injustices of the Helvetians  
Helvetians to the Roman people toward the Roman people

ab hīs<sup>iii</sup> poenās bellō<sup>iv</sup> repetī[vi]sset<sup>v vi</sup>

=he had sought again a penalty ~he had taken vengeance on the  
with war by means of those men Helvetii in war  
(the Helvetians)

- 
- I **tametsī**, CONJ. (TAMEN + ETSI), In concession, *notwithstanding that, although, though*
- II **populī Rōmānī**, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348
- III ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405
- IV ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409
- V **repetō, -ivī, -itus, -ēre** (RE + PETŌ), *to fall upon again, attack anew, strike again; To seek again, return to, revisit*
- VI **tametsī...repetisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CONCESSIVE IDEA IS RATHER VAGUE AND GENERAL, AND TAKES A VARIETY OF FORMS, EACH OF WHICH HAS ITS DISTINCT HISTORY. SOMETIMES CONCESSION IS EXPRESSED BY THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE IN A SENTENCE GRAMMATICALLY INDEPENDENT (§440), BUT IT IS MORE FREQUENTLY AND MORE PRECISELY EXPRESSED BY A DEPENDENT CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY A CONCESSIVE PARTICLE. THE CONCESSIVE FORCE LIES CHIEFLY IN THE CONJUNCTIONS (WHICH ARE INDEFINITE OR CONDITIONAL IN ORIGIN), AND IS OFTEN MADE CLEARER BY AN ADVERSATIVE PARTICLE (TAMEN, CERTĒ) IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. AS THE SUBJUNCTIVE MAY BE USED IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES TO EXPRESS A CONCESSION, IT IS ALSO EMPLOYED IN CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, AND SOMEWHAT MORE FREQUENTLY THAN THE INDICATIVE. §526 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terræ Galliæ quam populī Rōmānī<sup>I</sup> accidisse<sup>II</sup>

=*nonetheless, that thing had happened, no less, from the use of the Gallic land than of the Roman people* ~*yet that circumstance had happened no less to the benefit of the land of Gaul than of the Roman people*

propterea quod eō cōsiliō<sup>III</sup>

=*on account of which because // because of that plan* ~*because // with that design*

flōrentissimīs<sup>IV</sup> rēbus<sup>V VI</sup>

=*in (during) the most flourishing circumstances* ~*while their affairs were most flourishing*

domōs suās Helvētīi reliquissent<sup>VII</sup>

=*the Helvetii // had left behind their own homes* ~*the Helvetii // had quitted their country*

---

I **Galliæ...populī Rōmānī**, OBJ. GEN. §348

II **eam rem...accidisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellegere**. §580

III **eō cōsiliō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **florentissimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (SUPER. OF *flōrens*), *greatly blooming; greatly flourishing*

V **flōrentissimīs rēbus**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI ABS. ABL. DENOTING TIME WHEN

VII **quod...reliquissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES. QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. II. CAUSAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, AND QUANDŌ TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, LIKE ANY OTHER DEPENDENT CLAUSE (SEE §580). §540 & §583

utī tōtī Galliæ<sup>VIII</sup> bellum inferrent

~in order that they might bear war to all Gaul =to wage war upon the whole of Gaul

imperioque<sup>II</sup> potirentur

=and that they might become master of the supreme power ~and becoming master of the government

locumque domiciliō<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> ex magnā cōpiā deligerent

=and they might choose, from a great abundance, a place for habitation ~and selecting, out of a great abundance, that spot for an abode

quem ex omnī Galliā

=(a place) which // from all Gaul ~which // of all Gaul

oportūnissimum<sup>V</sup> ac fructuōsissimum iudicā[vi]ssent<sup>VI</sup>

=they had judged to be the most opportune and productive ~they should judge to be the most convenient and most productive

VIII **tōtī Galliæ**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **inferrent**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **potirentur**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

III DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF SERVICE, OR THE DOUBLE DATIVE CONSTRUCTION. THE VERB IS USUALLY SUM. THE NOUN EXPRESSING THE END FOR WHICH IS REGULARLY ABSTRACT AND SINGULAR IN NUMBER AND IS NEVER MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE, EXCEPT ONE OF DEGREE (MAGNUS, MINOR, ETC.), OR BY A GENITIVE. §382

IV **domicilium**, -ī, N. (DOMUS + CAL-), a habitation, dwelling, domicile, abode

V **opportūnus**, -a, -um (**opor-**), ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (OB + PAR-), fit, meet, adapted, convenient, suitable, seasonable, opportune

VI **quem...iudicāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

reliquāsque cīvitatēs stīpendiāriās<sup>I II</sup> habērent<sup>III</sup>

=and they might have the ~and hold the rest of the states  
remaining states as tributaries as tributaries  
(to them)

## I.XXX.II.

PETIĒRUNT UTĪ SIBI CONCILIUM TŌTĪUS GALLIÆ IN DIEM  
CERTAM INDĪCERE IDQUE CÆSARIS VOLUNTĀTE FACERE  
LICĒRET: SĒSĒ HABĒRE QUĀSDAM RĒS QUĀS EX COMMŪNĪ  
CŌNSĒNSŪ AB EŌ PETERE VELLENT.

Petiērunt

=they had sought

~they requested

utī [se] sibi<sup>IV</sup> concilium tōtīus Galliæ in diem certam indīcere<sup>V</sup>

=that [they themselves] // to ~that // to proclaim an assembly  
point out a council of all of Gaul of the whole of Gaul for a  
for themselves on a certain day particular day

I SUBST. PRED. APPOSITIVE OF **cīvitatēs**

II **stīpendiāriūs, -a, -um**, ADJ. (STIPENDIUM), *Of or belonging to tribute, liable to impost or contribution, tributary* (of imposts payable in money; whereas *vectigalis* denotes those payable in kind; the former was held to be the most humiliating)

III **utī...inferrent...potīrentur...dēligerent...habērent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

IV DAT. OF INDIR. OBJ. WITH THE V. **indīcere**

V **indicō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (INDEX), *to point out, indicate, inform, show, declare, disclose, make known, reveal, betray*

idque Cæsaris voluntâte<sup>I</sup> facere licēret<sup>II</sup>

=and /that [they themselves]/ ~and // to be allowed with  
might be allowed to do it by the Cæsar's permission to do that  
will of Cæsar

Sēsē habēre<sup>III</sup> quāsdam rēs

=(saying) that they are having ~[stating] that they had some  
certain things things

quās ex commūnī<sup>IV</sup> cōnsēnsū<sup>V</sup> ab eō petere vellent<sup>VI</sup>

=(certain) things which they ~which with the general consent,  
were wishing to seek from they wished to ask of him  
common agreement by that  
(man)

### I.LXXX.III.

EĀ RĒ PERMISSĀ DIEM CONCILIŌ CŌSTITUĒRUNT ET  
IŪRE IŪRANDŌ NĒ QUIS ĒNŪNTIĀRET, NISI QUIBUS  
COMMŪNĪ CŌNSILIŌ MANDĀTUM ESSET, INTER SĒ  
SĀNXĒRUNT.

Eā rē permissā<sup>VII VIII</sup>

=with this thing <having been> ~upon granting this request  
permitted

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II *utī...licēret*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

III *sēsē habēre*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *indicere*. §580

IV *commūne*, -is, N. (COMMUNIS), *that which is common*

V *consensus*, -ūs, M. (CONSENTIO), *agreement, accordance, unanimity, concord*

VI *quās...vellent*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VII *permittō*, -mīsi, -missus, -ere (PER + MITTŌ), *to let pass, let go, let loose; To let go, reach with, cast, hurl; To give leave, let, allow, suffer, grant, permit*

VIII *eā rē permissā*, ABL. ABS. §420

diem conciliō<sup>I</sup> cōstituērunt

=they set a day for the council

~they appointed a day for the assembly

et iūre iūrando<sup>II</sup> III

=and by swearing an oath

~by sworn oath

nē quis ēnūntiāret<sup>IV</sup>

=that not anyone should announce (their deliberations)

~that no one should disclose (their deliberations)

nisi quibus<sup>V</sup> commūnī cōnsiliō<sup>VI</sup> mandātum esset

=unless (those men) to whom had been ordered by common council

~except those to whom this [office] should have been assigned by the general assembly

---

I DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

II **iūro, -āvi, -ātum**, DEP. (IŪROR), *to swear, to take an oath*

III **iūre iūrando**, ABL. OF MEANS, §409; ABL. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED: TO EXPRESS MANNER, MEANS, CAUSE, ETC. §507

IV **nē... ēnūntiāret**, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE, §563

V DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **mandātum esset**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

VI **commūnī cōnsiliō**, ABL. OF MEANS, §409



inter sē<sup>I</sup> sānxērunt<sup>II</sup>

=(and) was ratified among ~and ratified with one another  
themselves

- 
- I The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by *inter se* (Lit. *among themselves*), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, *inter se dant, they gave* (Lit. *give*) *to one another* (I.III); *inter se differunt, they differ from one another* (I.I); *inter se collocuti, having conferred with one another* (IV.XXX); *cohortati inter se, urging one another on* (IV.XXV); *inter se contenderent, they strove together* (I.XXXI); *inter se, referring to two persons, with each other* (V.XLIV)
- II **sanciō, sānxī, sānctus, -ire** (SAC-), Of a law or treaty, *to make sacred, render inviolable, fix unalterably, establish, appoint, decree, ordain, confirm, ratify, enact*; *To ratify, confirm, consecrate, enact, approve*



# I.XXXI



CÆSAR IS BESEECHED TO DEFEND GAUL.



## I.XXXI.I.



Ō CONCILIŌ DĪMISSŌ, ĪDEM PRĪNCĒPS  
CĪVITĀTUM QUĪ ANTE FUERANT AD CÆSAREM  
REVERTĒRUNT, PETIĒRUNTQUE UTĪ SIBI  
SĒCRĒTŌ DĒ SUĀ OMNIUMQUE SALŪTE CUM  
EŌ AGERE LICĒRET.

**Eō conciliō dīmissō<sup>1</sup>**

=with that council <having been> sent away ~when that assembly was dismissed

**īdem prīncēpēs cīvītātum**

=the same leaders of the states ~the same chiefs of states

**quī ante fuerant**

=who had been before ~who had before been

**ad Cæsarem revertērunt**

=returned to Cæsar ~returned to Cæsar

**petiēruntque**

=and they sought ~and asked

---

I ***eō conciliō dīmissō***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

utī sibi<sup>I</sup> sēcrētō<sup>II</sup> dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret<sup>III</sup>  
 =that it might be permitted to ~to be allowed to treat with him  
 conduct with him in secret about privately (in secret) concerning  
 their own safety and (the safety) the safety of themselves and of  
 of all men all

## I.XXXI.II.

EĀ RĒ IMPETRĀTĀ, SĒSĒ OMNĒS FLENTĒS CĀSARĪ AD  
 PEDĒS PRŌIĒCĒRUNT: NŌN MINUS SĒ ID CONTENDERE ET  
 LABŌRĀRE NĒ EA QUÆ DĪXISSENT ĒNŪNTIĀRENTUR,  
 QUAM UTĪ EA QUÆ VELLENT IMPETRĀRENT; PROPTEREĀ  
 QUOD, SĪ ĒNŪNTIĀTUM ESSET, SUMMUM IN CRUCIĀTUM  
 SĒ VENTŪRŌS VIDĒRENT.

Eā rē impetrātā<sup>IV</sup>  
 =with this thing <having been> ~that request having been  
 achieved obtained

sēsē omnēs flentēs Cæsari<sup>V</sup> ad pedēs prōiēcērunt<sup>VI</sup>  
 =all the men, weeping, threw ~they all threw themselves in  
 themselves forth to Caesar at tears at Cæsar's feet  
 (his) feet

I DAT. WITH IMPERSONAL V. **licēret**. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH THE IMPERSONALS LIBET (LUBET), IT PLEASES, AND LICET, IT IS ALLOWED. §368

II **sēcernō, -crēvī, -crētus, -ere** (SĒ + CERNŌ), to put apart, sunder, sever, part, divide, separate; SUBST., **sēcrētum, -i**, N., something secret, secret conversation; a mystery, secret

III **utī...licēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

IV **eā rē impetrātā**, ABL. ABS. §420

V DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE IS OFTEN USED TO QUALIFY A WHOLE IDEA, INSTEAD OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE MODIFYING A SINGLE WORD. §377

VI **prōiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (PRO + IACIO), to throw forth, cast before, throw out, throw down, throw

nōn minus sē id<sup>I</sup> contendere

=*(saying,) no less, that they were striving for this thing*

~*[saying] that they no less begged*

et labōrāre<sup>II III</sup>

=*and (that) (they) were working for*

~*and striving*

nē ea quæ dixissent<sup>IV</sup>

=*that those things which they had said // not*

~*to not say the things which*

ēnūtiārentur<sup>V</sup>

*should /not/ be announced*

~*should be disclosed*

quam utī<sup>VI</sup> ea

=*than that those things*

~*than those things*

quæ vellent<sup>VII</sup>

=*which they wished for*

~*which they wished for*

I Intransitive and Transitive Verbs sometimes take a Neuter Pronoun as an Accusative of Result produced, *to carry forward or qualify the meaning*; as. *Id eis persuasit, he persuaded them (to adopt) that (course), Lit. he persuaded that to them (I.II); hoc facere, to do this (II.XXVII)*

II **sē...contendere...labōrāre**, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **labōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (LABOR), *to labor, take pains, endeavor, exert oneself, strive*

IV **quæ dixissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V **nē...ēnūtiārentur**, NEG. CLAUSE OF RES. §531

VI **quam utī, than that**, THE SUBJECT AND OBJECT OF COMPARISON ARE BOTH PURPOSE CLAUSES

VII **quæ vellent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

impetrarent<sup>I</sup>

=*they might obtain*

~*that they might obtain*

propterea quod

=*on account of that because*

~*inasmuch as*

sī enūntiātum esset<sup>II</sup>

=*if it should have been disclosed*

~*if disclosure was made*

summum in cruciātum<sup>III</sup> sē ventūrōs [esse]<sup>IV</sup>

=*that they would come into the  
highest torture*

~*that they should come into the  
greatest tortures*

vidērent<sup>V</sup>

=*they saw*

~*they saw*

### I.XXXI.III.

LOCŪTUS EST PRŌ HĪS DĪVICIĀCUS ÆDUUS: GALLIÆ  
TŌTĪUS FACTIŌNĒS ESSE DUĀS: HĀRUM ALTERĪUS  
PRĪNCIPĀTUM TENĒRE ÆDUŌS, ALTERĪUS ARVERNŌS.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Æduus

=*Divitiacus, an Æduan, spoke on  
behalf of these men (the Gauls)*

~*for these Divitiacus the Æduan  
spoke and told him*

---

I **uti...impetrarent**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

II **sī enūntiātum esset**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

III **cruciātus, -ūs**, M. (CRUCIO), *torture, torment, a torturing, execution*

IV **sē ventūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **vidērent**. §580

V **propterea quod...vidērent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Galliæ tōtīus factiōnēs<sup>VI</sup> esse duās

=(saying) that there are two factions of all of Gaul ~that there were two parties in the whole of Gaul

hārum alterīus prīncipātum tenēre<sup>II</sup> Æduōs

=(and) that the Ædui hold the head of one of these ~that the Ædui stood at the head of one of these

alterīus Arvernōs<sup>III</sup>

=(that) the Arverni (hold the head) of the other ~the Arverni of the other

#### I.XXXI.IV.

HĪ CUM TANTOPERE DĒ POTENTĀTŪ INTER SĒ MULTŌS ANNŌS CONTENDERENT, FACTUM ESSE UTĪ AB ARVERNĪS SĒQUANĪSQUE GERMĀNĪ MERCĒDE ARCESSERENTUR.

Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs<sup>IV</sup> contenderent<sup>V</sup>

=when (after) these men greatly contended for many years among themselves for leadership ~after these had been violently struggling with one another for the superiority for many years

factum esse<sup>VI</sup>

=it had been done ~it came to pass

VI **factiō, -ōnis**, F. (FAC-), a making, doing, preparing; A company, association, class, order, sect, faction, party

II **factiōnēs esse...tenēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580

III **Arvernus, -a, -um**, ADJ., of the Arverni, a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne

IV **multōs annōs**, ACC. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

V **cum...contenderent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI **factum esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque<sup>I</sup> II Germānī mercēde<sup>III</sup> IV V  
arcesserentur<sup>VI VII</sup>

=that the Germans were caused to come with pay wages by the Arverni and the Sequani ~that the Germans were called in for hire by the Arverni and the Sequani

## I.XXXI.V.

HŌRUM PRIMŌ CIRCITER MĪLIA QUINDECIM RHĒNUM TRĀNSISSE: POSTEĀQUAM AGRŌS ET CULTUM ET CŌPIĀS GALLŌRUM HOMINĒS FERĪ AC BARBARĪ ADAMĀSSENT, TRADUCTŌS PLŪRĒS: NUNC ESSE IN GALLIĀ AD CENTUM ET VĪGINTĪ MĪLIUM NUMERUM.

Hōrum primō<sup>VIII</sup> circiter mīlia quindecim Rhēnum trānsisse<sup>IX</sup>  
=that around fifteen thousands of these men had first crossed the Rhine ~that about 15,000 of them [i.e. of the Germans] had at first crossed the Rhine

- 
- I **ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ā* OR *ab*. §405
- II **Sēquanus, -a, -um**, ADJ., of the Sequani, a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, north of Macon); M. SG., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian; M. PL., the Sequani
- III ABL. OF PRICE. THE PRICE OF A THING IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE. NOTE. TO THIS HEAD IS TO BE REFERRED THE ABLATIVE OF THE PENALTY. §416
- IV The Ablative of Price is used only in indefinite expressions; thus, *parvo pretio redempta*, purchased at a low price (I.XVIII); *impensio pretio*, at a high price (IV.II); *quanto detrimento*, at how great a loss (VII.XIX); *levi momento*, of slight account (VII.XXXIX)
- V **mercēs, -ēdis**, F. (SMAR-), price, hire, pay wages, salary, fee, reward
- VI **arcessō, -ivī, itus, -ere**, INTENS. (ACCEDO), to cause to come, call, send for, invite, summon, fetch
- VII **utī...arcesserentur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT MAY BE USED SUBSTANTIVELY: AS THE OBJECT OF *faciō* ETC. (§568) §567
- VIII **primō**, ADV. (PRIMUS), in the order of time, at first, at the beginning, first, in the first place
- IX **mīlia...trānsisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *locūtus est*. §580



posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum

=after that // the lands and the culture and the abundance of the Gauls ~but after that // of the lands and the refinement and the abundance of the Gauls

hominēs ferī<sup>I</sup> ac barbarī<sup>II</sup> adamā<sup>[VI]</sup>ssent<sup>III IV</sup>

=the uncultivated and barbaric men had fallen in love with ~these wild and savage men had become enamored

traductōs [esse] plūrēs

=more men (Germans) were led across ~more were brought over across

nunc esse<sup>V</sup> in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum<sup>VI</sup>

=now the number was up to a hundred and twenty thousands of numbers (of people) (Germans) in Gaul ~that there were now near 120,000 of them in Gaul

---

I **ferus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FER-), *wild, untamed, uncultivated*; Trop., *wild, rude, uncultivated*; *savage, barbarous, fierce, cruel*

II **barbarus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP., Prop., *foreign, strange, barbarous*, opp. to Greek or Roman; In gen., for any *hostile people* (among the Romans, after the Aug. age, esp. the German tribes, as, among the Greeks, after the Persian war, the Persians); Transf., *foreign, strange*, in mind or character. In mind, *uncultivated, ignorant; rude, unpolished*

III **adamō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (AD + AMŌ); *to fall in love with, conceive desire for, desire eagerly*

IV **posteāquam...adamāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI ACC. SG. M., SUBJ. ACC. OF **esse**

## I.LXXXI.VI.

CUM HĪS ÆDUŌS EŌRUMQUE CLIENTĒS SEMEL ATQUE  
ITERUM ARMĪS CONTENDISSE; MAGNAM CALAMITĀTEM  
PULSŌS ACCĒPISSE, OMNEM NŌBILITĀTEM, OMNEM  
SENĀTUM, OMNEM EQUITĀTUM ĀMĪSISSE.

Cum hīs Æduōs eōrumque clientēs<sup>I</sup> semel<sup>II</sup> atque iterum<sup>III</sup> armīs<sup>IV</sup>  
contendisse<sup>V</sup>

=that with these men, the Ædui and their dependents, had contended once and again by  
<means of> arms ~that with these the Ædui and their dependents had repeatedly struggled in arms

magnam calamitātem<sup>VI</sup> pulsōs<sup>VII</sup> accēpisse

=that (those men), <having been> repulsed, had received a great calamity ~that they had been routed, and had sustained a great misfortunes of war

---

I **cliēns, -entis**, M. (FOR *cluens*, PART. OF *clueo*), a personal dependant, client; Of whole nations, the allies, dependents, or vassals of a more powerful people

II **semel**, ADV. NUM. (SA-), once, a single time

III **iterum**, ADV., again, a second time, once more, anew; WITH OTHER ADV., ESP. WITH *semel*, *tertium*, etc., again and again, repeatedly

IV ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V **Æduōs...contendisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **calamitās, -ātis**, F. (SCAL-), loss, injury, damage, mischief, harm, misfortune, calamity, disaster

VII **pulsōs accēpisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum  
āmīsisse<sup>I</sup>

=*that (they) had lost all (their) ~had lost all their nobility, all nobility, all (their) senate, all their senate, all their cavalry (their) cavalry*

### I.XXXI.VII.

QUIBUS PRÆLIIS CALAMITĀTIBUSQUE FRĀCTŌS, QUĪ ET  
SUĀ VIRTŪTE ET POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ HOSPITIŌ ATQUE  
AMĪCITIĀ PLŪRIMUM ANTE IN GALLIA POTUISSENT,  
COĀCTŌS ESSE SEQUANĪS OBSIDĒS DARE NŌBILISSIMŌS  
CĪVITĀTIS ET IŪRE IŪRANDŌ CĪVITĀTEM OBSTRINGERE,  
SĒSĒ NEQUE OBSIDĒS REPETITŪRŌS NEQUE AUXILIUM Ā  
POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ IMPLŌRĀTŪRŌS NEQUE  
RECŪSĀTŪRŌS QUŌ MINUS PERPETUŌ SUB ILLORUM  
DICIŌNE ATQUE IMPERIŌ ESSENT.

Quibus praeliis calamitatibusque<sup>II</sup> fractos<sup>III IV</sup>

=*(those men) <having been> ~and that broken by such broken down by which battles engagements and calamities and calamities*

---

I **omnem nōbilitātem...āmīsisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **quibus praeliis calamitatibusque**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **frangō, frēgi, frāctus, -ere** (FRAG-), *to break in pieces, dash to pieces, shiver, shatter, fracture; Fig., to break down, subdue, overcome, crush, dishearten, weaken, diminish, violate, soften*

quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō<sup>I</sup> atque amīcitiā<sup>II</sup>

=(those men) whom // both by ~although // both from their own  
their own valor and by the valor and from the Roman  
hospitality and friendship of the people's hospitality and  
Roman people friendship

plūrimum ante in Gallia potuissent<sup>III</sup>

=they had been very much able ~they had formerly been very  
before in Gaul powerful in Gaul

coāctōs esse<sup>IV</sup> Sequanīs obsidēs<sup>V</sup> dare nōbilissimōs<sup>VI</sup> cīvitatīs

=(those men) had been ~they were now compelled to  
compelled to give the noblest of give the chief nobles of their  
the state as hostages to the state, as hostages to the Sequani  
Sequani

et iūre iūrandō<sup>VII</sup> cīvitatē obstringere<sup>VIII</sup> sēsē

=and they (were compelled) to ~and to bind their state by an  
bind (their) state by <means of> oath  
a sworn oath

neque obsidēs repetitūrōs [esse]

=that (those men) would neither ~that they would neither  
demand back hostages demand hostages in return

---

I **hospitium, -ii, n. (HOSPES), Hospitality**

II **virtūte...hospitiō...amīcitiā**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION  
DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

III **quī...potuissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **coāctōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V SUBST. PRED. APPOSITIVE OF **nōbilissimōs cīvitatīs**

VI **nōbilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (GNA-), *that is known, well-known, famous, noted, celebrated, renowned*

VII **iūre iūrandō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VIII **cīvitatē obstringere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs [esse]<sup>IX</sup>

=nor would (those men) implore ~nor implore aid from the  
aid from the Roman people Roman people

neque recūsātūrōs [esse]<sup>II III</sup>

=nor would (those men) make an ~nor refuse  
objection against

quō minus<sup>IV</sup> perpetuō<sup>V</sup> sub illorum diciōne<sup>VI</sup> atque imperiō essent<sup>VII</sup>

=by which the less they would be ~to be forever under their sway  
under their perpetual sway and and empire  
command

IX **implōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (IN + PLORO), to invoke with tears; To call to help, call for aid, appeal to, invoke, beseech, entreat, implore; To pray for, beg earnestly, implore

II **recūsō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (RE- + CAUSA), to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do

III **obsidēs repetitūrōs...implōrātūrōs...recūsātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne*, *that not*, *quo minus*, *that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quin*, *that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by from with a Participle. Thus, *hos...detertere ne frumentum conferant*, these through fear were holding back (the people) from furnishing the grain (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quin...tela conicerent*, could not be restrained from hurling darts (I.XLVII)

V **perpetuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PER + PAT-), continuous, unbroken, uninterrupted, constant, entire, whole, perpetual

VI **diciō, -ōnis**, F. (DIC-), dominion, sovereignty, authority, sway, control, rule; MILIT. and polit., dominion, sovereignty, authority, rule, sway, power

VII **quō minus...essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE ORIGINAL MEANING OF QUIN IS HOW NOT? WHY NOT? (QUĪ-NĒ), AND WHEN USED WITH THE INDICATIVE OR (RARELY) WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IT REGULARLY IMPLIES A GENERAL NEGATIVE. THUS, QUIN EGO HOC ROGEM? WHY SHOULDN'T I ASK THIS? IMPLIES THAT THERE IS NO REASON FOR NOT ASKING. THE IMPLIED NEGATIVE WAS THEN EXPRESSED IN A MAIN CLAUSE, LIKE NULLA CAUSA EST OR FIERI NON POTEST. HENCE COME THE VARIOUS DEPENDENT CONSTRUCTIONS INTRODUCED BY QUIN. §557 & §583

## I.LXXXI.VIII.

ŪNUM SĒ ESSE EX OMNĪ CĪVITĀTE ÆDUŌRUM QUĪ  
ADDŪCĪ NŌN POTUERIT UT IURĀRET AUT LĪBERŌS SUŌS  
OBSIDĒS DARET.

Ūnum<sup>I</sup> sē esse<sup>II</sup> ex omnī cīvitāte Æduōrum

=*that he is the one from every* ~*that he was the only one out of*  
*state of the Ædui* *all the state of the Ædui*

quī addūcī nōn potuerit<sup>III</sup> ut iurāret

=*who was not able to be led to* ~*who could not be prevailed*  
*swear (an oath)* *upon to take the oath*

aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret<sup>IV</sup>

=*or to give his own children as* ~*or to give his children as*  
*hostages* *hostages*

## I.LXXXI.IX.

OB EAM REM SĒ EX CĪVITĀTE PROFŪGISSE ET RŌMAM AD  
SENĀTUM VĒNISSE AUXILIUM POSTULĀTUM, QUOD  
SŌLUS NEQUE IŪRE IŪRANDŌ NEQUE OBSIDIBUS  
TENĒRĒTUR.

---

I ūnus, ūnīus, *One, a single; Prægn., one, alone, only, sole, single*

II ūnum sē esse, INDIR. DISC. §580

III quī...potuerit, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV ut iurāret...daret, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitātē<sup>I</sup> profūgisse<sup>II III</sup>

=for this thing he had fled from the state ~on that account he had fled from his state

et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse<sup>IV</sup>

=and (he) had gone to Rome to the senate ~and had gone to the senate at Rome

auxilium postulātum<sup>V VI</sup>

=to request aid ~to beseech aid

quod sōlus<sup>VII</sup> neque iūre iūrاندō neque obsidibus<sup>VIII</sup> tenērētur<sup>IX</sup>

=because he alone could be held neither by sworn oath nor by hostages ~as he alone was bound neither by oath nor hostages

---

I **ex cīvitātē**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DĒ, OR EX. §426

II **profugiō, -fūgī, —, -ere** (PRO- + FUGIŌ), to flee, run away, escape

III **sē...profūgisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580

IV INDIR. DISC. §580

V **auxilium postulātum**, ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

VI **postulō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PREC-), to ask, demand, claim, require, request, desire

VII **sōlus, sōlius**, ADJ. (SAL-), alone, only, single, sole—Hence, ADV., (SŌLUM), alone, only, merely, barely—Negatively: non solum, nec (neque) solum...sed (verum) etiam (et), etc., not only (not merely, not barely)...but also, etc. (SEE SŌLUS, ALONE §113)

VIII **iūre iūrاندō...obsidibus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IX **quod...tenērētur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

## I.LXXXIX.

SED PEIUS VICTŌRIBUS SEQUANĪS QUAM ÆDUĪS VICTĪS  
 ACCIDISSE, PROPTEREĀ QUOD ARIOVISTUS, RĒX  
 GERMĀNŌRUM, IN EŌRUM FĪNIBUS CŌNSĒDISSET  
 TERTIAMQUE PARTEM AGRĪ SĒQUANĪ, QUĪ ESSET  
 OPTIMUS TŌTĪUS GALLIÆ, OCCUPĀVISSET ET NUNC DĒ  
 ALTERĀ PARTE TERTIĀ SĒQUANŌS DĒCĒDERE IUBĒRET,  
 PROPTEREĀ QUOD PAUCĪS MĒNSIBUS ANTE HARUDUM  
 MĪLIA HOMINUM VĪGINTĪ QUATTUOR AD EUM  
 VĒNISSENT, QUIBUS LOCUS AC SĒDĒS PARĀRENTUR.

Sed peius<sup>I</sup> victōribus<sup>II</sup> Sequanīs quam Æduīs victīs<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> accidisse<sup>V</sup> <sup>VI</sup>  
 =but a worse (fate) had come to the victorious Sequani than to the <having been> vanquished Ædui  
 ~but a worse thing had befallen the victorious Sequani than the vanquished Ædui

I **malus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MAL-), IT ADOPTS AS COMP. AND SUP. **pēior** AND **pessimus** (PED); *bad, not good; bad, in the widest sense of the word, evil, wicked, injurious, destructive, mischievous, hurtful; māle*, ADV., *badly, ill, wrongly, wickedly, unfortunately, erroneously, improperly, etc.*

II **victor, -ōris**, M. (VIC-), *a conqueror, vanquisher, victor*

III PPP. OF **vincō**

IV **victōribus Sequanīs...Æduīs victīs**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **accidisse**.  
MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. § 370

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **accidō, -cidi, —, -ere** (AD + CADO), *to fall upon, fall to, reach by falling; Fig., to come to pass, happen, occur, fall out, take place, befall*



proptereā quod Ariovistus<sup>I</sup>, rēx<sup>II</sup> Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset

=on account of which because  
Ariovistus, king of the Germans,  
had settled in their territories

~for Ariovistus the king of the  
Germans, had settled in their  
territories

tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī

=and // a third part of land of the  
Sequani

~and // a third of their land

quī esset<sup>III</sup> optimus<sup>IV</sup> tōtīus Galliæ

=(the third part of land) which  
was the best of all of Gaul

~which was the best in the whole  
of Gaul

occupāvisset

=he had seized

~had seized upon

et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere<sup>V</sup>

=and now // the Sequani to  
depart from another third part

~and was now // them to depart  
from another third part

iubēret<sup>VI</sup>

=he was ordering

~ordering

---

I **Ariovistus, -ī**, M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans

II **rēx, rēgis**, M. (REG-), an arbitrary ruler, absolute monarch, king

III **quī esset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV SEE **bonus**

V **Sēquanōs dēcēdere**, INDIR. DISC DEPENDENT ON **iubēret**. §580

VI **proptereā quod...cōnsēdisset...occupāvisset...iubēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §580

proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus<sup>I</sup> ante Harudum<sup>II</sup> mīlia hominum<sup>III</sup> vīgintī quattuor ad eum vēnissent<sup>IV</sup>

=on account of which because ~because a few months before within a few months, previously 24,000 men of the twenty-four thousands of the Harudes had come to him  
Harudes had came to him

quibus locus ac sēdēs<sup>V</sup> parārentur<sup>VI</sup>

=(those men) to whom a place ~for whom room and and dwelling-place were to be settlements must be provided procured

### I.XXXI.XI.

FUTŪRUM ESSE PAUCĪS ANNĪS UTI OMNES EX GALLIÆ FĪNIBUS PELLERENTUR ATQUE OMNĒS GERMĀNĪ RHĒNUM TRĀNSĪRENT: NEQUE ENIM CŌNFERENDUM ESSE GALLICUM CUM GERMĀNŌRUM AGRŌ NEQUE HANC CŌNSUĒTUDINEM VĪCTŪS CUM ILLĀ COMPARANDAM.

Futūrum esse paucīs annīs<sup>VII</sup>

=it would be within a few years ~the consequence would be, in a few years

- 
- I **paucīs mēnsibus**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414
- II **Harūdes, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe originally from the great expedition of the Cimbri
- III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NULLUS, ETC. §346
- IV **proptereā quod...vēnissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583
- V **sēdēs, -is**, F. (SED-), a seat, bench, chair, throne; A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, temple
- VI **quibus...parārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583
- VII **paucīs annīs**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

uti omnes ex Galliæ finibus pellerentur

=that all men would be driven from the territories of Gaul ~that they would all be driven from the territories of Gaul

atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent<sup>I</sup>

=and all Germans would cross the Rhine ~and all the Germans would cross the Rhine

neque enim cōferendum esse<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> Gallicum [agrum] cum Germānōrum agrō

=for neither is the [land] of the Gauls <having> to be compared with the land of the Germans ~for neither must the land of Gaul be compared with the land of the Germans

neque hanc cōsuētudinem<sup>IV</sup> vīctūs<sup>V</sup> cum illā comparandam [esse]<sup>VI</sup>

=nor is the latter habit of living <having> to be compared with the former ~nor must the habit of living of the latter be put on a level with that of the former

---

I **futūrum esse...utī...pellerentur...trānsīrent**, INDIC. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580; THE EXPRESSION **futūrum esse ut** IS COMMONLY USED IN PLACE OF FUT. PASS. INF. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT ARE USED AS THE SUBJECT OF THE FOLLOWING: §569

II **cōferō, contulī, conlātus, cōferre** (CŌN + FERŌ), To bring together, collect, gather, unite, join; Fig., to bring together in thought, compare, contrast

III **cōferendum esse**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIC. DISC. (SEE §196 FOR A CHART) & §580

IV **consuētūdo, -īnis**, F. (CONSUESCO), A being accustomed, custom, habit, use, usage; WITH PREPP., **ex consuetudine, pro consuetudine**, AND ABSOL. **consuetudine**, according to or from custom, by or from habit, in a usual or customary manner, etc.

V **vīctus, -ūs**, M. (VIV-), that which sustains life, means of living, sustenance, nourishment, provisions, victuals

VI **hanc cōsuētūdinem...comparandam**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIC. DISC. §196 & §580

## I.XXX.XII.

ARIOVISTUM AUTEM, UT SEMEL GALLŌRUM CŌPIĀS  
PRĒLIŌ VĪCERIT, QUOD PRĒLIUM FACTUM SIT  
ADMAGETOBRIGÆ, SUPERBĒ ET CRŪDĒLITER IMPERĀRE,  
OBSIDĒS NOBILISSIMĪ CUIUSQUE LĪBERŌS POSCERE, ET IN  
EŌS OMNIA EXEMPLA CRUCIĀTŪSQUE ĒDERE, SĪ QUA RĒS  
NŌN AD NŪTUM AUT AD VOLUNTATEM EIUS FACTA SIT.

Ariovistum autem

=Ariovistus, moreover

~moreover, [as for] Ariovistus

ut semel Gallŏrum cŏpiās prœliō<sup>I</sup> vīcerit<sup>II</sup>

when he had once defeated the  
forces of the Gauls in battle

~when once he conquered the  
forces of the Gauls in a battle

quod proelium factum sit<sup>III</sup> Admagetobrigæ<sup>IV V</sup>

=which battle was made at  
Magetobria

~which battle was happened at  
Magetobria

superbē<sup>VI</sup> et crūdēliter<sup>VII</sup> imperāre

=(he) (began) to command  
haughtily and cruelly

~than [he began] to lord it  
haughtily and cruelly

---

I ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

II **ut semel...vīcerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **quod...factum sit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV LOC. OF PLACE WHERE, TRANSLATE WITH **as**, WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE WHERE, BY THE LOCATIVE. §427

V **Admagetobriga, -ae**, F., a place in Gaul

VI **superbus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., *haughty, proud, vain, arrogant, insolent, discourteous, supercilious, domineering*; Hence, ADV., *haughtily, proudly, superciliously*

VII **crūdēliter**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CRUDELIS), *cruelly, fiercely, in a cruel manner*

[Ariovistum] obsidēs nobilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscere

=(he) [Ariovistus] demands the children of each one of the noblest as hostages  
~to demand as hostages the children of all the principal nobles

et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere<sup>I II</sup>

=and (he) was bringing about all examples of cruelty on them  
~and wreak on them every kind of cruelty

sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum<sup>III</sup> aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit<sup>IV</sup>

=if any thing was not done at (his) nod or at his volition  
~if every thing was not done at his pleasure or volition

### I.XXXI.XIII.

HOMINEM ESSE BARBARUM, IRĀCUNDUM, TEMERĀRIUM:  
NŌN POSSE EIUS IMPERIA DIŪTIUS SUSTINĒRĪ.

Hominem esse<sup>V</sup> barbarum, irācundum<sup>VI</sup>, temerārium<sup>VII</sup>

=that the man is a barbarian, irascible, (and) heedless  
~that he was a savage, passionate, and heedless man

nōn posse<sup>VIII</sup> eius imperia diūtius sustinērī

=that his commands are not able to be sustained (any) longer  
~and that his commands could no longer be borne

I **ēdō, -didī, -ditus, -ere** (E + DŌ), to give out, put forth, bring forth, raise, set up; Of other objects, to produce, perform, bring about, cause

II **Ariovistum...imperāre...poscere...ēdere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est. §580**

III **nūtus**, —, M. (NV-), a nodding, nod; Command, will, pleasure

IV **sī...facta sit**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PAST CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V **hominem esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **irācundus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (IRA), irascible, irritable, passionate, choleric, angry, ireful, easily provoked

VII **temerārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TEMERE), rash, heedless, thoughtless, imprudent, inconsiderate, indiscreet, unadvised, precipitate

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580

## LXXXIX.

NISI QUID IN CÆSARE POPULŌQUE RŌMĀNŌ SIT AUXILI,  
 OMNIBUS GALLĪS IDEM ESSE FACIENDUM QUOD HELVĒTIĪ  
 FĒCERINT, UT DOMŌ ĒMIGRENT, ALIUD DOMICILIUM,  
 ALIĀS SĒDĒS REMŌTĀS Ā GERMĀNĪS PETANT  
 FORTŪNAMQUE QUÆCUMQUE ACCIDAT EXPERIANTUR.

**Nisi quid in Cæsare populōque Rōmānō sit<sup>i</sup> auxili<sup>ii</sup>**

=*unless something of aid is in Cæsar and the Roman people*    ~*unless there was some aid in Cæsar and the Roman people*

**omnibus Gallīs<sup>iii</sup> idem esse faciendum<sup>iv</sup>**

=*that the same thing is <having> to be done for all Gauls*    ~*the Gauls must all do the same thing*

**quod Helvētiī fēcerint<sup>v</sup>**

=*which the Helvetii have done*    ~*that the Helvetii have done*

**ut domō<sup>vi</sup> ēmigrent<sup>vii</sup>**

=*(namely,) that they might go forth from home*    ~*[viz.] emigrate from their country*

I **nisi...sit**, SIMPLE PRESENT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II PARTITIVE GEN. §346

III **omnibus Gallis**, DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. THIS IS THE REGULAR WAY OF EXPRESSING THE AGENT WITH THE SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (§196). §374

IV **idem esse faciendum**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. §196 & §580

V **quod...fēcerint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §427

VII **ēmigrō, -āvi, —, -āre** (Ē + MIGRŌ), *to move, depart, emigrate*

**aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās<sup>I</sup> ā Germānīs<sup>II</sup> petant**

=(and) that they might seek ~and seek another dwelling  
another home, other <having place, other settlements remote  
been> removed settlements from from the Germans  
the Germans

**fortūnamque quaecumque accidat<sup>III</sup>**

=and whatever fortune may fall ~and whatever fortune may fall  
upon (them) to their lot

**experiantur<sup>IV</sup> V**

=they may attempt ~try

### I.XXXI.XV.

HÆC SĪ ENŪNTIĀTA ARIOVISTŌ SINT, NŌN DUBITĀRE  
QUĪN DE OMNIBUS OBSIDIBUS QUĪ APUD EUM SINT  
GRAVISSIMUM SUPPLICIUM SUMAT.

**Hæc sī enūntiāta Ariovistō sint<sup>VI</sup>**

=if these things are announced ~if these things were to be  
to Ariovistus disclosed to Ariovistus

---

I PPP., "having been removed," AS A PARTICIPLE ADJ., "remote"

II **ā Germānīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH **Ā, AB, DE, EX**, (1) TAKE THE SIMPLE ABLATIVE WHEN USED FIGURATIVELY; BUT (2) WHEN USED LITERALLY TO DENOTE ACTUAL SEPARATION OR MOTION, THEY USUALLY REQUIRE A PREPOSITION. §402

III **quaecumque accidat**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

IV **experior, -pertus, -īrī**, DEP. (PAR-), to try, prove, test, experience, endure; To try, undertake, attempt, make trial, undergo, experience

V **ut...ēmigrent...petant...experiantur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. §567

VI **sī enūntiāta...sint**, SIMPLE PAST CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

[sē] nōn dubitāre<sup>VII</sup>

=(Divitiacus says) that [he] did not doubt ~[Divitiacus adds] that he does not doubt

quīn de omnibus obsidibus

=that from all the hostages ~on all the hostages

quī apud eum sint<sup>II</sup>

=(the hostages) who are among him ~who are in his possession

gravissimum supplicium sumat<sup>III</sup>

=that he may take the most severe punishment ~that he would inflict the most severe torture

## I.XXXI.XVI.

CÆSAREM VEL AUCTŌRITĀTE SUĀ ATQUE EXERCITŪS VEL  
RECENTĪ VICTŌRIĀ VEL NŌMINE POPULĪ ROMĀNĪ  
DĒTERRĒRE POSSE NĒ MAIOR MULTITŪDŌ  
GERMĀNŌRUM RHĒNUM TRĀDŪCĀTUR, GALLIAMQUE  
OMNEM AB ARIOVISTĪ INIŪRIĀ POSSE DĒFENDERE.

Cæsarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā

=(and he says) that either by his own authority or (that) of the army or by his recent victory ~[and says] that Cæsar, either by his own influence and by that of his army, or by his late victory

---

VII INDIR. DISC. §580

II **quī...sint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §580

III **quīn...sumat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. I. QUĪN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH NŌN DUBITŌ, I DO NOT DOUBT, NŌN EST DUBIUM, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. §558 & §583



vel nōmine<sup>i</sup> populī Romānī dēterrēre posse<sup>ii</sup>

=or by the name of the Roman ~or by name of the Roman  
people, (he) was able to frighten people could intimidate him  
(him) off

nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur<sup>iii</sup>

=that not a greater multitude of ~so as to prevent a greater  
Germans may be led across the number of Germans being  
Rhine brought over the Rhine

Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā<sup>iv</sup> posse<sup>v</sup> dēfendere

=and that (he) is able to defend ~and could protect all Gaul from  
all Gaul from the injustice of the outrages of Ariovistus  
Ariovistus

---

I **auctōritāte...victōriā...nōmine**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **Cæsarem...posse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **nē...trādūcātur**, SUBJ. WITH V. OF HINDERING. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. II. VERBS OF HINDERING AND REFUSING OFTEN TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH NE OR QUŌMINUS (= UT EŌ MINUS), ESPECIALLY WHEN THE VERB IS NOT NEGATED. §558ii

IV **ab iniūriā**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

V **Galliam...posse**, INDIR. DISC. §580



# I.XXXII



THE SEQUANIANS SHOW WHAT MIGHT HAPPEN.



## I.XXXII.I.



ĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE AB DĪVICIĀCŌ HABITĀ, OMNĒS  
QUĪ ADERANT MAGNŌ FLĒTŪ AUXILIUM Ā  
CÆSARE PETERE CÆPĒRUNT.

Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō<sup>I</sup> habitā<sup>II</sup>

=with this speech <having been>  
held by Divitiacus

~when this speech had been  
delivered by Divitiacus,

omnēs

=all the men

~all

quī aderant

=who were present

~who were present

---

I **ab Dīviciācō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

II **ōrātiōne...habitā**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

**magnō flētū<sup>I II</sup> auxilium ā Cæsare petere cœpērunt**

=*they began to seek aid from Cæsar with great weeping* ~*began with loud lamentation to entreat assistance of Cæsar*

## I.LXXXII.II.

ANIMADVERTIT CÆSAR ŪNŌS EX OMNIBUS SĒQUANŌS  
NIHIL EĀRUM RĒRUM FACERE QUĀS CĒTERĪ FACERENT  
SED TRĪSTĒS CAPITĒ DĒMISSŌ TERRAM INTUĒRĪ.

**Animadvertit Cæsar**

=*Cæsar turned (his) mind to* ~*Cæsar noticed*

**ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere<sup>III</sup>**

=*that the Sequani, one by one, out from all (people), were doing nothing of those things* ~*that the Sequani were the only people of all who did none of those things*

**quās cēterī<sup>IV</sup> facerent<sup>V</sup>**

=*which the others did* ~*which the others did*

**sed trīstēs<sup>VI VII</sup>**

=*but // sadly* ~*but // in sadness*

I **flētus, -ūs, M., a weeping, wailing, lamenting**

II **magnō flētū**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

III **ūnōs...Sēquanōs...facere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **animadvertit**. §580

IV **cēterus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CA-, CI-), *the other, remainder, rest*—As SUBST M., *the others, all the rest, everybody else*

V **quās...facerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

VI Adjectives are sometimes used in Latin where in English an Adverb or a Phrase is required; as, *læti...ad castra pergunt* (Historical Present), *joyfully...they advanced against the camp* (III.XVIII); *viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant, they oblige travelers, even against their will, to stop* (IV.V)

capite dēmissō<sup>I</sup>

=with the head <having been> ~with their heads bowed down  
sent down

terram intuērī<sup>II III</sup>

=(they) looked upon the land ~gazed on the earth

### I.XXXII.III.

EIUS REI QUÆ CAUSA ESSET MĪRĀTUS EX IPSĪS QUÆSIIT.

Eius rei

=of this thing ~of this conduct

quæ causa esset<sup>IV</sup>

=what was the cause /of this ~what was the reason  
thing/

mīrātus<sup>V</sup> ex ipsīs quæsiit

=he <having> wondered // he ~wondering // he inquired of  
inquired from themselves themselves

---

VII **trīstis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (TER-), *sad, sorrowful, mournful, dejected, melancholy, gloomy, downcast, disconsolate*; ADV., **tristē**, *sadly, sorrowfully; harshly, severely*

I **capite dēmissō**, ABL. ABS. §420

II **intueor, -itus, -ērī**, DEP., *to look upon, look closely at, gaze at*

III **tristēs...intuērī**, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV **quæ...esset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

V **mīror, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP., *to wonder, marvel, be astonished, be amazed, admire*

## I.LXXXII.IV.

NIHIL SĒQUANĪ RESPONDĒRE, SED IN EĀDEM TRĪSTITIĀ  
TACITĪ PERMANĒRE.

**Nihil Sēquanī respondēre**

=the Sequani were responding ~no reply did the Sequani make  
nothing

**sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre<sup>1</sup>**

=but (the men) <having been> ~but silently continued in the  
quieted, remained in the same same sadness  
sadness

## I.LXXXII.V.

CUM AB HIS SÆPIUS QUÆRERET NEQUE ŪLLAM OMNĪNŌ  
VŌCEM EXPRIMERE POSSET, ĪDEM DĪVIĀCUS ÆDUUS  
RESPONDIT: HŌC ESSE MISERIŌREM ET GRAVIŌREM  
FORTŪNAM SĒQUANŌRUM QUAM RELIQUŌRUM, QUOD  
SŌLĪ NĒ IN OCCULTŌ QUIDEM QUERĪ NEQUE AUXILIUM  
IMPLŌRĀRE AUDĒRENT ABSENTISQUE ARIOVISTĪ  
CRŪDELITĀTEM, VELUT SĪ CŌRAM ADESSET, HORRĒRENT;  
PROPTEREĀ QUOD RELIQUĪS TAMEN FUGÆ FACULTĀS  
DARĒTUR, SĒQUANĪS VĒRŌ, QUĪ INTRĀ FĪNĒS SUŌS  
ARIOVISTUM RECĒPISSENT, QUŌRUM OPPIDA OMNIA IN  
POTESTĀTE EIUS ESSENT, OMNĒS CRUCIĀTŪS ESSENT  
PERFERENDĪ.

---

I ***respondēre, permanēre***, HIST. INF. THE INFINITIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE IN NARRATION, AND TAKES A SUBJECT IN THE NOMINATIVE. § 463

Cum ab his sæpius quæreret

=when he more often inquired  
from them

~when he had repeatedly  
inquired of them

neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem<sup>I</sup> exprimere<sup>II</sup> posset<sup>III</sup>

=and he was not able to press  
out any voice at all

~and could not elicit any answer  
at all

īdem Diviācus Æduus respondit

=the same Divitiacus, the  
Æduan, responded

~the same Divitiacus, the  
Æduan, answered

hōc<sup>IV</sup> esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam<sup>V</sup> Sēquanōrum quam  
reliquōrum

=because of this thing, there was  
a more miserable and a more  
grave fortune of the Sequani  
than of the remaining men

~the lot of the Sequani was more  
wretched and grievous than that  
of the rest, on this account

quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem<sup>VI</sup> querī neque auxilium implōrāre  
audērent

=because those men alone were  
daring, not even in hiding, to  
complain nor to implore aid

~because they alone durst not  
even in secret complain or  
supplicate aid

---

I **vōx, vōcis**, F. (VOC-), a voice, sound, tone, utterance, cry, call

II **exprimō, -pressī, -pressus, -ere** (EX + PREMO); to press out, force out, squeeze forth; Fig., to wring out, extort, wrest, elicit

III **cum...quæreret...posset**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

IV ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

V **esse...fortūnam**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

VI **quidem**, ADV., indeed; In the phrases, ne...quidem, not even

absentisque<sup>I</sup> Ariovisti crūdēlitātem<sup>II</sup>

=and // (even) (with him) <being> ~and [even when] absent at the  
absent, the cruelty of Ariovistus cruelty of Ariovistus

velut<sup>III</sup> sī cōram<sup>IV</sup> adesset<sup>V</sup>

=(just) as if he were openly ~just as if he were present  
present

horrērent<sup>VI VII</sup>

=they shuddered (at) ~they shuddered

I PRES. PART. USED AS A PRED. THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES ARE OFTEN USED AS A PREDICATE, WHERE IN ENGLISH A PHRASE OR A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE WOULD BE MORE NATURAL. IN THIS USE THE PARTICIPLES EXPRESS TIME, CAUSE, OCCASION, CONDITION, CONCESSION, CHARACTERISTIC (OR DESCRIPTION), MANNER, MEANS, ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCES. §496

II **crūdēlitās, -ātis**, F. (CRUDELIS), *harshness, severity, cruelty, barbarity*

III **velut**, ADV. (VEL- + UT), In a comparison, *even as, just as, like as, like*; To INTRODUCE A HYPOTHETICAL COMPARATIVE CLAUSE, *just as if, just as though, as if, as though*—Usually *velut si*

IV **cōram**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (COM- + ŌS), Object., *in the presence of, before the eyes of, in the face of, before*; SUBJECT. ADV., *present in one's own person or presence, personally*

V **sī...adesset**, CLAUSE OF COMPARISON. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, USUALLY IN THE PRESENT OR PERFECT UNLESS THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES REQUIRES THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT. SUCH CLAUSES ARE INTRODUCED BY THE COMPARATIVE PARTICLES TAMQUAM, TAMQUAM SĪ, QUASI, AC SĪ, UT SĪ, VELUT SĪ (LATER VELUT), POETIC CEU (ALL MEANING AS IF), AND BY QUAM SĪ (THAN IF). §524

VI **quod...audērent...horrērent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VII **horreō, -uī, —, -ēre** (HORS-), *to stand on end, stand erect, bristle, be rough*; *To tremble, shudder, quake with fright*; AS A V.. ACT., WITH AN OBJECT, *to shudder or be frightened at, to tremble at, be afraid of*



*proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugæ facultās darētur*<sup>I</sup>

=for this reason because for the  
remaining men, nonetheless, the  
facility of flight was given

~for, to the rest, despite of every  
thing there was an opportunity  
of flight given

*Sēquanīs*<sup>II</sup> *vērō*

=by the Sequani, but in fact

~by the Sequani, but

*quī intrā*<sup>III</sup> *finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent*<sup>IV</sup>

=(those men) who had received  
Ariovistus within their own  
territories

~who had admitted Ariovistus  
within their territories

*quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent*<sup>V</sup>

=(and because) all the towns of  
which had been in his power

~and whose towns were all in  
his power

*omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī*<sup>VI</sup>

=all the tortures that were  
<having> to be endured

~all tortures must be endured

---

I *proptereā quod...darētur*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. THIS IS THE REGULAR WAY OF EXPRESSING THE AGENT WITH THE SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (§196). §374

III *intrā*, PRÆP. WITH ACC., *within, in, into*

IV *quī...recēpissent*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V *quōrum...essent*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI *essent perferendī*, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. (SEE §196 FOR DETAILS) & §583



# I.XXXIII



CÆSAR PROMISES TO HELP AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.



## I.XXXIII.I.



IS RĒBUS COGNITĪS, CÆSAR GALLORUM  
ANIMŌS VERBĪS CŌNFIRMĀVIT,  
POLLICITUSQUE EST SIBI EAM REM CŪRÆ  
FUTŪRAM; MAGNAM SĒ HABĒRE SPEM ET  
BENEFICIŌ SUŌ ET AUCTŌRITĀTE ADDUCTUM  
ARIOVISTUM FĪNEM INIŪRĪS FACTURUM.

His rēbus cognitīs<sup>I</sup>

=with these things <having ~Cæsar, on being informed of  
been> learned these things

Cæsar Gallorum animōs verbīs<sup>II</sup> cōnfirmāvit

=Cæsar strengthened the minds ~cheered the minds of the Gauls  
of the Gauls with (his) words with his words

pollicitusque est

=and he promised ~and promised

---

I **his rēbus cognitīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

sibi eam rem cūræ<sup>I</sup> futūram [esse]<sup>II</sup>

=that this thing would be a ~that this affair should be an  
<source of> concern for him object of his concern

magnum sē habēre<sup>III</sup> spem

=(saying) that he (Cæsar) has ~[saying] that he had great  
great hope hopes

et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte<sup>IV</sup> adductum Ariovistum finem  
iniūriis<sup>V</sup> facturum [esse]<sup>VI</sup>

=that Ariovistus, <having been> ~that Ariovistus, induced both  
led by his own beneficence and by his kindness and his power,  
authority, would make an end to would put an end to his  
(his) injuries oppression

## I.XXXIII.II.

HĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE HABITĀ CONCILIUM DĪMĪSIT.

---

I **sibi...cūræ**, DOUBLE DAT. CONSTRUCTION. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

II **eam rem...futūram**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **pollicitus est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **sē habēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **beneficiō suō et auctōritāte**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with Transitive Verbs which have a Direct Object in the Accusative, or an Infinitive Clause as Object, and also with the Passive of such Verbs; as, *dat* (Historical Present) *negotium Senonibus*, He assigned the task to the Senones (II.II); *nostris — dabatur*, was given to our men (IV.XXIX)

VI **Ariovistum...factūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **sē habēre spem**. §580

**Hāc ōrātiōne habitā<sup>1</sup>**

=with this oration <having ~after making this speech been> held

**concilium dīmīsīt**

=he sent away the council ~he dismissed the assembly

### I.XXXIII.III.

ET SECUNDUM EA MULTÆ RĒS EUM HORTĀBANTUR QUĀRĒ SIBI EAM REM CŌGITANDAM ET SUSCIPIENDAM PUTĀRET; IN PRĪMIS QUOD ÆDUOS, FRĀTRĒS CŌNSANGUINEŌSQUE SÆPE NUMERŌ Ā SENĀTŪ APPELLĀTŌS, IN SERVITŪTE ATQUE IN DICIŌNE VIDĒBAT GERMĀNŌRUM TENĒRĪ EŌRUMQUE OBSIDĒS ESSE APUD ARIOVISTUM AC SĒQUANŌS INTELLEGĒBAT; QUOD IN TANTŌ IMPERIŌ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ TURPISSIMUM SIBI ET REĪ PUBLICÆ ESSE ARBITRĀBĀTUR.

**Et secundum ea multæ rēs eum hortābantur**

=and after those things, many ~and, besides those statements, many circumstances induced him

**quārē**

=for which reason (why) ~whereby

---

I **hāc ōrātiōne habitā**, ABL. ABS. §420

sibi<sup>I</sup> eam rem cōgitandam [esse] et suscipiendam [esse]<sup>II</sup>

=that this thing is <having> to be thought by him and <having> to be undertaken (by him) ~that this affair ought to be considered and taken up by Cæsar

putāret

=he was thinking ~to think

in prīmīs<sup>III</sup>

=among the first things (in the first place) ~especially

quod Æduos, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque sæpe numerō ā senātū<sup>IV</sup> appellātōs

=because, the Ædui, <having been> called, often in respect to number, "brothers" and "kinsmen" by the senate ~as the Ædui, styled [as they had been] repeatedly by the senate "brethren" and "kinsmen"

in servitūte atque in diciōne

=in slavery and in dominion ~in the thralldom and dominion

vidēbat

=he saw ~he saw

I DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

II **rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam.** FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. (SEE §196 FOR CHART) & §580

III **quārē...putāret,** INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

IV **ā senātū,** ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

**Germānōrum tenērī<sup>I</sup>**

=*that were being held // of the Germans*    ~*were held // of the Germans*

**eōrumque obsidēs esse<sup>II</sup> apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs**

=*and their hostages (the Ædui) were among Ariovistus and the Sequani*    ~*and that their hostages were with Ariovistus and the Sequani*

**intellegēbat**

=*he was aware*    ~*understood*

**quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī**

=*(a state of affairs) which in so great a command (as that) of the Roman people*    ~*which in so mighty an empire [as that] of the Roman people*

**turpissimum<sup>III</sup> sibi et reī publicæ<sup>IV</sup> esse<sup>V</sup>**

=*that (it) was most repulsive to him and to the republic*    ~*very disgraceful to himself and the republic*

**arbitrābātur**

=*he thought*    ~*he considered*

---

I ***Hæduōs...tenērī***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***vidēbat***. §580

II ***obsidēs esse***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***intellegēbat***. §580

III ***turpis, -e***, ADJ. (TARC-), WITH COMP. AND SUP., *ugly, unsightly, unseemly, repulsive, foul, filthy*

IV ***sibi et reī publicæ***, DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376

V ***quod...esse***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***arbitrābātur***. §580

## I.LXXXIII.IV.

PAULĀTIM AUTEM GERMĀNŌS CONSUĒSCERE RHĒNUM  
TRĀNSĪRE ET IN GALLIAM MAGNAM EŌRUM  
MULTITŪDINEM VENĪRE POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ  
PERĪCULŌSUM VIDĒBAT.

Paulātim<sup>I</sup> autem Germānōs consuēscere<sup>II</sup> Rhēnum trānsīre

=that, however, the Germans were habituated, little by little to cross the Rhine ~that, moreover, the Germans should by degrees become accustomed to cross the Rhine

et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre<sup>III</sup> populō  
Rōmānō<sup>IV</sup> perīculōsum [esse]<sup>V VI</sup>

=and that a great multitude of them coming into Gaul [was] dangerous to the Roman people ~and that a great body of them should come into Gaul [would be] dangerous to the Roman people

vidēbat

=he saw

~he saw

---

I **paulātim**, ADV., by little and little, by degrees, gradually

II **Germānōs consuēscere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **vidēbat**. §580

III **multitūdinem venīre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **populō Rōmānō**, DAT. OF REF. §376

V **perīculōsus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PERICULUM), dangerous, hazardous, perilous

VI PRED. NOM. IN INDIR. DISC. THE INFINITIVE, WITH OR WITHOUT A SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE, MAY BE USED WITH EST AND SIMILAR VERBS (1) AS THE SUBJECT, (2) IN APPPOSITION WITH THE SUBJECT, OR (3) AS A PREDICATE NOMINATIVE. §452 & §580



## I.LXXXIII.V.

NEQUE SIBI HOMINĒS FERŌS AC BARBARŌS  
 TEMPERĀTURŌS EXĪSTIMĀBAT QUĪN, CUM OMNEM  
 GALLIAM OCCUPĀVISSENT, UT ANTE CIMBRI  
 TEUTONĪQUE FĒCISSENT, IN PROVINCIAM EXĪRENT  
 ATQUE INDE IN ĪTALIAM CONTENDERENT, PRÆSSERTIM  
 CUM SĒQUANŌS Ā PROVINCĪĀ NOSTRĀ RHODANUS  
 DĪVIDERET; QUIBUS REBUS QUAM MĀTŪRRIMĒ  
 OCCURRENDUM PUTĀBAT.

Neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperāturōs [esse]<sup>I</sup>

=that feral and savage men  
 would not refrain themselves

~that wild and savage men  
 would not be likely to restrain  
 themselves

exīstimābat

=he thought

~and judged

quīn<sup>IIIII</sup>

=that // not

~from

---

I **hominēs...temperāturōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimābat**. §580

II **quīn...exīrent...condenderent; quīn** CLAUSE

III Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne; that not, quo minus; that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quīn; that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by *from* with a Participle. Thus, *hos...deterreere ne frumentum conferant, these through fear were holding back (the people) from furnishing the grain* (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quīn...tela conicerent, could not be restrained from hurling darts* (I.XLVII)

**cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent<sup>I</sup>**

=when they had occupied all Gaul ~after they had possessed themselves of all Gaul

**ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fēcissent**

=as the Cimbri and Teutones had done before ~as the Cimbri and Teutones had done before them

**in provinciam exīrent**

=they would go forth into the province ~going forth into the province

**atque inde in Ītaliā contenderent<sup>II</sup>**

=and then they would hasten into Italy ~and thence marching into Italy

**præsertim cum Sēquanōs ā provinciā nostrā<sup>III</sup> Rhodanus dīvideret<sup>IV</sup>**

=especially since the Rhone separated the Sequani from our province ~particularly as the Rhone [was the sole barrier that] separated the Sequani from our province

I **cum...occupāvissent, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **quīn...exīrent...condenderent, quīn** CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. I. QUĪN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH NON DUBITŌ, I DO NOT DOUBT, NON EST DUBIUM, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. §558

III **ā provinciā nostrā,** ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

IV **cum...dīvideret, cum,** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

quibus rebus<sup>V</sup> quam mātūrrimē<sup>VI VII</sup> [sibi] occurrendum [esse]<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=because of which things // that ~because of which events // he  
he (Ariovistus) is <having> to be ought to be opposed by him as  
met [by him] as timely as speedily as possible  
possible

putābat

=he thought

~he thought

### I.XXXIII.VI.

IPSE AUTEM ARIOVISTUS TANTŌS SIBI SPĪRITŪS, TANTAM  
ARROGANTIAM SŪMPSERAT UT FERENDUS NŌN  
VIDĒRĒTUR.

Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs<sup>VI</sup>, tantam arrogantiam<sup>VII</sup>  
sūmpserat

=moreover, Ariovistus, himself, ~moreover, Ariovistus, for his  
had taken up to himself so great part, had assumed to himself  
spirits (and) arrogance such pride and arrogance

V **quibus rēbus**, DAT. WITH INTRANS. V. USED IMPERSONALLY IN THE PASS. INTRANSITIVE VERBS THAT GOVERN THE DATIVE ARE USED IMPERSONALLY IN THE PASSIVE (§208IV). THE DATIVE IS RETAINED (CF. §365). §372

VI **maturrimus, -a, -um** (SUPER. OF *mātūrus*), *ripest, most or very mature; timely, seasonable*

VII **quam mātūrrimē**, *quam* + SUPER. = THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEG. BESIDES THEIR REGULAR SIGNIFICATION (AS IN ENGLISH), THE FORMS OF COMPARISON ARE USED AS FOLLOWS: WITH *quam*, *vel*, OR *ūnus* THE SUPERLATIVE DENOTES THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEGREE. §291

VIII **occurrō, -currī, -cursus, -ere** (OB + *curro*), *to run up, run to meet, go to meet, meet, fall in with; To obviate or seek to obviate, to meet, resist, oppose, counteract*

IX FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **putābat**. §196 & §580

VI **spīritus, -ūs**, M. (CF. *spiro*), *a breathing, breath; Spirit, high spirit, energy, courage, haughtiness, pride, arrogance*

VII **arrōgantia, -æ**, F. (ARROGANS), *An assuming, presumption, arrogance, conceitedness*

ut

=*that*

~*so that*

ferendus [esse]

=/that/ he was /not/ <having> to ~*to be quite sufferable*  
*be endured*

nōn vidērētur<sup>1</sup>

=*not* // *it seemed*

~*he was not felt*

---

I *ut...vidērētur*, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

# I.XXXIV



CÆSAR INVITES ARIOVISTUS TO A CONFERENCE.



## I.XXXIV.I.



UAM OB REM PLACUIT EÏ UT AD ARIOVISTUM  
LĒGĀTŌS MITTERET QUĪ AB EŌ POSTULĀRENT  
UTĪ ALIQUEM LOCUM MEDIUM UTRĪUSQUE  
COLLOQUIŌ DĒLIGERET: VELLE SĒSĒ DĒ RĒ  
PŪBLICĀ ET SUMMĪS UTRĪUSQUE RĒBUS CUM EŌ AGERE.

Quam ob rem placuit<sup>I</sup> eï<sup>II</sup>

=on account of which thing, it ~he therefore determined  
pleased him

ut ad Ariovistum lĕgātōs mitteret<sup>III</sup>

=that he should send ~to send ambassadors to  
ambassadors to Ariovistus Ariovistus

---

I **placeō, -cuī, -citus, -ēre** (PLAC-), to please, give pleasure, be approved, be pleasing, be agreeable, be acceptable, suit, satisfy; WITH DAT. TRANSF., *placet mihi (tibi, etc.)*, or simply *placet*, it pleases me, it seems good, right, or proper to me; it is my opinion, I am of opinion, I hold, believe, intends decided, resolved, determined (*mihi, nobis, etc.*, or absol.)

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **placuit**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

III **ut...mitteret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

quī ab eō postulārent<sup>I</sup>

=(embassadors) who might ~to demand of him  
demand from him

utī aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquiō<sup>II</sup> dēligeret<sup>III</sup>

=that he should choose some ~to name some intermediate  
middle place of both for a spot for a conference between  
conference the two

velle sēsē<sup>IV</sup> dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere

=(saying) that he wished to ~[saying] that he wished to treat  
conduct with him about the him on state-business and  
republic and the highest things matters of the highest  
of both (of them) importance to both of them

## I.XXXIV.II.

Eī LĒGĀTIŌNĪ ARIOVISTUS RESPONDIT: SĪ QUID IPSĪ Ā  
CÆSARE OPUS ESSET, SĒSĒ AD EUM VENTŪRUM FUISSE; SĪ  
QUID ILLE SĒ VELIT, ILLUM AD SĒ VENĪRE OPORTĒRE.

Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit

=Ariovistus responded to this ~to this embassy Ariovistus  
embassy replied

---

I **quī...postulārent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. THE ABLATIVE QUŌ (= UT EŌ) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531

II DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

III **utī...dēligeret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

IV **velle sēsē**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **lēgātōs mitteret**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

*sī quid<sup>I</sup> ipsī ā Cæsare opus esset<sup>II</sup>*

*=(saying) that if he (Ariorvistus) had a need of anything to himself (Ariovistus) from Cæsar ~that if he himself had had need of anything from Cæsar*

*sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse<sup>III IV</sup>*

*=that he (Ariovistus) would have come to him (Cæsar) ~he would have gone to him*

*sī quid ille sē velit<sup>V VI</sup>*

*=(and saying) that if that (man) (Cæsar) wishes anything from himself (Ariovistus) ~and that if he (Cæsar) wished anything of him*

*illum<sup>VII</sup> ad sē venīre oportēre<sup>VIII</sup>*

*=(then) it is necessary that he (Cæsar) come to himself (Ariovistus) ~he ought to come to him*

---

I USED AS SUBST; SUB. NOM. OF *esset*.

II ***sī...esset***, PROTASIS OF CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

III PERF. INF. PERIPHRASTIC

IV ***sēsē...ventūrum fuisse***, APODOSIS OF CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V *volo* is sometimes used like a Verb of asking, with two Accusatives; as, *sī quid* (Accusative) *ille se* (Accusative) *velit*, *if he (Cæsar) wished anything of him* (I.XXXIV)

VI ***sī...velit***, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRESENT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

VII ***illum...oportēre***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***respondit***. §580

VIII IMP.

## I.XXXIV.III.

PRÆTEREĀ SĒ NEQUE SINE EXERCITŪ IN EĀS PARTĒS  
GALLIÆ VENĪRE AUDĒRE QUĀS CÆSAR POSSIDĒRET,  
NEQUE EXERCITUM SINE MAGNŌ COMMEĀTŪ ATQUE  
MŌLĪMENTŌ IN ŪNUM LOCUM CONTRAHERE POSSE.

Prætereā<sup>I</sup> sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliæ venīre  
audēre<sup>II</sup>

=that, moreover, he neither ~that, besides, neither dare he go  
dares to come without an army without an army into those  
into those parts of Gaul parts of Gaul

quās Cæsar possidēret<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup>

=which Cæsar possessed ~which Cæsar had possession of

neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū<sup>V</sup> atque mōlimentō<sup>VI</sup> in  
ūnum locum contrahere<sup>VII</sup> posse<sup>VIII</sup>

=nor is he able to draw together ~nor could (he) draw his army  
(his) army into one place together to one place without  
without great supply (money) great expense and trouble  
and exertion

---

I **prætereā**, ADV. (PRÆTER + EA), *in addition, beyond this, further, besides, moreover*

II **sē...audēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **possidō, -sēdi, -sessus, -ere** (POR (FOR PRO) + SĪDO), *to take possession of, occupy, seize*

IV **quās...possidēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V **commeātus, -ūs**, M. (COMMEO), *a going to and fro, passing back and forth; provisions, supplies*

VI **mōlimentum, -ī**, N. (MOLIOR), *a great exertion, trouble, effort*

VII **contrahō, -trāxī, -trāctus, -ere** (CON + TRAHŌ), *to draw together, collect, assemble*

VIII **exercitum...posse**, INDIR. DISC. §580



## I.LXXXIV.IV.

SIBI AUTEM MĪRUM VIDĒRĪ QUID IN SUĀ GALLIĀ QUAM  
BELLŌ VĪCISSET AUT CÆSARĪ AUT OMNĪNŌ POPULŌ  
RŌMĀNŌ NEGŌTĪ ESSET.

Sibi autem mīrum<sup>I</sup> vidērī<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=*that, however, (it) seems* ~*that to him, moreover, it*  
*amazing to him* ~*appeared strange*

quid in suā Galliā

=*what // in his own Gaul* ~*what // in his own Gaul*

quam bellō<sup>IV</sup> vīcisset<sup>V</sup>

=*which he had conquered by* ~*which he had conquered in war*  
<means of> war

---

I **mirus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MI-), *wonderful, marvellous, astonishing, extraordinary, amazing*

II INDIR. DISC. §580

III USED IMPERSONALLY

IV ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V **quam...vīcisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

aut Cæsari<sup>I</sup> aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō<sup>II</sup> negōtī<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> esset<sup>V</sup>

=/what/ of business to Cæsar or ~business either Cæsar or the  
the to Roman people (there) was Roman people at all had  
altogether

- 
- I The Dative is used with the verb *sum* to denote Possession; as, *Mercatoribus est aditus. Traders have access* (IV.II); *quid...Cæsari...negotii esset, what business Cæsar...had* (I.XXXIV)
- II ***Cæsari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō***, DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. NOTE. THE GENITIVE OR A POSSESSIVE WITH ESSE EMPHASIZES THE POSSESSOR; THE DATIVE, THE FACT OF POSSESSION: AS,—*LIBER EST MEUS, THE BOOK IS MINE (AND NO ONE'S ELSE); EST MIHI LIBER, I HAVE A BOOK (AMONG OTHER THINGS).* §373
- III PARTITIVE GEN. WITH ***quid***. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346
- IV ***negōtium, -ī***, N. (NEC + OTIUM), *a business, employment, occupation, affair*
- V ***quid...esset***, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

# I.XXXV



CÆSAR MAKES DEMANDS OF ARIOVISTUS.



## I.XXXVI.I.



IS RESPŌNSĪS AD CÆSAREM RELĀTĪS, ITERUM AD EUM CÆSAR LĒGĀTŌS CUM HĪS MANDĀTĪS MITTIT: QUONIAM TANTŌ SUŌ POPULĪQUE RŌMĀNĪ BENEFICIŌ ADFECTUS, CUM IN CONSULĀTŪ SUŌ RĒX ATQUE AMĪCUS Ā SENĀTŪ APPELLĀTUS ESSET, HANC SIBI POPULŌQUE RŌMĀNŌ GRĀTIAM REFERRET UT IN COLLOQUIUM VENĪRE INVĪTĀTUS GRAVĀRĒTUR NEQUE DĒ COMMŪNĪ RĒ DĪCENDUM SIBI ET COGNŌSCENDUM PUTĀRET, HÆC ESSE QUÆ AB EŌ POSTULĀRET: PRĪMUM NĒ QUAM MULTITŪDINEM HOMINUM AMPLIUS TRĀNS RHĒNUM IN GALLIAM TRĀDŪCERET; DEINDE OBSIDĒS QUŌS HABĒRET AB ÆDUĪS REDDERET, SĒQUANĪSQUE PERMITTERET UT QUŌS IPSĪ HABĒRENT VOLUNTĀTE EIUS REDDERE ILLĪS LICĒRET; NĒVE ÆDUŌS INIŪRIĀ LACESSERET NĒVE HĪS SOCIĪSQUE EŌRUM BELLUM ĪNFERRET.

His respŏnsĭs ad Cæsarem relātĭs<sup>1</sup>

=with these things <having ~when these answers were been> reported to Cæsar reported to Cæsar

---

I his respŏnsĭs...relātĭs, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

iterum ad eum Cæsar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs<sup>I</sup> mittit

=again, Cæsar sends ~he sends ambassadors to him a  
ambassadors to him with these second time with this message  
mandates

quoniam<sup>II</sup> tantō suō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō<sup>III</sup> adfectus

=since (he,) <having been> ~since, after having been treated  
treated with so great kindness with so much kindness by  
by himself (Cæsar) and the himself and the Roman people  
Roman people

cum in consulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū<sup>IV</sup> appellātus esset<sup>V</sup>

=as he had been called a king ~as he had in his consulship  
and a friend in his own been styled 'king and friend' by  
consulship by the senate the senate [59 B.C.]

hanc sibi populūque Rōmānō grātiā referret<sup>VI</sup>

=he was bringing back this ~he returns thanks to [Cæsar]  
thanks to himself (Cæsar) and to himself and the Roman people  
the Roman people

---

I **mandātum, -ī, n.** (P. N. OF *mando*), a charge, commission, injunction, command, order

II **quoniam, adv.** (QUOM + IAM), since now, since then, since, seeing that, as, because, whereas

III **tantō suō...beneficiō, abl.** OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **ā senātū, abl.** OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ā* OR *ab*. §405

V **cum...appellātus esset, cum, clause.** A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH *cum* AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

VI **quoniam...referret, subordinate clause in indir. disc.** A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

**ut in colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur**<sup>I</sup>

=that (he,) <having been> invited ~[viz.] that when invited to a  
to come to a conference, conference, he demurs  
hesitates

**neque**

=and // not

~and // not

**dē commūnī rē dicendum [esse] sibi**<sup>II</sup> **et cognōscendum [esse]**<sup>III</sup>

=that it is not <having> to be ~that it concerns him to advise  
spoken and it is not <having> to and inform himself about an  
be thought by him (Ariovistus) object of mutual interest  
about a common thing

**putāret**<sup>IV</sup>

=he did // think

~does // think

**hæc esse**<sup>V</sup>

=(therefore) these are the things

~these are the things

I **gravor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (PASS. OF gravo), to be burdened, feel incommoded, be vexed, take amiss, bear with reluctance, regard as a burden, hesitate, do unwillingly

II DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

III **dicendum...cognōscendum**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **putāret**. (SEE CHART AT §196) & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV **ut...gravārētur...putāret**, THIS **ut** IS AN INDIC. CONCESSIVE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE PARTICLES OF CONCESSION (MEANING ALTHOUGH, GRANTING THAT) ARE QUAMVIS, UT, LICET, ETSI, TAMETSI, ETIAM SI, QUAMQUAM, AND CUM. SOME OF THESE TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, OTHERS THE INDICATIVE, ACCORDING TO THE NATURE OF THE CLAUSE WHICH EACH INTRODUCES. §527 & §583

V **hæc esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **lēgātōs...mittit**. §580

quæ ab eō postulāret<sup>I</sup>

=(the things) which he should demand from him ~which he requires of him

primum nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret<sup>II</sup>

=first (of all), that he should not lead across the Rhine into Gaul any more multitude of men ~first, that he do not any more lead any body of men across the Rhine into Gaul

deinde [ut] obsidēs

=next, [that] the hostages ~in the next place, that the hostages

quōs habēret<sup>III</sup> ab Æduīs<sup>IV</sup>

=which he held from the Ædui ~which he has from the Ædui

redderet

=he should return ~he restore

Sēquanīisque<sup>V</sup> permetteret<sup>VI VII</sup>

=and he should permit to the Sequani ~and grant the Sequani

I **quæ...postulāret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **nē...trādūceret**, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

III **quōs habēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **ab Hæduīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

V DAT. WITH V. **permitteret**. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH THE IMPERSONALS LIBET (LUBET), IT PLEASES, AND LICET, IT IS ALLOWED. §368

VI **permittō, -misi, -missus, -ere** (PER + MITTŌ), *to let pass, let go, let loose: equos in hostem, i.e. ride at full speed; To give leave, let, allow, suffer, grant, permit*

VII **redderet...permitteret**, COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. §401

ut

=to

~to

quōs ipsī habērent<sup>I</sup>

=those (hostages) whom they themselves held (from the Æduis) ~those hostages which they have

voluntāte<sup>II</sup> eius reddere illis licēret<sup>III</sup>

=it should be allowed, with his consent (Ariovistus'), to return those (hostages) ~permission to restore to them with his consent

nēve Æduōs iniuriā<sup>IV</sup> lacesseret

=(and) that he should neither provoke the Ædui by injury ~and that he neither provoke the Ædui by outrage

nēve hīs sociisque<sup>V</sup> eōrum bellum inferret<sup>VI</sup>

=nor should he bring war upon them and their allies ~nor make war upon them or their allies

---

I **quōs...habērent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **ut...licēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTI) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **hīs sociisque**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **inferret**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VI **nēve...lacesseret...inferret**, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. §588

## I.LXXXV.II.

SĪ ID ITA FĒCISSET, SIBI POPULŌQUE RŌMĀNŌ  
 PERPETUAM GRĀTIAM ATQUE AMĪCITIAM CUM EŌ  
 FUTURAM: SĪ NŌN IMPETRĀRET, SĒSĒ, QUONIAM M.  
 MESSĀLĀ M. PĪSŌNE CONSULIBUS SENĀTUS CĒNSUISSET  
 UTĪ QUĪCUMQUE GALLIAM PRŌVINCIAM OBTINĒRET,  
 QUOD COMMODŌ REĪ PŪBLICÆ FACERE POSSET, ÆDUŌS  
 CĒTERŌSQUE AMĪCŌS POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ DĒFENDERET, SĒ  
 ÆDUŌRUM INIŪRIĀS NŌN NEGLĒCTŪRUM.

SĪ id ita fēcisset<sup>I</sup>

=if he should do it (this) so (e.g. ~if he would accordingly do this in this manner)

sibi populōque Rōmānō<sup>II</sup> perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiā cum  
 eō futuram [esse]<sup>III</sup>

=there would be perpetual ~[Cæsar says] that "he himself  
 gratitude and friendship with and the Roman people will  
 him (Ariovistus) for himself entertain a perpetual feeling of  
 (Cæsar) and for the Roman favor and friendship toward him  
 people

sī nōn impetrāret<sup>IV</sup>

=if he (Cæsar) should not ~but that if he [Cæsar] does not  
 achieve (his desires) obtain [his desires]

---

I ***sī...fēcisset***, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II ***sibi populōque Rōmānō***, DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. §373

III ***perpetuam grātiā...futuram***, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IV ***sī...impetrāret***, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589



sēsē

=*that he*

~*that he*

quoniam

=*since*

~*forasmuch as*

M[arcō] Messālā M[arcō] Pīsōne consulibus<sup>I</sup>

=*with M[arcus] Messala (and)*  
*M[arcus] Piso <being> consuls*

~*in the consulship of Marcus*  
*Messala and Marcus Piso [61*  
*B.C.]*

senātus cēnsuisset<sup>II III</sup>

=*the senate had judged*

~*the senate had decreed*

utī quicumque<sup>IV</sup> Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret<sup>V</sup>

=*that whomsoever should obtain*  
*the Gallic province (e.g. as*  
*governor)*

~*that, whoever should have the*  
*administration of the province*  
*of Gaul*

---

I **M. Messālā M. Pīsōne consulibus**, ABL. ABS. §420

II **cēnsēō, cēnsuī, cēnsus, -ēre** (CAS-), *to tax, assess, rate, estimate; Of senators, to be of opinion, propose, vote, move, give judgment, argue, insist, urge*

III **quoniam...cēnsuisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IV **quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, PRON. REL., *whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever, every one who, everything that, all that*

V **quicumque...obtinēret**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

quod commodō<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> reī pūblicæ<sup>III</sup> facere posset<sup>IV</sup>

=as far as he was able to do (it)  
with advantage to the republic

~should, as far as he could do so  
consistently with the interests of  
the republic

Æduōs cēterōsque<sup>V</sup> amīcōs populi Rōmānī dēfenderet<sup>VI</sup>

=he should defend the Ædui and  
the other friends of the Roman  
people

~protect the Ædui and the other  
friends of the Roman people

sē Æduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum [esse]<sup>VII</sup> <sup>VIII</sup>

=that he would not neglect the  
Ædui's injuries

~will not overlook the wrongs of  
the Ædui

---

I **commodō**, ABL. OF SPEC. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. §418

II **commōdus**, -a, -um, ADJ. (COM + MŌDUS), *that has a due or proper measure*; Of things, *suitable, fit, convenient, opportune, commodious, easy, appropriate, favorable, friendly*; SUBST., **commōdum**, -i, N., *A convenient opportunity, favorable condition, convenience*

III **reī pūblicæ**, DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376

IV **quod...posset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

V **cēterus**, -a, -um, ADJ. (CA-, CI-), *the other, remainder, rest*

VI **utī...dēfenderet**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

VII **neglēgō**, -ēxi, -ēctus, -ere (NEC + LEGO), *to disregard, not heed, not trouble oneself about, not attend to, slight, neglect, be regardless of, be indifferent to*

VIII **sēsē...sē...neglēctūrum**, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

# I.XXXVI



ARIOVISUTS REPLIES, DEFYING CÆSAR.



## I.XXXVII.



D HÆC ARIOVISTUS RESPONDIT: IŪS ESSE  
BELLĪ UT QUĪ VĪCISSENT EĪS QUŌS VĪCISSENT  
QUEM AD MODUM VELLENT IMPERĀRENT:  
ITEM POPULUM RŌMĀNUM VICTĪS NŌN AD  
ALTERĪUS PRÆSCRĪPTUM, SED AD SUUM ARBITRIUM  
IMPERĀRE CŌNSUĒSSE.

**Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit**

=to this (thing), Ariovistus ~to this, Ariovistus replied  
responded

**iūs esse<sup>1</sup> belli**

=it was a right of war ~that the right<sup>1</sup> of war was

**ut**

=that ~that

---

I ***iūs esse***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***respondit***. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

quī vīcissent<sup>I</sup>

=(those men) who had ~they who had conquered  
conquered

eīs<sup>II</sup>

=those (people) ~those

quōs vīcissent<sup>III</sup>

=(those people) whom they had ~whom they had conquered  
conquered

quem ad modum<sup>IV</sup> vellent<sup>VI</sup>

=to which manner they wished ~in what manner they pleased

imperārent<sup>VII</sup>

=they might command ~should govern

I **quī vīcissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **imperārent**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

III **quōs vīcissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **quēmadmōdum** or **quē ad mōdum**, ADV. (QUĒM + AD + MŌ + DUM), *in what manner, how*

V **modus**, -ī, M. (MA-), *a measure, extent, quantity; A way, manner, mode, method, fashion, style*

VI **quem...vellent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VII **ut...imperārent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

item populum Rōmānum victis<sup>I</sup> nōn ad alterius præscriptum<sup>II</sup> sed ad suum arbitrium<sup>III</sup> imperāre cōsuēsse<sup>IV</sup>

=that, likewise, the Roman ~that in that way the Roman  
people are accustomed to govern people were wont to govern the  
the conquered men, not nations which they had  
(according) to the regulation of conquered, not according to the  
the others, but (according) to dictation of any other, but  
their own will according to their own authority

## I.XXXVI.II.

SĪ IPSE POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ NŌN PRÆSCRĪBERET QUEM AD  
MODUM SUŌ IŪRE ŪTERĒTUR, NŌN OPORTĒRE SĒ Ā  
POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ IN SUŌ IŪRE IMPEDĪRĪ. ÆDUŌS SIBI,  
QUONIAM BELLĪ FORTŪNAM TEMPTĀSSENT ET ARMĪS  
CONGRESSĪ AC SUPERĀTĪ ESSENT, STĪPENDIĀRĪŌS ESSE  
FACTŌS.

SĪ ipse populŌ Rōmānŏ<sup>V</sup> nōn præscriberet<sup>VI VII</sup>

=if he, for his part, should not ~if he for his part did not dictate  
prescribe to the Roman people to the Roman people

---

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præscriptum**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **præscriptum**, -ī, N. (P. N. OF PRÆSCRIBO; PRÆ + SCRIBO), a previous direction, precept, limitation, proviso, regulation

III **arbitrium**, -ī, N. (ARBITER), In law, a judgment, decision of an arbitrator; Mastery, dominion, authority, power, will, free-will, choice, pleasure

IV **populum...cōsuēsse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **populŏ Rōmānŏ**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præscriberet**. §370

VI **præscribo**, -psi, -ptum, -ere (PRÆ + SCRIBO), to write before, in front, or previously, to prefix in writing; TROP, to order, appoint, direct, command, prescribe; dictate

VII **sī...præscriberet**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRESENT CONDITION IN INDIR DISC. §589

quem ad modum<sup>I</sup> suō iūre ūterētur<sup>II</sup>

=to which manner they (the roman people) should use their own right ~as to the manner in which they were to exercise their right

nōn oportēre sē<sup>III</sup> ā populō Rōmānō<sup>IV</sup> in suō iūre<sup>V</sup> impedīrī

=that he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in his own right ~he ought not to be obstructed by the Roman people in his right

Æduōs sibi<sup>VI</sup>

=to him // the Ædui ~that the Ædui // to him

quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent

=since they had attempted the fortune of war ~inasmuch as they had tried the fortune of war

---

I **quem**, HERE AS AN INTERROG.

II **quem...ūterētur**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

III **oportēre sē**, APODOSIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

IV **ā populō Rōmānō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

V **suō iūre**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūterētur**. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VI DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376

et armīs<sup>I</sup> congressī [essent]<sup>II</sup> ac superātī essent<sup>III</sup>

=and they had contended by ~and had engaged in arms and  
<means of> arms and they had been conquered  
been overcome

stīpendiārīōs<sup>IV</sup> esse factōs<sup>V</sup>

=that (those men) had been ~had become tributaries  
made tributaries

### I.XXVI.III.

MAGNAM CÆSAREM INIŪRIAM FACERE, QUĪ SUO  
ADVENTŪ VECTĪGĀLIA SIBI DĒTERIŌRA FACERET.

Magnam Cæsarem iniūriam facere<sup>VI</sup>

=that Cæsar is doing a great ~that Cæsar was doing a great  
injury injustice

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **congregior, -gressus, -ī**, DEP. (COM- + GRADIOR), to come together, meet, have an interview; To meet in strife, fight, contend, engage, join battle

III **quoniam...temptāssent...congressī ac superātī essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV Predicate Adjectives, and Participles in Predicate used as Adjectives, are connected with a Noun or Pronoun through a Verb or Participle; as, *fortissimi sunt Belgæ*, the Belgians are the bravest (I.I); *qui peritissimus habebatur*, who was considered highly skilled (I.XXI); *Gallia est divisa*, Gaul is divided, the Perfect Passive Participle of divide being used as an Adjective; if *est divisa* were here a Perfect Passive tense, it would have to be translated *has been divided* or *was divided* (I.I)

V **Hæduōs...esse factōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

VI **Cæsarem...facere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

quī suō adventū<sup>I</sup> vectīgālia<sup>II</sup> sibi<sup>III</sup> dēteriōra<sup>IV</sup> faceret<sup>V</sup>

=(he) who, by his (Cæsar's) ~in that by his arrival he was coming, was making (his) making his revenues less revenues lower to him valuable to him (Ariovistus)

## I.LXXXVI.IV.

ÆDUIS SĒ OBSIDĒS REDDITŪRUM NŌN ESSE, NEQUE HIS NEQUE EŌRUM SOCIIS INIŪRIĀ BELLUM INLĀTŪRUM, SĪ IN EŌ MANĒRENT QUOD CONVĒNISSET STĪPENDIUMQUE QUOTANNĪS PENDERENT: SĪ ID NŌN FĒCISSENT, LONGĒ HĪS FRĀTERNUM NŌMEN POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ĀFUTŪRUM.

Æduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse<sup>VI</sup>

=that (he) would not give back ~that he should not restore their (their) hostages to the Ædui hostages to the Ædui

neque his neque eŏrum sociis<sup>VII</sup> iniŭriā<sup>VIII</sup> bellum inlātūrum [esse]<sup>IX</sup>

=(but) that he would bring war ~but should not make war with injury neither to these men unjustly either upon them or nor to their allies their allies

---

I **suō adventū**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **vectigal, -ālis**, N. (VAG-), a payment to the state, revenue, toll, tax, impost, excise, duty, tribute

III DAT. OF REF. §376

IV **dēteriōr, -ius**, ADJ. COMP. (DETER; FROM *de*), down; hence, lower, inferior, worse, worse, poorer, meaner

V **quī...faceret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §583

VI **reddō, -didī, -ditus, -ere** (RED + DŌ) To give back, return, restore

VII **his...sociis**. DAT. WITH COMP. V. **inlātūrum**. §370

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IX **sē...redditūrum esse...illātūrum**, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589



**sī in eō manērent<sup>I</sup>**

=if they remained in this

~if they abided by that

**quod convēnisset<sup>II</sup>**

=(that thing) which he had ~which had been agreed on  
agreed in

**stīpendiumque quotannīs<sup>III</sup> penderent<sup>IV V</sup>**

=and they would weigh out in ~and paid out their tribute  
payment (their) tribute every annually  
year

**sī id nōn fēcissent<sup>VI</sup>**

=(and) if they had not done it

~if they did not continue to do  
that

---

I **maneō, mānsī, mānsus, -ēre** (MAN-), to stay, remain, abide, tarry;  
To remain, last, endure, continue, abide, persist

II **quod convēnisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **quōt**, INDECL. Lit., how many, as many, as: *quot sunt?*; TRANSF., in  
specifications of time, all, each, every; hence, *quod annis*, every year,  
yearly, annually

IV **pendō, -pependī, -pēnsus, -ere** (PAND-), to suspend, weigh, weigh  
out; To weigh out in payment, pay, pay out; Fig., to pay, suffer,  
undergo

V **sī...manērent...penderent**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC.  
§589

VI **sī...fēcissent**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

longē hīs<sup>I</sup> frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum [esse]<sup>II</sup>

=(then) the name of the Roman ~the Roman people's name of  
people of 'brothers' would be far 'brothers' would be of no avail to  
away <with reference> to them them

### I.XXXVI.V.

QUOD SIBI CÆSAR DĒNŪNTIĀRET SĒ ÆDUŌRUM  
INIŪRIĀS NŌN NEGLĒCTŪRUM, NĒMINEM SĒCUM SINE  
SUĀ PERNICIĒ CONTENDISSE.

Quod<sup>III</sup> sibi Cæsar dēnūntiāret<sup>IV V</sup>

=as (to) Cæsar threatening ~as to the fact that to Cæsar  
himself threatened him

sē Æduōrum iniūriās nōn neglĕctūrum [esse]<sup>VI</sup>

=that he would not neglect the ~that he would not overlook the  
injuries of the Ædui wrongs of the Ædui

I A Dative of Reference is used with Verbs of taking away, especially those compounded with *ab*, *de*, and *ex* (sometimes called Dative of Separation); thus, *Æduis libertatem sint erepturi*, that they were going to take away liberty from the Æduans, Lit. that as regards the Æduans, they are, etc. (I.XVII); *scuto uni militi detracto*, snatching a shield from a soldier, Lit. to a soldier, the Dative expressing the point of view of the soldier (II.XXV); *longe eis afuturum*, would be far from benefiting them, Lit. would be far away with reference to them (I.XXXVI)

II **frāternum nōmen...āfutūrum**, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

III A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning as to the fact that, as regards the fact that, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, *quod...enuntiarit*, as to the fact that he had reported, in the direct form, *quod enuntiavi*, as to the fact that I have reported (I.XVII)

IV **dēnūntiō**, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (DE + NŪNTIŌ), to announce, declare, denounce, menace, threaten, intimate, order, command

V **quod...dēnūntiāret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI **sē...neglĕctūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dēnūntiāret**. §580

*nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse*<sup>I</sup>

=(he said) that no one had ever fought with him (Ariovistus) without his own destruction  
 ~[he said] that no one had ever entered into a contest with him [Ariovistus] without utter ruin to himself

## I.XXXVI.VI.

CUM VELLET, CONGREDERĒTUR: INTELLĒCTŪRUM QUID INVICTĪ GERMĀNĪ, EXERCITĀTISSIMĪ IN ARMĪS, QUĪ INTER ANNŌS QUATTUORDECIM TĒCTUM NŌN SUBĪSENT, VIRTŪTE POSSENT.

*Cum vellet*<sup>II</sup>

=when he wishes

~when he chose

*congrederētur*<sup>III</sup>

=he might meet (him) (e.g. to meet in battle)  
 ~that Cæsar might enter the lists

*intellĒctŭrum [esse]*<sup>IV</sup>

=that (he) (Cæsar) would learn

~he would feel

---

I *nēminem...contendisse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *respondit*. §580

II *cum vellet*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM, WHEN, AND SOME PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE DATES OR DEFINES THE TIME AT WHICH THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB OCCURRED. §545 & §583

III COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

IV INDIR. DISC. §580

quid invictī<sup>I</sup> Germānī, exercitātissimī<sup>II</sup> in armīs

=*what the unconquerable* ~*what the invincible Germans,*  
*Germans, the most-exercised in* *well-trained [as they were]*  
*arms* *beyond all others to arms*

quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum<sup>III</sup> nōn subīssent<sup>IV</sup>

=(*the Germans*) *who, in the* ~*who for fourteen years had not*  
*course of fourteen years, had not* *been beneath a roof*  
*come under a roof*

virtūte<sup>V</sup> possent<sup>VI</sup>

=(*those men*) *were able (to do)* ~*could achieve by their valor*  
*<by means of> (their) manliness*

---

I **invictus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH SUP. (IN + VĪCTUS), *unconquered, unsubdued, unconquerable, invincible*

II **exercito, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (EXERCEO), *to exercise diligently or frequently, practise*; Hence, **exercitatus, -a, -um**, (P. A.), *Well exercised, practised, versed, trained*

III **tēctum, -ī**, N. (P. N. OF TEGO), *a covered structure, roofed enclosure, shelter, house, dwelling, abode, roof*

IV **quī...subīssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **quid...possent**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

# I.XXXVII



CÆSAR HEARS FURTHER COMPLAINTS.



## I.XXXVII.I.



ÆC EÖDEM TEMPORE CÆSARĪ MANDĀTA REFERĒBANTUR, ET LĒGĀTĪ AB ÆDUĪS ET Ā TRĒVERĪS VENIĒBANT: ÆDUĪ QUESTUM QUOD HARUDĒS, QUI NŪPER IN GALLIAM TRĀNSPORTĀTĪ ESSENT, FĪNĒS EÖRUM POPULĀRENTUR; SĒSĒ NĒ OBSIDIBUS QUIDEM DATĪS PACEM ARIOVISTĪ REDIMERE POTUISSE: TRĒVERĪ AUTEM, PĀGŌS CENTUM SUĒBORUM AD RĪPĀS RHĒNĪ CŌNSĒDISSE, QUI RHĒNUM TRĀNSĪRE CŌNĀRENTUR; HĪS PRÆESSE NASUAM ET CIMBERIUM FRĀTRĒS.

Hæc eödem tempore<sup>I</sup> Cæsarĭ mandāta<sup>II</sup> referēbantur

=at the same time (that) these ~at the same time that this  
commands were brought back to message was delivered to Cæsar  
Cæsar

---

I ***eödem tempore***, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II ***mandātum, -ī***, N. (PPP. OF *mando*), *a charge, commission, injunction, command, order*

et lēgātī ab Æduīs et ā Trēverīs<sup>I</sup> veniēbant

=the ambassadors were coming ~embassadors came from the  
from both the Ædui and from Ædui and the Treviri  
the Treviri

Æduī [veniēbat]

=the Ædui [were coming]

~the Ædui [were coming]

questum<sup>II III</sup>

=to complain

~to complain

quod Harudēs

=that the Harudes

~that the Harudes

quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent<sup>IV V</sup>

=who had recently been carried  
across into Gaul

~who had lately been brought  
over into Gaul

---

I **Trēverī, -ōrum**, M. PL., *Treverans, Treveri*, a Belgic people near the Rhine

II ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE AFTER V. OF MOTION **veniēbant**. THE SUPINE IS A VERBAL ABSTRACT OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION (§94ii), HAVING NO DISTINCTION OF TENSE OR PERSON, AND LIMITED TO TWO USES. (1) THE FORM IN -UM IS THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE END OF MOTION (§428i). (2) THE FORM IN -Ū IS USUALLY DATIVE OF PURPOSE (§382), BUT THE ABLATIVE WAS EARLY CONFUSED WITH IT. §508

III **queror, questus, -ī**, DEP. (QVES-), *to express grief, complain, lament, bewail*; **questum**, SUPINE. EXPRESSING PURPOSE—Hence, *to complain*

IV **trānsportō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (TRĀNS + PORTŌ), *to carry over, take across, carry, convey, remove, transport*

V **quī...trānsportātī essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

**finēs eōrum populārentur<sup>I</sup> II**

=(the *Harudes*) *were laying* ~were ravaging their territories  
waste their territories

**sēsē nē**

=(and) that they // not ~that they // not

**obsidibus quidem datīs<sup>III</sup>**

=even with hostages <having ~even by giving hostages  
been> given

**pacem Ariovistī redimere<sup>IV</sup> potuisse<sup>V</sup>**

=had // been able to buy back the ~had // been able to procure  
peace of Ariovistus peace from Ariovistus

**Trēverī**

=(and) of the Treviri ~and from the Treviri

**autem, pāgōs centum Suēborum<sup>VI</sup> ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse**

=(to state) moreover, that a ~[to state] that a hundred  
hundred cantons of the Suevi cantons of the Suevi had  
had settled on the banks of the encamped on the banks of the  
Rhine Rhine

I **populor, ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (SCAL-), to lay waste, ravage, devastate, spoil, plunder, pillage

II **quod...populārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **obsidibus...datīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

IV **redimō, -ēmī, -ēmtus, -ere** (RED- + EMO), to buy back, repurchase, redeem; to buy, purchase; To gain, acquire, obtain, procure any thing desirable

V **sēsē...potuisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **questum**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

VI **Suēbī, -ōrum**, M. PL., the Swabians, Suebi, a powerful German people

quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur<sup>I</sup>

=*who were trying to cross the Rhine* ~*and were attempting to cross it*

hīs<sup>II</sup> prāesse<sup>III</sup> Nasuam<sup>IV</sup> et Cimberium<sup>V</sup> frātrēs

=*(and that) the brothers, Nasuas and Cimberius, had presided over them* ~*that the brothers, Nasuas and Cimberius, headed them*

## I.LXXXVII.II.

QUIBUS RĒBUS CÆSAR VEHEMENTER COMMŌTUS  
MĀTŪRANDUM SIBI EXĪSTIMĀVIT, NĒ, SĪ NOVA MANUS  
SUĒBŌRUM CUM VETERIBUS CŌPIĪS ARIOVISTĪ SĒSĒ  
CONIUNXISSET, MINUS FACILE RESISTĪ POSSET.

Quibus rēbus<sup>VI</sup> Cæsar vehementer commōtus

=*Cæsar, <having been> moved by which things* ~*being greatly alarmed at these things, Cæsar*

---

I **quī...cōnārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II DAT. WITH COMP. V. **prāesse**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO., ANTE., CON., IN., INTER., OB., POST., PRÆ., PRŌ., SUB., SUPER., AND SOME WITH CIRCUM., ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

III **pāgōs...cōnsēdisse...prāesse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **Nasua**, -ae, M., a chieftain of the Suebi

V **Cimberius**, -ī, M., a leader of the Suebi

VI **quibus rēbus**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409



mātūrandum [esse]<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> sibi<sup>III</sup>

=that it is <having> to be ~that he must hasten  
hastened by him

exīstimāvit

=he thought ~thought

nē

=lest ~lest

sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē  
coniunxisset<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup>

=if (this) new band of Suevi had united itself with the old troops of Ariovistus ~if this new band of Suevi should unite with the old troops of Ariovistus

minus facile resistī posset<sup>VI</sup>

=he (Ariovistus) might be less easily able to be withstood ~he (Ariovistus) might be less easily withstood

---

I **mātūrō, āvī, -ātus, -āre** (MATURUS), to make ripe, ripen, bring to maturity; Fig., to make haste, hasten, accelerate, quicken, despatch, expedite

II FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. (SEE CHART §196) & §580

III DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

IV **coniungo, -nxi, -nctum, -ere** (CON + IUNGO), to bind together, connect, join, unite

V **sī...coniūnxisset**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §589 & §592

VI **nē...posset**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

## I.XXXVII.III.

ITAQUE RĒ FRŪMENTARIĀ QUAM CELERRIMĒ POTUIT  
COMPARĀTĀ MAGNĪS ITINERIBUS AD ARIOVISTUM  
CONTENDIT.

Itaque

=therefore

~therefore

rĕ frūmentariā quam<sup>I</sup> celerrimē potuit comparātā<sup>II</sup>

=with the corn thing <having  
been> prepared as quickly as he  
was able

~after having, as quickly as he  
could, provided a supply of corn

magnīs itineribus<sup>III</sup> ad Ariovistum contendit

=he hastened to Ariovistus by  
<means of> great marches

~he hastened to Ariovistus by  
forced marches

---

I MODIFIES THE SUP. ADV. **celerrimē**

II **rĕ frūmentariā...comparātā**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **magnīs itineribus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

# I.XXXVIII

CÆSAR HASTENS TO VESONTIO.

## I.XXXVIII.I.



CUM TRĪDUĪ VIAM PRŌCESSISSET, NŪNTIĀTUM  
EST EĪ ARIOVISTUM CUM SUĪS OMNIBUS  
CŌPIĪS AD OCCUPANDUM VESONTIŌNEM,  
QUOD EST OPPIDUM MAXIMUM  
SĒQUANŌRUM, CONTENDERE TRĪDUĪQUE VIAM Ā SUĪS  
FINIBUS PRŌCESSISSE.

Cum trīduī<sup>I</sup> II viam<sup>III</sup> prōcessisset<sup>IV</sup> V

=when he had went forth (on a)  
three days' journey

~when he had proceeded three  
days' journey

- 
- I GEN. OF QUALITY. THE GENITIVE IS USED TO DENOTE QUALITY, BUT ONLY WHEN THE QUALITY IS MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE. §345
- II **trīduum, -ī**, N. (TRES + DIES), (SC. *spatium*), *three days' time, three days*
- III COGNATE ACC. AN INTRANSITIVE VERB OFTEN TAKES THE ACCUSATIVE OF A NOUN OF KINDRED MEANING, USUALLY MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE OR IN SOME OTHER MANNER. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE COGNATE ACCUSATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE OF KINDRED SIGNIFICATION. §390
- IV **cum...prōcessisset, cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §546
- V **prōcēdō, -cessī, —, -ere** (PRŌ + CĒDŌ), *to go before, go forward, advance, proceed, march on, move forward, go forth*; In partic. In milit. lang., *to go or march forwards, to advance*

nūntiātum est ei

=it was announced to him

~word was brought to him

Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum  
Vesontionem<sup>I</sup>

=that Ariovistus // with all his  
own forces, for <the purpose of>  
occupying Vesontio

~that Ariovistus // with all his  
forces to occupy Vesontio

quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum

=which is the greatest town of  
the Sequani

~which is the largest town of the  
Sequani

contendere

=was hastening

~was hastening

trīdūīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse<sup>II</sup>

=and (he) had went forth (on a)  
three days' journey from its own  
territories

~and had advanced three days'  
journey from its territories

## I.XXXVIII.II.

ID NĒ ACCIDERET, MAGNO OPERE SIBI PRÆCAVENDUM  
CÆSAR EXĪSTIMĀBAT.

- 
- I **ad occupandum Vesontionem**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506
- II **Ariovistum...contendere...prōcessisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

Id nē accideret<sup>I</sup>

=*lest it should happen*

~*lest this should happen*

magno opere sibi<sup>II</sup> præcavendum [esse]<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup>

=*that it is <having> to be heeded*  
with great labor by him

~*that he ought to take the*  
*greatest precautions*

Cæsar exīstimābat

=*Cæsar was thought*

~*Cæsar thought*

### I.XXXVIII.III.

NAMQUE OMNIUM RĒRUM QUÆ AD BELLUM ŪSUĪ ERANT SUMMA ERAT IN EŌ OPPIDŌ FACULTĀS; IDQUE NĀTŪRĀ LOCĪ SĪC MŪNIĒBĀTUR UT MAGNAM AD DŪCENDUM BELLUM DARET FACULTĀTEM, PROPTEREĀ QUOD FLŪMEN DŪBIS UT CIRCINŌ CIRCUMDUCTUM PÆNE TŌTUM OPPIDUM CINGIT; RELIQUUM SPATIUM, QUOD EST NŌN AMPLIUS PEDUM MILLE SESCENTŌRUM, QUĀ FLUMEN INTERMITTIT, MŌNS CONTINET MAGNĀ ALTITŪDINE, ITA UT RĀDĪCĒS MONTIS EX UTRĀQUE PARTE RĪPÆ FLŪMINIS CONTINGANT, HUNC MŪRUS CIRCUMDATUS ARCEM EFFICIT ET CUM OPPIDŌ CONIUNGIT.

I **nē accideret**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

II DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

III **præcaveō, -cāvī, -cautus, -ēre** (PRÆ + CAVEŌ), *to take care, take heed, use precaution, be on one's guard, beware*; NEUT., *to take care or heed, to use precaution, to be on one's guard, to beware*

IV FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimābat**. (SEE CHART §196) & §580

Namque omnium rērum

=for // of all the supplies

~for // of every thing

quæ ad bellum ūsuī<sup>II</sup> erant

=(the supplies) which were for use <with regards> to war

~which was serviceable for war

summa erat in eō oppidō facultās

=the best facility was in that town

~there was in that town a most ample supply

idque nātūrā<sup>III</sup> locī sic<sup>IV</sup> mūniēbātur<sup>V</sup>

=and it was so fortified by the nature of the place

~and so fortified was it by the nature of the ground

ut magnam ad dūcendum<sup>VI</sup> bellum daret<sup>VII</sup> facultātem

=that it gave a great facility for <the purpose of> leading war

~as to afford a great facility for protracting the war

---

I DAT. SG. OF *ūsus*; DAT. OF SERVICE TO *erant*

II *ūsus*, -ūs, M. (AV-), use, practice, employment, exercise, enjoyment

III ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV *sic*, ADV., Referring to something done or pointed out by the speaker, thus, in this way, as I do, as you see (COLLOQ.); Referring to what precedes, so, thus, in this manner, in such a manner, in the same way or manner, in like manner, likewise—WITH A CLAUSE OF DEG., to such a degree, so, so far

V *mūniō*, -ivī, -itum, -ire (MCENIA), to wall, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect, secure, strengthen

VI *ad dūcendum bellum*, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. §506

VII *ut...daret*, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis<sup>I</sup>

=on account of which because ~inasmuch as the river Doubs  
the river Doubs

ut circinō<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> circumductum<sup>IV</sup> pæne tōtum oppidum cingit<sup>V</sup>

=as if <having been> encircled by ~almost surrounds the whole  
a pair of compasses, it (the river town, as though it were traced  
Doubs) nearly encircles the round it with a pair of  
entire town compasses

reliquum spatium

=the remaining space ~in the remaining space

quod est nōn amplius pedum mille sescentōrum<sup>VI</sup>

=which is not more than a ~which is not more than 1600  
thousand (and) six-hundred of feet  
feet

quā<sup>VII</sup> flumen intermittit

=on which side the river leaves ~where the river leaves an  
off interval

---

I **Dubis, -is**, M., a river in Gaul, tributary of the Arar (Saône), now the Douba

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **circinus, -ī**, M., A pair of compasses

IV **circumdūcō, -dūxī, -ctus, -ere** (CIRCUM + DŪCŌ), to lead around, draw around

V **cingō, -xī, -inctus, -ere**, to go around, surround, encompass, environ, gird, wreath, crown; Of places, to surround, encircle, invest, enclose

VI **pedum mille sescentōrum**, GEN. OF QUALITY.. §345 & THE COMPARATIVE MAY BE FOLLOWED BY QUAM, THAN. WHEN QUAM IS USED, THE TWO THINGS COMPARED ARE PUT IN THE SAME CASE: AFTER THE COMPARATIVES PLŪS, MINUS, AMPLIUS, LONGIUS, WITHOUT QUAM, A WORD OF MEASURE OR NUMBER IS OFTEN USED WITH NO CHANGE IN ITS CASE. §407<sup>III</sup>

VII **quā**, ADV. (ABL. FEM. OF *qui*), of place, on which side, at which place, in what direction, where, by what way

mōns continet magnā altitūdine<sup>VIII</sup>

=a mountain with great altitude  
encloses

~a mountain of great height  
shuts

ita ut rādīcēs<sup>II</sup> montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant<sup>III</sup>

IV

=in such a manner that the roots  
of (that) mountain reach from  
either part of the bank of the  
river

~in such a manner that the roots  
of that mountain extend to the  
river's bank on either side

hunc [montem] mūrus circumdatus<sup>V</sup> arcem<sup>VI</sup> efficit<sup>VII</sup>

=(furthermore), a wall, <having  
been> placed around (it), makes  
this [mountain] a fortress

~a wall thrown around it makes  
a citadel of this [mountain]

VIII **magnā altitūdine**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. §415

II **rādīx, -īcis**, F. (RAD-), a root; radish; TRANS. IN PL. The root, i.e. the lower part of an object, the foot of a hill, mountain, etc.

III **contingō, -tīgī, -tāctus, -ere** (COM- + TANGO), to touch, reach, take hold of, seize; To touch, adjoin, border on, reach, extend to

IV **ut...contingant**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS A DEVELOPMENT PECULIAR TO LATIN. A RELATIVE CLAUSE IN THE INDICATIVE MERELY STATES SOMETHING AS A FACT WHICH IS TRUE OF THE ANTECEDENT; A CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSE (IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE) DEFINES THE ANTECEDENT AS A PERSON OR THING OF SUCH A CHARACTER THAT THE STATEMENT MADE IS TRUE OF HIM OR IT AND OF ALL OTHERS BELONGING TO THE SAME CLASS. THUS,— NŌN POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINĒRE IMPERĀTOR QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINET (INDICATIVE) MEANS SIMPLY, THAT COMMANDER WHO DOES NOT (AS A FACT) RESTRAIN HIMSELF CANNOT RESTRAIN HIS ARMY; WHEREAS NŌN POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINĒRE IMPERĀTOR QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINEAT (SUBJUNCTIVE) WOULD MEAN, THAT COMMANDER WHO IS NOT SUCH A MAN AS TO RESTRAIN HIMSELF, ETC., THAT IS, WHO IS NOT CHARACTERIZED BY SELF-RESTRAINT. §534

V **circumdō, -dedī, -datus, -are** (CIRCUM + DŌ), to place around, cause to surround, set around

VI **arx, arcis**, F. (ARC-), a castle, citadel, fortress, stronghold

VII **efficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (EX + FACIO), to make out, work out, bring to pass, bring about, effect, cause, produce, make, form, execute, finish, complete, accomplish



et cum oppidō coniungit

=and connects (it) with the town ~and connects it with the town

#### I.XXXVIII.IV.

HŪC CÆSAR MAGNĪS NOCTURNĪS DIURNĪSQUE  
ITINERIBUS CONTENDIT, OCCUPĀTŌQUE OPPIDŌ IBI  
PRÆSIDIUM COLLOCAT.

hūc<sup>I</sup> Cæsar magnīs nocturnīs<sup>II</sup> diurnīsque<sup>III</sup> itineribus<sup>IV</sup> contendit

=to this place, Cæsar hastens ~hither Cæsar hastens by forced  
with great marches by night and marches by night and day  
by day

occupātōque oppidō<sup>V</sup>

=and, with the town <having ~and, after having seized the  
been> occupied town

ibi præsidium collocat

=he places together a defence ~stations a garrison there  
there

---

I **hūc**, ADV. (HO- OF *hic*, + -CE), to this place, hither

II **nocturnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NOX), of night, by night, nocturnal

III **diurnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (DIV-), of the day, by day; Daily, of one day, of each day

IV **magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **occupātōque oppidō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420



# I.XXXIX



PANIC SEIZES CÆSAR'S ARMY.



## I.XXXIX.I.



UM PAUCŌS DIĒS AD VESONTIŌNEM REĪ  
FRŪMENTĀRIÆ COMMEĀTŪSQUE CAUSĀ  
MORĀTUR, EX PERCONTĀTIŌNE NOSTRŌRUM  
VŌCIBUSQUE GALLŌRUM AC MERCĀTŌRUM,  
QUĪ INGENŢĪ MAGNITŪDINE CORPORUM GERMĀNŌS,  
INCRĒDIBILĪ VIRTŪTE ATQUE EXERCITĀTIŌNE IN ARMĪS  
ESSE PRÆDICĀBANT (SÆPE NUMERŌ SĒSĒ CUM HIS  
CONGRESSŌS NĒ VULTUM QUIDEM ATQUE ACIEM  
OCULŌRUM DĪCĒBANT FERRE POTUISSE), TANTUS SUBITŌ  
TIMOR OMNEM EXERCITUM OCCUPĀVIT UT NON  
MEDIOCRITER OMNIUM MENTĒS ANIMŌSQUE  
PERTURBĀRET.

Dum paucōs diēs<sup>I</sup> ad Vesontiōnem<sup>II</sup> rei frūmentāriæ  
commeātūsque<sup>III</sup> causā<sup>IV</sup> morātur<sup>V</sup>

=while he is delaying for a few days at Vesontio, on account of the grain situation and supplies of war ~while he was tarrying a few days at Vesontio, on account of corn and provisions

ex percentātiōne<sup>VI</sup> nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac  
mercātōrum

=from the (persistant) questioning of our men and the speeches of the Gauls and of the traders ~from the inquiries of our men and the reports of the Gauls and traders

quī

=(those men) who ~who

---

I **paucōs diēs**, ACC. OF TIME. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §423

II **Vesontiō, -ōnis**, M., chief city of the Sequanians, on the Dubis (Doubs) river, now *Besançon*

III **rei frūmentāriæ commeātūsque**, GEN. WITH **causā**. PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ, GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF; ERGŌ, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE INSTAR, LIKE; ALSO WITH PRĪDIĒ, THE DAY BEFORE; POSTRĪDIĒ, THE DAY AFTER; TENUS, AS FAR AS. §359II

IV ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. III. THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ AND GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF, ARE USED WITH A GENITIVE PRECEDING, OR WITH A PRONOUN IN AGREEMENT. §404III

V **dum...morātur**, **dum** CLAUSE. **DUM**, WHILE, REGULARLY TAKES THE PRESENT INDICATIVE TO DENOTE CONTINUED ACTION IN PAST TIME. IN TRANSLATING, THE ENGLISH IMPERFECT MUST GENERALLY BE USED. §556

VI **percentātiō, -ōnis**, F. (PERCONTOR), a persistent asking, questioning, inquiry

ingentī<sup>I</sup> magnitudīne<sup>II</sup> corporum Germānōs incredibīlī virtūte  
atque exercitātiōne<sup>III</sup> in armīs esse<sup>IV</sup>

=that the Germans are of huge size of bodies, with incredible valor and practice in arms ~that the Germans were men of huge stature, of incredible valor and practice in arms

prædicābant<sup>V</sup>

=they boasted

~asserted

sæpe numerō<sup>VI</sup> sēsē cum his congressōs

=that (those men,) often in <respect to> a number contended with these men ~that, frequently, they, on encountering them

nē vultum<sup>VII</sup> quidem atque aciem oculōrum

=not // even (their) countenance, and the sharpness of (their) eyes ~not // even their expression, and the fierceness of their eyes

I ABL. SG. F.

II **māgnitūdō, -inis, F. (MATNUS), greatness, size, bulk, magnitude**

III **ingentī magnitudīne...incredibīlī virtūte atque exercitātiōne**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. §415

IV **Germānōs...esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicābant**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **prædicō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PRÆ + DICŌ), to make known by proclamation, announce, publish, proclaim; To make known, announce, proclaim, herald, relate, declare openly

VI The Ablative of Specification (answering the question, in respect to what?) is used with Verbs and Adjectives and the Adverb *sæpe*; as, *cum virtute omnibus præstarent*, since they surpassed all in valor (I.II); *Sueba natione*, a Sueban by birth (I.LIII); *numero ad duodecim*, about twelve in number, Lit. in number about twelve (I.V); *sæpe numero*, frequently, Lit. often in respect to number (I.LXXXIII)

VII **vultus, -ūs, M.**, an expression of countenance, the countenance, visage, as to features and expression; hence, often to be translated by features, looks, air, mien, expression, aspect

**dicēbant**

=they said

~said

**ferre potuisse<sup>I</sup>**

=that (they) had // been able to bear

~that they had // been able to bear

**tantus subitō<sup>II</sup> timor omnem exercitum occupāvit**

=so great a fear suddenly seized the whole army

~so great a panic suddenly took possession of the whole army

**ut non mediocriter<sup>IIIIV</sup> omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret<sup>V VI</sup>**

=as to, not moderately, disturb the minds and feelings of all men

~as to discompose the minds and hearts of all in no moderate degree

---

I **sēsē...potuisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicēbant**. §580

II **subitō**, ADV. (SUBITUS), *suddenly, immediately, unexpectedly, at once, off-hand*

III **mediocriter**, ADV. WITH COMP. (MEDIOCRIS), *moderately, tolerably, ordinarily, not very, not remarkably, slightly, somewhat; non mediocriter, in no moderate degree*

IV **mēns, mentis**, F. (MAN-), *the mind, disposition, feeling, character, heart, soul*

V **perturbō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PER + TURBŌ), *to confuse, disturb, confound, throw into disorder; Fig., to disturb, discompose, embarrass, confound*

VI **ut...perturbāret**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

## I.XXXIX.II.

HIC PRĪMUM ORTUS EST Ā TRIBŪNĪS MĪLITUM,  
PRÆFECTĪS, RELIQUĪSQUE QUĪ EX URBE AMĪCITIÆ CAUSĀ  
CÆSAREM SECŪTĪ NON MAGNUM IN RĒ MĪLITĀRĪ ŪSUM  
HABĒBANT; QUŌRUM ALIUS ALIĀ CAUSĀ INLĀTĀ QUAM  
SIBI AD PROFICĪSCENDUM NECESSĀRIAM ESSE DĪCERET,  
PETĒBAT UT EIUS VOLUNTĀTE DISCĒDERE LICĒRET; NŌN  
NŪLLĪ PUDŌRE ADDUCTĪ, UT TIMŌRIS SUSPĪCIŌNEM  
VĪTĀRENT, REMANĒBANT.

Hic prĭmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, præfectīs<sup>I</sup>, reliquīsque<sup>II</sup>

=this (fear) first arose from the tribunes of the soldiers, from the prefects, and from the remaining men ~this first arose from the tribunes of the soldiers, the prefects and the rest

quī ex urbe<sup>III</sup> amīcitiæ<sup>IV</sup> causā<sup>V</sup> Cæsarem secūtī non magnum in rē  
militārī ūsum habēbant

=(those men) who followed Cæsar out from the city (Rome), from motives of friendship had no great use in military things ~who, having followed Cæsar from the city (Rome) from motives of friendship, had no great experience in military affairs

quōrum alius

=some of these men

~some of them

I **præfectus, ī, m.** (P. OF PRÆFICIO), *an overseer, director, superintendent*

II **ā tribūnīs...præfectīs...reliquīs**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §404

III **ex urbe**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

IV GEN. WITH **causā**. §359ii

V ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. III. THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ AND GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF, ARE USED WITH A GENITIVE PRECEDING, OR WITH A PRONOUN IN AGREEMENT. §404iii

*aliā causā inlātā*<sup>I</sup>

=with one cause <having been> ~alleging one reason, another,  
brought forward (e.g. presented) another reason  
another, another (with another  
cause)

*quam*

=which ~which

*sibi ad proficiscendum*<sup>II</sup> *necessāriam esse*<sup>III</sup>

=that was necessary for them ~that it was necessary for them  
for <purpose of> departing to depart

*dīceret*<sup>IV</sup>

=(each) said ~said

*petēbat*

=sought ~requested

*ut eius voluntāte*<sup>V</sup> *discēdere licēret*<sup>VI VII</sup>

=that it be allowed to depart by ~that by his consent they might  
<means of> his permission be allowed to withdraw

I *aliā causā illātā*, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II *ad proficiscendum*, *ad* WITH ACC. OF THE GERUND EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

III *necessāriam esse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *dīceret*. §580

IV *quam...dīceret*, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

V ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VI IMPER., AS. *it be allowed*

VII *ut...licēret*, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531



nōn nūllī pudōre<sup>I II</sup> adductī

=not no one, <having been> led ~some, influenced by shame  
by <means of> shame

ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent<sup>III</sup>

=<in order> that they might ~to avoid the suspicion of  
avoid the suspicion of cowardice cowardice

remanēbant

=were remained ~stayed behind

### I.XXXIX.III.

HĪ NEQUE VULTUM FINGERE NEQUE INTERDUM  
LACRIMĀS TENĒRE POTERANT: ABDITĪ IN TABERNĀCULĪS  
AUT SUUM FĀTUM QUERĒBANTUR AUT CUM  
FAMILIĀRIBUS SUĪS COMMŪNE PERĪCULUM  
MISERĀBANTUR.

Hī neque vultum fingere<sup>IV</sup>

=these men (were) neither (able) ~these men were neither able to  
to feign (their) countenance alter their countenance

neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant

=nor, sometimes were they able ~nor even sometimes check their  
to hold back tears tears

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **pudor, -ōris**, M. (PV-), a shrinking from blame, desire of approval, shame, shamefastness, modesty, decency, propriety

III **ut...vītārent**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

IV **fingō, finxī, fictus, -ere** (FIG-), to touch, handle, stroke, touch gently; Of the countenance, to alter, change, put on, feign

abditī in tabernāculīs<sup>I</sup> aut suum fātum<sup>II</sup> querēbantur

=(these men,) <having been> ~but hidden in their tents, either  
hidden in (their) tents, either bewailed their fate  
were bewailing their own fate

aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur<sup>III</sup>

=or with their own comrades ~or deplored with their  
they were lamenting the general comrades the general danger  
danger

#### I.LXXXIX.IV.

VULGŌ TŌTĪS CASTRĪS TESTĀMENTA OBSIGNĀBANTUR.

Vulgō tōtīs castrīs<sup>IV</sup> testāmenta<sup>V</sup> obsignābantur

=testaments were being sealed ~wills were sealed universally  
en masse in all the camps throughout the whole camp

#### I.LXXXIX.V.

HŌRUM VŌCIBUS AC TIMŌRE PAULĀTIM ETIAM EĪ QUĪ  
MAGNUM IN CASTRĪS ŪSUM HABĒBANT, MĪLITĒS  
CENTURIŌNĒSQUE QUĪQUE EQUITĀTUĪ PRÆERANT,  
PERTURBĀBANTUR.

---

I **tabernāculum, ī**, N. (TABERNA), a tent

II **fātum, -ī**, N., an utterance, prophetic declaration, oracle, prediction;  
That which is ordained, destiny, fate

III **miseror, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (MISER), to lament, deplore, commiserate

IV **tōtīs castrīs**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE  
MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §429

V **testāmentum, -ī**, N. (TESTOR), a last will, testament, will

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre<sup>I</sup> paulātim etiam eī

=*by their voices and fear, little and little, even for him*

~*by the cries and cowardice of these men, gradually, even for him*

quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, milītēs centuriōnēsque<sup>II</sup>

=*(those men) who had great experience in the camp: (i.e.) the soldiers and centurions*

~*even those who possessed great experience in the camp, both soldiers and centurions*

quīque equitātū<sup>III</sup> præerant

=*and (those) (the decurions) who presided over the cavalry*

~*and those [the decurions] who were in command of the cavalry*

perturbābantur

=*were perturbed*

~*were disconcerted*

## I.XXXIX.VI.

QUĪ SĒ EX HĪS MINUS TIMIDŌS EXĪSTIMĀRĪ VOLĒBANT, NŌN SĒ HOSTEM VERĒRĪ, SED ANGUSTIĀS ITINERIS ET MAGNITUDINEM SILVĀRUM QUÆ INTERCĒDERENT INTER IPSŌS ATQUE ARIOVISTUM, AUT REM FRŪMENTĀRIAM, UT SATIS COMMODĒ SUPPORTĀRĪ POSSET, TIMĒRE DICĒBANT.

Quī

=*(those men) who*

~*those men*

sē

=*themselves*

~*themselves*

---

I **vōcibus ac timōre**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **centuriō, -ōnis**, M. (CENTURIA), *a commander of a century, captain, centurion* (next in rank to the tribunes of the legion)

III DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præerant**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

ex hīs

=of them

~of them

minus timidōs<sup>I II</sup>

=(as) less fearful

~as less alarmed

exīstimārī volēbant

=wished to be estimated

~wished to be considered

nōn sē hostem verērī<sup>III IV</sup>

=that they were not fearing the enemy

~that they did not dread the enemy

sed angustīās itineris et magnitudinem silvārum<sup>V</sup>

=but (were fearing) the narrowness of the roads and the vastness of the forests

~but feared the narrowness of the roads and the vastness of the forests

quæ intercēderent<sup>VI</sup> inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum

=which came between themselves and Ariovistus

~which lay between them and Ariovistus

aut rem frūmentāriam

=or // the corn supply

~or // else the supplies

---

I **timidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (TEM-), *fearful, afraid, faint-hearted, cowardly, timid*

II **sē...timidōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimārī**. §580

III **vereor, -itus, -ērī**, DEP. (VEL-), *to reverence, revere, respect, stand in awe; To fear, be afraid, dread, apprehend, shrink*

IV **sē...verērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicēbant**. §580

V **silva, -æ**, F. (SER-), *a wood, forest, woodland*

VI **quæ...intercēderent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

ut satis commodē supportārī<sup>I</sup> posset<sup>II</sup>

=/(that) (they) feared/ that /the ~that // could not be brought up  
corn supply/ was not able to be readily enough  
brought up readily enough

timēre<sup>III</sup>

=/they said/ that (they) feared ~feared

dicēbant

=they said ~said

### I.XXXIX.VII.

NŌN NŪLLĪ ETIAM CÆSARĪ NŪNTIĀBANT, CUM CASTRA  
MOVĒRĪ AC SIGNA FERRĪ IUSSISSET, NŌN FORE DICTŌ  
AUDIENTĒS MĪLITĒS NEQUE PROPTER TIMŌREM SIGNA  
LĀTŪRŌS.

Nōn nūllī etiam Cæsarī nūntiābant

=not no one even had declared ~some even declared to Cæsar  
to Cæsar

cum

=when ~when

castra movērī

=the camp to be moved ~for the camp to be moved

---

I **supportō, -āvī, —, -āre** (SUB + PORTŌ), to convey, bring up, bring forward, conduct

II **ut...posset**, NEG. FEAR CLAUSE. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH NĒ AFFIRMATIVE AND NĒ NŌN OR UT NEGATIVE. §564

III **angustiās...rem...timēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

ac signa ferri<sup>I</sup>

=and to carry the standards ~and the troops to advance  
(forward)

iussisset<sup>II</sup>

=he should have ordered ~he gave orders

nōn fore dictō<sup>III IV</sup> audientēs<sup>V</sup> milītēs

=that the soldiers would not ~the soldiers would not obey the  
obey the command command

neque propter timōrem signa<sup>VI</sup> lātūrōs [esse]<sup>VII</sup>

=nor, on account of fear, would ~nor advance in consequence of  
they carry forward the their fear  
standards

---

I **castra movērī ac signa ferri**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iussisset**. §580

II **cum...iussisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **dictum, -ī**, N. (DIC-), *something said, a saying, word, assertion, remark; An order, command*

IV DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **audientēs**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §36 7

V **audiō, -īvī** or **-īī, -ītus, -īre** (AV-), *to hear; To hear, to listen to, to obey, heed; ONLY WITH ACC., BUT ALSO WITH DAT.*

VI DIR. OBJ. OF **lātūrōs [esse]**

VII **fore...milītēs...lātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiābant**. §580

# I.XL



CÆSAR EMPLOYS A PERSUASIVE ADDRESS.



## I.XL.I.



HÆC CUM ANIMADVERTISSET, CONVOCĀTŌ  
CŌNSILIŌ, OMNIUMQUE ŌRDINUM AD ID  
CŌNSILIUM ADHIBITIS CENTURIŌNIBUS,  
VEHEMENTER EŌS INCŪSĀVIT: PRIMUM, QUOD  
AUT QUAM IN PARTEM AUT QUŌ CŌNSILIŌ  
DŪCERENTUR SIBI QUÆRENDUM AUT CŌGITANDUM  
PUTĀRENT.

Hæc cum animadvertisset<sup>I</sup>

=when he (Cæsar) had directed  
(his) mind to these things

~when Cæsar observed these  
things

convocātō cōnsiliō<sup>II</sup>

=with council <having been>  
called

~having called a council

---

I ***cum animadvertisset***, *cum* CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II ***cum animadvertisset***, *cum* CLAUSE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

omniumque ōrdinum<sup>I</sup> ad id cōsilium adhibitis centuriōnibus<sup>II</sup>

=and with the centurions of all the companies <having been> summoned to that council  
~and summoned to it the centurions of all the companies

vehementer<sup>III</sup> eōs incūsāvit<sup>IV</sup>

=he severely accused them ~he severely reprimanded them

primum, quod

=firstly, because ~particularly, for

aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō<sup>V</sup> dūcerentur<sup>VI</sup>

=either in which part or by which council they might be led ~either in what direction they were marching, or with what object

---

I **ōrdō, -inis**, M. (OL-), a row, line, series, order, rank

II **adhibitis centuriōnibus**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **vehementer**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (VEHEMENS), eagerly, impetuously, ardently, violently, earnestly, vehemently

IV **incūsō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (IN + CAUSA), to accuse, complain of, find fault with, blame

V ABL. OF MEANS, THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VI **quam in partem...quō cōsiliō dūcerentur**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573



sibi<sup>i</sup> quærendum [esse] aut cōgitandum [esse]<sup>ii</sup>

=that it is <having to be> asked ~that they must ask and  
and <having to be> considered consider  
by them

putārent<sup>iii</sup>

=they supposed

~supposing

## I.XL.II.

ARIOVISTUM, SĒ CŌNSULE, CUPIDISSIMĒ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ  
AMĪCITIAM APPETĪSSE: CŪR HUNC TAM TEMERĒ  
QUISQUAM AB OFFICIŌ DISCESSŪRUM IŪDICĀRET?

"ARIOVISTUS ME CONSULE ... POPULI ROMANI AMICITIAM  
ADPETIIT; CUR HUNC ... QUISQUAM AB OFFICIO  
DISCESSURUM IUDICET?"

Ariovistum

=that Ariovistus

~that Ariovistus

sĕ cōnsule<sup>iv</sup>

=with himself <being> consul

~during his [Cæsar's] consulship  
[59 B.C.]

---

I DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

II **quærendum...cōgitandum**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **putārent**. (SEE CHART §196) & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **quod...putārent, quod** CLAUSE GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

IV **sĕ cōnsule**, ABL. ABS. §420

cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse<sup>I II</sup>

=had most desirously strove for the friendship of the Roman people ~had most anxiously sought after the friendship of the Roman people

cūr

=why

~why

hunc tam temerē<sup>III</sup> quisquam ab officiō<sup>IV V</sup> discessūrum [esse]<sup>VI</sup>

=anyone // that this man would so heedlessly depart from (his) duty? ~anyone // that he would so rashly depart from his duty?

iūdicāret<sup>VII</sup>

=/why/ should /anyone/ think

~should // judge

I **appetō, -ivī or -iī, itus, -ere** (AD + PETO), TRANS, to strive for, reach after, grasp at; Fig., to strive after, long for, desire, seek, court

II **Ariovistum...appetisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

III **temerē**, ADV. (ETY. in the darkness), by chance, by accident, at random, without design, casually, fortuitously, rashly, heedlessly, thoughtlessly, inconsiderately, indiscreetly

IV **ab officiō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

V **officium, -i**, N. (OPUS + FAC-), a service, kindness, favor, courtesy; In gen., an obligatory service, an obligation, duty, function, part, office

VI **hunc...discessūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iūdicārent**. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VII **cūr...iūdicārent** DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN QUESTIONS IMPLYING (1) DOUBT, INDIGNATION, OR (2) AN IMPOSSIBILITY OF THE THING'S BEING DONE. THE NEGATIVE IS NON. §444 & A DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (§444) IN THE DIRECT DISCOURSE IS ALWAYS RETAINED IN THE INDIRECT. §587

## I.XL.III.

SIBI QUIDEM PERSUĀDĒRĪ COGNITĪS SUĪS POSTULĀTĪS  
ATQUE ÆQUITĀTE CONDICIŌNUM PERSPECTĀ EUM  
NEQUE SUAM NEQUE POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ GRĀTIAM  
REPUDIĀTŪRUM.

"MIHI QUIDEM PERSUADETUR, COGNITIS MEIS  
POSTULATIS ... EUM NEQUE MEAM NEQUE POPULI  
ROMANI GRATIAM REPUDIATURUM."

**Sibi quidem persuādērī<sup>I</sup>**

=*that he, for his part, was* ~*he, for his part, was persuaded*  
*persuaded*

**cognitīs suīs postulātīs<sup>II</sup> atque æquitāte<sup>III</sup> condiōnum perspectā<sup>IV V</sup>**

=*with his own demands <having* ~*that, when his demands were*  
*been> known and with the known and the fairness of the*  
*fairness of the conditions terms considered*  
*<having been> looked into*

**eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum**  
**[esse]<sup>VI VII</sup>**

=*he would reject neither his own* ~*he would reject neither his nor*  
*nor the favor of the Roman the Roman people's favor*  
*people*

---

I **INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *incūsāvit*. §580**

II ***cognitīs suīs postulātīs*, ABL. ABS. §420**

III ***æquitās, -ātis*, F. (ÆQUUS), *uniformity, evenness; with animi, calmness, repose, equability, equanimity; Equity, fairness, humanity, kindness***

IV ***æquitāte...perspectā*, ABL. ABS. §420**

V ***perspiciō, -spēxī, -spectus, -ere* (SPEC-), *to look through, look into, look at, see through; TRANSF., to look closely at, to view, examine, inspect***

VI ***eum...repudiātūrum*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *persuādērī*. §580**

VII ***repudiō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre* (REPUDIUM), *to cast off, put away, reject***

## I.XL.IV.

QUOD SĪ FURŌRE ATQUE ĀMENTIĀ IMPULSUS BELLUM  
INTULISSET, QUID TANDEM VERĒRENTUR? AUT CŪR DĒ  
SUĀ VIRTŪTE AUT DĒ IPSĪUS DĪLIGENTIĀ DĒSPĒRĀRENT?

"QUOD SI FURORE ... IMPULSUS BELLUM INTULERIT, QUID  
TANDEM VEREAMINI? AUT CUR DE VESTRA VIRTUTE AUT  
DE MEA DILIGENTIA DESPERETIS?"

Quod sī furōre<sup>I</sup> atque āmentīā<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> impulsus<sup>IV</sup> bellum intulisset<sup>V</sup>

=but, if he, <having been> driven ~but even if, driven on by rage  
by rage or madness, should have and madness, he should make  
brought on war war upon them

quid tandem verērentur<sup>VI</sup>

=what, after so long, should they ~what, pray, were they afraid  
fear? of?

---

I **furor, -ōris**, M. (FURO), *a raving, rage, madness, fury, passion*

II **āmentia, -æ**, F. (AMENS), *want of reason, madness, senselessness*

III **furōre atque āmentīā**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **impellō, -pulī, -pulsus, -ere** (in + pellō), *To strike against, push, drive, smite, strike, reach; Trop. To move to a thing; to impel, incite, urge; Esp., to instigate, stimulate, persuade—CONSTR. USU. WITH aliquem, in OR ad aliquid AND ut*

V **si...intulisset**, FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

VI **quid...verērentur**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. §444 & §587

aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentia<sup>1</sup> dēspērārent<sup>II</sup>

=(or) *why should they despair* ~or *why should they despair*  
*either from their own valour (i.e. either of their own valor or of*  
*the camp followers) or his own his zeal?*  
*(Caesar's) diligence?*

### I.XL.V.

FACTUM EIUS HOSTIS PERICULUM PATRUM NOSTRORUM  
 MEMORIA, CIMBRIS ET TEUTONIS A C. MARIO PULSIS, CUM  
 NON MINOREM LAudem EXERCITUS QUAM IPSE  
 IMPERATOR MERITUS VIDEBATUR; FACTUM ETIAM NUPER  
 IN ITALIA SERVILI TUMULTU, QUOS TAMEN ALIQUID  
 USUS AC DISCIPLINA QUAE A NOBIS ACCEPISSENT  
 SUBLEVARENT.

"FACTUM (EST) EIUS HOSTIS PERICULUM ... ; FACTUM (EST)  
 ETIAM NUPER IN ITALIA SERVILI TUMULTU, QUOS TAMEN  
 ALIQUID USUS AC DISCIPLINE QUAM A NOBIS  
 ACCEPERANT SUBLEVABANT."

Factum [esse]<sup>III</sup> eius hostis periculum<sup>IV</sup> patrum nostrorum  
 memoria<sup>V</sup>

=a *trial [was] made of this* ~of *that enemy a trial had been*  
*enemy in memory of our fathers made within our fathers'*  
*recollection*

---

I **diligentia, -æ, f.** (DILIGENS), *attentiveness, earnestness, diligence, industry, assiduity, care, faithfulness*

II **cūr...dēspērārent**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. §444 & §587

III INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **factum...periculum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

V ABL. OF TIME WITHIN WHICH. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE ABLATIVE OF TIME WITHIN WHICH SOMETIMES TAKES IN, AND THE ACCUSATIVE OF TIME HOW LONG PER, FOR GREATER PRECISION. §424

Cimbrīs<sup>I</sup> et Teutonīs<sup>II</sup> ā C[aiō] Mariō<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> pulsīs<sup>V</sup>

=with the Cimbri and the ~when, on the defeat of the  
Teutones <having been> Cimbri and Teutones by Caius  
repulsed by C[aius] Marius Marius

cum non minōrem laudem<sup>VI</sup> exercitus quam ipse imperātor<sup>VII</sup>  
meritus<sup>VIII</sup> [esse] vidēbātur<sup>IX</sup>

=the army was looked upon that ~the army was regarded as  
it had merited no less praise having deserved no less praise  
than the commander himself than their commander himself

factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū<sup>X</sup>

=(it,) made recently, too, in Italy, ~it had been made lately, too, in  
by a tumult of the slaves Italy, during the rebellion of the  
slaves

---

I **Cimbrī, -ōrum**, M. PL., *Cimbrians, Cimbri*, a Germanic people that joined with the Teutones in the invasion of Gaul

II **Teutonī, -um**, M. PL., *Teutons, Teutoni*

III **ā C. Mariō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

IV **Marius, -ī**, M., a Roman gentile name—Esp. Gaius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and the Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion

V **Cimbrīs et Teutonīs...pulsīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI **laus, laudis**, F. (CLV-), *praise, commendation, glory, fame, renown, esteem*

VII **imperātor, -ōris**, M. (IMPERO), *a commander-in-chief, general*

VIII PPP. OF *mereor*

IX **cum...vidēbātur**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM, WHEN, AND SOME PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE DATES OR DEFINES THE TIME AT WHICH THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB OCCURRED. §545

X **tumultus, -ūs**, an uproar, bustle, commotion, disturbance, disorder, tumult, panic; A national peril, social disturbance, general alarm, civil war, insurrection, rebellion

quōs tamen aliquid<sup>I</sup> ūsus ac disciplīna<sup>II</sup>

=(those slaves) whom, however, ~whom, however, the experience  
the experience and training // in and training // somewhat  
some way

quæ ā nōbīs accēpissent<sup>III</sup>

=/the experience and training/ ~which they had received from  
which they had received from us us

sublevārent<sup>IV V</sup>

=assisted /in some way/ ~assisted

## I.XL.VI.

EX QUŌ IUDICĀRĪ POSSE QUANTUM HABĒRET IN SĒ BONĪ  
CŌNSTANTIA; PROPTEREA QUOD QUŌS ALIQUAMDIŪ  
INERMĒS SINE CAUSĀ TIMUISSENT HŌS POSTEĀ ARMĀTŌS  
AC VICTŌRĒS SUPERĀSENT.

"EX QUO IUDICARI POTEST QUANTUM HABEAT IN SE  
BONI CONSTANTIA, PROPTEREA QUOD, QUOS ... INERMIS  
SINE CAUSA TIMUISTIS (TIMUERITIS), HOS POSTEA  
ARMATOS SUPERAVISTIS."

- 
- I **ālīqui**, ADV. (PROP. ABL. = *aliquo modo*), in some way, somehow; THE FORMS *aliqua*, NEUT. PL., AND *aliquam*, ACC., AND *aliquā*, ABL., USED ADVERBIALLY, MAY ALSO BE REFERRED TO THE ADJ. *ālī-qui*, *ālīqua*, *ālīquod*; **aliquamdiū** (= *aliquam* + *diū*), ADV., somewhat long, for a while
- II **disciplīna**, -æ, F. (DISCIPULUS), instruction, tuition, teaching, training, education; Meton. (*causa pro effectu*), all that is taught in the way of instruction, whether with reference to single circumstances of life, or to science, art, morals, politics, etc., learning, knowledge, science, discipline
- III **quæ...accēpissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583
- IV **sublevō**, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (SUB + LEVŌ), to lift from beneath, raise up, hold up, support; To sustain, support, assist, encourage, console, relieve
- V **quōs...sublevārent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Ex quō iūdicārī posse<sup>I</sup>

=out from which it is able to be judged ~from which a judgment might be formed

quantum habēret<sup>II</sup> in sē bonī cōstantia<sup>III</sup> IV

=how much of good (that) constancy might have in itself ~of the advantages which resolution carries with it

propterea quod

=on that account because ~because

quōs aliquamdiū inermēs<sup>V</sup> sine causā timuissent<sup>VI</sup>

=(those men) whom, (when) unarmed, they had feared for some time without cause ~those whom for some time they had groundlessly dreaded when unarmed

hōs posteā armātōs<sup>VII</sup> ac victōrēs superāssent<sup>VIII</sup>

=afterward, <having been> armed and victorious, they (the Romans) had surmounted ~they had afterward overcome, when well armed and flushed with success

## I.XL.VII.

DĒNIQUE HŌS ESSE EŌSDEM QUIBUSCUM SÆPE NUMERŌ  
HELVĒTIĪ CONGRESSĪ NŌN SŌLUM IN SUĪS SED ETIAM IN  
ILLŌRUM FĪNIBUS PLĒRUMQUE SUPERĀRINT, QUĪ TAMEN  
PARĒS ESSE NOSTRŌ EXERCITUĪ NŌN POTUERINT.

I INDIR. DISC. §580

II **quantum habēret**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

III NOM. SG., SUBJ. OF **habēret**

IV **cōstantia**, -æ, F. (CONSTANS), *steadiness, firmness, constancy, perseverance*

V **inermis**, e, ADJ. (IN + ARMA), *unarmed, without weapons, defenceless*

VI **quōs...timuissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VII **armō**, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (ARMA), *to furnish with weapons, arm, equip*

VIII **propterea quod...superāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583



"DENIQUE HI SUNT IDEM GERMANI QUIBUSCUM  
SÆPENUMERO HELVETII CONGRESSI, NON SOLUM IN SUIS  
SED ETIAM IN ILLORUM FINIBUS, PLERUMQUE  
SUPERAVERUNT; QUI TAMEN PARES ESSE NOSTRO  
EXERCITUI NON POTUERUNT."

**Dēnique<sup>I</sup> hōs esse<sup>II</sup> eōsdem**

=at length, that these ~~men~~ are  
the same men

~to sum up, that these were the  
same men

**quibuscum sæpe numerō Helvētīi congressī nōn solum in suīs**

=(the same men) with whom the  
Helvetii, often in <respect to> a  
number, <having> come  
together, not only in their own  
(territories)

~whom the Helvetii, in frequent  
strifes, not only in their own  
territories

**sed etiam in illōrum finibus plērumque<sup>III</sup> superārint<sup>IV</sup>**

=but also in their territories (the  
Germans) and had mostly  
overcome (them)

~but also in theirs [the German],  
have generally vanquished

---

I **dēnique**, ADV., and thenceforward, and thereafter, at last, at length, finally, lastly, only, not until; In a summary or climax, in a word, in short, in fact, briefly, to sum up, in fine, even, I may say

II **hōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **plērus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PLE-), very many, a very great part, most; NEUT. ADV., *plerum* (like *plerumque*, v. *plerusque*), for the most part, mostly, commonly

IV **quibuscum...superārint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī<sup>I</sup> nōn potuerint<sup>II</sup>

=(and) (those men) whom, ~and yet can not have been a  
nonetheless, are not able to be match for our army  
equals to our army

## I.XL.VIII.

SĪ QUŌS ADVERSUM PRĒLIUM ET FUGA GALLŌRUM  
COMMOVĒRET, HŌS, SĪ QUÆERENT, REPERĪRE POSSE  
DIŪTURNITĀTE BELLĪ DĒFATĪGĀTĪS GALLĪS ARIOVISTUM,  
CUM MULTŌS MĒNSĒS CASTRĪS SĒ AC PALŪDIBUS  
TENUISSET NEQUE SUĪ POTESTĀTEM FĒCISSET,  
DĒSPĒRANTĒS IAM DE PUGNĀ ET DISPERSŌS SUBITŌ  
ADORTUM MAGIS RATIŌNE ET CŌNSILIŌ QUAM VIRTŪTE  
VĪCISSE.

"SI QUOS ADVERSUM PRĒLIUM ... COMMOVET, HI, SI  
QUÆERENT (QUÆERANT), REPERIRE POSSUNT ...  
ARIOVISTUM ... DISPERSOS SUBITO ADORTUM, MAGIS  
RATIONE ... QUAM VIRTUTE VICISSE."

SĪ quōs adversum<sup>III</sup> proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovĕret<sup>IV V</sup>

=if an unfavorable battle and the ~if the unsuccessful battle and  
flight of the Gauls should stir up flight of the Gauls disquieted any  
anyone

---

I **nostrō exercituī**, DAT. WITH ADJ. **parēs**. VERBS OF NAMING, CHOOSING, APPOINTING, MAKING, ESTEEMING, SHOWING, AND THE LIKE, MAY TAKE A PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE ALONG WITH THE DIRECT OBJECT. §383

II **quī...potuerint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIRECT DISC. §583

III **adversum, -ī**, N., *the opposite direction*; Fig., *opposed, contrary, hostile, adverse, unfavorable, unpropitious*

IV **sī...commovĕret**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V **commoveō, -mōvī, -mōtus, -ēre** (COM + MOVEŌ), *To put in violent motion, move, shake, stir*; *To throw into disorder, physical or mental; to unbalance, unsettle, shake, disturb*—WITH ABL. OR ABSOL.

**hōs**

=*these men*

~*these*

**sī quærerent<sup>I</sup>**

=*if they should inquire*

~*if they made inquiries*

**reperīre posse<sup>II</sup>**

=*(they) would be able to discover*

~*might discover*

**diūturnitāte<sup>III</sup> IV bellī**

=*that // because of a long duration of war*

~*by the long duration of the war*

**dēfatīgātīs<sup>V</sup> Gallīs<sup>VI</sup>**

=*with the Gauls <having been> wearied out*

~*when the Gauls had been tired out*

**Ariovistum**

=*Ariovistus*

~*Ariovistus*

**cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus<sup>VII</sup> tenuisset**

=*after he had for many months held himself in camp and in marshes*

~*after he had many months kept himself in his camp and in the marshes*

---

I **sī quærerent**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

II **hōs...posse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

III ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

IV **diūturnitās**, **-ātis**, F. (DIUTURNUS), *length of time, long duration, durability*

V **dēfatīgō**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, **-āre** (DE + FATĪGŌ), *to weary out, tire, fatigue, exhaust*

VI **dēfatīgātīs Gallīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

VII **palūs**, **-ūdis**, F. *a swamp, marsh, morass, bog, fen, pool*

neque suī potestātem fēcisset<sup>I</sup>

=and had made no opportunity  
of himself

~and had given no opportunity  
of fighting with one

dēspērāntēs iam de pugnā<sup>II</sup> et [eōs] dispersōs<sup>III</sup> subitō adortum<sup>IV</sup>

=he (Ariovistus) suddenly  
attacked the despairing (Gauls)  
<by reason> of the battle at this  
time and [those men] <having>  
scattered

~fell suddenly upon them, by this  
time despairing of a battle and  
scattered in all directions

magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse<sup>V VI</sup>

=and (he) (Ariovistus) had  
conquered more because of  
stratagem and cunning than  
because of valor

~and was victorious more  
through stratagem and cunning  
than valor

## I.XL.IX.

CUI RATIONĪ CONTRĀ HOMINĒS BARBARŌS ATQUE  
IMPERĪTŌS LOCUS FUISSET, HĀC NĒ IPSUM QUIDEM  
SPĒRĀRE NOSTRŌS EXERCITŪS CAPI POSSE.

"CUI RATIONI CONTRA HOMINES BARBAROS ... LOCUS  
FUIT, HAC NE IPSE QUIDEM SPERAT NOSTROS EXERCITUS  
CAPI POSSE."

---

I **cum...tenuisset...fēcisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **pūgna, -æ**, F. (PAC-), *a hand-to-hand fight, fight at close quarters, battle, combat, action, engagement*

III **dispergo, -si, -sum, -ere** (DI + SPERGO), *to scatter on all sides, to scatter about, disperse*

IV PERF. DEP. PART. MODIFYING **Ariovistum**

V PERF. ACT. INF OF **vincō**

VI **Ariovistum...adortum...vīcisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperire**. §580

Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs<sup>I</sup> locus fuisset  
 =(but though) for which strategy ~but though there had been  
 there might have been room room for such stratagem against  
 against barbaric and unskilled savage and unskilled men  
 men

hāc<sup>II</sup> nē [Ariovistus] ipsum quidem spērāre<sup>III</sup>  
 =not even (by this strategy) ~not even [Ariovistus] himself  
 [Ariovistus] himself was expected  
 expecting

nostrōs exercitūs capī posse<sup>IV</sup>  
 =that our armies were able to be ~that thereby our armies could  
 captured be entrapped

### I.XL.X.

QUĪ SUUM TIMŌREM IN REĪ FRŪMENTĀRIÆ  
 SIMULĀTIŌNEM ANGUSTIĀSQUE ITINERIS CŌFERRENT,  
 FACERE ARROGANter, CUM AUT DĒ OFFICIŌ  
 IMPERĀTŌRIS DĒSPĒRĀRE AUT PRÆSCRĪBERE  
 VIDĒRENTUR.

"QUI SUUM TIMOREM IN REI FRUMENTARIÆ  
 SIMULATIONEM ... CONFERUNT FACIUNT ADROGANter,  
 CUM ... DE OFFICIO IMPERATORIS DESPERARE ...  
 VIDEANTUR (VIDENTUR)."

---

I **imperītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (IN + PERĪTUS),  
*inexperienced, unversed, unfamiliar, not knowing, unacquainted with,*  
*unskilled, ignorant*

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **ipsum...spērāre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

IV **nostrōs exercitūs...posse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **spērāre**. §580

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriæ simulātiōnem<sup>I</sup>  
angustiāsque itineris cōferrent<sup>II</sup>

=that (those men) who were attributing their own fear in a pretense about the (deficiency of) supplies and the narrowness of the path ~that those who ascribed their fear to a pretense about the [deficiency of] supplies and the narrowness of the roads

facere<sup>III</sup> arroganter<sup>IV</sup>

=are arrogantly doing ~acted presumptuously

cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut præscribere  
vidērentur<sup>V</sup>

=as they were seeming either to distrust concerning the office of (their) generals, or to dictate (in place of the general) ~as they seemed either to distrust their general's discharge of his duty, or to dictate to him

## I.XL.XI.

HÆC SIBI ESSE CURÆ; FRŪMENTUM SĒQUANŌS, LEUCŌS,  
LINGONĒS SUMMINISTRĀRE, IAMQUE ESSE IN AGRIS  
FRŪMENTA MĀTŪRA; DĒ ITINERE IPSŌS BREVĪ TEMPORE  
IŪDICĀTŪRŌS.

"HÆC MIHI SUNT CURÆ; FRUMENTUM SEQUANI, ...  
SUBMINISTRANT, IAMQUE SUNT ... FRUMENTA MATURA;  
DE ITINERE (VOS) IPSI ... IUDICABITIS."

I **simulātiō, -ōnis**, F. (SIMULO), *an assumption, false show, feigning, shamming, pretence, feint, insincerity, deceit, hypocrisy, simulation*

II **quī...cōferrent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

IV **arrōgo, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (AR + ROGO), *To ask or inquire of one, to question; Adv., arroganter, with assumption, arrogantly, haughtily, proudly, insolently*

V **cum...vidērentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Hæc sibi esse<sup>I</sup> curæ<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=that these things are a <source of> concern to him (Cæsar)

~that these things were his concern

frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs<sup>IV</sup>, Lingonēs sumministrāre<sup>V</sup> <sup>VI</sup>

=that the Sequani, the Leuci, and the Lingones were to furnish the corn

~that the Sequani, the Leuci, and the Lingones were to furnish the corn

iamque esse<sup>VII</sup> in agris frūmenta mātūra

=and that the corn was already ripe in the fields

~and that it was already ripe in the fields

dē itinere ipsōs brevī<sup>VIII</sup> tempore<sup>IX</sup> iūdicātūrōs [esse]<sup>X</sup>

=that (those men) would, in a brief time, judge about the path (for) themselves

~that as to the road they would soon be able to judge for themselves

---

I **hæc...esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **cūra, -æ**, F. (CAV-), trouble, care, attention, pains, industry, diligence, exertion; Anxiety, solicitude, concern, disquiet, trouble, grief, sorrow

III **sibi...cūræ**, DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

IV **Leucī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle

V **sumministrō, -āvī, -trātum, -āre**, give; furnish; afford; supply

VI **frūmentum...sumministrāre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VII **INDI DISC. §580**

VIII **brevis, -e**, adj. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (BREG-), In space and time, little, of small extent

IX **brevī tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

X **ipsōs...iūdicātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. §580

## I.XL.XII.

QUOD NŌN FORE DICTŌ AUDIENTĒS NEQUE SIGNA  
LĀTŪRĪ DĪCANTUR, NIHIL SĒ EĀ RĒ COMMOVĒRĪ; SCĪRE  
ENIM, QUIBUSCUMQUE EXERCITUS DICTŌ AUDIĒNS NŌN  
FUERIT, AUT MALE RĒ GESTĀ FORTŪNAM DĒFUISSE AUT  
ALIQUŌ FACINORE COMPERTŌ AVĀRITIAM ESSE  
CONVICTAM.

"QUOD NON FORE DICTO AUDIENTES ... DICIMINI (MORE  
PROBABLY DICUNTUR MILITES), NIHIL (EGO) EA RE  
COMMOVEOR; SCIO ENIM, QUIBUSCUMQUE EXERCITUS  
DICTO AUDIENS NON FUERIT, ... AVARITIAM ESSE  
CONVICTAM."

## Quod

=as

~as to

nōn fore<sup>I</sup> dictō<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> audientēs=that the (soldiers) would not be  
listening to the command~that the soldiers would not be  
obedient to commandneque signa<sup>IV</sup> lātūrī [esse]<sup>V</sup> <sup>VI</sup>=nor would they bear the  
standards

~or advance

I INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicantur**. §580II **audiō, -ivī or -ii, -itus, -ire** (AV-), to hear; To hear, to listen to, to obey, heed—ONLY WITH ACC., BUT ALSO WITH DAT.III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **audientēs**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367IV PL. ACC., DIR. OBJ. OF **lātūrī [esse]**

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **lātūrī [esse]**, NOM. PL. FUT. ACT. INF. OF **ferō**



**dīcantur<sup>I</sup>**

=*(these things) were being said*      ~*its being reported*

**nihil<sup>II</sup> sē eā rē<sup>III</sup> commovērī<sup>IV</sup>**

=*that he was moved nothing*      ~*he was not at all disturbed at*  
*(not at all) by this thing*      *that*

**scīre<sup>V</sup> [se]<sup>VI</sup> enim**

=*for [he] knew*      ~*for he knew*

**quibuscumque exercitus dictō<sup>VII</sup> audiēns nōn fuerit<sup>VIII</sup>**

=*to whomsoever the army has*      ~*that in the case of all those*  
*not been listening to command*      *whose army had not been*  
    *obedient to command*

**aut**

=*either*      ~*either*

I **quod...dīcantur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II Extent is expressed by the Accusative of *nihil*, and also by *partem* (Accusative of *pars*) used indefinitely, a construction often called Adverbial Accusative; as, *nihil Cæsaris imperium expectabant*, *were not waiting at all for Cæsaris orders*, Lit. *to extent of nothing, to no extent* (II.XX); *maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt*, *they live mostly on milk and meat*, where *partem* is used indefinitely, not being limited to a definite idea, as it is when a Genitive is dependent upon it (IV.I)

III **eā rē**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **sē...commovērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI The Subject Accusative in Indirect Discourse is sometimes omitted when it is easily understood from the Context, especially when it refers to the same person as the Subject of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends; as, *scire, for se scire, that he knew* (I.XLI); *prohibiturum ostendit*, *for se prohibiturum esse ostendit* (Historical Present), *he showed that he would prevent them* (I.VIII)

VII DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **audiēns**. §367

VIII **quibuscumque...fuerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

male rē gestā<sup>I II</sup> fortūnam dēfuisse<sup>III IV</sup>

=*fortune had failed (them) because of a thing done badly (military operation)* ~*upon some mismanagement of an affair, fortune had deserted them*

aut

=*or*

~*or*

aliquō facinore<sup>V</sup> compertō<sup>VI</sup>

=*with some deed <having been> found out* ~*that upon some crime being discovered*

avāritiam<sup>VII</sup> esse<sup>VIII</sup> convictam<sup>IX</sup>

=*greed had been exposed (against them)* ~*covetousness had been clearly proved [against them]*

### I.XL.XIII.

SUAM INNOCENTIAM PERPETUĀ VĪTĀ, FĒLĪCITĀTEM  
HELVĒTIŌRUM BELLŌ ESSE PERSPECTAM.

"MEA INNOCENTIA PERPETUA VITA, FELICITAS ... BELLO  
EST PERSPECTA."

---

I PPP. OF *gerō*

II **rē gestā**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **dēsum, -fui, -esse** (DE + SUM), *to be away, be absent, fail, be wanting, be missing; To fail, be wanting, abandon, desert, neglect*

IV **fortūnam dēfuisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **scīre**. §580

V **facinus, -oris**, N. (FAC-), *a deed, act, action, achievement; A bad deed, misdeed, outrage, villainy, crime*

VI **aliquō facinore compertō**, ABL. ABS. §580

VII **avāritia, -æ**, F. (AVARUS), *inordinate desire, greed, avarice, covetousness*

VIII **avāritiam esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IX **convincō, -vici, -victus, -ere** (CON + VINCŌ), *to overcome, convict, refute, expose; To prove incontestably, show clearly, demonstrate, expose*

Suam innocentiam<sup>I</sup> perpetuā vitā<sup>II</sup>, fēlicitatem<sup>III</sup> Helvētiōrum bellō esse<sup>IV</sup> perspectam

=his own innocence, in (his) whole life, (and) (his) good fortune was seen through in the war of (with) the Helveti ~his integrity had been seen throughout his whole life, his good fortune in the war with the Helvetii

#### I.XL.XIV.

ITAQUE SĒ QUOD IN LONGIÖREM DIEM COLLĀTŪRUS FUISSET REPRÆSENTĀTŪRUM ET PROXIMA NOCTE DE QUĀRTĀ VIGILIĀ CASTRA MÖTŪRUM, UT QUAM PRĪMUM INTELLEGERE POSSET UTRUM APUD EÖS PUDOR ATQUE OFFICIUM AN TIMOR PLŪS VALĒRET.

"ITAQUE (EGO) QUOD ... CONLATURUS FUI REPRÆSENTABO, ET ... CASTRA MOVEBO, UT ... INTELLEGERE POSSIM UTRUM APUD VOS PUDOR ... AN TIMOR PLUS VALEAT."

Itaque sē

=thus, that he himself

~that he, therefore

quod in longiörem diem collātūrus fuisset<sup>V</sup>

=(the plan) what he would have deferred into a far off day

~what he had intended to put off till a more distant day

---

I **innocentia, -æ**, F. (IN + NOCENTIA), *blamelessness, innocence*

II **perpetuā vitā**, ABL. OF TIME. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424<sup>II</sup>

III **fēlicitās, -ātis**, F. (FELIX), *fertility, happiness, felicity, good-fortune, luck; Person., Good Fortune*

IV **fēlicitatem...esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

V **quod...collātūrus fuisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

repræsentātūrum [esse]<sup>I</sup>

=(he) would accomplish ~would instantly set about  
instantly

et proxima nocte<sup>II</sup> de quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum [esse]<sup>III IV</sup>

=and (he,) on the next night ~and would break up his camp  
during the forth watching, the next night, in the fourth  
would move (his) camp watch

ut quam primum intellegere posset<sup>V</sup> utrum apud eōs pudor atque  
officium an timor plūs valēret<sup>VI VII</sup>

=<in order> that, how first he ~so that, as soon as possible, he  
might be able to know, whether, might ascertain, whether a sense  
with these men, honor and duty, of honor and duty, or whether  
or (whether) fear, would have fear had more influence with  
more strength them

## I.XL.XV.

QUOD SĪ PRÆTEREĀ NĒMŌ SEQUĀTUR, TAMEN SĒ CUM  
SOLĀ DECIMĀ LEGIŌNE ITŪRUM, DĒ QUĀ NŌN DUBITET,  
SIBIQUE EAM PRÆTŌRIAM COHORTEM FUTŪRAM.

- 
- I **repræsentō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (RE + PRÆSENTŌ), to make present, set in view, show, exhibit, display, manifest, represent, depict; To make present, perform immediately, realize, do now, accomplish instantly, hasten
- II **proximā nocte**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- III **sē...repræsentātūrum...mōtūrum**, INDIR. DISC. §580
- IV PPP. OF *moveō*
- V **ut + posset** = so that, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531
- VI **valeō, -uī, -itūrus, -ēre** (VAL-), to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able; To have power, be valid, be effective, have influence, avail, prevail, be strong, succeed
- VII **utrum...valēret**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

"QUOD SI PRÆTEREA NEMO SEQUETUR, TAMEN (EGO) CUM SOLA DECIMA LEGIONE IBO, DE QUA NON DUBITO, MIHIQUE EA PRÆTORIA COHORS ERIT."

Quod sī prætereā nēmō sequātur<sup>I</sup>

=*which, if beyond this, no one should follow* ~*if however, no one else should follow*

tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum [esse]<sup>II</sup>

=*nevertheless, he would go with only the tenth legion* ~*yet he would go with only the tenth legion*

dē quā nōn dubitet<sup>III</sup>

=*concerning which (legion) he did not doubt* ~*of which he had full confidence*

sibique eam [legiōnem] prætōriam<sup>IV</sup> cohortem<sup>V</sup> futūram [esse]<sup>VI</sup>

=*and that [legion] would be a prætorian cohort for him* ~*and it should be his prætorian cohort*

## I.XL.XVI.

HUIC LEGIŌNĪ CÆSAR ET INDULSERAT PRÆCIPUĒ ET PROPTER VIRTŪTEM CŌNFĪDĒBAT MAXIMĒ.

---

I **sī...sequātur**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

II **sē...itūrum [esse]**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **dē quā...dubitet**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **prætōrius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRÆTOR), *of the prætor, of prætors, prætorian; Of or belonging to a general—"prætoria cohors," the cohort or body-guard attached to every general, a prætorian cohort (I.XL.XV)*

V **cohors, -rtis**, F. (COM- + HER-), Lit., *the multitude enclosed, fenced in; hence, IN MILIT. LANG., a company of soldiers, a division of an army, a cohort, the tenth part of a legion, comprising three manipuli or six centuriæ (ALWAYS WRITTEN cohors); prætoria, the prætorian or bodyguard of the general*

VI **eam...futūram**, INDIR. DISC. §580

Huic legiōnī<sup>I</sup> Cæsar et indulserat<sup>II</sup> præcipuē<sup>III</sup>

=to this legion, Cæsar, both, had ~this legion Cæsar had both  
been chiefly indulgent greatly favored

et propter virtutem cōfidēbat maximē

=and, on account of (this ~and in it, on account of its  
legion's) valor, he trusted in the valor, placed the greatest  
highest degree confidence

---

I **huic legiōnī**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **indulserat & cōfidēbat**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **indulgeō, -ulsi, -ultus, -ēre** (IN + DULGEŌ), to be complaisant, be kind, be tender, exercise forbearance, incline, yield, indulge, concede, grant, allow

III **præcipuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRÆ + CAP-), taken before others, particular, peculiar, especial; Hence, ADV., **præcipuē**, chiefly, principally, eminently

# I.XLI



THE ARMY REINVIGORATED, CÆSAR ADVANCES.



## I.XLI.I.



ĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE HABITĀ, MĪRUM IN MODUM  
CONVERSÆ SUNT OMNIUM MENTĒS,  
SUMMAQUE ALACRITĀS ET CUPIDITĀS BELLĪ  
GERENDĪ INNĀTA EST, PRĪNCEPSQUE DECIMA  
LEGIŌ PER TRIBŪNŌS MĪLITUM EĪ GRĀTIĀS ĒGIT QUOD  
DĒ SĒ OPTIMUM IŪDICĪUM FĒCISSET, SĒQUE ESSE AD  
BELLUM GERENDUM PARĀTISSIMAM CŌNFIRMĀVIT.

**Hāc ōrātiōne habitā<sup>1</sup>**

=with this speech <having been> ~upon the delivery of this speech  
held

**mĭrum in modum conversæ sunt omnium mentēs**

=the minds of all men were ~the minds of all were changed  
changed in an astonishing in a surprising manner  
manner

---

I ***hāc ōrātiōne habitā***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī<sup>I</sup> innāta est<sup>II</sup>

=and the highest alacrity and ~and the highest ardor and  
passion of waging war was eagerness for prosecuting the  
borne war were arisen in

prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit

=and first, the tenth legion, ~and the tenth legion was the  
through the tribunes of the first to return thanks to him,  
soldiers gave thanks to him through their military tribunes

quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset<sup>III</sup>

=because he had made an ~for his having expressed this  
optimal judgement about those most favorable opinion of them  
men (the 10th legion)

sēque esse<sup>IV</sup> ad bellum gerendum<sup>V</sup> parātissimam<sup>VI</sup>

=and // that they were very ~and // that they were quite  
prepared for <the purpose of> ready to wage war  
waging war

I **bellī gerendī**, OBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

II **innāscor, -nātus, -ī**, DEP. (IN + NĀSCOR), to be born in, grow upon, spring up in; Fig., to arise in, originate in, be produced in

III **quod...fēcisset, quod** CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH THE REASON GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §540

IV **sēque esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **cōfirmāvit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **ad bellum gerendum**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

VI NOUN. SG. FEM. ACC. SUPERL



cōfirmāvit

=*he confirmed*

~*assured*

## I.XLI.II.

DEINDE RELIQUÆ LEGIŌNĒS CUM TRIBŪNĪS MĪLITUM ET PRĪMŌRUM ŌRDINUM CENTURIŌNIBUS ĒGĒRUNT UTĪ CÆSARĪ SATISFACERENT: SĒ NEC UMQUAM DUBITASSE NEQUE TIMUISSE NEQUE DĒ SUMMĀ BELLĪ SUUM IŪDICĪUM SED IMPERĀTŌRIS ESSE EXĪSTIMĀVISSE.

Deinde reliquæ legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt

=*thereafter, the remaining legions with the tribunes of the soldiers and (with) centurions of the principal orders pursued*

~*then, the other legions endeavored, through their military tribunes and the centurions of the principal companies*

utĪ CæsarĪ satisfacerent<sup>1</sup>

=*to make satisfaction for Cæsar*

~*to apologize to Cæsar*

sĒ nec umquam dubitā[vi]sse

=*(saying) that they had never either doubted*

~*[saying] that they had never either doubted*

neque timuisse

=*nor had (they) feared*

~*or feared*

neque

=*nor*

~*or*

---

I ***utĪ...satisfecerent***, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

dē summā bellī suum iūdicium sed imperātōris<sup>I</sup> esse<sup>II</sup>

=*that the judgement concerning the leadership of war was their own but (was) of the commander* ~*that the determination of the conduct of the war was theirs and not their general's*

exīstimāvisse<sup>III</sup>

=*had estimated*

~*supposed*

### I.XLI.III.

EŌRUM SATISFACTIŌNE ACCEPTĀ ET ITINERE EXQUĪSĪTŌ PER DĪVICIĀCUM, QUOD EX ALIĪS EĪ MAXIMAM FIDEM HABĒBAT, UT MĪLIUM AMPLIUS QUĪNQUĀGINTĀ CIRCUITŪ LOCĪS APERTĪS EXERCITUM DŪCERET, DĒ QUĀRTĀ VIGILIĀ, UT DIXERAT, PROFECTUS EST. SEPTIMŌ DIĒ, CUM ITER NŌN INTERMITTERET, AB EXPLŌRĀTŌRIBUS CERTIOR FACTUS EST ARIOVISTĪ COPIĀS Ā NOSTRĪS MĪLIBUS PASSUUM QUATTUOR ET VĪGINTĪ ABESSE.

---

I POSSESSIVE GEN. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE DENOTES THE PERSON OR THING TO WHICH AN OBJECT, QUALITY, FEELING, OR ACTION BELONGS. §343

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimāvisse**. §580

III **sē...dubitāsse...timuisse...existimavisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **satisfacerent**. §580

Eōrum satisfactiōne<sup>I</sup> acceptā<sup>II</sup> et itinere exquisītō<sup>III</sup> <sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup> per  
Dīviciācum

=with their apology <having been> accepted, and with the road <having been> examined through (the the hands of) Divitiacus ~having accepted their excuse, and having had the road investigated by Divitiacus

quod ex aliīs eī<sup>VI</sup> maximam fidem habēbat

=because, for him, out from (all) others, he (Cæsar) was having the most faith ~because in him of all others he had the greatest faith

I **sātis faciō** (or **sātsifāciō**), to give satisfaction, to satisfy, content; To give satisfaction, make amends, make reparation, make excuse, apologize

II **satisfactiōne acceptā**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **itinere exquisītō**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **exquīrō, -uī, -itum, -ere** (EX + QUÆRO), to ask about, to inquire into; to search, to examine

V PPP. OF THE V. **exquīrō**

VI DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **fidem habēbat**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. I. SOME VERBS APPARENTLY OF THE SAME MEANINGS TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE. SUCH ARE IUVŌ, ADIUVŌ, HELP; LĒDŌ, INJURE; IUBEŌ, ORDER; DÉFICĪŌ, FAIL; DÉLECTŌ, PLEASE. NOTE. II. SOME COMMON PHRASES REGULARLY TAKE THE DATIVE PRECISELY LIKE VERBS OF SIMILAR MEANING. SUCH ARE—PRÆSTŌ ESSE, BE ON HAND (CF. ADESSE); MŌREM GERERE, HUMOR (CF. MŌRIGERĀRĪ); GRĀTUM FACERE, DO A FAVOR (CF. GRĀTIFICĀRĪ); DICTŌ AUDIĒNS ESSE, BE OBEDIENT (CF. OBĒDĪRE); “CUI FIDEM HABĒBAT” (B. G. 1.19), IN WHOM HE HAD CONFIDENCE (CF. CONFĪDĒBAT). §367I, N. II

ut milium amplius quinquagintā circuitū<sup>I</sup> locīs apertīs<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>  
exercitum dūceret<sup>IV</sup>

=(he found,) that by a going ~[he found] that by a way  
around of more than fifty around of more than fifty miles  
thousand (of paces), he might he might lead his army through  
lead (his) army in open places open parts

dē quārtā vigiliā

=during the fourth watch ~during fourth watch

ut dixerat

=as he said ~as he had said [he would]

profectus est

=he departed ~he set out

septimō diē<sup>V</sup>

=on the seventh day ~on the seventh day

cum iter nōn intermitteret<sup>VI</sup>

=as he did not interrupt the ~as he did not suspend his  
journey march

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **apertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PART. of aperio), *without covering, uncovered; Fig., open, avowed, plain, clear, manifest*

III **locīs apertīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **ut...dūceret** CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

V **septimō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

VI **cum...intermitteret**, **cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

*ab explorātōribus*<sup>I</sup> certior factus est

=by explorers, he was made ~he was informed by scouts  
more certain

Ariovistī copiās ā nostrīs<sup>II</sup> mīlibus passuum<sup>III</sup> quattuor et vīgintī  
abesse<sup>IV V</sup>

=that the troops of Ariovistus ~that the forces of Ariovistus  
was (only) twenty-four were only four and twenty miles  
thousands of paces away from distant from ours  
our men

---

I *ab explorātōribus*, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

II *ā nostrīs*, ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

IV *cōpiās...abesse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *certior factus est*. §580

V PRES. INF. OF THE V. *absum*



# I.XLII



ARIOVISTUS SUGGESTS A CONFERENCE.



## I.XLII.I.



COGNITŌ CÆSARIS ADVENTŪ, ARIOVISTUS  
LĒGĀTŌS AD EUM MITTIT: QUOD ANTEĀ DĒ  
COLLOQUIŌ POSTULĀSSET, ID PER SĒ FIERĪ  
LICĒRE, QUONIAM PROPIUS ACCESSISSET,  
SĒQUE ID SINE PERĪCULŌ FACERE POSSE EXĪSTIMĀRET.

**Cognitō Cæsaris adventū<sup>I</sup>**

=with the arrival of Cæsar  
<having been> learned

~upon being apprized of Cæsar's  
arrival

**Ariovistus lĕgātōs ad eum mittit**

=Ariovistus sends ambassadors  
to him

~Ariovistus sent ambassadors to  
him

**quod antea dē colloquiō postulāset<sup>II</sup>**

=(saying) what he had  
demanded previously  
concerning the conference

~[saying] that what he had  
before requested as to a  
conference

---

I **cognitō...adventū** ABL. ABS. §420

II **quod...postulāset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

id<sup>I</sup> per sē fierī<sup>II</sup> licēre<sup>III IV</sup>

=that it be allowed to be done through himself ~might now, as far as his permission went, take place

quoniam propius accessisset

=since he (Cæsar) had approached nearer ~since he [Cæsar] had approached nearer

sēque id sine periculō facere posse<sup>V</sup>

=and // that he is able to do it without danger ~and // that he might now do it without danger

exīstimāret<sup>VI</sup>

=he thought ~he considered

## I.XLII.II.

NŌN RESPUIT CONDICIŌNEM CÆSAR, IAMQUE EUM AD SĀNITĀTEM REVERTĪ ARBITRĀBĀTUR, CUM ID QUOD ANTEĀ PETENTĪ DĒNEGĀSSET ULTRŌ POLLICĒRĒTUR; MAGNAMQUE IN SPEM VENIĒBAT PRŌ SUĪS TANTĪS POPULĪQUE ROMĀNĪ IN EUM BENEFICIĪS, COGNITĪS SUĪS POSTULĀTĪS FORE UTĪ PERTINĀCIĀ DĒSISTERET.

I ACC. SG. NOUN., SUBJ. ACC. OF *fieri*

II V.. PRES. INF. PASS. **fiō, fierī** (USED AS PASS. OF *facio*, to do), to be done

III **licet, -cuit, -citum est, -ēre**, IMPERS. (LIC-), WITH OR WITHOUT DAT. OF PERSON, it is lawful, is allowed, is permitted

IV **id...licēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **lēgātōs...misit**. §580

V **sēque...posse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimāret**. §580

VI **quoniam...accessisset...exīstimāret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. CAUSAL CLAUSES TAKE EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE, ACCORDING TO THEIR CONSTRUCTION; THE IDEA OF CAUSE BEING CONTAINED, NOT IN THE MOOD ITSELF, BUT IN THE FORM OF THE ARGUMENT (BY IMPLICATION), IN AN ANTECEDENT OF CAUSAL MEANING (LIKE PROPTEREA), OR IN THE CONNECTING PARTICLES. §539 & §583



Nōn respuit<sup>I</sup> condiōnem Cæsar

=Cæsar did not reject the  
condition

~Cæsar did not reject the  
proposal

iamque

=and now

~and began

eum ad sānitātem<sup>II</sup> revertī<sup>III</sup>

=that he (Ariovistus) returned to  
soundness of body

~that he was now returning to  
sanity

arbitrābātur

=he was thinking

~to think

cum id

=when // it

~as // the issue

quod antea petentī<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup> [sibi] dēnegāssēt<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup>

=that which he (Ariovistus) had  
previously denied [to him] (to  
Cæsar), with his requesting

~that which he had previously  
refused to him when requesting  
it

---

I **respuō, -uī, -us, -ere** (RE + SPUŌ), to spit back, discharge by spitting, cast out, cast off, eject, expel; Fig., to reject, repel, refuse, spurn, dislike, disapprove

II **sānitās, -ātis**, F. (SANUS), soundness of body, health; Fig., soundness, right reason, good sense, discretion, sanity

III **eum...revertī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrābātur**. §580

IV ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

V DAT. SG. PRES. PART. OF THE V. **petō**

VI **quod...dēnegāssēt**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VII **dēnegō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DĒ + NEGŌ), to reject, refuse, deny

**ultrō<sup>I</sup> pollicērētur<sup>II</sup>**

=he spontaneously offered

~he spontaneously proffered

**magnamque in spem veniēbat**

=and he was coming into great hope

~and was in great hopes that

**prō suīs tantīs populīque Romānī in eum beneficiīs**

=on account of his own great kindnesses and (the kindnesses) of the Roman people toward him

~in consideration of his own and the Roman people's great favors toward him

**cognitīs suīs postulātīs<sup>III</sup>**

=with his demands <having been> learned

~upon his demands being made known

**fore utī**

=that (it) would be that

~that

---

I **ūltrō**, ADV. (ABL. OF ULTER), *From beyond, from the other side, i.e. without influence or assistance from this side, on his part, on their part, of himself, of themselves, etc.; of one's own accord, without being asked, spontaneously, voluntarily*

II **cum...pollicērētur**, **cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

III **cognitīs suīs postulātīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

**pertināciā<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> dēsisteret<sup>III</sup>**

=he would desist from (his) ~he would desist from his  
obstinacy obstinacy

### I.XLII.III.

DIĒS COLLOQUIŌ DICTUS EST EX EŌ DIĒ QUĪNTUS.  
INTERIM SÆPE ULTRŌ CITROQUE CUM LĒGĀTĪ INTER EŌS  
MITTERENTUR, ARIOVISTUS POSTULĀVIT NĒ QUEM  
PEDITEM AD COLLOQUIUM CÆSAR ADDŪCERET: VERĒRĪ  
SĒ NĒ PER ĪNSIDIĀS AB EŌ CIRCUMVENĪRĒTUR: UTERQUE  
CUM EQUITĀTŪ VENĪRET: ALIĀ RATIŌNE SĒSĒ NŌN ESSE  
VENTŪRUM.

**Diēs colloquiŌ<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup> dictus est ex eŏ diē quīntus**

=the fifth day out from this day ~the fifth day after that was  
was set for the conference appointed as the day of  
conference

**Interim**

=in the meantime ~meanwhile

---

**I** ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

**II** **pertinācia**, -æ, f. (PERTINAX), *perseverance, persistence, stubbornness, obstinacy, pertinacity*

**III** **fore uti...dēsisteret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. IN INDIC.. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **magnam in spem veniebat** STANDING IN FOR FUT. INF. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT ARE USED AS THE SUBJECT OF THE FOLLOWING: FORE (OR FUTŪRUM ESSE) UT WITH A CLAUSE OF RESULT AS SUBJECT IS OFTEN USED INSTEAD OF THE FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE OR PASSIVE; SO NECESSARILY IN VERBS WHICH HAVE NO SUPINE STEM. §569i & §583

**IV** DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE IS OFTEN USED TO QUALIFY A WHOLE IDEA, INSTEAD OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE MODIFYING A SINGLE WORD. §377

**V** **collōquium**, -ii, n. *a conversation, conference, discourse*

sæpe ultrō citroque<sup>VI</sup> cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur<sup>VII</sup>

=as the ambassadors were often being sent to beyond and to this side between them ~as ambassadors were being often sent to and fro between them

Ariovistus postulāvit

=Ariovistus demanded ~Ariovistus demanded

nē quem peditem ad colloquium Cæsar addūceret<sup>III</sup>

=that Cæsar should not lead any foot-soldier to the conference ~that Cæsar not bring any foot-soldier with him to the conference

verērī sē<sup>IV</sup>

=(saying) that he feared ~[saying] that he feared

nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur<sup>V</sup>

=lest, through a trap, he should be circumvented by him ~being ensnared by him insidiously

---

VI **citrō**, ADV. (DAT. OF CITER), *to this side*; only in the phrase *ultrō citroque*, *ultrō et citro*, or, *ultrō citro*, *hither and thither*, *this way and that*, *here and there*, *to and fro*, *backwards and forwards*, *reciprocally*

VII **cum...mitterentur**, **cum** CLAUSE. §546

III **nē...addūceret**, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. PROHIBITION IS REGULARLY EXPRESSED IN CLASSIC PROSE (1) BY NŌLĪ WITH THE INFINITIVE, (2) BY CAVE WITH THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, OR (3) BY NĒ WITH THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. §450 & ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

IV **verērī sē**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **postulāvit**. §580

V **nē...circumvenīrētur**, FEAR CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH NĒ AFFIRMATIVE AND NĒ NŌN OR UT NEGATIVE. §564 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

uterque cum equitātū venīret<sup>I</sup>

=and that both should come ~that both should come  
with cavalry accompanied by cavalry

aliā ratiōne<sup>II</sup> sēsē nōn esse ventūrum<sup>III</sup>

=(and) that, in another ~that he would not come on any  
circumstance, he would not other condition  
come

#### I.XLII.IV.

CÆSAR, QUOD NEQUE COLLOQUIUM INTERPOSITĀ  
CAUSĀ TOLLĪ VOLĒBAT NEQUE SALŪTEM SUAM  
GALLORUM EQUITĀTUĪ COMMITTERE AUDĒBAT,  
COMMODISSIMUM ESSE STATUIT, OMNIBUS EQUĪS GALLĪS  
EQUITIBUS DĒTRACTĪS, EŌ LEGIŌNĀRIŌS MĪLITĒS  
LEGIŌNIS DECIMÆ, CUI QUAM MAXIMĒ CŌNFĪDĒBAT,  
IMPŌNERE, UT PRÆSIDĪUM QUAM AMĪCISSIMUM, SĪ QUID  
OPUS FACTŌ ESSET, HABĒRET.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

quod neque colloquium

=as neither /he wished/ the ~as neither // that the conference  
conference /to be removed/

interpositā<sup>IV</sup> causā<sup>V</sup>

=by an excuse <having been> ~because an excuse was made  
thrown in the way

---

I **uterque...venīret**, HORTATORY SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN THE PRESENT TENSE TO EXPRESS AN EXHORTATION OR A COMMAND. THE NEGATIVE IS NĒ. §439 & §588

II **aliā ratiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **sēsē nōn esse ventūrum**, INDIR. DISC. §580

**tolli volēbat**

=he wished // to be removed

~he wished // to be set aside

**neque salūtem<sup>I</sup> suam Gallorum equitātū<sup>II</sup> committere audēbat**

=nor did he dare to trust his own  
safety to the cavalry of the Gauls

~nor durst trust his life to the  
cavalry of the Gauls

**commodissimum esse<sup>III</sup>**

=that (it) was most commodious

~that it would be most expedient

**statuit**

=he decided

~decided

**omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus<sup>IV</sup> dētractīs<sup>V VI</sup>**

=with all the horses <having  
been> drawn away from the  
Gallic cavalry

~to take away from the Gallic  
cavalry all their horses

**eō legiōnariōs milītēs legiōnis decimæ**

=(and) to mount/ thither the  
legionary soldiers of the tenth  
legion

~and thereon // the legionary  
soldiers of the tenth legion

IV **interpōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (INTER + PŌNŌ), to put between, place among, interpose, insert, intersperse; Trop., to interpose, introduce, put in the way, put forward

V **interpositā causā**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

I **salūs, -ūtis**, F. (SALVUS), soundness, health, good health, vigor; Fig., health, welfare, prosperity, safety, soundness, preservation, deliverance

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **committere**. §367

III **commodissimum esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **statuit**. §580

IV **Gallis equitibus**, DAT. OF SEPAR. MANY VERBS OF TAKING AWAY AND THE LIKE TAKE THE DATIVE (ESPECIALLY OF A PERSON) INSTEAD OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. (§401). §381

V **omnibus equīs...dētractīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI **dētrahō, -trāxī, -trāctus, -ere** (DĒ + TRAHŌ), to draw off, take down, pull down, take away, remove, withdraw, drag, bring

cui<sup>I</sup> quam maximē cōfidēbat

=to whom he was having the  
most confidence

~in which he placed the greatest  
confidence

impōnere<sup>II</sup>

=(and) to mount

~to mount

ut præsidium quam amīcissimum<sup>III IV</sup>

=<in order> that // a most  
trustworthy defence as possible

~in order that // a garrison as  
trustworthy as possible

sī quid opus factō<sup>V</sup> esset<sup>VI</sup>

=if there were any need for a  
deed

~should there be any need for  
action

habēret<sup>VII</sup>

=he might have

~he might have

---

I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **confidēbat**. §367

II **impōnō, -posuī, -positus** (IN + PŌNŌ), ere, to place upon, set on, impose, establish, introduce, set, place

III **quam amīcissimum, quam** + SUPER. = THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEG. BESIDES THEIR REGULAR SIGNIFICATION (AS IN ENGLISH), THE FORMS OF COMPARISON ARE USED AS FOLLOWS: WITH QUAM, VEL, OR ŪNUS THE SUPERLATIVE DENOTES THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEGREE. §291<sup>III</sup>

IV **factum, -ī**, N. (PART. NEUT. OF facio), a deed, act, exploit, achievement

V **opus**, INDICATING NEED REQUIRES THE ABL. OPUS AND ŪSUS, SIGNIFYING NEED, TAKE THE ABLATIVE. I. WITH OPUS THE ABLATIVE OF A PERFECT PARTICIPLE IS OFTEN FOUND, EITHER AGREEING WITH A NOUN OR USED AS A NEUTER ABSTRACT NOUN. §411<sup>I</sup>

VI **sī...esset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

VII **ut...habēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

## I.XLII.VI.

QUOD CUM FIERET, NŌN IRRĪDICULĒ QUĪDAM EX  
MĪLITIBUS DECIMÆ LEGIŌNIS DĪXIT: PLŪS QUAM  
POLLICITUS ESSET CÆSAREM FACERE; POLLICITUM SĒ IN  
COHORTIS PRÆTŌRIÆ LOCŌ DECIMAM LEGIŌNEM  
HABITŪRUM, AD EQUUM RESCRĪBERE.

Quod cum fieret<sup>I</sup>

=*which when (it) was done*

~*and when this was done*

nŏn irrĭdiculĕ<sup>II</sup> quĭdam ex mĭlitibus decimæ legiŏnis dĭxit

=*a certain one, out from the  
soldiers of the tenth legion, not  
unwittingly, said*

~*one of the soldiers of the tenth  
legion said, not without a touch  
of humor*

plŭs quam pollicitus esset

=*more than he had promised*

~*more for them than he had  
promised*

Cæsarem facere<sup>III</sup>

=*that Cæsar was doing*

~*that Cæsar did*

[eum] pollicitum [esse]<sup>IV</sup>

=*that [he] (Cæsar) promised*

~*he had promised*

---

I *cum fieret*, *cum* CLAUSE. §546

II *irrĭdiculĕ*, ADV. (IN-RIDICULE), *unwittily*

III *Cæsarem facere*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *dĭxit*. §580

IV *plŭs quam pollicitus esset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583



*sē<sup>I</sup> in cohortis prætōriæ locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum [esse]<sup>II</sup>*  
*=that he would have the tenth ~to have the tenth legion in*  
*legion in place of (his) prætorian place of his prætorian cohort*  
*cohort*

*[eum] ad equum rescribere<sup>III IV</sup>*  
*=(and) that [he] (Cæsar) was re- ~but he now re-enlisted them*  
*enlisting [those men] to cavalry into horse*

---

I **pollicitum sē**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **pollicitum**. §580

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dixit**. §580

IV **rescribō, -scripsi, -scriptus, -ere** (RE + SCRIBŌ), *to write back, write in return, reply in writing; To write again, write anew, enroll anew, re-enlist; In partic., in milit. lang., to enroll anew, to re-enlist*



# I.XLIII



CÆSAR AND ARIOVISTUS MEET.



## I.XLIII.I.



PLĀNITIĒS ERAT MAGNA ET IN EĀ TUMULUS  
TERRĒNUS SATIS GRANDIS.

Plānitiēs<sup>I</sup> erat magna et in eā tumulus<sup>II</sup> terrēnus<sup>III</sup> satis grandis<sup>IV</sup>

=there was a great plain and in ~there was a large plain, and in  
it an earthly mound of it a mound of earth of  
considerable size considerable size

## I.XLIII.II.

HIC LOCUS ÆQUŌ FERĒ SPATIŌ AB CASTRĪS<sup>V</sup> ARIOVISTI ET  
CÆSARIS ABERAT.

---

I **plānitiēs, -ēi**, F., a flat or even surface, level ground, a plain

II **tumulus, -ī**, M. (TV-), a heap of earth, mound, hill, hillock

III **terrēnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TERRA), of the globe, on the earth, earthly, terrestrial, terren

IV **grandis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (GAR-), Of things, full-grown, large, great, full, abundant

V **ā castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

Hic locus æquō ferē spatiō<sup>I</sup> ab castrīs Ariovisti et Cæsaris aberat  
 =this place was nearly by (at) an ~this spot was at nearly an  
 equal interval away from the equal distance from both camps  
 camp of Ariovistus and (the  
 camp) of Cæsar

## I.XLIII.III.

EŌ, UT ERAT DICTUM, AD COLLOQUIUM VĒNĒRUNT.

EŌ

=to that place

~thither

ut erat dictum

=as it was said

~as had been appointed

ad colloquium vĕnĕrunt

=they came to the conference

~they came for the conference

## I.XLIII.IV.

LEGIŌNEM CÆSAR QUAM EQUĪS VEXERAT PASSIBUS  
 DUCENTĪS AB EŌ TUMULŌ CŌSTITUIT.

Legiōnem Cæsar

=Cæsar // the legiō

~Cæsar // the legiō

quam equīs<sup>II</sup> vexerat

=which he had conveyed by the  
 horses

~which he had brought [with  
 him] on horseback

---

I æquō spatiō, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

passibus ducentis<sup>I</sup> ab eō tumulō<sup>II</sup> cōstituīt

=stationed // 200 paces away ~stationed // 200 paces from this mound

### I.XLIII.V.

ITEM EQUITĒS ARIOVISTĪ PARĪ INTERVĀLLŌ  
CONSTITĒRUNT.

Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō<sup>III</sup> constitērunt

=the cavalry of Ariovistus also ~the cavalry of Ariovistus also  
stationed at an equal interval took their stand at an equal  
distance

### I.XLIII.VI.

ARIOVISTUS EX EQUĪS UT COLLOQUERENTUR ET PRÆTER  
SĒ DĒNŌS AD COLLOQUIUM ADDŪCERENT POSTULĀVIT.

Ariovistus

=Ariovistus

~Ariovistus

ex equīs ut colloquerentur

=that they should converse from ~that they should confer on  
(their) horses horseback

et præter sē dēnōs<sup>IV</sup> ad colloquium addūcerent<sup>V</sup>

=and that, in addition to ~and that, besides themselves,  
themselves, they should bring they should bring with them ten  
ten men each to the conference men each to the conference

---

I **passibus ducentis**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

II **ab eō tumulō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III **parī intervāllō**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. §414

IV **dēnī, -æ, -a**, ADJ. (DECEM), *ten each, ten at a time, by tens*

postulāvit

=*demanded*

~*then demanded*

### I.XLIII.VII.

VBI EŌ VENTUM EST, CÆSAR INITIŌ ŌRĀTIONIS SUA  
SENĀTŪSQUE IN EUM BENEFICIA COMMORĀVIT,  
QUOD RĒX APPELLĀTUS ESSET Ā SENĀTŪ, QUOD AMĪCUS,  
QUOD MŪNERA AMPLISSIME MISSA; QUAM REM ET  
PAUCĪS CONTIGISSE, ET PRŌ MAGNĪS HOMINUM OFFICIĪS  
CŌNSUĒSSE TRIBUĪ DOCĒBAT.

Vbi eō [ab eīs] ventum est<sup>1</sup>

=*when it was come [by them] to  
that place*

~*when they were come to the  
place*

Cæsar initiō ōrātionis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia  
commemorāvit

=*Cæsar, in the beginning of (his)  
speech, recalled his own and the  
favors and (he recalled the  
favors) of senate toward him  
(Ariovistus)*

~*Cæsar, in the opening of his  
speech, detailed his own and the  
senate's favors toward him  
[Ariovistus]*

---

V ***ut colloquerentur...addūcerent***, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

I IMPERS. PASS. OF THE V. ***veniō***

**quod rēx appellātus esset<sup>I</sup> ā senātū<sup>II</sup>**

=<as to the fact> that he had ~in that he had been styled king  
been called a king by the senate

**quod amīcus [appellātus esset]**

=<as to the fact> that [he had ~in that [he had been styled]  
been called] a friend friend, by the senate

**quod mūnera<sup>III</sup> amplissime missa [essent]**

=<as to the fact> that the most ~in that very considerable  
magnificent presents had been presents had been sent him  
sent (to him)

**quam rem et paucīs<sup>IV</sup> contigisse**

=which (thing) (i.e. obtaining so ~which circumstance // him had  
many favors) // and had both fallen to the lot of few  
happened to few men

**et prō magnīs hominū officiīs cōnsuēsse<sup>V</sup> tribuī**

=and had been wont to be ~and had usually been bestowed  
bestowed in return for the great in consideration of important  
services of men personal services

- 
- I **quod...appellātus esset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592
- II **ā senātū**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **Ā** OR **AB**. §405
- III **mūnus, -eris**, N. (MV-), a service, office, post, employment, function, duty; TRANSF., a present, gift
- IV DAT. WITH COMP. V. **contigisse**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH **AO**, **ANTE**, **CON**, **IN**, **INTER**, **OB**, **POST**, **PRÆ**, **PRŌ**, **SUB**, **SUPER**, AND SOME WITH **CIRCUM**, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370
- V **quam rem...contigisse...cōnsuēsse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **docēbat**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

docēbat

=he was informing

~he informed

### I.XLIII.VIII.

ILLUM, CUM NEQUE ADITUM NEQUE CAUSAM  
POSTULANDĪ IŪSTAM HABĒRET, BENEFICIŌ AC  
LĪBERĀLITĀTE SUĀ AC SENĀTŪS EA PRÆMIA  
CŌNSECŪTUM.

Illum

=that that (man)

~that he

cum neque aditum<sup>I</sup> neque causam postulandī<sup>II</sup> iūstam habēret<sup>III</sup>

=although he was neither having access, nor a just cause of requesting ~although he had neither an introduction, nor a just ground for the request

beneficiō ac liberālītātē suā<sup>IV</sup> ac senātūs ea præmia<sup>V</sup> cōnsecūtum  
[esse]

=he had obtained those privileges by his own beneficence and liberality and (that beneficence and liberty) of the senate ~had obtained these honors through the kindness and munificence of himself [Cæsar] and the senate

---

I **ādītus, -ūs**, M. (ADEO), a going to, approach, access

II GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

III **cum...habēret**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

IV **beneficiō ac liberālītātē suā**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **præmium, -ī**, N. (PRÆ + EM-), an advantage, prerogative, favor, license, privilege



## I.XLIII.IX.

DOCĒBAT ETIAM QUAM VETERĒS QUAMQUE IŪSTÆ  
CAUSÆ NECESSITUDINIS IPSĪS CUM ÆDUĪS  
INTERCĒDERENT; QUÆ SENĀTŪS CŌNSULTA QUOTIĒNS  
QUAMQUE HONŌRIFICA IN EŌS FACTA ESSENT; UT OMNĪ  
TEMPORE TOTĪUS GALLIÆ PRĪNCIPĀTUM ÆDUĪ  
TENUISSENT, PRIUS ETIAM QUAM NOSTRAM AMĪCITIAM  
APPETĪSSENT.

Docēbat etiam

=he, too, was informing

~he informed him too

quam veterēs

=how old

~how old

quamque iŭstæ causæ necessitudinis<sup>I</sup> ipsīs cum Æduīs  
intercēderent<sup>II</sup>

=and how just causes of the  
relationship were coming  
between themselves (the  
Romans) with the Ædui

~and how just were the grounds  
of connection that existed  
between themselves [the  
Romans] and the Ædui

quæ senātūs cōnsulta<sup>III</sup>

=which decrees of the senate

~what decrees of the senate

---

I **necessitūdō, -inis**, F. (NECESSE), *necessity, compulsion, inevitableness, want, need, distress; A close connection, personal union, relationship, friendship, intimacy, bond*

II **quam...intercēderent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

III **cōnsultum, i**, N. (CONSULTUS), *deliberation, consideration; A decree, decision, resolution, plan; senātūs, a decree of the senate*

quotiēns<sup>IV</sup> quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent<sup>V</sup>

=how often and how honorable, ~had been passed in their favor,  
they (the decrees) had been and how frequent and how  
made on them honorable

ut omni tempore<sup>III</sup> totius Galliae principātum Ædui tenuissent<sup>IV</sup>

=how from all time the Ædui had ~how from time immemorial the  
held the supremacy of all of Gaul Ædui had held the supremacy of  
the whole of Gaul

prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent<sup>V</sup>

=even (said Cæsar) before our ~even [said Cæsar] before they  
friendship which they had had sought our friendship  
sought

### I.XLIII.X.

POPULI RŌMĀNĪ HANC ESSE CŌNSUĒTUDINEM, UT  
SOCIŌS ATQUE AMĪCŌS NŌN MODO SUĪ NIHIL  
DĒPERDERE SED GRĀTIĀ, DIGNITĀTE, HONŌRE  
AUCTIONES VELIT ESSE: QUOD VĒRŌ AD AMĪCITIAM  
POPULI RŌMĀNĪ ATTULISSENT, ID EĪS ĒRIPĪ QUIS PATĪ  
POSSET?

---

IV **quotiēns**, ADV. (QUOT), *how often? how many times*

V **quæ...facta essent**, INDIR. QUESTION, §573

III **omni tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

IV **ut...tenuissent**, INDIR. QUESTION, §573

V **prius...quam...appetissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

"POPULI ROMANI HÆC EST CONSUETUDO UT SOCIOS ATQUE AMICOS NON MODO SUI NIHIL DEPENDERE, SED GRATIA ... AUCTIONES VELIT ESSE; QUOD VERO AD AMICITIAM POPULI ROMANI ADTULERUNT, ID EIS ERIPI QUIS PATI POSSIT?"

**Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētudinem<sup>I</sup>**

=that it was this custom of the Roman people

~that it was the custom of the Roman people

**ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere<sup>II</sup>**

=that (their) allies and (their) friends not only are losing nothing of their (own)

~to desire not only that its allies and friends should lose none of their property

**sed grātiā, dignitāte<sup>III</sup>, honōre<sup>IV</sup> auctiōrēs velit<sup>V</sup> esse**

=but he (also) desires that (they) (the allies and friends) are more increased in <respect to> gratitude, dignity, (and) honor

~but be advanced in influence, dignity, and honor

**quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent<sup>VI</sup>**

=but in fact, that which they had brought towards the friendship of the Roman people

~that what they had brought with them to the friendship of the Roman people

---

I **hanc esse cōsuētudinem**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **docēbat**. §580

II **dēperdō, -didī, -ditus, -ere** (DE + PERDŌ), to destroy, ruin; To lose

III **dignitās, -ātis**, F. (DIGNUS), worth, merit, desert, character

IV **grātiā, dignitāte, honōre**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

V **ut...velit**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT MAY BE USED SUBSTANTIVELY: AS THE OBJECT OF FACIŌ ETC. (§568). §567

VI **quod...attulissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

id eīs ēripī

=*that it is being torn away from them* ~*should be torn from them?*

quis patī posset<sup>I</sup>

=*who was able to endure?* ~*who then could endure?*

### I.XLIII.XI.

POSTULĀVIT DEINDE EADEM QUÆ LĒGĀTĪS IN MANDĀTĪS DEDERAT: NĒ AUT ÆDUĪS AUT EŌRUM SOCIĪS BELLUM ĪFERRET; OBSIDĒS REDDERET; SĪ NŪLLAM PARTEM GERMĀNŌRUM DOMUM REMITTERE POSSET, AT NĒ QUŌS AMPLIUS RHĒNUM TRĀNSĪRE PATERĒTUR.

Postulāvit deinde eadem

=*he then demanded the same (things)* ~*he then made the same demands*

quæ lĕgātīs in mandātīs dederat

=*(the same things) which he had given to the ambassadors in the orders* ~*which he had commissioned the ambassadors to make*

nē aut Æduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īferret

=*(namely,) that he (Ariovistus) should not bear war to the Ædui or their allies* ~*that [Ariovistus] should not make war either upon the Ædui or their allies*

obsidēs redderet<sup>II</sup>

=*(and) that he should give back the hostages* ~*that he should restore the hostages*

---

I ***quis...posset***, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §586

sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset<sup>I</sup>

=(and) if he is able to send back ~that if he could not send back  
no part of Germans home to their country any part of the  
Germans

at<sup>II</sup> nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur<sup>III</sup>

=that he, at any rate, should not ~he should at all events suffer  
allow anyone more men to cross none of them any more to cross  
the Rhine the Rhine

---

II **nē...inferret...redderet**, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. PROHIBITION IS REGULARLY EXPRESSED IN CLASSIC PROSE (1) BY NŌLI WITH THE INFINITIVE, (2) BY CAVĒ WITH THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, OR (3) BY NĒ WITH THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. §450 & ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

I **sī...posset**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II Of the Adversative Conjunctions *at*, as *but* or *at any rate*, are often used to express Contrast or Restriction; *autem*, as *however*, *on the other hand*, or *moreover*, to express Contrast or Addition; *sed*, as *but*, to correct or limit a Preceding Statement; *tamen*, as *nevertheless*, *yet*, to emphasize the importance of something that follows in opposition to a Preceding Statement; and *vero*, as *in fact*, *but in truth*, to emphasize a contrast with a Preceding Statement

III **nē...paterētur**, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. §450 & §588



# I.XLIV



ARIOVISTUS IS UNCOMPROMISING AND DEFIANT.



## I.XLIV.I.



ARIOVISTUS AD POSTULĀTA CÆSARIS PAUCA RESPONDIT, DĒ SUĪS VIRTŪTIBUS MULTA PRÆDICĀVIT: TRANSISSE RHĒNUM SĒSĒ NŌN SUĀ SPONTE SED ROGĀTUM ET ACCERSĪTUM Ā GALLĪS; NŌN SINE MAGNĀ SPĒ MAGNĪSQUE PRÆMIĪS DOMUM PROPINQUŌSQUE RELĪQUISSĒ; SĒDĒS HABĒRE IN GALLIĀ AB IPSĪS CONCESSĀS, OBSIDĒS IPSŌRUM VOLUNTĀTE DATŌS; STĪPENDIUM CAPERE IŪRE BELLĪ QUOD VICTŌRĒS VICTĪS IMPŌNERE CŌNSUĒRINT.

"TRANSII RHENUM (EGO) NON MEA SPONTE, SED ROGATUS ET ARCESSITUS A GALLIS; NON SINE MAGNA SPE ... DOMUM ... RELIQUI; SEDĪS HABEO IN GALLIA AB IPSIS CONCESSAS, OBSIDES IPSORUM VOLUNTATE DATOS; STIPENDIUM CAPIO IURE BELLI QUOD VICTORES VICTIS IMPONERE CONSUEVERUNT."

**Ariovistus ad postulāta<sup>1</sup> Cæsaris pauca respondit**

=Ariovistus responds (with) a ~Ariovistus briefly replied to the few (words) to the demands of demands of Cæsar Cæsar

---

I **postulātum, -ī, n.** (P. N. OF *postulo*), a demand, request, claim

dē suīs virtūtibus multa prædicāvit

=(but) he announced many ~but expatiated largely on his  
things about his own merits own virtues

transisse<sup>I</sup> Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=(namely,) that he crossed the ~that he had crossed the Rhine  
Rhine not by his own will not of his own accord

sed rogātum<sup>IV</sup> et accersītum<sup>V</sup> ā Gallis<sup>VI</sup>

=but <having been> invited and ~but on being invited and sent  
<having been> sent for by the for by the Gauls  
Gauls

nōn sine magnā spē magnisque præmiis<sup>VII</sup> domum propinquōsque  
reliquisse<sup>VIII</sup>

=that (he,) not without great ~that he had not left home and  
hope and great rewards, had left kindred without great  
behind (his) home and relatives expectations and great rewards

---

I **trānsisse...sēsē**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **sponte**, ABL., and **spontis**, F. (SPONDEO), PROP. **sponte**, IN GOOD PROSE ALWAYS JOINED WITH *meā, tuā, suā*—of free will, of one's own accord, of one's self, freely, willingly, voluntarily, spontaneously

III **suā sponte**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **rogō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre**, to ask, question, interrogate; To invite, ask a visit from

V **arcessō, -ivī, -ītus, -ere**, INTENS. (ACCEDO), to cause to come, call, send for, invite, summon, fetch

VI **ā Gallis**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **ā** OR **ab**. §405

VII **præmium, -ī**, N. (PRÆ + EM-), an advantage, prerogative, favor, license, privilege; A reward, recompense

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580



**sēdēs<sup>I</sup> habēre<sup>II</sup> in Galliā ab ipsīs<sup>III</sup> concessās<sup>IV V VI</sup>**

=that (he) is holding residences ~that he had settlements in Gaul,  
in Gaul, <having been> yielded which were granted by the Gauls  
by (the Gauls) themselves themselves

**obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte<sup>VII</sup> datōs**

=that the hostages, <having been> given by the volition of ~that those hostages had been  
themselves given by their goodwill

**stīpendium capere<sup>VIII</sup> iūre<sup>IX</sup> bellī**

=that (he) is seizing the tribute ~that he took by right of war,  
by right of war the tribute

- 
- I **sēdēs, sēdis**, F. (SED-), a seat, bench, chair, throne; A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, temple
- II **sēdēs habēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580
- III **ab ipsīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- IV PPP. MODIFIES *sedēs*
- V A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of Cause, Condition, Opposition, Characterization, or Description. Thus—Expressing Characterization or Description: *victis, venientes, those beaten, those coming up, meaning, those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I.XXV)
- VI **concēdō cessī, cessus, -ere** (CON + CĒDŌ), INTRANS, to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove; TRANS, to grant, concede, allow, consign, resign, yield, vouchsafe, confirm
- VII ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- VIII INDIR. DISC. §580
- IX ABL. OF SPEC. §418

quod victōrēs victīs<sup>I</sup> impōnere<sup>II</sup> cōsuē[ve]rint<sup>III IV</sup>

=(the tribute) which conquerors ~which conquerors are  
were wont to impose on the conquered accustoms to impose on the  
conquered conquered

## I.XLIV.II.

NŌN SĒSĒ GALLĪS SED GALLŌS SIBI BELLUM INTULISSE;  
OMNĒS GALLIÆ CĪVITĀTĒS AD SĒ OPPUGNANDUM  
VĒNISSE AC CONTRĀ SĒ CASTRA HABUISSE; EĀS OMNĒS  
CŌPIĀS Ā SĒ ŪNŌ PRĒLIŌ PULSĀS AC SUPERĀTĀS ESSE.

"NON EGO GALLIS, SED GALLI MIHI BELLUM INTULERUNT;  
OMNES GALLIÆ CIVITATES AD ME OPPUGNANDUM  
VENERUNT AC CONTRA ME CASTRA HABUERUNT; EÆ  
OMNES COPIÆ A ME UNO PRÆLIO PULSÆ AC SUPERATÆ  
SUNT."

Nōn sēsē Gallīs<sup>V</sup> sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse<sup>VI</sup>

=that he (had not borne war) on ~that he had not made war upon  
the Gauls, but that the Gauls had the Gauls, but the Gauls upon  
borne war upon him him

---

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **impōnere**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **impōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (IN + PONO), to place upon, set on, impose, establish, introduce, set, place

III **consuēscō, -suēvī, -suētus, -ere** (FROM *suus*), to become used, accustom oneself; Hence, PERF, to be wont, be accustomed

IV **quod...cōsuērint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V DAT. WITH COMP. V. **intulisse**. §370

VI **sēsē...intulisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

omnes Galliæ cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum<sup>VII</sup> vēnisse

=that all the states of Gaul had came to him for <the purpose of> attacking him ~that all the states of Gaul came to attack him

ac<sup>II</sup> contrā sē castra habuisse<sup>III</sup>

=and that (all the states of Gaul) had held a camp across from him ~and had encamped against him

eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē<sup>IV</sup> ūnō prœliō pulsās [esse] ac superātās esse<sup>V</sup>

=that all these troops by him had been repulsed and had been overcome in a single battle ~that all their forces had been routed and beaten by him in a single battle

### I.XLIV.III.

SĪ ITERUM EXPERĪRĪ VELINT, SĒ ITERUM PARĀTUM ESSE DĒCERTĀRE; SĪ PĀCE ŪTĪ VELINT, INĪQUUM ESSE DĒ STĪPENDIŌ RECŪSĀRE QUOD SUĀ VOLUNTĀTE AD ID TEMPUS PEPENDERINT.

"SĪ ITERUM EXPERIRI VOLUNT, (EGO) ITERUM PARATUS SUM DECERTARE; SI PACE UTI VOLUNT, INIQUUM EST DE STIPENDIO RECUSARE QUOD SUA VOLUNTATE AD HOC TEMPUS PEPENDERUNT."

---

VII **ad sē oppugnandum**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

II **atque** (OR **ac**—ONLY BEFORE CONSONANTS), CONJ. (AD + QUE), *and* (like *-que*, it connects words or thoughts which form a whole, but unlike *-que* gives prominence rather to what follows, and is rarely repeated)

III **omnēs...vēnisse...habuisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **ā sē**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

V **cōpiās...pulsās ac superātās esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

**Sī iterum experīrī<sup>I</sup> velint<sup>II</sup> III**

=(that) if they wish to try again

~that if they choose to make a second trial

**sē iterum parātum esse<sup>IV</sup> dēcertāre<sup>V</sup>**

=that he had been prepared to go through a contest again

~he was ready to encounter them again

**sī pāce<sup>VI</sup> ūtī velint<sup>VII</sup>**

=(but) if they wish to employ peace

~but if they chose to enjoy peace

**inīquum<sup>VIII</sup> esse<sup>IX</sup> dē stipendiō recūsāre<sup>X</sup>**

=that it is unfair to make an objection against the tribute

~it was unfair to refuse the tribute

---

I **experior, -pertus, -irī**, DEP. (PAR-), to try, prove, test, experience, endure; To try, undertake, attempt, make trial, undergo, experience

II **volui, velle** (VOL-), to will, wish, want, purpose, be minded, determine

III **sī...velint**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: §589

IV **sē...parātum esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. §580

V **dēcertō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DĒ + CERTŌ), In battle, to go through a contest, fight out

VI ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūtī**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

VII **sī...velint**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

VIII **inīquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (IN+ ÆQUUS), uneven, slanting, steep; Unfair, unjust

IX **inīquum esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

X **recūsō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (RE+ CAUSA), to make an objection against, decline, refuse, be reluctant to do

quod suā voluntāte<sup>I</sup> ad id tempus pependerit<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=(the tribute) which by their ~which of their own free-will  
own free-will, they weighed out they had paid up to that time  
till that time

#### I.XLIV.IV.

AMĪCITIAM POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ SIBI ŌRNĀMENTŌ ET  
PRÆSIDIŌ, NŌN DĒTRĪMENTŌ, ESSE OPORTĒRE, IDQUE SĒ  
EĀ SPĒ PETISSE.

"AMICITIAM POPULI ROMANI MIHI ORNAMENTO ET  
PRÆSIDIO, NON DETRIMENTO ESSE OPORTET, IDQUE ...  
HAC SPE PETIT."

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō<sup>IV</sup> et præsidiō<sup>V</sup> nōn  
dētrīmentō<sup>VI</sup> <sup>VII</sup>, esse oportēre<sup>VIII</sup>

=that the friendship of the ~that it is fitting that the  
Roman people ought to be <a friendship of the Roman people  
source of> an ornament and <a serve for himself as a ornament  
source of> safeguard, not <a and safeguard, not a harm  
source of> a detriment to him

---

I **suā voluntāte**, ABL. OF SPEC. §418

II **pendō, pependī, pēnsus, -ere** (PAND-), to suspend, weigh, weigh out;  
To weigh out in payment, pay, pay out

III **quod...pependerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **ōrnāmentum, -ī**, N. (ORNO), apparatus, accoutrement; Fig., an  
ornament, distinction

V **præsidium, ī**, N. (PRÆSES), defence, protection, guardianship, help, aid,  
assistance

VI **dētrīmentum, -ī**, N. (DE + TER-), that which is worn away; Wear and  
tear, loss, damage, detriment

VII **sibi ōrnāmentō et præsidiō, nōn dētrīmentō**, DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE  
DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE  
OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY  
GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

VIII **amīcitiam...oportēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

idque sē eā spē<sup>I</sup> petisse<sup>II</sup>

=and that he had sought it with that hope ~and that he sought it with that expectation

## I.XLIV.V.

SĪ PER POPULUM RŌMĀNUM STĪPENDIUM REMITTĀTUR  
ET DĒDITICIĪ SUBTRAHANTUR, NŌN MINUS LIBENTER  
SĒSĒ RECŪSĀTŪRUM POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ AMĪCITIAM, QUAM  
ADPETIERIT.

"SI PER POPULUM ROMANUM STIPENDIUM REMITTETUR  
ET DEDITICII SUBTRAHENTUR, NON MINUS LIBENTER ...  
RECUSABO POPULI ROMANI AMICITIAM QUAM ADPETII."

SĪ per populum Rŏmānum stĭpendium remittātur<sup>III IV</sup>

=(but) if, through the Roman people, the tribute should be given up ~but if through the Roman people the tribute was to be discontinued

et dēditiciĭ subtrahantur<sup>V VI VII</sup>

=and (if) the surrendered men should be withdrawn ~and those who surrendered to be seduced from him

---

I **eā spē**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **sē...petisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III PRES. SUBJ. PASS. IN THE CONDITION AFTER **sĭ**

IV **remittō, mīsī, missus, -ere** (RE + MITTŌ), to let go back, send back, despatch back, drive back, cause to return; With respect to a person, to free one from any thing; to give up, grant, forgive, yield, resign, concede, surrender, sacrifice a thing to any one (= concedere, condonare); WITH ACC. OF THE OFFENCE

V PRES. SUBJ. PASS. IN THE CONDITION AFTER **sĭ**

VI **sĭ...remittātur...subtrahantur**, FUT. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

VII **subtrahō, -trāxī, -trāctus, -ere** (SUB + TRAHŌ), to draw from below, drag out, draw off, carry off, withdraw, take away, remove

nōn minus libenter<sup>I</sup> sēsē recūsātūrum [esse]<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup> populī Rōmānī  
amīcitiam

=*that, no less willingly, he would* ~*he would renounce the*  
*refuse the friendship of the* *friendship of the Roman people*  
*Roman people* *no less heartily*

quam adpetierit<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup>

=*than he sought (it)* ~*than he had sought it*

### I.XLIV.VI.

QUOD MULTITUDINEM GERMĀNŌRUM IN GALLIAM  
TRĀDŪCAT, ID SĒ SUĪ MŪNIENDĪ, NŌN GALLIÆ  
OPPUGNANDÆ CAUSĀ FACERE: EIUS REĪ TESTIMŌNIUM  
ESSE QUOD NISI ROGĀTUS NŌN VĒNERIT, ET QUOD  
BELLUM NŌN INTULERIT SED DĒFENDERIT.

"QUOD MULTITUDINEM GENNANORUM IN GALLIAM  
TRADUCO, ID MEI MUNIENDI, NON GALLIÆ  
IMPUGNANDÆ CAUSA FACTO: EIUS REI TESTIMONIUM  
EST QUOD NISI ROGATUS NON VENI, ET QUOD BELLUM  
NON INTULI, SED DEFENDI."

Quod<sup>VI</sup> multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat<sup>VII</sup>

=*<as for the fact> that he is* ~*as to his leading over a host of*  
*leading a multitude of Germans* *Germans into Gaul*  
*into Gaul*

---

I **libenter**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (LIBENS), *willingly, cheerfully, gladly, with pleasure*

II **recūsō, āvī, ātus, āre** (RE- + CAUSA), *to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do*

III **sēsē...recūsātūrum**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **appetō, -īvī** (OR -īī), **-ītus, -ere** (AD + PETO), TRANS, *to strive for, reach after, grasp at; Fig., to strive after, long for, desire, seek, court*

V **quam appetierit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliæ oppugnandæ<sup>I</sup> causā<sup>II</sup> facere<sup>III</sup>

=that he is doing it for the sake  
of defending himself and (for the  
sake) of attacking Gaul

~that he was doing it for the  
sake of fortifying himself and  
not for the sake of attacking  
Gaul

eius rei testimōnium esse<sup>IV</sup>

=that there is testimony of this  
thing

~that there was evidence of this  
thing

quod<sup>V</sup> nisi rogātus<sup>VI</sup> nōn vēnerit

=that he, unless asked, would  
not come

~the fact that he did not come  
without being invited

VI A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning, *as to the fact that, as regards the fact that*, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, *quod...enuntiarit*, *as to the fact that he had reported*, in the direct form, *quod enuntiavi*, *as to the fact that I have reported* (I.XVII)

VII **quod...trādūcat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

I **suī mūniendī nōn Galliæ impugnandæ**, GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE WITH **causā**. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504 & PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ, GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF; ERGŌ, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE INSTAR, LIKE; ALSO WITH PRĪDIĒ, THE DAY BEFORE; POSTRĪDIĒ, THE DAY AFTER; TENUS, AS FAR AS. §359II

II ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

III **sē...facere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **testimōnium esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning, *the fact that, that*, has its Verb in the Indicative, and may stand as Subject, or Predicate, or Object of a Verb, or in Apposition. Thus, *magno erat impedimento, quod...neque...poterant*, *a great hindrance...was the fact that they were able neither to...the quod-clause being the Subject of erat* (I.XXV); *causa mittendi fuit quod...volebat*, *the reason for sending was the fact that he wanted...the quod-clause being in Predicate* (II.I); *multæ res...in primis quod...videbat*, *many circumstances, first of all the fact that he saw...the quod-clause being in Apposition with res* (I.XXXIII)

VI **rogō, āvī, ātus, āre**, *to ask, question, interrogate*



et quod bellum nōn intulerit

=and that he did not bring on ~and the fact that he did not  
war make war

sed dēfenderit<sup>I</sup>

=but he warded (it) off ~but merely warded it off

### I.XLIV.VII.

SĒ PRIUS IN GALLIAM VĒNISSE QUAM POPULUM  
RŌMĀNUM.

"EGO PRIUS IN GALLIAM VENI QUAM POPULUS  
ROMANUS."

Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse<sup>II</sup> quam<sup>III</sup> populum Rōmānum

=that he had come into Gaul ~that he had come into Gaul  
earlier than the Roman people before the Roman people

### I.XLIV.VIII.

NUMQUAM ANTE HOC TEMPUS EXERCITUM POPULI  
RŌMĀNĪ GALLIÆ PRŌVINCIAE FĪNIBUS ĒGRESSUM.

"NUMQUAM ANTE HOC TEMPUS EXERCITUS POPULI  
ROMANI ... PROVINCIAE FINIBUS EGRESSUS (EST)."

---

I **quod nisi...venerit...intulerit...defenderit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN  
INDIR. DISC. §583

II **sē...vēnisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **quam**, ADV. (QUI), RELAT., *in what manner, to what degree, how greatly, how, how much*; Implying difference of degree (AFTER A COMP. OR WORD OF COMPARISON), *than*

Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliæ  
prōvinciæ finibus<sup>IV</sup> ēgressum [esse]<sup>V VI</sup>

=that never before this time did the army of the Roman people go beyond the frontiers of the province of Gaul  
~that never before this time did a Roman army go beyond the frontiers of the province of Gaul

### I.XLIV.IX.

QUID SIBI VELLE, CŪR IN SUĀS POSSESSIŌNĒS VENĪRET?

"QUID TIBI VIS? CUR IN MEAS POSSESSIONES VENIS?"

Quid sibi vellet<sup>IV</sup>

=what (said he) should he (Cæsar) desire for himself?  
~what [said he] does [Cæsar] desire?

cŭr in suās possessiōnēs<sup>V</sup> venīret<sup>VI</sup>

=why should he (Cæsar) come into his own (Ariovistus') possessions?  
~why come into his [Ariovistus] properties?

### I.XLIV.X.

PRŌVINCIAM SUAM HANC ESSE GALLIAM, SĪCUT ILLAM  
NOSTRAM.

---

IV ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

V **ēgredior, gressus, -ī**, DEP. (EX + GRADIOR) WITH ABL., INTRANS, to go out, come forth, march out, go away; TRANS, to go beyond, pass out of, leave

VI **exercitum...ēgressum**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **quid sibi vellet**, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §586

V **possessiō, -ōnis**, F. (SED-), a taking possession of, seizing, occupying, taking; A thing possessed, possession, property, estate

VI **cŭr...venīret**, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. §586

"PROVINCIA MEA HÆC EST GALLIA, SICUT ILLA VESTRA."

**Prōvinciam suam hanc esse<sup>I</sup> Galliam**

=*that this (part of) Gaul is his own province*    ~*that this was his province of Gaul*

**sicut illam nostram**

=*just as that (province) (is) ours*    ~*just as that is ours*

### I.XLIV.XI.

VT IPSĪ CONCĒDĪ NŌN OPORTĒRET, SĪ IN NOSTRŌS FĪNĒS  
IMPETUM FACERET, SĪC ITEM NŌS ESSE INĪQUŌS QUOD IN  
SUŌ IŪRE SĒ INTERPELLĀRĒMUS.

"VT MIHI CONCEDI NON OPORTET, SI IN VESTROS FINĒS  
IMPETUM FACIAM, SIC ITEM VOS ESTIS INIQUI QUOD IN  
MEO IURE ME INTERPELLATIS."

**Vt ipsī concēdī<sup>II</sup> nōn oportēret<sup>III IV</sup>**

=*as it is not proper to be granted for (him) himself (Ariovistus)*    ~*no concession ought to be made to him*

**sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret<sup>V VI</sup>**

=*if he should make an attack on our borders*    ~*if he were to make an attack upon our territories*

---

I **prōvinciam...esse**, INDIC. DISC. §580

II **concēdō -cessī, -cessus, -ere** (CON + CĒDŌ), INTRANS, *to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove*; TRANS, *to grant, concede, allow, consign, resign, yield, vouchsafe, confirm*

III **oportet, -uit, -ēre**, IMPERS., *it is necessary, is proper, is becoming, behooves*

IV **ut...oportēret**, APODOSIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIC. DISC. §589

V PRES. SUBJ. in the condition after sī

VI **sī...faceret**, PROTASIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIC. DISC. §589

sīc item<sup>I</sup> nōs esse<sup>II</sup> inīquōs

=*thus, likewise, that our men are unjust* ~*so, likewise, that we were unjust*

quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus<sup>III</sup>

=*as we were hindering him in his own right* ~*to obstruct him in his prerogative*

## I.XLIV.XII.

QUOD FRĀTRĒS (A SENATU) ÆDUŌS APPELLĀTŌS  
DĪCERET, NŌN SĒ TAM BARBARUM NEQUE TAM  
IMPERĪTUM ESSE RĒRUM UT NŌN SCĪRET NEQUE BELLŌ  
ALLOBROGUM PROXIMŌ ÆDUŌS RŌMĀNĪS AUXILIUM  
TULISSE NEQUE IPSŌS IN EĪS CONTENTIŌNIBUS QUAS  
ÆDUĪ SĒCUM ET CUM SĒQUANĪS HABUISSENT AUXILIŌ  
POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ŪSŌS ESSE.

"QUOD FRATRES A SENATU HÆDUOS APPELLATOS DICIS,  
NON (EGO) TAM BARBARUS ... SUM ... UT NON SCIAM  
NEQUE BELLO ALLOBROGUM PROXIMO HÆDUOS  
ROMANIS AUXILIUM TULISSE, NEQUE IPSOS, IN HIS  
CONTENTIONIBUS QUAS HÆDUI MECUM ... HABUERUNT  
(HABUERINT), AUXILIO POPULI ROMANI USOS ESSE."

Quod

=*that*

~*as to the fact that*

---

I **item**, ADV., *likewise, besides, also, further, moreover, too, as well*

II **nōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **interpellō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (INTER + PELLO), *to interrupt, break in upon*;  
In gen. *To hinder, prevent, obstruct*

frātrēs (a senatu) Æduōs appellātōs [esse]

=the Ædui had been called ~the Ædui had been styled  
'brothers' (by the senate) 'brethren' by the senate

dīceret

=he (Cæsar) said ~Cæsar's saying

nōn sē tam barbarum<sup>I</sup> neque tam imperitum<sup>II</sup> esse rērum

=that he is not so uncivilized nor ~he was not so uncivilized nor  
so inexperienced of things so ignorant of affairs

ut nōn scīret<sup>III</sup>

=that he did not know ~as not to know

neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Æduōs Rōmānīs auxilium  
tulisse<sup>IV</sup>

=that the Ædui in the last war of the Allobroges had neither borne  
aid to the Romans ~that the Ædui in the very last  
war with the Allobroges had  
neither rendered assistance to  
the Romans

neque ipsōs in eīs contentiōnibus<sup>V</sup>

=nor they themselves (receive ~nor received any from the  
any aid from the Roman people), Roman people in the contentions  
in these struggles

I **barbarus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP., of strange speech, speaking jargon, unintelligible; Like a foreigner, rude, uncultivated, ignorant, uncivilized

II **imperitus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., inexperienced, unversed, unfamiliar, not knowing, unacquainted with, unskilled, ignorant

III **ut...scīret**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

IV **Æduōs...tulisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **scīret**. §580

V **contentiō, -ōnis**, F. (COM- + TA-), a stretching, straining, exertion, tension, effort, struggle; A contest, contention, strife, fight, dispute, controversy

quas Æduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent<sup>I</sup>

=*which the Ædui had had with himself (i.e. the Germans) and with the Sequani* ~*which the Ædui had been maintaining with him and with the Sequani*

auxiliō<sup>II</sup> populi Rōmānī ūsōs esse<sup>III IV</sup>

=*that (the Allobroges) had used, (received) the aid of the Roman people (i.e. asked the Romans for help against the Germans and Sequani)* ~*nor received any from the Roman people in the struggles*

### I.XLIV.XIII.

DĒBĒRE SĒ SUSPICĀRĪ SIMULĀTĀ CÆSAREM AMĪCITIĀ,  
QUOD EXERCITUM IN GALLIĀ HABEAT, SUĪ OPPRIMENDĪ  
CAUSĀ HABĒRE.

"DEBEO SUSPICARI SIMULATA TE AMICITIA QUEM  
EXERCITUM IN GALLIA HABES MEI OPPRIMENDI CAUSA  
HABERE."

Dēbēre<sup>V</sup> sē suspicārī<sup>VI</sup>

=*that he ought to suspect* ~*he must feel suspicious*

---

I **quās...habuissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūsōs esse**. §410

III **ūtōr, -ūsus, -ī**, DEP., to use, make use of, employ, profit by, take advantage of, enjoy, serve oneself with; To experience, undergo, receive, enjoy

IV **ipsōs...ūsōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. §580

VI **suspīcor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (SPEC-), to mistrust, suspect

**simulātā<sup>I</sup> Cæsarem amīcitiā<sup>II</sup>**

=*that Cæsar, with friendship* ~*that Cæsar, though feigning*  
 <*having been*> *feigned* *friendship*

**quod exercitum in Galliā habeat<sup>III</sup>**

=*because he has an army in Gaul* ~*as the reason for his keeping an*  
*army in Gaul*

**suī opprimendī<sup>IV</sup> v causā<sup>VI</sup> [eum] habēre<sup>VII</sup>**

=*(Caesar) is holding (an army* ~*was keeping it with the view of*  
*there) for the sake of* *crushing him*  
*overthrowing him*

#### I.XLIV.XIV.

QUĪ NISI DĒCĒDAT ATQUE EXERCITUM DĒDŪCAT EX HĪS  
 REGIONIBUS, SĒSĒ ILLUM NŌN PRŌ AMĪCŌ SED HOSTE  
 HABITŪRUM.

"TU NISI DECEDES ATQUE EXERCITUM DEDUCES ... EGO TE  
 NON PRO AMICO, SED PRO HOSTE HABEBO."

**Quī<sup>VIII</sup> nisi dēcēdat**

=*who unless he (Cæsar) departs* ~*and that unless he depart*

I **simulō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (SIMILIS), *to make like, imitate, copy, represent; To represent, feign, assume the appearance of, pretend, counterfeit, simulate*

II **simulātā...amīcitiā**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

III **quod...habeat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **opprimō, -essī, -essus, -ere** (OB + PREMO), *to press against, press together, press down, close; To overthrow, overwhelm, crush, overpower, prostrate, subdue*

V **suī opprimendī**, GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE WITH **causā**. §359II & §504

VI ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

VII **Cæsarem...habēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **suspīcari**. §580

atque exercitum dēdūcat<sup>I</sup> ex hīs regionibus<sup>II</sup>

=and (unless he) leads away ~and withdraw his army from  
(his) army from these regions these regions

sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō sed [pro] hoste habitūrum [esse]<sup>III</sup>

=that he would consider him, ~he shall regard him not as a  
not as a friend, but [as] an friend, but as a foe  
enemy

### I.XLIV.XV.

QUOD SĪ EUM INTERFĒCERIT, MULTĪS SĒ NŌBILIBUS  
PRĪNCIPIBUSQUE POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ GRĀTUM ESSE  
FACTŪRUM: ID SĒ AB IPSĪS PER EŌRUM NŪNTIŌS  
COMPERTUM HABĒRE, QUŌRUM OMNIUM GRĀTIAM  
ATQUE AMĪCITIAM EIUS MORTE REDIMERE POSSET.

"QUOD SI TE INTERFECERO, MULTIS (EGO) NOBILIBUS ...  
GRATUM ... FACIAM; ID (EGO) AB IPSIS ... COMPERTUM  
HABEO QUORUM OMNIUM GRATIAM ... TUA MORTE  
REDIMERE POSSUM."

Quod sī eum interfēcerit<sup>IV</sup>

=as to which, if he should kill ~but, if he should put him to  
him death

---

VIII A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.I); *qui...praelium committunt* (Historical Present), *they* (or *and they*)...joined battle (I.XV)

I **quī nisi dēcēdat...dēdūcat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **regiō, -ōnis**, F. (REG-), a direction, line; A portion of country, territory, province, district, region

III **sēsē...habitūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. §580

IV **quod sī...interfēcerit**, FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589



*multis sē nōbilibus<sup>I</sup> principibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum<sup>II</sup>*

*=he would do a favour for many nobles and leaders of the Roman people*

*~he should do what would please many of the nobles and leading men of the Roman people*

*id<sup>III</sup> sē ab ipsīs<sup>IV</sup> per eōrum nūntiōs compertum<sup>V</sup> habēre<sup>VII</sup>*

*=that he has it, <having been> found out through their messengers from themselves*

*~he had assurance of that from themselves through their messengers*

*quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā eius morte<sup>VII</sup> redimere<sup>VIII</sup> posset<sup>IX</sup>*

*=that the gratitude and friendship of all whom, he was be able to buy back by his (Cæsar's) death*

*~and could purchase the favor and the friendship of them all by his [Cæsar's] death*

**I** *nōbilibus principibusque*, DAT. WITH ADJ. *grātum*. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APUS; AMICUS, INIMICUS, INFESTUS, INVISUS, MOLESTUS; IDONEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS; UTILIS, INUTILIS; AFFINIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICINUS; PAR, DISPAR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IUCUNDUS, GRATUS; NOTUS, IGNOTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

**II** *sē...factūrum*, INDIR. DISC. §580

**III** the Neuter Singular and Neuter Plural of *hic, ille*, and *is* is frequently used with the meaning *this (thing), that (thing), it, these things, those things*; a Noun may sometimes be supplied in translation. Thus, *id quod*, *that which* (I.V); *Id eis persuasit, he persuaded them (to) that course* (I.II); *ilia esse vera, that those statements were true* (I.XX)

**IV** *ab ipsīs*, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

**V** *comperiō, -perī, -pertus, -īre* (COM + PERIO), *to obtain knowledge of, find out, ascertain, learn*

**VI** *sē...habēre*, INDIR. DISC. §580

**VII** ABL. OF MEANS. §409

**VIII** *redimō, -ēmī, -ēmtus, -ere* (RED- + EMO), *to buy back, repurchase, redeem*

**IX** *quōrum...posset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

## I.XLIV.XVI.

QUOD SĪ DISCESSISSET ET LĪBERAM POSSESSIŌNEM  
GALLIÆ SIBI TRĀDIDISSET, MAGNŌ SĒ ILLUM PRÆMIŌ  
REMŪNERĀTŪRUM ET QUÆCUMQUE BELLA GERĪ VELLET  
SINE ŪLLŌ EIUS LABŌRE ET PERĪCULŌ CŌNFECTŪRUM.

"QUOD SI DISCESSERIS ET ... POSSESSIONEM GALLIÆ MIHI  
TRADIDERIS, MAGNO EGO TE PRÆMIO REMUNERABO, ET  
QUÆCUMQUE BELLA GERI VOLES SINE ULLO TUO LABORE  
... CONFICIAM."

Quod sī discessisset

=as to which, if he should have ~but, if he would depart  
departed

et liberam possēssiōnem Galliæ sibi<sup>I</sup> trādidisset<sup>II III</sup>

=and (if) he should have handed ~and surrender to him the free  
over to him the free possession possession of Gaul  
of Gaul

magnō sē illum [Cæsarem] præmiō<sup>IV</sup> remūnerātūrum [esse]<sup>V VI</sup>

=that he would remunerate him ~he would recompense him with  
(Cæsar) with a great reward a great reward

---

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **trādidisset**. §370

II **trādō, didī, ditus, ere** (TRANS + DO), to give up, hand over, deliver, transmit, surrender, consign

III **quod sī discessisset...trādidisset**, FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **remūneror, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (RE + MŪNEROR), to repay, reward, recompense, remunerate

VI **sē...remūnerātūrum**, INDIR. DISC. §580

et quaecumque bella gerī vellet<sup>I II</sup>

=and whatever wars he (Cæsar)  
wished to be waged

~and whatever wars he wished  
to be carried on

sine ullō eius labōre<sup>III</sup> et periculō<sup>IV</sup> cōfectūrum [esse]<sup>V VI</sup>

=that he would execute (those  
wars), without any labor or risk  
of him (Cæsar)

~would bring to a close without  
any trouble or risk on the part of  
Cæsar

---

I IMPERF. SUBJ. ACT. due to ōrātiō obliqua; translate as if in IMPERF. ACT. indic.

II **quaecumque...vellet**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **labor, -ōris**, M. (LAB-), labor, toil, exertion; Drudgery, hardship, fatigue, distress, trouble, pain, suffering

IV **periculum, -ī**, N. (PAR-), a trial, experiment, attempt, test, proof, essay; Risk, hazard, danger, peril

V **cōficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (COM- + FACIO), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil

VI INDIR. DISC. §580



# I.XLV



CÆSAR DECLINES TO MAKE AN CONCESSIONS.



## I.XLVI.



MULTA AB CÆSARE IN EAM SENTENTIAM DICTA  
SUNT QUĀRĒ NEGŌTIŌ DĒSISTERE NŌN  
POSSET: NEQUE SUAM NEQUE POPULĪ  
RŌMĀNĪ CŌNSUĒTUDINEM PATĪ UTĪ OPTIMĒ  
MERITŌS SOCIŌS DĒSERERET, NEQUE SE IŪDICĀRE  
GALLIAM POTIUS ESSE ARIOVISTI QUAM POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ.

"... NEQUE MEA NEQUE POPULI ROMANI CONSUEUDO  
PATITUR UTI OPTIME MERITOS SOCIOS DESERAM, NEQUE  
EGO IUDICO GALLIAM POTIUS ESSE ARIOVISTI QUAM  
POPULI ROMANI."

Multa ab Cæsare<sup>I</sup> in eam sententiam<sup>II</sup> dicta sunt

=many things were said by ~many things were stated by  
Cæsar in this sentiment Cæsar to the effect [to show]

quārē<sup>III</sup> negōtiō<sup>IV</sup> dēsistere nōn posset

=(namely,) why he was not able ~why he could not waive the  
to desist from business business

---

I **ab Cæsare**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

II **sententiā, -ae**, F. (FROM SENTIO), *a way of thinking, opinion, judgment, sentiment; a purpose, determination, decision, will, etc.*

neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōsuētudinem patī<sup>I</sup>

=(and) that neither his own ~and that neither his nor the  
(custom) nor the custom of the Roman people's practice would  
Roman people permitted (him) suffer him

utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret<sup>II III</sup>

=that he should abandon (his) ~to abandon most meritorious  
most meritorious allies allies

neque se iūdicāre<sup>IV</sup>

=that nor is he judging ~nor did he deem

Galliam potius esse<sup>V</sup> Ariovisti quam populī Rōmānī<sup>VI</sup>

=that Gaul is of Ariovistus ~that Gaul belonged to  
rather than of the Roman people Ariovistus rather than to the  
Roman people

III **quārē...posset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

IV ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

I **cōsuētudinem patī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicta sunt**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **utī...dēsereret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

III **dēsēro, -rūi, -rtum, -ere** (DE + SĒRO), to undo or sever one's connection with another; hence, with esp. reference to the latter, to leave, forsake, abandon, desert, give up

IV **sē iudicāre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **Galliam...esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iudicāre**. §580

## I.XLV.II.

BELLŌ SUPERĀTŌS ESSE ARVERNŌS ET RUTĒNŌS AB Q. FABIŌ MAXIMŌ, QUIBUS POPULUS RŌMĀNUS IGNŌVISSET NEQUE IN PRŌVINCIAM REDĒGISSET NEQUE STĪPENDIUM IMPOSUISSET.

"BELLO SUPERATI SUNT ARVERNI ET RUTENI AB Q. FABIO MAXIMO, QUIBUS POPULUS ROMANUS IGNOVIT NEQUE IN PROVINCIAM REDEGIT NEQUE STIPENDIUM IMPOSUIT."

Bellō<sup>I</sup> superātōs esse<sup>II</sup> Arvernōs et Rutēnōs<sup>III</sup> ab Q[uīntō]<sup>IV</sup> Fabiō<sup>V</sup> Maximō<sup>VI VII</sup>

=that the Arverni and the Ruteni had been overcome by war by Q[uintus] Fabius Maximus ~that the Arverni and the Ruteni had been subdued in war by Quintus Fabius Maximus

---

VI **Ariovisti...populī Rōmānī**, PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE DENOTES THE PERSON OR THING TO WHICH AN OBJECT, QUALITY, FEELING, OR ACTION BELONGS. NOTE 1. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE MAY DENOTE (1) THE ACTUAL OWNER (AS IN ALEXANDER'S DOG) OR AUTHOR (AS IN CICERO'S WRITINGS), OR (2) THE PERSON OR THING THAT POSSESSES SOME FEELING OR QUALITY OR DOES SOME ACT (AS IN CICERO'S ELOQUENCE, THE STRENGTH OF THE BRIDGE, CATILINE'S EVIL DEEDS). IN THE LATTER USE IT IS SOMETIMES CALLED THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE; BUT THIS TERM PROPERLY INCLUDES THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE AND SEVERAL OTHER GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS (NEARLY ALL, IN FACT, EXCEPT THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, §347). II. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE OFTEN STANDS IN THE PREDICATE, CONNECTED WITH ITS NOUN BY A VERB (PREDICATE GENITIVE). §343II

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **superātōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicta sunt**. §580

III **Rutēnī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a tribe on the borders of the province

IV **Quīntus, -ī**, M., As a Roman praenomen (orig. the fifth-bron?)

V **Fabius, -ī**, M., a Roman gentile name—Esp. *Quinus Fabius Maximus* (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone; *Gaius Fabius*, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul; *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion

VI **ab Q. Fabiō Maximō**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

VII **Maximus, -ī**, M. (SUP. OF MAGNUS, AS NOUN), a Roman family name

quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset<sup>VIII IX</sup>

=(and) to whom (the Arverni and the Ruteni) the Roman people had pardoned  
~and that the Roman people had pardoned them

neque [eōs] in prōvinciam<sup>III</sup> redēgisset<sup>IV V</sup>

=nor had (the Roman people) reduced [them] into a province  
~and had not reduced them into a province

neque stīpendium imposuisset<sup>VI</sup>

=nor had (the Roman people) imposed a tribute (upon them)  
~or imposed a tribute upon them

### I.XLV.III.

QUOD SĪ ANTĪQUISSIMUM QUODQUE TEMPUS SPECTĀRĪ  
OPORTĒRET, POPULĪ ROMĀNĪ IŪSTISSIMUM ESSE IN  
GALLIĀ IMPERIUM: SĪ IŪDICĪUM SENĀTŪS OBSERVĀRĪ  
OPORTĒRET, LĪBERAM DĒBĒRE ESSE GALLIAM, QUAM  
BELLŌ VICTAM SUĪS LĒGIBUS ŪTĪ VOLUISSET.

---

VIII **ignōscō, -nōvī, -nōtus, -ere** (IN + (G)NOSCO), *to pardon, forgive, excuse, overlook, allow, indulge, make allowance*

IX **quibus...ignōvisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

III Forum Note: This probably just means that their territory had not been annexed by Rome in 121 BC and transformed into another transalpine province like Gallia Narbonensis, but that they had remained independent.

IV **redigō, -ēgī, -āctus, -ere** (RED- + AGO), *to drive back, force back, lead back, bring back; To bring down, bring, reduce, force, compel, subdue*

V **quibus...imposuisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI **quibus...imposuisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583



"QUOD SI ANTIQUISSIMUM QUODQUE TEMPUS SPECTARI OPORTET, POPULI ROMANI IUSTISSIMUM EST IN GALLIA IMPERIUM; SI IUDICIUM SENATUS OBSERVARI OPORTET, LIBERA DEBET ESSE GALLIA, QUAM BELLO VICTAM SUIS LEGIBUS UTI VOLUERIT."

Quod sī antīquissimum quodque<sup>I</sup> tempus<sup>II</sup> spectārī oportēret<sup>III</sup>

=<as to> which (but), if it ~and if the most ancient period  
behooved each most ancient was to be regarded  
time to be considered

populī Romānī iūstissimum esse<sup>IV</sup> in Galliā imperium

=(then) the empire of the Roman ~then was the sovereignty of the  
people was the most just in Gaul Roman people in Gaul most iust

sī iūdicium senātūs<sup>V</sup> observārī<sup>VI</sup> oportēret<sup>VII</sup>

=if the it behooved the ~if the decree of the Senate was  
judgement of the Senate to be to be observed  
observed

---

I Sometimes the Indefinite Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, as, *each*, is used with a Superlative to designate a Class, or with a Numeral Ordinal to indicate a Proportion; thus, *nobilissimi cuiusque liberos*, the children of every man of high rank (I.XXXI); *decimum quemque militem*, one soldier in ten, Lit. *each tenth soldier* (V.LII)

II **antīquissimum quodque tempus**, SG. ACC., SUBJ. OF **spectārī**

III **quod sī...oportēret**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

IV APODOSIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V **iūdicium senātūs**, SG. ACC., SUBJ. OF **observārī**

VI **observō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (OB + SERVŌ), *to watch, note, heed, observe, take notice of, attend to*

VII **sī...oportēret**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

liberam dēbēre esse<sup>viii</sup> Galliam

=(then) Gaul ought to be free

~then ought Gaul to be free

quam bellō<sup>ii</sup> victam<sup>iii</sup> [populus Rōmānus] suīs lēgibus<sup>iv</sup> ūtī<sup>v</sup>  
voluisset<sup>vi</sup>

=(Gaul) which (although),  
<having been> conquered by  
war, [the Roman people] had  
wished to employ its own laws

~which, although it had been  
conquered, it had been about to  
employ its own laws

---

VIII APODOSIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III PPP. OF *vincō*

IV **suīs legibus**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūtī**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

V PRES. INF. PASS. OF THE V. *ūtor*

VI **quam...voluisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

# I.XLVI



THE CONFERENCE IS DISRUPTED BY AN ATTACK.



## I.XLVII.



UM HÆC IN COLLOQUIŌ GERUNTUR, CÆSARĪ  
NŪNTIĀTUM EST EQUITĒS ARIOVISTĪ PROPIUS  
TUMULUM ACCĒDERE ET AD NOSTRŌS  
ADEQUITĀRE, LAPIDĒS TĒLAQUE IN NOSTRŌS  
COICERE.

Dum hæc in colloquiō geruntur

=while these things are being  
transacted in the conference

~while these things are being  
transacted in the conference

Cæsarī nūntiātum est

=it was announced to Cæsar

~it was announced to Cæsar

equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum<sup>I</sup> accēdere<sup>II</sup>

=that the cavalry of Ariovistus  
was approaching nearer the  
mound

~that the cavalry of Ariovistus  
were approaching nearer the  
mound

---

I **propius**, TAKING ROLE OF A PRÆP. TO ACC. **tumulum**. CERTAIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES ARE SOMETIMES USED AS PREPOSITIONS: THE ADVERBS PRĪDIĒ, POSTRĪDIĒ, PROPIUS, PROXIMĒ, LESS FREQUENTLY THE ADJECTIVES PROPĪOR AND PROXIMUS, MAY BE FOLLOWED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §432

II **equitēs...accēdere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

et ad nostrōs adequitāre<sup>I II</sup>

=and that (they) were riding ~and were riding up to our men  
towards our men

lapidēs<sup>III</sup> tēlaque in nostros coicere<sup>IV V VI</sup>

=(and) that (they) were throwing ~and casting stones and  
stones and missiles at our men weapons at them

## I.XLVI.II.

CÆSAR LOQUENDĪ FĪNEM FACIT SĒQUE AD SUŌS RECĒPIT  
SUĪSQUE IMPERĀVIT NĒ QUOD OMNĪNŌ TĒLUM IN  
HOSTĒS REICERENT.

Cæsar loquendī<sup>VII</sup> fīnem facit

=Cæsar makes an end of ~Cæsar made an end of his  
speaking speaking

sēque ad suŏs recēpit

=and he took himself back to his ~and betook himself to his men  
own men

suīsque imperāvit

=and he ordered his own men ~and commanded them

---

I **ādēquīto, āvi, ātum, āre** (ĀD + ĒQUĪTO), WITH **ad.**, To ride to or toward a place, to gallop up to

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum est.** §580

III **lapis, -idis**, M., a stone

IV **lapidēs tēlaque...coicere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V ALT. FORM OF. **coniācio**

VI **coniācio, -iēci, -iactum, -ere**, To throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, thrust, put, place

VII GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

**nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent<sup>I II</sup>**

=*that they should not throw back any projectile at all at the enemy* ~*that they should by no means return a weapon upon the enemy*

### I.XLVI.III.

NAM ETSĪ SINE ŪLLŌ PERĪCULŌ LEGIŌNIS DĒLĒCTÆ CUM  
EQUITĀTŪ PRĒLIUM FORE VIDĒBAT, TAMEN  
COMMITTENDUM NON PUTĀBAT UT, PULSĪS HOSTIBUS,  
DĪCĪ POSSET EŌS AB SĒ PER FIDEM IN COLLOQUIŌ  
CIRCUMVENTŌS.

**Nam etsī<sup>III</sup>**

=*for though*

~*for though*

---

I **nē...reicerent**, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

II **rēiciō, -rēiēcī, -iectus, -ere** (RE- + IACIO), *to throw back, fling back, hurl back*

III **etsī**, CONJ. (ET + SĪ), *Introducing a concession, though, although, albeit*

sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctæ<sup>I II</sup> cum equitātū praelium fore<sup>III</sup>  
 =that there would be a battle ~that an engagement with the  
 with the cavalry without any cavalry would be without any  
 danger of (to) (his) chosen legion danger to his chosen legion

vidēbat

=he saw

~he was seeing

tamen

=nonetheless

~yet

committendum [esse]<sup>IV</sup>

=that it was <having> to be ~that he ought to fight  
 brought together in a contest (by  
 him)

non putābat

=he did not think

~he did not think

ut

=that

~lest

I SG. GEN. PPP. *dēligō*

II *legiōnis dēlēctæ*, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE *ODIUM CÆSARIS*, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS *ODIUM*, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS *HATE*. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE *AMOR PATRIS*, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

III *praelium fore*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *vidēbat*. §580

IV FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. (SEE CHART §196) & §580

**pulsīs hostibus<sup>I</sup>**

=with the enemy <having been> ~after the enemy were routed  
repulsed

**dīcī posset<sup>II</sup>**

=it might be able to be said ~it might be said

**eōs ab sē<sup>III</sup> per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs [esse]**

=that those men were encircled ~that they had been deceived by  
by him (Cæsar) through the him under the pretence of faith  
(misplaced) faith (in him) in the in a conference  
conference

#### I.XLVI.IV.

POSTEĀQUAM IN VULGUS MĪLITUM ĒLĀTUM EST QUĀ  
ARROGANTIĀ IN COLLOQUIŌ ARIOVISTUS ŪSUS OMNĪ  
GALLIĀ RŌMĀNĪS INTERDĪXISSET, IMPETUMQUE IN  
NOSTRŌS EIUS EQUITĒS FĒCISSENT, EAQUE RES  
COLLOQUIUM UT DIRĒMISSET, MULTŌ MAIOR ALACRITĀS  
STUDIUMQUE PUGNANDĪ MAIUS EXERCITUĪ INIECTUM  
EST.

---

I **pulsīs hostibus**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II **ut...posset**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §56  
3

III **ab sē**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

Posteā<sup>I</sup> quam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est

=*after that, it was carried out among the multitude of soldiers* ~*when it was spread abroad among the common soldiery*

quā arrogantīā<sup>II</sup> in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā<sup>III</sup> Rōmānīs<sup>IV</sup> interdīxisset<sup>V VI</sup>

=*with which haughtiness Ariovistus employed in the conference, (and how) he had forbidden the Romans from all Gaul* ~*with what haughtiness Ariovistus had behaved at the conference, and how he had ordered the Romans to quit Gaul*

impetumque in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent<sup>VII</sup>

=*and (how) his cavalry had made an attack against our men* ~*and how his cavalry had made an attack upon our men*

---

I **posteā** (OR **post eā**) ADV., *after this, after that, hereafter, thereafter, afterwards, later*; WITH **quam**, *after that*

II **quā arrogantīā**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūsus**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

III **omnī Galliā**, ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

IV DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

V **interdicō, -dixī, -dictus, -ere** (INTER + DĪCŌ), *to interpose by speaking, forbid, prohibit, interdict*

VI **quā arrogantīā...interdīxisset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VII **ut...fēcissent, ut** = *how*, INDIR. QUESTION. §573



eaque res colloquium ut<sup>I</sup> dirēmisset<sup>II</sup> <sup>III</sup>

=and (how) this thing had ~and how this had broken off the  
broken off the conference conference

multō<sup>IV</sup> maior alacritās<sup>V</sup> studiumque pugnandī<sup>VI</sup> maius exercitū<sup>VII</sup>  
iniectum est<sup>VIII</sup>

=by much, a greater alacrity and ~a much greater alacrity and  
a greater zeal of fighting was eagerness for fighting was  
cast on to (our) army infused into our army

- 
- I **ut** (or **utī.**), AS ADV. OF MANNER. INTERROG. (= *quomodo*), *how, in what way or manner*
- II **dirimō, -ēmī, -ēemptus, -ere** (DIS- + EMO), *to take apart, part, separate, divide, cut off*; Fig., *to break off, interrupt, disturb, put off, delay*
- III **ut...dirēmisset**, *ut* = *how*, INDIR. QUESTION. §573
- IV ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414
- V **alacritās, -ātis**, F. (ALACER), *liveliness, ardor, eagerness, alacrity, cheerfulness, encouragement*
- VI GEN. OF THE GERUND. §504
- VII DAT. OF REF. §376
- VIII **iniciō, iēcī, iectus, -ere** (IN + IACIO), *to throw in, put in, hurl upon, put on, cast on, set into*; Fig., *to bring into, inspire, suggest, impress, infuse, occasion, cause*



# I.XLVII



## ARIOVISTUS REOPENS NEGOTIATIONS.



### I.XLVII.I.



ĪDUŌ POST ARIOVISTUS AD CÆSAREM  
LĒGĀTŌS MITTIT: VELLE SĒ DĒ EĪS RĒBUS QUÆ  
INTER EŌS AGĪ CĒPTÆ NEQUE PERFECTÆ  
ESSENT AGERE CUM EŌ: UTĪ AUT ITERUM  
COLLOQUIŌ DIEM CŌSTITUERET AUT, SĪ ID MINUS  
VELLET, E SUIS LĒGĀTĪS ALIQUEM AD SĒ MITTERET.

**Bīduō post<sup>I</sup> Ariovistus ad Cæsarem lēgātōs mittit**

=later by two days, Ariovistus  
sends ambassadors to Cæsar

~two days after, Ariovistus  
sends ambassadors to Cæsar

**[dixit] velle<sup>II</sup> sē dē eīs rēbus**

=[he said] that he wished /to  
deliberate with that man/ about  
those things

~to state that he wished about  
those matters

---

I ***bīduō post***, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II ***velle sē***, INDIR. DISC. IMPLIED FROM ***lēgātōs mīsit***. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

quæ inter eōs agī cœptæ [essent]<sup>I</sup>

=(those things) which had been begun to be deliberated between those men ~which had been begun to be treated of between them

agere cum eō

=to deliberate with him ~to treat with him

neque perfectæ essent

=and had not been concluded ~but had not been concluded

[et rogāvit] utī aut iterum colloquiō<sup>II</sup> diem cōstitueret

=[and he asked] that he would either again set a day for a conference ~[and to beg] that he would either again appoint a day for a conference

aut

=or ~or

sī id minus [facere] vellet<sup>III</sup>

=if he less wished [to do] that ~if he were not willing to do that

---

I quæ...cœptæ...perfectæ essent, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

II DAT. OF PURP. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

III sī...vellet, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

e suis<sup>I</sup> lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret<sup>II</sup>

=that he would send one from ~that he would send one of his  
his own officers (as an [officers] as an ambassador to  
ambassador) to him him

## I.XLVII.II.

COLLOQUENDĪ CÆSARĪ CAUSA VĪSA NŌN EST, ET EŌ  
MAGIS QUOD PRĪDIĒ EIUS DIĒĪ GERMĀNĪ RETINĒRĪ NŌN  
POTERANT QUĪN IN NOSTRŌS TĒLA COICERENT.

Colloquendī<sup>III</sup> Cæsari causa vīsa nōn est

=it did not seem to Cæsar (a ~there did not appear to Cæsar  
good) cause of talking any good reason for holding a  
conference

et eō magis<sup>IV</sup> quod prīdiē eius diē<sup>V</sup> Germānī retinērī nōn poterant

=and on this account, the more ~and the more so as on the  
because on the day before of this previous day, the Germans could  
day, the Germans were not able not be restrained  
to be restrained

---

I Sometimes *de* or *ex* is used with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with *quidam* and words referring to Number. Thus, *quidam ex his*, some of these (II.XVII); *pauci de nostris*, a few of our men (I.XV)

II FORUM NOTE: I think that *legati* are technically just officers in a high position who are often used as ambassadors. So *e suis legatis aliquem* is here made one of his officers, and as an ambassador is added to clarify for English readers who are unaware that in Roman times these officers were used as ambassadors.

III GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

IV *eō magis*, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

V *prīdiē eius diē*, ablative of time. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

quīn<sup>VI</sup> in nostrōs tēla coicerent<sup>VII</sup>

=that they would not cast ~from casting weapons at our  
projectiles at our men men

### I.XLVII.III.

LĒGĀTUM E SUIS SĒSĒ MAGNŌ CUM PERĪCULŌ AD EUM  
MISSŪRUM ET HOMINIBUS FERĪS OBIECTŪRUM  
EXĪSTIMĀBAT.

Lĕgātum [e suis] sēsē magnō cum perīculō<sup>I</sup> ad eum missūrum  
[esse]

=that he would to send an envoy ~he should not without great  
[from his own (officers)] (as an danger send to him as  
envoy) with great danger to him ambassador one of his [Roman]  
officers

et hominibus ferīs <sup>II</sup>obiectūrum [esse]<sup>III</sup>

=and would throw (him) to ~and should expose him to  
savage men savage men

VI Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne*, *that not*, *quo minus*, *that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quīn*, *that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by *from* with a Participle. Thus, *hos...deterreere ne frumentum conferant*, these through fear were holding back (the people) from furnishing the grain (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quīn...tela conicerent*, could not be restrained from hurling darts (I.XLVII)

VII **quīn...conicerent**, **quīn** CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. §558

I **magnō cum perīculō**, abl. of manner. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

II **hominibus ferīs**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **obiectūrum**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

III **missūrum...obiectūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimābat**. §580

exīstimābat

=*he thought*

~*he thought*

#### I.XLVII.IV.

COMMODISSIMUM VĪSUM EST C. VALERIUM PROCILLUM,  
C. VALERĪ CABŪRĪ FĪLIUM, SUMMĀ VIRTŪTE ET  
HŪMĀNITĀTE ADULĒSCENTEM, CUIUS PATER Ā C.  
VALERIŌ FLACCŌ CĪVITĀTE DŌNĀTUS ERAT, ET PROPTER  
FIDEM ET PROPTER LINGUÆ GALLICÆ SCIENTIAM, QUĀ  
MULTĀ IAM ARIOVISTUS LONGINQUĀ CŌNSUĒTŪDINE  
ŪTĒBĀTUR, ET QUOD IN EŌ PECCANDĪ GERMĀNĪS CAUSA  
NŌN ESSET, AD EUM MITTERE, ET M. MĒTTIUM, QUI  
HOSPITIŌ ARIOVISTĪ ŪTĒBĀTUR.

Commodissimum vīsum est

=(*therefore*) *it seemed most proper*

~(*therefore*) *it seemed most proper*

C[āium] Valerium Procillum, C[āiī] Valerī Cabūrī<sup>I</sup> filium, summā  
virtūte et hūmānitāte<sup>II</sup> adulēscensem

=*Caius Valerius Procillus, the son of Caius Valerius Caburus, an adolescent with the highest courage and refinement*

~*C. Valerius Procillus, the son of C. Valerius Caburus, a young man of the highest courage and accomplishments*

---

I **Caburus, -ī, m.**, the personal name of *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul, made a Roman Citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus

II **summā virtūte et hūmānitāte**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. §415

cuius pater ā C[aiō] Valeriō Flaccō<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> cīvitatē<sup>III</sup> dōnātus erat<sup>IV</sup>

=of whose father had been ~whose father had been  
presented with citizenship by presented with the freedom of  
C[aius] Valerius Flaccus the city by C. Valerius Flaccus

et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicæ scientiam<sup>V</sup>

=both on account of (his) fidelity ~both on account of his fidelity  
and on account of (his) and on account of his knowledge  
knowledge of the Gallic of the Gallic language  
language

quā multā<sup>VI</sup> iam Ariovistus longinquā<sup>VII</sup> cōnsuētūdine<sup>VIII</sup> ūtēbātur

=with which Ariovistus, by long ~which Ariovistus, by long  
custom, was now making use of practice, now employed fluently  
by much

---

I **ā C. Valeriō Flaccō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

II **Flaccus, -i**, M., a Roman name, see Valerius

III TAKES ACC. OF THE PERSON & ABL. OF THE THING. CERTAIN VERBS MAY TAKE EITHER THE DATIVE OF THE PERSON AND THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE THING, OR (IN A DIFFERENT SENSE) THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PERSON AND THE ABLATIVE OF THE THING. SUCH ARE DŌNŌ, IMPERTIŌ, INDUŌ, EXUŌ, ADSPERGŌ, ĪNSPERGŌ, CIRCUMDŌ, AND IN POETRY ACCINGŌ, IMPLICŌ, AND SIMILAR VERBS. §364

IV **dōnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DONUM), To give as a present, present, bestow, grant, vouchsafe, confer

V **scientia, -æ**, F. (SCIENS), a knowing, knowledge, science

VI **quā multā**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūtēbātur**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

VII **longinquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (LONGUS), far removed, far off, remote, distant; Long, of long duration, prolonged, lasting, continued, tedious

VIII **longinquā cōnsuētūdine**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409



et quod in eō peccandī<sup>I</sup> II Germānīs<sup>III</sup> causa nōn esset<sup>IV</sup>

=and because there was not a ~and because in his case the  
cause of doing amiss to the Germans would have no motive  
Germans in him for committing violence

ad eum mittere<sup>V</sup>

=to send to him ~to send to him

et M[arcum] Mēttium<sup>VI</sup> quī hospitio<sup>VII</sup> Ariovistī ūtēbātur

=and (as his colleague) M[arcus] ~and [as his colleague] M.  
Mettius, who was enjoyed the Mettius, who had enjoyed the  
hospitality of Ariovistus hospitality of Ariovistus

## I.XLVII.V.

Hīs MANDĀVIT UT QUÆ DĪCERET ARIOVISTUS  
COGNŌSCERENT ET AD SĒ REFERRENT.

Hīs mandāvit

=he orders those men ~he commissioned them

ut

=that ~that

I **peccō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PIK-, to be angry of), to miss, mistake, do amiss, transgress, commit a fault, offend, sin

II GEN. OF THE GERUND. §504

III DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. §373

IV **quod...esset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V GRAMMATICALLY, THE SUBJ. NOM. OF **vīsum est**

VI **Mēttius, -ī, m.**, a Gaul in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus

VII **hospitiō**, ABL. OF SPECIAL V. **ūtēbātur**. §410

quæ dīceret<sup>I</sup> Ariovistus

=*what (things) Ariovistus said*

~*what Ariovistus had to say*

cognōscerent<sup>II</sup>

=*they should learn*

~*to learn*

et ad sē referrent<sup>III</sup>

=*and that they should report  
back to him (Cæsar)*

~*and to report to him*

## I.XLVII.VI.

QUŌS CUM APUD SĒ IN CASTRĪS ARIOVISTUS  
CŌNSPEXISSET, EXERCITŪ SUŌ PRÆSENTE CONCLĀMĀVIT:  
QUID AD SĒ VENĪRENT?

Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset<sup>IV</sup>

=*(but) when (those men) whom Ariovistus had observed, among himself, in the camp*

~*but when Ariovistus saw them  
before him in his camp*

exercitū suō præsente<sup>V</sup>

=*with his own army <being>  
present*

~*in the presence of his army*

conclāmāvit

=*he (Ariovistus) cried out*

~*he cried out*

---

I *quæ dīceret*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II *ut...cognōscerent*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. §563

III *ut...referrent*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. §563

IV *cum...cōnspexisset*, *cum* CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

V *exercitū suō præsente*, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

Quid<sup>I</sup> ad sē venīrent<sup>II</sup>

=*why should they come to him*      ~*why were they come to him?*

## I.XLVII.VII.

AN SPECULANDĪ CAUSĀ?

An<sup>III</sup> speculandī<sup>IV</sup> v causā

=*or for the sake of spying*      ~*was it perhaps for the purpose of acting as spies?*

## I.XLVII.VIII.

CŌNANTĒS DĪCERE PROHIBUIT ET IN CATĒNĀS COIĒCIT.

Cōnantēs<sup>VI</sup> [eos] dīcere prohibuit

=*he prohibited [those men]*      ~*he stopped them when they (when they were) attempting to were attempting to speak speak*

- 
- I    **quis, quid**, PRON. INTERROG. (CA-), NEUT., *what, what thing?*; TRANSF. *Quid? how? why? wherefore?*
- II    **quid...venīrent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573
- III    The first part of the interrogation is freq. not expressed, but is to be supplied from the context; in this case, an begins the interrog., *or, or rather, or indeed, or perhaps* (but it does not begin an absolute, i.e. not disjunctive, interrog.)
- IV    GEN. OF THE GERUND WITH **causā**. §504
- V    **speculor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (SPECULA), *to spy out, watch, observe, examine, explore*
- VI    A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of Cause, Condition, Opposition, Characterization, or Description. Thus *conantes: when they were attempting* (I.XLVII)

et in catēnās<sup>1</sup> [eos] coiēcit

=and he threw together [those ~and cast them into chains  
men] into chains

---

I     **catēna**, -æ, F. (CAT-), *a chain, fetter, shackle*

# I.XLVIII



ARIORISTUS MOVES CAMP.



## I.XLVIII.I.



ŌDEM DIĒ CASTRA PRŌMŌVIT ET MĪLIBUS  
PASSUUM SEX Ā CÆSARIS CASTRĪS SUB MONTE  
CŌNSĒDIT.

Eōdem diē<sup>I</sup> castra prŏmŏvit<sup>II</sup>

=on the same day he moved the  
camp forward

~the same day he moved his  
camp forward

et mīlibus<sup>III</sup> passuum sex ā Cæsarī castrīs<sup>IV</sup> sub monte cōnsēdit

=and he settled under the foot of  
a hill by six thousands of paces  
from the camp of Cæsar

~and encamped under a hill six  
miles from Cæsar's camp

---

I **eōdem diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **prŏmoveō, -mōvī, -mŏtus, -ēre** (PRŌ + MOVEŌ), to move forward, cause to advance, push onward, advance

III ABL. DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

IV **ā castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

## I.XLVIII.II.

POSTRĪDIĒ EIUS DIĒI PRÆTER CASTRA CÆSARIS SUĀS  
COPIĀS TRĀDŪXIT ET MĪLIBUS PASSUUM DUŌBUS ULTRĀ  
EUM CASTRA FĒCIT, EŌ CŌNSILIŌ UTĪ FRŪMENTŌ  
COMMEĀTŪQUE QUI EX SĒQUANĪS ET ÆDUĪS  
SUPPORTĀRĒTUR CÆSAREM INTERCLŪDERET.

Postrīdiē eius diēi<sup>I</sup> præter castra Cæsaris suās copiās trādūxit

=on the day after of this day, he ~the day following he led his  
led his own troops past the forces past Cæsar's camp  
camp of Cæsar

et mīlibus<sup>II</sup> passuum duōbus ultrā<sup>III</sup> eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō<sup>IV</sup>

=and he made a camp beyond ~and encamped two miles  
him, by two thousand of paces, beyond him with this design  
with this plan

utī<sup>V</sup>

=[namely,] in order that ~that

frūmentō commeātūque<sup>VI</sup>

=from the corn and provisions ~from the corn and provisions

---

I **postrīdiē eius diēi**, abl. of time. §423

II ABL. DEG. OF DIF. §414

III **ultrā**, ADV., *on the other side*; Of time or degree, *beyond, farther, over, more, besides, in addition*

IV **eō cōnsiliō**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V Clauses of Purpose are most often introduced by *ut, uti, in order that, that, or nē, in order that not, lest*, and have their Verb in the Subjunctive

VI **frūmentō commeātūque**, ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

quī<sup>I</sup> ex Sēquanīs et Æduīs supportārētur<sup>II</sup>

=*which were being furnished from the Sequani and the Ædui* ~*which might be conveyed to him from the Sequani and the Ædui*

Cæsarem interclūderet<sup>III</sup>

=*he might shut out Cæsar* ~*he might cut off Cæsar*

### I.XLVIII.III.

EX EŌ DIĒ DIĒS CONTINUŌS QUINQUE CÆSAR PRŌ  
CASTRIS SUAS CŌPIAS PRŌDŪXIT ET ACIEM INSTRŪCTAM  
HABUIT, UT, SĪ VELLET ARIOVISTUS PRĒLIŌ  
CONTENDERE, EĪ POTESTĀS NŌN DEESSET.

- 
- I A Relative referring to two or more Antecedents of different Gender or Number may agree with the nearest Antecedent, or be Masculine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a man, Feminine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a woman and the others things, or Neuter Plural in case only things are denoted; thus, *frumento* (NEUT.) *commeatuque, qui* (M., sg.), *grain and (other) supplies which...* (I.XLVIII)
- II **quī...supportārētur**, SUBJUNCTIVE OF INTEGRAL PART, OR ATTRACTION. A CLAUSE DEPENDING UPON A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE OR AN EQUIVALENT INFINITIVE WILL ITSELF TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IF REGARDED AS AN INTEGRAL PART OF THAT CLAUSE. §593
- III **utī...interclūderet**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

Ex eō diē diēs continuōs<sup>I</sup> quīnque Cæsar prō castrīs<sup>II</sup> suās cōpiās prōdūxit

=*from that day, for five continuous days, Cæsar led forth his own troops before the camp* ~*for five successive days from that day, Cæsar drew out his forces before the camp*

et aciem īnstrūctam habuit

=*and he inserted a battle line* ~*and he had a battle line drawn up*

ut

=*<in order> that* ~*that*

sī vellet<sup>III</sup> Ariovistus prœliō<sup>IV</sup> contendere

=*if Ariovistus is wished to engage in a battle* ~*if Ariovistus should be willing to engage in battle*

eī<sup>V</sup> potestās nōn deesset<sup>VI</sup>

=*an opportunity might not be absent for him* ~*an opportunity might not be wanting to him*

---

I **continuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COM- + TA-), *joining, connecting, uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken*; Fig., of time, successive, continuous

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **sī...vellet**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. II. DESUM TAKES THE DATIVE; SO OCCASIONALLY ABSUM (WHICH REGULARLY HAS THE ABLATIVE). §373II

VI **ut...nōn deesset**, CLAUSE OF PURP. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531



## I.XLVIII.IV.

ARIOVISTUS HĪS OMNIBUS DIĒBUS EXERCITUM CASTRĪS  
CONTINUIT, EQUESTRĪ PRĒLIŌ COTĪDIĒ CONTENDIT.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus<sup>I</sup> exercitum castrīs continuit

=Ariovistus, in all those days, ~Ariovistus all this time kept his  
held (his) army in the camp army in camp

equestri praeliō<sup>II</sup> cotīdiē contendit

=(but) he contended in daily ~but engaged daily in cavalry  
battle of cavalry skirmishes

## I.XLVIII.V.

GENUS HOC ERAT PUGNÆ, QUŌ SĒ GERMĀNĪ  
EXERCUERANT.

Genus<sup>III</sup> hoc erat pugnæ

=the kind of battle // was this ~the method of battle // was this

quō sē Germānī exercuerant<sup>IV</sup>

=in which the Germans had ~in which the Germans had  
trained themselves trained themselves

---

I ***hīs omnibus diēbus***, ABL. OF DUR. OF TIME. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424<sup>II</sup>

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **genus, -eris**, N. (GEN-), a race, stock, family, birth, descent, origin; Of things, a kind, sort, description, class, order, character, division

IV **exerceō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (EX + ARCEO), to drive, keep busy, keep at work, oversee, work, agitate; Fig., to engage busily, occupy, employ, exercise, train, discipline

## I.XLVIII.VI.

EQUITUM MĪLIA ERANT SEX, TOTIDEM NUMERŌ PEDITES  
VĒLŌCISSIMĪ AC FORTISSIMĪ, QUŌS EX OMNĪ CŌPIĀ  
SINGULĪ SINGULŌS SUÆ SALŪTIS CAUSĀ DĒLĒGERANT;  
CUM HĪS IN PRĒLIIS VERSĀBANTUR.

Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem<sup>I</sup> numerō<sup>II</sup> pedites vĕlŏcissimī<sup>III</sup> ac  
fortissimī

=there were six thousands of ~there were 6,000 horse, and  
horse, (and) just as many in just as many very swift and  
number very swift and very courageous foot  
courageous foot soldiers

quŏs ex omnī cŏpiā singulī<sup>IV</sup> singulŏs suæ salūtis<sup>V</sup> causā dĕlēgerant  
=(the foot soldiers,) one of each ~one of whom each of the horse  
whom, (the cavelry,) one at a selected out of the whole army  
time, had chosen out from all the for his own preservation  
troops for the sake of their own  
safety

---

I **totidem**, ADJ. NUM INDECL. (TOT + DEM), *just so many, just as many, the same number of*

II ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

III **vĕlŏx**, **-ŏcis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (VOL-), *swift, quick, fleet, rapid, speedy*

IV PL. M. NOM. OF *singulus*

V **suæ salūtis**, GEN. WITH **causā**. PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING; THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ, GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF; ERGŌ, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE ĪNSTAR, LIKE; ALSO WITH PRĪDIĒ, THE DAY BEFORE; POSTRĪDIĒ, THE DAY AFTER; TENUS, AS FAR AS. §359

*cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur<sup>I</sup>*

*=they were engaged with these  
(foot soldiers) in battles*

*~by these [foot] they were  
constantly accompanied in their  
engagements*

## I.XLVIII.VII.

AD EŌS SĒ EQUITĒS RECIPIĒBANT: HĪ, SĪ QUID ERAT  
DŪRIUS, CONCURRĒBANT; SĪ QUĪ GRAVIŌRE VULNERE  
ACCEPTŌ EQUŌ DĒCIDERAT, CIRCUMSISTĒBANT; SĪ QUŌ  
ERAT LONGIUS PRŌDEUNDUM AUT CELERIUS  
RECIPIENDUM, TANTA ERAT HŌRUM EXERCITĀTIŌNE  
CELERITĀS UT IUBĪS EQUŌRUM SUBLEVĀTĪ CURSUM  
ADÆQUĀRENT.

*Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant*

*=to these men (i.e. the foot  
soldiers) the horse were taking  
back themselves*

*~to these the horse retired*

*hī*

*=these men (horse men)*

*~these*

*sī quid erat dūrius<sup>II III</sup>*

*=if anything was more hard*

*~on any emergency*

---

I **versō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (VERTO), to turn often, keep turning, handle, whirl about, turn over; In gen., to be; to be circumstanced or situated; In partic., to occupy or busy one's self with any action, to be engaged in any thing

II SG. NEUT. PRED. NOM. COMP. *dūrus*

III **dūrus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., *hard* (to the touch); PL. N. AS SUBST., *hardships, difficulties*

concurrēbant<sup>I II</sup>

=they ran together

~rushed together in hostility

sī quī

=if any one

~if any one

graviōre vulnere acceptō<sup>III</sup>

=with a very grave wound  
<having been> received

~upon receiving a very severe  
wound

equō<sup>IV</sup> dēciderat<sup>V</sup>

=should fall from (his) horse

~had fallen from his horse

[eum] circumsistēbant<sup>VI VII</sup>

=they stood around [him]

~they stood around him

---

I **sī...erat...concurrēbat**, SIMPLE PAST COND. (SEE CHART §514)

II **concurrō, -curri, -cursus, -ere** (CON + CURRŌ), to run together, assemble, flock together; In partic. MILIT., to rush together in hostility, to engage in combat, to join battle, to fight

III **graviōre vulnere acceptō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

IV ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

V **dēcidō, cidi, —, -ere** (DE + CADO), to fall down, fall off, fall away

VI **sī...dēciderat...circumsistēbant**, SIMPLE PAST COND. (SEE CHART §514)

VII **circumsistō, -steti, -status, -ere** (CIRCUM + SISTŌ), to take one's stand around, surround, stand around

*sī quō<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> erat longius [sibi] prōdeundum<sup>III</sup>*

*=if it was <having> to be ~if they needed to advance  
advanced more far (than usual) somewhat further than usual to  
to anywhere [by him] any place*

*aut celerius recipiendum [erat]<sup>IV</sup>*

*=or (if) it was <having> to be ~or if they had to retreat more  
taken back more quickly (by them) rapidly*

*tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne<sup>V</sup> celeritās<sup>VI</sup>*

*=the swiftness of these men (foot soldiers) was so great from practice, was  
(because) of (their) training their swiftness*

---

I FORUM NOTE: I'd interpret *quo* as meaning *to where*. Remember that after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne* (and a few other things), *quis*, *quid*, *quando*, *quot*, *quotiens*, *quo*, and any of those types of words, are indefinite (*si quis* = *if anyone*, *si quid* = *if anything*, *si quando* = *if at some time*, etc.) so, *si quo erat longius prōdeundum* as, *if they needed to advance somewhat far(ther than usual) to anywhere*

II **quō**, ADV. AND CONJ. DAT. AND ABL. (OF *qui*), LOCAT. AND ABL. USES, of place, where, in what place, in what situation; INDEF., AFTER **si** or **ne**, any whither, to any place, in any direction

III SEE V. *eō*

IV **sī...erat...prōdeundum...recipiendum...erat**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN SIMPLE PAST COND. (SEE CHART §196) & (SEE CHART §514)

V ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **celeritās, -ātis**, F. (CELER), *swiftness, quickness, speed, celerity*

ut iubis<sup>I</sup> <sup>II</sup> equōrum sublevātī cursum<sup>III</sup> adæquārent<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup>

=*that, (the men,) <having been> ~that, supported by the manes of*  
*supported by the manes of the the horses, they could keep pace*  
*horses, equalled (their) speed with their speed*

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **iūba, -æ**, F., the flowing hair on the neck of an animal, *the mane*

III **cursus, -ūs**, M. (CEL-), *a running, course, way, march, passage, voyage, journey*

IV **ut...adæquārent**, CLAUSE OF RES. §536

V **adæquō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (AD + ÆQUŌ), *to make equal, equalize, level with*

# I.XLIX



CÆSAR FORTIFIES A CAMP BEYOND ARIOVISTUS.



## I.XLIX.I.



BI EUM CASTRIS SĒ TENĒRE CÆSAR INTELLĒXIT, NĒ DIUTIUS COMMEĀTŪ PROHIBĒRĒTUR, ULTRĀ EUM LOCUM, QUŌ IN LOCŌ GERMĀNĪ CŌNSĒDERANT, CIRCITER PASSŪS SESCENTŌS AB HĪS, CASTRIS IDONEUM LOCUM DĒLĒGIT ACIĒQUE TRIPLICĪ ĪNSTRŪCTĀ AD EUM LOCUM VĒNIT.

Vbi

=*when*

~*when*

eum castris<sup>I</sup> sē tenēre

=*that he (Ariovistus) held himself in the camp*

~*that Ariovistus kept himself in camp*

Cæsar intellēxit<sup>II</sup>

=*Cæsar understood*

~*Cæsar perceiving*

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II ***eum...tenēre***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***intellēxit***. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

*nē diutius commeātū<sup>I</sup> prohibērētur<sup>II</sup>*

=<in order> that he might not be held back any longer from provisions ~so that he might not any longer be cut off from provisions

*ultrā eum locum*

=beyond that place

~beyond that place

*quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant*

=in which place the Germans had settled ~where the Germans had encamped

*circiter passūs sescentōs ab hīs, castrīs<sup>III</sup> idoneum<sup>IV</sup> locum dēlēgit*

=he chose an ideal place for the camp /beyond that place/ /in which the Germans had settled/ around six-hundred of paces from those men ~chose a convenient position for a camp // at about 600 paces from them

*aciēque triplici īnstrūctā<sup>V</sup> ad eum locum vēnit*

=and with a triple battle line <having been> inserted, he came to that place ~and having drawn up his army in three lines, marched to that place

I ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

II *nē...prohibērētur*, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURP. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UT) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

III DAT. OF PURP. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

IV *idōneus*, -a, -um, ADJ., fit, meet, proper, becoming, suitable, apt, capable, convenient, sufficient

V *aciēque triplici īnstrūctā*, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420



## I.XLIX.II.

PRĪMAM ET SECUNDAM ACIEM IN ARMĪS ESSE, TERTIAM  
CASTRAM MŪNĪRE IUSSIT.

**Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse<sup>I</sup>**

=*the first and second battle line*  
*to be in arms*

~*the first and second lines to be*  
*under arms*

**tertiam castra mūnīre<sup>II</sup>**

=(*and he ordered*) *the third to*  
*fortify the camp*

~*the third to fortify the camp*

**iussit**

=*he (Cæsar) ordered*

~*he ordered*

**[Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs**

=*this place // around six-hundred*  
*of paces from the enemy*

~*this place // from the enemy*  
*about 600 paces*

**utī dictum est**

=(*this place*) *as has been said*

~*as has been stated*

**ab erat]**

=*was away*

~*was distant*

## I.XLIX.III.

EŌ CIRCITER HOMINUM NUMERO SĒDECIM MĪLIA  
EXPEDITA CUM OMNĪ EQUITĀTŪ ARIOVISTUS MĪSIT, QUÆ  
CŌPLÆ NOSTRŌS PERTERRĒRENT ET MŪNĪTIONE  
PROHIBĒRENT.

---

I ***prīmam et secundam aciem...esse***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***iussit***.  
§580.

II ***tertiam...munīre***, INDIR. DISC. §580.

Eō<sup>I</sup> circiter hominum numero sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit

*thither, Ariovistus sent lightly-burdened troops, around sixteen-thousands of men in number, with all the cavalry*    *~thither Ariovistus sent light troops, about 16,000 men in number, with all his cavalry*

quæ cōpiæ nostrōs perterrērent<sup>II</sup>

*=which forces should frighten thoroughly our men*    *~which forces were to terrify our men*

et mūnitiōne<sup>III</sup> prohibērent<sup>IV</sup>

*=and they should hinder (them) from fortifying*    *~and hinder them in their fortification*

#### I.XLIX.IV.

NIHILO SĒTIUS CÆSAR, UT ANTE CŌSTITUERAT, DUĀS ACIĒS HOSTEM PRŌPULSĀRE, TERTIAM OPUS PERFICERE IUSSIT.

Nihilō<sup>V</sup> sētius<sup>VI</sup> Cæsar

*=Cæsar, less than nothing*    *~Cæsar nevertheless*

ut ante cōstituerat

*=as he (Cæsar) had before determined*    *~as he had previously arranged*

I **eō**, ADV. (I-), LOCAT. AND ABL. USES, *there, in that place*

II **quæ...perterrērent...**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. THE ABLATIVE QUŌ (= UT EŌ) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531

III ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

IV **quæ...prohibērent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. §531

V ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

VI **sētius**, ADV. COMP. (SEC-), *less, in a less degree*—ONLY WITH NEGATIVES, *nilo setius, nevertheless*

duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre<sup>I</sup>

=/he ordered/ two battle lines to ~two lines to drive off the enemy  
drive off the enemy

tertiam opus perficere<sup>II</sup>

=(and) (he ordered) the third ~the third to execute the work  
(battle line) to complete the  
work

iussit

=(Cæsar) ordered ~ordered

### I.XLIX.V.

MŪNĪTĪS CASTRĪS, DUĀS IBI LEGIŌNĒS RELĪQUIT ET  
PARTEM AUXILIORUM; QUATTUOR RELIQUĀS LEGIONES  
IN CASTRA MAIŌRA REDŪXIT.

Mūnītīs castrīs<sup>III</sup>

=with the camp <having been> ~the camp being fortified  
fortified

duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliorum

=he (Cæsar) left behind two ~he left there two legions and a  
legions and a part of the portion of the auxiliaries  
auxiliaries there

quattuor reliquās legiones in castra maiōra redūxit

=(and) he led back the four ~and led back the other four  
remaining legions into the legions into the larger camp  
larger camp

---

I **duās aciēs...prōpulsāre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **tertiam...perficere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **mūnītīs castrīs**, ABL. ABS. §420



# I.L



## THE GERMANS CONSULT THE SPIRITS.



### I.L.I.



PROXIMŌ DIĒ ĪNSTITŪTŌ SUŌ CÆSAR E  
CASTRĪS UTRĪSQUE CŌPIĀS SUĀS ĒDŪXIT  
PAULUMQUE Ā MAIŌRIBUS CASTRĪS  
PRŌGRESSUS ACIEM ĪNSTRŪXIT; HOSTIBUSQUE  
PUGNANDĪ POTESTĀTEM FĒCIT.

Proximō diē<sup>I</sup> īnstitūtō suō<sup>II</sup> Cæsar e castrīs<sup>III</sup> utrīsque cōpiās suās  
ēdūxit

=on the next day, with his own design, Cæsar led out his own forces from each camp ~the next day, in accordance with his design, Cæsar led out his forces from both camps

- 
- I **proximō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- II **īnstitūtō suō**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- III **ex castrīs**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

paulumque<sup>I</sup> ā maiōribus castrīs<sup>II</sup> prōgressus<sup>III</sup> aciem īnstrūxit  
 =and (he,) <having> advanced a little from the larger camp, drew up a battle line  
 ~and having advanced a little from the larger one, drew up his line of battle

hostibusque<sup>IV</sup> pugnandī<sup>V</sup> potestātem fēcīt  
 =and he made an opportunity of fighting for the enemy  
 ~and gave the enemy an opportunity of fighting

## I.L.II.

VBI NĒ TUM QUIDEM EŌS PRŌDĪRE INTELLĒXIT, CIRCITER  
 MERĪDIĒ EXERCITUM IN CASTRA REDŪXIT.

Vbi  
 =when ~when

nē tum quidem<sup>VI</sup> eŏs prōdīre<sup>VII VIII</sup>  
 =that not even then those men came forth  
 ~that they did not even then come out [from their intrenchments,]

- 
- I **paulum**, ADV. (PAULUS), *a little, somewhat*
- II **ā maiōribus castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- III **prōgredior, -gressus, -ī**, DEP. (PRO + GRADIOR), *to come forth, go forth, go forward, go on, advance, proceed*
- IV DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376
- V SUBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504
- VI *Ne tum quidem, not even then*—**nē** and **quidem** emphasize the intervening word
- VII **nē...prōdīre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellēxit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- VIII **prōdeō, -īi, -itus, -īre** (PRŌ + EŌ), *to go forth, come forth, come forward*

intellēxit

=*he understood*

~*he found*

circiter merīdiēm<sup>I II</sup> exercitum in castra redūxit

=*around mid-day, he led the  
army back into the camp*

~*he led back his army into camp  
about noon*

### I.L.III.

TUM DĒMUM ARIOVISTUS PARTEM SUĀRUM CŌPIĀRUM  
QUÆ CASTRA MINORA OPPUGNĀRET MĪSIT.

Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum

=*then, at length, Ariovistus  
/sent/ part of his own forces*

~*then, at length, Ariovistus // a  
portion of his forces*

quæ castra minora oppugnāret<sup>III</sup>

=*which should attack the lesser  
camp*

~*to attack the lesser camp*

mīsīt

=*sent*

~*sent*

### I.L.IV.

ĀCRITER UTRIMQUE USQUE AD VESPERUM PUGNĀTUM  
EST.

---

I ABL. OF TIME. §423

II **merīdiēs**, ACC. -em, M. (MEDIUS + DIES), *mid-day, noon*

III **quæ...oppugnāret**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBL, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

Ācriter utrimque<sup>I</sup> usque<sup>II</sup> ad vesperum pugnātum est

=it was fought harshly on both sides all the way to the evening ~the battle was vigorously maintained on both sides till the evening

## I.L.V.

SŌLIS OCCĀSŪ SUĀS CŌPIĀS ARIOVISTUS, MULTĪS ET INLĀTĪS ET ACCEPTĪS VULNERIBUS, IN CASTRA REDŪXIT.

Sōlis occāsū<sup>III</sup> suās cōpiās Ariovistus

=on the falling of the sun /with many wounds.../ Ariovistus /led back/ his own troops ~at sunset // Ariovistus // his forces

multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus<sup>IV</sup>

=with many wounds, both <having been> inflicted and <having been> received ~after many wounds had been inflicted and received

in castra redūxit

=led back // into the camp ~led back // into camp

---

I **ūtrinquē**, ADV. (UTERQUE), from or on both sides or parts, on the one side and on the other

II **usquē**, ADV., Lit., all the way to or from any limit of space, time, etc.; Of place, all the way, right on, without interruption, continuously, constantly

III **sōlis occāsū**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

IV **multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420



## I.L.VI.

CUM EX CAPTIVIS QUÆRERET CÆSAR QUAM OB REM ARIOVISTUS PRÆLIŌ NŌN DĒCERTĀRET, HANC REPERIĒBAT CAUSAM, QUOD APUD GERMĀNŌS EA CŌNSUĒTŪDŌ ESSET UT MĀTRĒS FAMILIÆ EŌRUM SORTIBUS ET VĀTICINĀTIŌNIBUS DĒCLĀRĀRENT UTRUM PRÆLIUM COMMITTĪ EX ŪSŪ ESSET NECNE; EĀS ITA DĪCERE: NŌN ESSE FĀS GERMĀNŌS SUPERĀRE, SĪ ANTE NOVAM LŪNAM PRÆLIŌ CONTENDISSENT.

Cum ex captivis quæreret<sup>I</sup> Cæsar

=when Cæsar inquired from the captives

~when Cæsar inquired of his prisoners

quam ob rem<sup>II</sup> Ariovistus præliō<sup>III</sup> nōn dēcertāret<sup>IV V</sup>

=for what thing (reason) Ariovistus did not fight (it) out in a battle

~wherefore Ariovistus did not come to an engagement

hanc [esse] reperiēbat causam

=he ascertained [that] this [was] the reason

~he discovered this to be the reason

---

I **cum...quæreret, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **quam ob rem**, ADV., INTERROG., *for what reason? on what account? wherefore? why?*

III ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **quam ob rem...dēcertāret**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

V **dēcertō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DE + CERTŌ), *In battle, to go through a contest, fight out*

quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset<sup>I</sup>

=(namely,) that among the Germans, the custom was this ~that among the Germans it was the custom

ut mātērēs familiāe eōrum sortibus<sup>II</sup> et vāticinātiōnibus<sup>III</sup> IV  
dēclārārent<sup>V</sup>

=that the mistresses of their family would pronounce by lots ~for their matrons to pronounce from lots and divination and soothsayings

utrum proelium<sup>VI</sup> committī ex ūsū esset<sup>VII</sup> necne<sup>VIII</sup>

=whether or not it was from (of) use (advantage) that a battle be engaged in ~whether it were of benefit to battle should be engaged in or not

eās ita dicere

=that those (mistresses) thus ~that they had said said

I **quod...esset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

II **sors, -tis**, F. (SER-), a lot, consisting of bits of wood from a branch of a fruit-bearing tree, which were scattered at random over a white cloth and then picked up. these were inspired by, 'eddies of rivers and whirlings and noises of currents'

III **sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **vāticinātiō, -ōnis**, F. (VATICINOR), a foretelling, soothsaying, prophesying; a prediction, vaticination

V **ut...dēclārārent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT MAY BE USED SUBSTANTIVELY: AS THE OBJECT OF FACIŌ ETC. (§568) §567

VI SUBJ. ACC. OF **committī**

VII **utrum...esset**, DOUBLE INDIR. QUESTION. IN DOUBLE OR ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS, UTRUM OR -NE, WHETHER, STANDS IN THE FIRST MEMBER; AN, ANNE, OR, ANNŌN, NECNE, OR NOT, IN THE SECOND; AND USUALLY AN IN THE THIRD, IF THERE BE ONE. §335 & §573

VIII **necne**, ADV. (NED + NE), or not, in the second part of an indirect alternative question

**nōn esse fās<sup>I</sup> II Germānōs superāre**

=*that it was not divine law to overcome Germans* ~*that it was not possible that the Germans should conquer*

**sī ante novam lūnam<sup>III</sup> prœliō contendissent<sup>IV</sup>**

=*if they should have contended in a battle before the new moon* ~*if they engaged in battle before the new moon*

---

**I nōn esse fās**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *reperiēbat causam*. §580

**II fās**, (ONLY NOM. AND ACC SG.) N. (FA-), *the dictates of religion, divine law*; In gen. (*justice, equity*, BUT USU. TO BE TRANSLATED AS AN ADJECTIVE); *right, proper, allowable, lawful, fit, permitted*; hence, *possible* (the predominant meaning of the word in prose and poetry)

**III lūna, -ae**, F. (LVC-), *the moon*

**IV sī...contendissent**, PROTASIS OF FUT. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589



# I.LI



## CÆSAR FORCES AN ENGAGEMENT.



### I.LII.



OSTRĪDIĒ EIUS DIĒI CÆSAR PRÆSIDIŌ  
UTRISQUE CASTRIS QUOD SATIS ESSE VĪSUM  
EST RELIQUIT; ĀLĀRIŌS OMNĒS IN  
CŌNSPECTŪ HOSTIUM PRŌ CASTRIS  
MINŌRIBUS CŌSTITUIT, QUOD MINUS MULTITŪDINE  
MĪLITUM LEGIŌNĀRIŌRUM PRŌ HOSTIUM NUMERŌ  
VALĒBAT, UT AD SPECIEM ĀLĀRIIS ŪTERĒTUR; IPSE  
TRIPLICI INSTRŪCTĀ ACIĒ USQUE AD CASTRA HOSTIUM  
ACCESSIT.

Postrīdiē eius diēi Cæsar præsidio utrisque castris<sup>1</sup>

=on the day after of this day, ~the day following, Cæsar // // as  
Cæsar // // for (the purpose of) a guard for both camps  
defense for either camp

quod satis esse vīsum est

=(the defense) which seemed to ~what seemed sufficient  
be enough

---

I ***præsidio utrisque castris***, DOUBLE DAT. CONST. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

[id] reliquit

=left / (the defence) which seemed ~left  
to be enough/ behind

[et deinde] *ālāriōs*<sup>I II</sup> omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs  
minōribus cōstituit

=[and then] (Caesar) stationed ~[and then] drew up all the  
all the auxiliary troops in sight auxiliaries in sight of the enemy,  
of the enemy in front of the in front of the smaller camp  
lesser camp

quod minus multitudine<sup>III</sup> mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium  
numerō valēbat

=because, in <respect to> the ~because he was not very  
multitude of legionary soldiers, powerful in the number of  
he (Caesar) was less strong in legionary soldiers, considering  
comparison with the number of the number of the enemy  
enemy

---

I The light-armed troops were called *ālārī*, because they usually stationed on the wings (*ālæ*) of an army

II **ālārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ALA), *of the wing* (of an army): PL. AS SUBST., *auxiliary troops*

III ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

ut ad<sup>I</sup> speciem<sup>II</sup> ālāriīs<sup>III</sup> ūterētur<sup>IV</sup>

=that (thereby) he might use the  
auxiliary troops for appearance

~that [thereby] he might make  
use of his auxiliaries for  
appearance

ipse

=he himself (Cæsar)

~he himself

triplici īnstrūctā aciē<sup>V</sup>

=with a triple battle-line <having  
been> drawn up (e.g. after a  
battle-line was drawn up...)

~having drawn up his army in  
three lines

usque ad castra hostium accessit

=(Caesar) approached all the  
way to the camp of the enemy

~advanced to the camp of the  
enemy

---

I **ad**, præp. INDECLFORM., With the cause or reason, according to, at, on, in consequence of, for, in order to

II **speciēs** —, acc. -em, f. (SPEC-), a sight, look, view, appearance, aspect, mien

III ABL. WITH THE SPECIAL V. **ūterētur**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

IV **ut...ūterētur**, PURP. CLAUSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTI) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

V **triplici īnstrūctā aciē**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

## I.LI.II.

TUM DĒMUM NECESSÁRIO GERMĀNĪ SUĀS CŌPIĀS  
 CASTRĪS ĒDŪXĒRUNT GENERĀTIMQUE CŌNSTITUĒRUNT  
 PARIBUS INTERVĀLLĪS, HARŪDĒS, MARCOMANŌS,  
 TRIBOCES, VANGIONĒS, NEMETĒS, SEDUSIŌS, SUĒBŌS,  
 OMNEMQUE ACIEM SUAM RĒDĪS ET CARRĪS  
 CIRCUMDEDĒRUNT, NĒ QUA SPĒS IN FUGĀ  
 RELINQUERĒTUR.

Tum dēmum necessariō<sup>I</sup> Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs<sup>II</sup> ēdūxērunt  
 =then, at last, by (because of) ~then at last of necessity the  
 necessity, the Germans drew Germans drew their forces out  
 their own forces out from the of camp  
 camp

generātimque<sup>III</sup> cōstituērunt paribus intervāllīs<sup>IV</sup>  
 =and they (the Germans) ~and disposed them canton by  
 placed /the Harudes, canton, at equal distances  
 Marcomanni.../ by kinds, at  
 equal distances

---

I ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

II ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

III **generātim**, ADV. (GENUS), *by kinds, by species, in classes, in detail; copias eduxerunt, i.e. by nations*

IV **paribus intervāllīs**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429



Harūdēs, Marcomanōs<sup>I</sup>, Triboces<sup>II</sup>, Vangionēs<sup>III</sup>, Nemetēs<sup>IV</sup>,  
Sedusiōs<sup>V</sup>, Suēbōs

=*Harudes, Marcomanni, ~the Harudes, Marcomanni,*  
*Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes, Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes,*  
*Sedusii, Suevi Sedusii, Suevi*

omnemque aciem suam rædis<sup>VI</sup> et carrīs<sup>VII</sup> circumdedērunt

=*and they surrounded all their ~and surrounded their whole*  
*own battle-line with travelling- army with their travelling-*  
*carriages and baggage wagons carriages and wagons*

nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur<sup>VIII</sup>

=*<in order> that not any hope ~so no hope might be left for*  
*might remain in flight flight*

### I.LI.III.

EŌ MULIERĒS IMPOSUĒRUNT, QUÆ AD PRÆLIUM  
PROFICĪSCENTĒS PASSĪS MANIBUS FLENTĒS  
IMPLŌRĀBANT NĒ SĒ IN SERVITŪTEM RŌMĀNĪS  
TRĀDERENT.

I **Marcomannī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

II **Triboces, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg

III **Vangiones, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms

IV **Nemetes, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe on the Rhine

V **Sedusii, -ōrum**, M. PL., a tribe of Germans

VI **ræda, -æ**, F., Celtic, *a travelling-carriage with four wheels*

VII **rædis et carrīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VIII **ne...relinquerētur**, NEG. PURP. CLAUSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

Eō mulierēs imposuērunt

=thither, they placed the women ~there, they placed their women

quæ ad prælium proficiscentēs<sup>I</sup> passīs<sup>II</sup> manibus<sup>III</sup> flentēs implōrābant

=(those women) whom, weepng ~who // as they went forward to  
with hands spread (out), battle  
implored (the soldiers) (who  
were) setting out for battle

nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent<sup>IV</sup>

=that they (the soldiers) might ~not to deliver them into slavery  
not hand themselves (the to the Romans  
weeping women) over into  
servitude to the Romans

---

I PRES. PART. *proficiscor*

II **pandō, -dī, passum, -ere** (PAT-), *spread or open (out), extend*

III **passīs manibus**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **nē...trāderent**, NEG. SUBST. PURP. CLAUSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

# I.LII



DESPERATE FIGHTING, HAND-TO-HAND.



## I.LII.I.



CÆSAR SINGULĪS LEGIŌNIBUS SINGULŌS  
LĒGĀTŌS ET QUÆSTŌREM PRÆFĒCIT, UTĪ EŌS  
TESTĒS SUÆ QUIQUE VIRTŪTIS HABĒRET; IPSE  
Ā DEXTRŌ CORNŪ, QUOD EAM PARTEM  
MINIMĒ FIRMAM HOSTIUM ESSE ANIMADVERTERAT,  
PRÆLIUM COMMISIT.

Cæsar singulīs legiōnibus<sup>I</sup> singulōs lēgātōs et quæstōrem præfēcit  
=Cæsar set over single legions ~Cæsar appointed over each  
lieutenants and questor legion a lieutenant and a questor

utī eōs testēs suæ quisque<sup>II</sup> virtūtis habēret<sup>III</sup>  
=<in order> that each one might ~that each might have them as  
have those men (as) witnesses of witnesses of his own valor  
his own valor

---

I **singulis legiōnibus**, INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP. V. **præfēcit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **quisque**, each, is used in close connection with **sē** and **suus**; *uti eos testes suæ quisque virtutis haberet*, that each might have them as witnesses of his own valor (I.LII)

III **utī...habēret**, CLAUSE OF PURP. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

ipse ā<sup>i</sup> dextrō cornū<sup>ii</sup>

=he (Cæsar) himself // from (the point of view of) the right wing      ~he himself // at the head of the right wing

quod

=because      ~because

eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse<sup>iii</sup>

=that that part of the enemy was the least strong      ~that part of the enemy to be the least strong

animadverterat<sup>iv</sup>

=had considered      ~he had observed

prœlium commisit

=he began the battle      ~began the battle

## I.LII.II.

ITA NOSTRĪ ĀCRITER IN HOSTĒS SIGNŌ DATŌ IMPETUM  
FĒCĒRUNT, ITAQUE HOSTĒS REPENTE CELERITERQUE  
PRŌCURRĒRUNT, UT SPATIUM PĪLA IN HOSTĒS COICIENDĪ  
NŌN DARĒTUR.

---

I *a, ab,* and sometimes *ex* are used to indicate a Local Relation, where we use *on, in,* or *at*; as, *a dextro cornu, on the right wing*, Lit. *from (the point of view of) the right wing* (I.LII)

II *ā dextrō cornū*, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: II. POSITION IS FREQUENTLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ab* (RARELY *ex*), PROPERLY MEANING FROM.V\$429II

III *eam partem...esse*, INDIR. DISC. DEP. ON *animadverterat*. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. \$580

IV *animadvertō, -tī, -sus, -ere* (ANIMUM + ADVERTO), *to direct the mind, give attention to, attend to, consider, regard, observe*

Ita nostrī ācritēr in hostēs signō datō<sup>I</sup> impetum fēcērunt

=thus our men, with the signal ~thus our men, upon the signal  
<having been> given (e.g. by the being given, made an attack  
sound of the trumpet), vigorously upon the enemy  
vigorously made an attack  
against the enemy

itaque hostēs<sup>II</sup> repente<sup>III</sup> celeriterque prōcurrērunt<sup>IV</sup>

=and the enemy so suddenly and ~and the enemy so suddenly and  
(so) quickly ran forward rapidly rushed forward

ut spatium<sup>V</sup> pīla in hostēs coiciendī<sup>VI</sup> nōn darētur<sup>VII</sup>

=that a space of (for) hurling ~that there was no opportunity  
spears against the enemy was for casting the javelins at them  
not given

### I.LII.III.

REIECTĪS PĪLĪS COMMĪNUS GLADIŪS PUGNĀTUM EST.

- 
- I **signō datō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420
- II NOM. PL., SUBJ. OF **prōcurrērunt**
- III **repēns, -entis**, ADJ., sudden, hasty, unexpected, unlooked for; TRANSF., ADV., suddenly, unexpectedly, **rēpentē**
- IV **prōcurro, -cūcurri, -cursum, -ere** (PRŌ + CURRO), to run forth, rush forwards, Lit., freq. of armies
- V SG. NOM., SUBJ. OF **darētur**
- VI Genitive after Nouns and Adjectives, and with *causa* and *gratia* expressing Purpose: war (I.II) *bellandī cupīdī, desirous of waging; Gallīe impugandae causa, in order to attack Gaul* (I.XLIV)
- VII **ut...darētur**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

Reiectis pilis comminus<sup>I</sup> gladiis<sup>II</sup> pugnatum est

=with the javelins <having been> ~throwing aside [therefore] their  
thrown back, it was fought javelins, they fought with  
hand-to-hand by swords swords hand to hand

#### I.LII.IV.

AT GERMĀNĪ CELERITER EX CŌNSUĒTUDINE SUĀ  
PHALANGE FACTĀ IMPETŪS GLADIŌRUM EXCĒPĒRUNT.

At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētudine suā

=but, the Germans, from their ~but the Germans, according to  
own habit, quickly their custom, rapidly

phalange factā<sup>III</sup>

=with a phalanx <having been> ~forming a phalanx  
made

impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt<sup>IV</sup>

=(the Germans) received the ~sustained the attack of our  
attacks of (our) swords swords

#### I.LII.V.

REPERTĪ SUNT COMPLŪRĒS NOSTRĪ MILITES QUI IN  
PHALANGAS ĪNSILĪRENT ET SCŪTA MANIBUS  
REVELLERENT ET DĒSUPER VULNERĀRENT.

---

I **comminus**, ADV. (COM- + MANUS), in close contest, hand to hand, at close quarters

II **reiectis pilis comminus gladiis**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **suā phalange factā**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **excipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (EX + CAPIO), To take out, withdraw; To take up, catch, receive, capture, take; to take upon one's self, to receive, support, sustain (the figure being taken from the reception of an enemy's blows or shots)

Repertī sunt complūrēs<sup>I</sup> nostrī<sup>III</sup> milites

=our several soldiers were found ~there were found very many of  
our soldiers

quī in phalangas īnsilirent<sup>III IV</sup>

=(our several soldiers) who ~who leaped upon the phalanx  
leaped on the phalanxes

et scūta manibus<sup>V</sup> revellerent<sup>VI VII</sup>

=and they pulled away the ~and with their hands tore away  
shields (of the enemies) with the shields  
(their) hands

et dēsuper<sup>VIII</sup> vulnerārent<sup>IX</sup>

=and they wounded (the enemy) ~and wounded the enemy from  
from above overhead

## I.LII.VII.

CUM HOSTIUM ACIĒS Ā SINISTRŌ CORNŪ PULSA ATQUE  
IN FUGAM CONVERSA ESSET, Ā DEXTRŌ CORNŪ  
VEHEMENTER MULTITŪDINE SUŌRUM NOSTRAM ACIEM  
PREMĒBANT.

I SUBJ. NOM., SUBJ. OF **repertī sunt**

II NOM. PL. M. OF ADJ. **complūrēs**

III **quī...īnsilirent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

IV **īnsiliō, -uī, —, -īre** (IN + SALIO), *to leap in, spring up, throw oneself upon, bound, mount*

V ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

VI **quī...revellerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

VII **revellō, -velli, -vulsus, -ere** (RE + VELLŌ), *to pluck away, pull away, tear out, tear off*

VIII **dēsuper**, ADV. (DĒ + SUPER), *Of motion, from above, from overhead*

IX **quī...vulnerārent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō<sup>I</sup> cornū<sup>II</sup> pulsa<sup>III</sup> atque in fugam conversa esset<sup>IV V</sup>

=*although the battle line of the enemy <having been> (was) repulsed from the left wing and was turned into flight* ~*although the army of the enemy was routed on the left wing and wheeled about to flight*

ā dextrō cornū<sup>VI</sup> vehementer multitudine<sup>VII</sup> suōrum nostram aciem premēbant<sup>VIII</sup>

=*they (nonetheless) pressed heavily on our battle-line from the right wing with a multitude of their own (troops)* ~*they [still] pressed heavily on our men from the right wing, by the great number of their troops*

## I.LII.VIII.

ID CUM ANIMADVERTISSET P. CRASSUS ADULĒSCĒNS, QUĪ EQUITĀTUĪ PRÆERAT, QUOD EXPEDĪTIOR ERAT QUAM EĪ QUĪ INTER ACIEM VERSĀBANTUR, TERTIAM ACIEM LABŌRANTIBUS NOSTRĪS SUBSIDIŌ MĪSIT.

I **ā sinistrō cornū**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: II. POSITION IS FREQUENTLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB (RARELY EX). PROPERLY MEANING FROM. §429<sup>II</sup>

II **cornū, -ūs**, N. (CAR-), *a horn, antler*; Of an army, *the wing, extremity, side*

III PPP. OF *pellō*

IV **cum...conversa esset**, *cum* CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE. CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

V PPP. OF *convertō*

VI **ā dextrō cornū**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. §429<sup>II</sup>

VII ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VIII **premō, -essi, -essus, -ere** (PREM-), *to press*; *To press, press upon, urge, drive, importune, pursue, press hard*



Id cum animadvertisset<sup>I</sup> P[ūblius] Crassus adulēscēns<sup>II</sup>

=when P[ublius] Crassus, an ~on observing which, P. Crassus, adolescent, had observed it (this) a young man

quī equitātū<sup>III</sup> prāerat

=(he) whom presided over the ~who commanded the cavalry cavalry

quod expeditior<sup>IV</sup> erat quam eī<sup>V</sup> [erant]

=because he (Crassus) was more ~as he was more disengaged disengaged than those men than [were]

quī inter aciem versābantur

=(those men) who were engaged ~those who were employed in among the battle-line the fight

tertiam aciem [mīlitibus] labōrantibus<sup>VI VII</sup> nostrīs subsidio<sup>VIII IX</sup> mīsit

=he sent the third battle-line for ~sent the third line as a relief to <the purpose of> assistance to our men who were distressed our struggling [soldiers]

I **cum animadvertisset**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **adulēscēns, -entis** (PART. OF *adolesco*), ADJ. WITH COMP, growing, near maturity, young, youthful; SUBST., COMM. GEN., one who has not yet attained maturity, a youth, a young man; a young woman, a maiden (between the *puer* and *juvenis*, from the 15th or 17th until past the 30th year, often even until near the 40th; but the same person is often called in one place *adulescens*, and in another *juvenis*)

III INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP. V. **prāerat**. §370

IV COMP. DEG. OF THE PART. **expeditus**—PRED.-ADJ. AFTER **erat**

V NOM. PL. M.

VI Participle: Expressing Characterization or Description; *victīs*, *venientēs*, those beaten, those coming up, meaning those who had been beaten, those who were coming up (I.XXV)

VII PRES. PART. **labōrō**

---

VIII **labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō**, DOUBLE DAT. CONST. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

IX **subsidium, -ī**, N. (SUB + SED), In order of battle, *the troops in reserve, line of reserve, third line of battle, triarii*; ABSTR., support in battle, *aid, help, relief, succor, assistance*

# I.LIII



CÆSAR IS VICTORIOUS.



## I.LIII.I.



TA PRÆLIUM RESTITÛTUM EST, ATQUE OMNĒS  
HOSTĒS TERGA VERTĒRUNT NEC PRIUS  
FUGERE DĒSTITĒRUNT QUAM AD FLÛMEN  
RHĒNUM MĪLIA PASSUUM EX EŌ LOCŌ  
CIRCITER QUĪNQUE PERVĒNĒRUNT.

Ita prœlium restitûtum est

=thus, the battle was restored

~thereupon the engagement was renewed

atque omnĕs hostĕs terga<sup>1</sup> vertĕrunt

=and all the enemy turned  
(their) backs

~and all the enemy turned their  
backs

nec prius fugere dĕstitĕrunt

=nor did they cease to flee  
earlier

~nor did they cease to flee

---

I **tergum, -i, n.** (TRAG-), the back; WITH *verto* or *do*, to turn the back, turn back, take flight, run away, flee, retreat

quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter  
quīnque pervēnērunt

=*than they arrived at the river* ~*before they arrived at the river*  
*Rhine, around five-thousand of* *Rhine, about fifty miles from*  
*paces from that place* *that place*

### I.LIII.II.

IBI PERPAUCĪ AUT VĪRIBUS CŌNFĪSĪ TRĀNĀRE  
CONTENDĒRUNT AUT LINTRIBUS INVENTĪS SIBI SALŪTEM  
REPPERĒRUNT.

Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus<sup>I</sup> cōnfīsī<sup>II</sup> trānāre<sup>III</sup> contendērunt

=*there, a few men, either* ~*there some few, either relying*  
*<having> trusted in (their)* *on their strength, endeavored to*  
*(bodily) strength, endeavored to* *swim over*  
*swim over*

aut

=*or*

~*or*

lintribus inventīs<sup>IV</sup> <sup>V</sup>

=*with skiffs <having been> found* ~*finding boats*

---

I ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **cōnfīsī**. SEVERAL VERBS ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. THESE ARE ACQUIĒSCŌ, DĒLECTOR, LĀTOR, GAUDEŌ, GLŌRIOR, NĪTOR, STŌ, MANEŌ, FĪDŌ, CŌNFĪDŌ, CŌNSISTŌ, CONTINEOR. §431

II PPP. OF **cōnfīdō**

III **trānō**, -**āvī**, —, -**āre** (TRANS + NO), *to swim over, swim across, swim through*

IV **lintribus inventīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

V **inveniō**, -**vēnī**, -**ventus**, -**ire** (IN + VENIO), *to come upon, find, meet with, light upon*

sibi salūtem repperērunt

=they found safety for ~procured their safety themselves

### I.LIII.III.

IN HĪS FUT ARIOVISTUS, QUĪ NĀVICULAM DĒLIGĀTAM  
AD RIPAM NACTUS EĀ PROFŪGIT: RELIQUŌS OMNĒS  
CŌNSECŪTĪ EQUITĒS NOSTRĪ INTERFĒCĒRUNT

In hīs fuit Ariovistus,

=among those (latter) men was ~among the latter was Ariovistus

quī nāviculam<sup>I</sup> dēligātam<sup>II</sup> ad ripam nactus<sup>III</sup> eā<sup>IV</sup> profūgit

=who, <having> obtained a ~who meeting with a small small vessel <having been> tied vessel tied to the bank, escaped up to the bank, fled with this in it (thing)

reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt

=our horse <having> followed, ~our horse pursued and slew all killed all the remaining men the rest of them

---

I **nāvicula, -æ**, F. DIM. (NAVIS), a small vessel, boat, skiff

II PPP. OF *dēligō*

III **nancīscor, nactus, -ī**, DEP. (NAC-), to get, obtain, receive, meet with, stumble on, light on, find

IV ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

## I.LIII.IV.

DUÆ FUĒRUNT ARIOVISTĪ UXŌRĒS, ŪNA SUĒBA NĀTIŌNE,  
 QUAM DOMŌ SĒCUM DŪXERAT, ALTERA NŌRICA, RĒGIS  
 VOCCIŌNIS SOROR, QUAM IN GALLIĀ DUXERAT Ā FRĀTRE  
 MISSAM: UTRÆQUE IN EĀ FUGĀ PERIERUNT; DUÆ FĪLIÆ:  
 HĀRUM ALTERA OCCĪSA, ALTERA CAPTA EST.

Duæ fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs

=two wives were of Ariovistus

~Ariovistus had two wives

ūna Suēba nātiōne<sup>I II</sup> [fuit]

=one [was] a Suevan by birth

~one a Suevan by nation

quam domō<sup>III</sup> sēcum dūxerat

=whom he led with himself from  
home

~whom he brought with him  
from home

altera Nōrica [fuit], rēgis Vocciōnis<sup>IV</sup> soror

=the other [was] a Norican, the  
sister of king Vocion

~the other a Norican, the sister  
of king Vocion

quam in Galliā duxerat ā frātre<sup>V</sup> missam

=whom he had led (into  
matrimony) in Gaul, she <having  
been> sent by (her) brother

~whom he had married in Gaul,  
she having been sent [thither for  
that purpose] by her brother

---

I ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

II nātiō, -ōnis, f. (GEN-), a birth, origin; A race of people, nation, people

III ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

IV Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum

V ā frātre, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

utræque in eā fugā perierunt<sup>I</sup>

=each of the two passed away in that flight ~both perished in that flight

duæ filiæ

=of (their) two daughters ~Of their two daughters

hārum altera occīsa [est]

=one of these (ladies) was struck down ~one was slain

altera capta est

=the other was captured ~the other captured

#### I.LIII.V.

C. VALERIUS PROCILLUS, CUM Ā CUSTŌDIBUS IN FUGĀ TRĪNĪS CATĒNĪS VĪNCTUS TRAHERĒTUR, IN IPSUM CÆSAREM HOSTĒS EQUITĀTŪ PERSEQUENTEM INCIDIT.

C[āius] Valerius Procillus

=C[aius] Valerius Procillus ~C. Valerius Procillus

---

I **pereō, -iī, -itum, -īre** (PER + EO), to pass away, come to nothing, vanish, disappear, be lost; To pass away, be destroyed, perish

cum ā custōdibus<sup>I</sup> in [eā] fugā trīnīs catēnīs<sup>II</sup> vīctus<sup>III</sup> traherētur<sup>IV</sup>  
v

=as he was being dragged by ~as he was being dragged away  
(his) guards in [this] flight, by his guards in flight, bound  
<having been> bound with a with a triple chain  
triple chain

in ipsum Cæsarem hostēs [cum] equitātū<sup>VI</sup> persequentem<sup>VII</sup>  
incidit<sup>VIII</sup>

=he, pursuing the enemy [with] ~fell in with Cæsar himself, as he  
horse, fell into (the hands of) was pursuing the enemy with his  
Cæsar himself cavalry

### I.LIII.VI.

QUÆ QUIDEM RĒS CÆSARĪ NŌN MINŌREM QUAM IPSA  
VICTŌRIA VOLUPTĀTEM ATTULIT, QUOD HOMINEM  
HONESTISSIMUM PRŌVINCIAE GALLIÆ, SUUM FAMILIĀREM  
ET HOSPITEM, ĒREPTUM E MANIBUS HOSTIUM SIBI  
RESTITŪTUM VIDERAT, NEQUE EIUS CALAMITĀTE DĒ  
TANTĀ VOLUPTĀTE ET GRĀTULĀTIŌNE QUICQUAM  
FORTŪNA DĒMINUERAT.

I **ā custōdibus**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

II **trīnīs catēnīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **vinciō, vinxī, vinctus, -ire** (VI-), to bind, bind about, fetter, tie, fasten, surround, encircle

IV **cum...traherētur**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

V **trahō, trāxī, tractus, -ere** (TRAG-), to draw, drag, haul, train along, draw off, pull forth, drag away; To drag away violently, carry off, plunder

VI ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VII PRES. PART. OF *insequor*

VIII **incidō, -cidi, —, -ere** (IN + CADO), to fall in, fall, light, strike, reach, find the way; To light upon, meet, come upon, fall in with



Quæ quidem rēs Cæsari<sup>I</sup> nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem<sup>II</sup> attulit

=which thing, indeed, brought to Cæsar no less pleasure than the victory itself

~this circumstance indeed afforded Cæsar no less pleasure than the victory itself

quod

=because

~because

hominem honestissimum<sup>III</sup> prōvinciæ Galliæ

=that a most noble man of the province of Gaul

~a man of the first rank in the province of Gaul

suum familiārem et hospitem<sup>IV</sup>

=his own intimate acquaintance and (his own) friend

~his intimate acquaintance and friend

ēreptum<sup>V</sup> e manibus hostium sibi restitūtum [esse]

=rescued from the hands of the enemy, (and) (he) [was] restored to him (to Cæsar)

~rescued from the hand of the enemy, and restored to him

viderat

=he saw

~he saw

---

I INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP.. V. **attulit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO., ANTE., CON., IN., INTER., OB., POST., PRÆ., PRŌ., SUB., SUPER., AND SOME WITH CIRCUM., ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **voluptās, -ātis**, F. (VOL-), *satisfaction, enjoyment, pleasure, delight*

III **honestus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (HONOS), *regarded with honor, respected, honored, of high birth, distinguished, honorable, respectable, noble*

IV **hospes, -itis**, M. (HOSTIS + POT-), *an entertainer, host (as a friend); A friend, one bound by ties of hospitality*

V PPP. OF *ēripiō*

neque eius calamitāte<sup>vi</sup> dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne<sup>vii</sup>

=nor by his calamity, from such ~of the joy and rejoicing [of that joy and rejoicing (e.g. of that day) by his destruction day)

quicquam fortūna dēminuerat

=had (Cæsar's) fortune ~and that fortune had not diminished anything diminished aught

### I.LIII.VII.

IS SĒ PRÆSENTE DĒ SĒ TER SORTIBUS CŌNSULTUM  
DĪCĒBAT UTRUM IGNĪ STATIM NECĀRĒTUR AN IN ALIUD  
TEMPUS RESERVĀRĒTUR: SORTIUM BENEFICIŌ SĒ ESSE  
INCOLUMEM.

Is

=he (Procillus)

~He [Procillus]

sĕ præsente<sup>iii</sup>

=that, with himself <being> ~that, in his own presence present

dē sĕ ter sortibus<sup>iv</sup> cōnsultum<sup>v</sup> [esse]

=by lots, concerning him, it ~it was consulted three times by [was] thrice consulted lots concerning him

VI ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

VII grātulātiō, -ōnis, F. (GRATULOR), a manifestation of joy, wishing joy, congratulation, rejoicing

III sĕ presente, ABL. ABS. §420

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V INDIR. DISC. DEP. ON dicēbat. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

dīcēbat

=/he/ (Procillus) was saying ~said

utrum ignī<sup>I</sup> statim<sup>II</sup> necārētur<sup>III IV</sup>

=whether he should immediately be put to death by <means of> fire ~whether he should immediately be put to death by fire

an in aliud tempus reservārētur<sup>V VI</sup>

=or (if) he should be reserved until another time ~or be reserved for another time

sortium beneficiō<sup>VII</sup> sē esse<sup>VIII</sup> incolumem<sup>IX</sup>

=that because of the favor of the lots, he was uninjured ~that by the favor of the lots he was uninjured

## I.LIII.VIII.

ITEM M. MĒTTIUS REPERTUS ET AD EUM REDUCTUS EST.

---

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **statim**, ADV. (STA-), *steadily, regularly; On the spot, forthwith, straightway, at once, immediately, instantly*

III **utrum...necārētur**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN QUESTIONS IMPLYING (1) DOUBT, INDIGNATION, OR (2) AN IMPOSSIBILITY OF THE THING'S BEING DONE. THE NEGATIVE IS NON. §444

IV **necō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (NEC-), *to kill, slay, put to death*

V **utrum...reservārētur**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. §444

VI **rēservo, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (RĒ + SERVO), *to keep back, save up (anything) for future use; to reserve*

VII ABL. OF CAUSE.

VIII **sē esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IX **incolumis, -e**, ADJ. (IN + COLUMNIS), *unimpaired, uninjured, unharmed, safe, sound, entire, whole*

Item M[arcus] Mēttiū repertus [est] et ad eum reductus est

=M[arcus] Mettius, also, was ~M. Mettius, also, was found and  
found, and he led back to him brought back to him [Cæsar.]  
(Cæsar)

# I.LIV



CÆSAR GOES TO NORTH ITALY.



## I.LIV.I.



HOC PRÆLIŌ TRĀNS RHĒNUM NŪNTIĀTŌ,  
SUĒBĪ QUĪ AD RĪPĀS RHĒNĪ VĒNERANT  
DOMUM REVERTĪ CÆPĒRUNT; QUŌS UBIĪ QUI  
PROXIMĪ RHĒNUM INCOLUNT PERTERRITŌS  
INSECŪTĪ MAGNUM EX EĪS NUMERUM OCCĪDĒRUNT.

**Hoc præliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō<sup>1</sup>**

=with this battle <having been>  
announced across the Rhine

~this battle having been  
reported beyond the Rhine

**Suēbī**

=the Suevi

~the Suevi

**quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant**

=who had come to the banks of  
the river

~who had come to the banks of  
that river

---

I ***hōc præliō...nūntiātō***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

domum<sup>I</sup> revertī cœpērunt

=*began to return home*

~*began to return home*

quōs Vbiī<sup>II</sup>

=(*those men*) (*the Suevi*) *whom* ~*when the Ubii*  
Ubīī

qui proximī<sup>III</sup> Rhēnum incolunt

=*who dwell nearest to the Rhine*

~*who dwelt nearest to the Rhine*

perterritōs īsecūtī magnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt

=(*those men*) (*the Ubii*) <*having*> ~*pressed upon them, while much*  
*followed the thoroughly alarmed, slew a great number of*  
*terrified men (the Seuvi), killed a them*  
*great number from (of) those*  
*men*

## I.LIV.II.

CÆSAR, ŪNĀ ÆSTĀTE DUŌBUS MAXIMĪS BELLĪS  
CŌNFECTĪS, MĀTŪRIUS PAULŌ QUAM TEMPUS ANNĪ  
POSTULĀBAT IN HĪBERNA IN SEQUANŌS EXERCITUM  
DĒDŪXIT; HĪBERNĪS LABIĒNUM PRÆPOSUIT; IPSE IN  
CITERIŌREM GALLIAM AD CONVENTŪS AGENDŌS  
PROFECTUS EST.

---

I ACC. OF PLACE TO WHICH. SPECIAL USES OF PLACE FROM WHICH, TO WHICH, AND WHERE ARE THE FOLLOWING: XI. DOMUM DENOTING THE PLACE TO WHICH, AND THE LOCATIVE DOMI, MAY BE MODIFIED BY A POSSESSIVE PRONOUN OR A GENITIVE. §42  
8xi

II **Ubīī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they afterwards settled

III ADJ. USED AS PREP. CERTAIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES ARE SOMETIMES USED AS PREPOSITIONS: THE ADVERBS PRĪDIĒ, POSTRĪDIĒ, PROPIUS, PROXIMĒ, LESS FREQUENTLY THE ADJECTIVES PROPRIOR AND PROXIMUS, MAY BE FOLLOWED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §432

**Cæsar ūnā æstāte<sup>I II</sup>**

=*Cæsar // in one summer*

~*Cæsar // within one campaign*

**duōbus maximīs bellīs cōfectīs<sup>III</sup>**

=*with two extremely great wars*  
 <having been> *completed*

~*having concluded two very*  
*considerable wars*

**mātūrius paulō<sup>IV</sup> quam tempus annī postulābat**

=*earlier by a little than the*  
*season of the year demanded*

~*a little earlier than the season*  
*of the year required*

**in hiberna in Sequanōs exercitum dēdūxit**

=*he (Cæsar) led away (his) army*  
*among the Sequani into winter*  
*quarters*

~*conducted his army into winter*  
*quarters among the Sequani*

**hibernīs Labiēnum præposuit<sup>V</sup>**

=*he set Labienus over the*  
*winter-quarters*

~*he appointed Labienus over the*  
*winter-quarters*

---

I **ūnā æstāte**, ABL. OF TIME WITHIN WHICH. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **æstās, -ātis**, F. *summer*

III **duōbus maximīs bellīs cōfectīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

V **præpōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (PRÆ + PŌNŌ), *to place in front, put upon, affix; To set over, make commander, intrust with, appoint, depute*

ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs<sup>I</sup> agendōs<sup>II</sup> profectus est  
 =he (Cæsar) himself departed ~and set out in person for Hither  
 into nearest Gaul for <the Gaul to administer the meeting  
 purpose of> conducting a  
 meeting

- 
- I **conventus, -ūs**, M. (COM- + BA-, VEN-), a meeting, assembly, throng  
 II **ad conventūs agendōs**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURP. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506





APPENDIX

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S  
NEW LATIN GRAMMAR

§39

Declension

1	2	3	3 (i-stem)	4	5
---	---	---	------------	---	---

Singular

	F.	M.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	N.	M.	F.
Nom.	-a	-us	-um				-us	-us	-u	-us	-ū	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	-æ	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-is	is	is	is	-ūs	-ūs	-ēī (-ē)	-eī (-ē)
Dat.	-æ	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-uī (-ū)	-ū	-ēī (-ē)	-eī (-ē)
Acc.	-am	-um	-um	-em	-em	like nom.	-em	-em	e	-um	-ū	-em	-em
Abl.	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e (-ī)	-e (-ī)	-e (-ī)	-ī/e	-ī/e	-ī	-ū	-ū	-ē	-ē
Voc.	-a	-e	-um	like nom.	like nom.	like nom.	-s	-s		-us	-ū	-ēs	-ēs

Plural

	F.	M.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	N.	M.	F.
Nom.	-æ	-ī	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	ārum	ōrum	ōrum	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-ium	-uum	-uum	ērum	ērum
Dat.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	-ēbus
Acc.	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	a-	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
Abl.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	-ēbus
Voc.	-æ	-ī	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs

§113

The following nine adjectives with their compounds have the Genitive Singular in *-ius* and the Dative in *-ī* in all genders:

<i>alius</i> (N. <i>aliud</i> ), <i>other</i>	<i>tōtus</i> , <i>whole</i>	<i>alter</i> , <i>-terius</i> , <i>the other</i>
<i>nūllus</i> , <i>no</i> , <i>none</i>	<i>ūllus</i> , <i>any</i>	neuter, <i>-trius</i> , <i>neither</i>
<i>sōlus</i> , <i>alone</i>	<i>ūnus</i> , <i>one</i>	<i>uter</i> , <i>-trius</i> , <i>which</i> (of two)

Of these the singular is thus declined:

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>uter</i>	<i>utra</i>	<i>utrum</i>
Gen.	<i>ūnīus</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>	<i>utrīus</i>	<i>utrīus</i>	<i>utrīus</i>
Dat.	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>	<i>utrī</i>
Acc.	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnqm</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>utrum</i>	<i>utram</i>	<i>utrum</i>
Abl.	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>utrō</i>	<i>utrā</i>	<i>utrō</i>

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>terum</i>
Gen.	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>alterīus</i>	<i>alterīus</i>	<i>alterīus</i>
Dat.	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>
Acc.	<i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>
Abl.	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>alterō</i>	<i>alterā</i>	<i>alterō</i>

i. The plural of these words is regular, like that of *bonus* (§110)

## §146

### Demonstrative Pronoun Charts:

The Demonstrative Pronouns are used to point out or designate a person or thing for special attention, either with nouns as Adjectives or alone as Pronouns. They are: *hic*, *this*; *is*, *ille*, *iste*, *that*; with the Intensive *ipse*, *self*, and *īdem*, *same*; and are thus declined:

***hic, this***

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	hæc	hōc	hī	hæ	hæc
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	hæc
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

***is, that***

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eæ	ea
Gen.	êius	êius	êius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

***ille, that***

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illæ	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

***Ipse, self.***

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsæ	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

**īdem, the same**

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	īdem	īdem, eī	eādem	eadem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

**§147**

The Relative Pronoun *quī, who, which*, is thus declined:

**Relative pronouns**

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quæ	quod	quī	quæ	quæ
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quæ
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

**§148**

The Substantive Interrogative Pronoun *quis, who? quid, what?* is declined in the Singular as follows:

**Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns**

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	qius	quid	quī	quæ	quæ
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quæ
Abl.	quō	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

**§170**

The verb *sum, be*, is both irregular and defective, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Indicative	Subjunctive
------------	-------------

Present		
Singular	sum, <i>I am</i>	sim
	es, <i>you are</i>	sīs
	est, <i>he (she, it)</i>	sit
Plural	sumus, <i>we are</i>	sīmus
	estis, <i>you (all) are</i>	sītus
	sunt, <i>they are</i>	sint
Imperfect		
Singular	eram, <i>I was</i>	essem
	eras, <i>you were</i>	essēs
	erat, <i>he (she, it)</i>	esset
Plural	erāmus, <i>we were</i>	essēmus
	erātis, <i>you were</i>	essētis
	erant, <i>they were</i>	essent
Future		
Singular	erō, <i>I shall be</i>	
	eris, <i>you will be</i>	
	erit, <i>he (she, it) will be</i>	
Plural	erimus, <i>we shall be</i>	
	eritis, <i>you will be</i>	
	erunt, <i>they will be</i>	
Perfect		
Singular	fuī, <i>I was (have been)</i>	fuerim
	fuistī, <i>you were</i>	fueris
	fuit, <i>he (she, it) was</i>	fuerit
Plural	fuimus, <i>we were</i>	fuerimus
	fuistis, <i>you were</i>	fueritis
	fuērunt, <i>they were</i>	fuerint
Plurperfect		
Singular	fueram, <i>I had been</i>	fuissem
	fuerās, <i>you had been</i>	fuissēs
	fuerat, <i>he (she, it) had been</i>	fuisset
Plural	fuerāmus, <i>we have been</i>	fuissēmus

	fuerātis, <i>you (all) had been</i>	fuissētis
	fuerant, <i>they had been</i>	fuissent
<b>Future Perfect</b>		
Singular	fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>	
	fueris, <i>you will have been</i>	
	fuerit, <i>he (she, it) will have been</i>	
Plural	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been</i>	
	fueritis, <i>you (all) have been</i>	
	fuerint, <i>they will have been</i>	
<b>Imperative</b>		
Present Singular	es, <i>be you</i>	
Present Plural	este, <i>be you (all)</i>	
Future Singular	estō, <i>you/he (she, it) shalt be</i>	
Future Plural	estōte, <i>you (all) shall be</i>	
	suntō, <i>they shall be</i>	
<b>Infinitive</b>		
Present	esse, <i>to be</i>	
Perfect	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>	
Future	futūrus esse (or fore), <i>to be about to be</i>	
<b>Participle</b>		
Future	futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be</i>	

## §194

There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, known respectively as the First (or Active) and the Second (or Passive).

- i. The First Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Future Active Participle with the forms of sum, and denotes a future or intended action.
- ii. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Gerundive with the forms of sum, and denotes obligation, necessity, or

propriety.

- iii. The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly throughout the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

§196

Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

PRES.	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be</i>
IMPER.	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>
PERF.	amandus fui, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
PLUPERF.	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>
FUT. PERF.	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>
PRES.	amandus sim
IMPERF.	amandus essem
PERF.	amandus fuerim
PLUPERF.	amandus fuisset
PRES.	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
PERF.	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>

§282

A noun used to describe another, and standing in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an Appositive, and is said to be in apposition.



## §283

With *sum* and a few other intransitive or passive verbs, a noun or an adjective describing or defining the subject may stand in the predicate. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective.

The verb *sum* is especially common in this construction, and when so used is called the copula (i.e. connective).

Other verbs which take a predicate noun or adjective are the so-called copulative verbs signifying *to become*, *to be made*, *to be named*, *to appear*, and the like.

## §289

Neuter Adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses:

iv. A neuter adjective may be used as an attributive or a predicate adjective with an infinitive or a substantive clause

## §291

Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows:

- i. The Comparative denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as,—*brevior*, *rather short*; *audācior*, *too bold*.
- ii. The Superlative (of eminence) often denotes a very high degree of a quality without implying a distinct comparison: as,—*mōns altissimus*, *a very high mountain*.
- iii. With *quam*, *vel*, or *ūnus* the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree.

## §293

Superlatives (and more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession—also *medius*, [*cēterus*], *reliquus*—usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant.

## §301

Special uses of the Reflexive are the following:

vi. *Inter sē (nōs, vōs), among themselves (ourselves, yourselves),* is regularly used to express reciprocal action or relation.

## §306

A Relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number.

## §307

The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses, but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted.

iii. The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite.

## §308

In the use of Relatives, the following points are to be observed:

- i. The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English.
- ii. When two relative clauses are connected by a copulative conjunction, a relative pronoun sometimes stands in the first and a demonstrative in the last.
- iii. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English,—particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency.
- iv. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun.
- v. The relative with an abstract noun may be used in a parenthetical clause to characterize a person, like the English *such*.

- vi. A relative pronoun (or adverb) often stands at the beginning of an independent sentence or clause, serving to connect it with the sentence or clause that precedes.
- vii. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case; so, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun.
- viii. The relatives *quī, quālis, quantus, quot*, etc. are often rendered simply by *as* in English.
- ix. The general construction of relatives is found in clauses introduced by relative adverbs: *as, ubi, quō, unde, cum, quārē*.

### §317

Two or more Singular Subjects take a verb in the Plural:

- ii. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives (§223i), or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular.

Note. Almost always when the subjects are abstract nouns.

### §323

Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them.

### §326

Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative. Many compounds or phrases of which *nōn* is the first part express an indefinite affirmative:

- i. *nōn nullus*, *some*; *nōn nulli* (= *aliqui*), *some few*.
- ii. *nōn nihil* (= *aliquid*), *something*.
- iii. *nōn nēmō* (= *aliquot*), *sundry persons*.
- iv. *nōn numquam* (= *aliquotiēns*), *sometimes*.

Two negatives of which the second is *nōn* (belonging to the predicate) express a universal affirmative:

- i. *nēmō nōn, nūllus nōn, nobody [does] not, i.e. everybody [does].* [Cf. *nōn nēmō, not nobody, i.e. somebody.*]
- ii. *nihil nōn, everything.* [Cf. *nōn nihil, something.*]
- iii. *numquam nōn, never not, i.e. always.* [Cf. *nōn numquam, sometimes.*]

### §335

In Double or Alternative Questions, *utrum* or *-ne*, whether, stands in the first member; *an, anne, or, annōn, necne, or not*, in the second; and usually *an* in the third, if there be one.

### §343

The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs.

Note 1. The Possessive Genitive may denote (1) the actual owner (as in Alexander's dog) or author (as in Cicero's writings), or (2) the person or thing that possesses some feeling or quality or does some act (as in Cicero's eloquence, the strength of the bridge, Catiline's evil deeds). In the latter use it is sometimes called the Subjective Genitive; but this term properly includes the possessive genitive and several other genitive constructions (nearly all, in fact, except the Objective Genitive, §347).

- ii. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb (Predicate Genitive).

### §345

The Genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is modified by an adjective.

- i. The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases *ēius modī, cūius modī* (equivalent to *tālis, such; quālis, of what sort.*)
- ii. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of length, depth, etc. (Genitive of Measure.)

### §346

Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

i. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are:

- a) Nouns or Pronouns.
- b) Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like *alius, alter, nūllus, etc.*
- c) Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, used as nouns.
- d) Adverbs, especially those of Quantity and of Place.

iii. Cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) regularly take the Ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the Partitive Genitive. So also, *quīdam, a certain one, commonly*, and other words occasionally.

### §347

The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

### §348

Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object.

Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase *odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar*, the *hate* in a passive sense belongs to *Cæsar*, as *odium*, though in its active sense he is the object of it, as *hate*. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase *amor patris*,

*love of a father*, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive).

### §349

Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the Objective Genitive include:

- i. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the genitive.
- ii. Participles in *-ns* govern the genitive when they are used as adjectives, i.e. when they denote a constant disposition and not a particular act.

### §350

Verbs of remembering and forgetting take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object:

- ii. *Meminī* takes the Genitive when it means to be mindful or regardful of a person or thing, to think of somebody or something (often with special interest or warmth of feeling).

So *oblīvīscor* in the opposite sense,—to *disregard*, or *dismiss from the mind*,—and the adjective *oblītus*, *careless* or *regardless*.

- iii. *Reminīscor* is rare. It takes the Accusative in the literal sense of *call to mind*, *recollect*; the Genitive in the more figurative sense of *be mindful of*.

### §359

Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following:

- i. A poetical genitive occurs rarely in exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (Genitive of Exclamation.)
- ii. The genitive is often used with the ablatives *causā*, *grātiā*, *for the sake of*; *ergō*, *because of*; and the indeclinable *īnstar*, *like*; also with *prīdiē*, *the day before*; *postrīdiē*, *the day after*; *tenus*, *as far as*.

## §364

Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing.

Such are *dōnō*, *impertiō*, *induō*, *exuō*, *adspergō*, *inspergō*, *circumdō*, and in poetry *accingō*, *implicō*, and similar verbs.

## §367

Many verbs signifying to *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe*, *persuade*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, and *spare*, take the Dative.

i. Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative. Such are *iuvō*, *adiuvō*, *help*; *lædō*, *injure*; *iubeō*, *order*; *dēficiō*, *fail*; *dēlectō*, *please*.

Note. II. Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are—*præstō esse*, *be on hand* (cf. *adesse*); *mōrem gerere*, *humor* (cf. *mōrigerārī*); *grātum facere*, *do a favor* (cf. *grātificārī*); *dictō audiēns esse*, *be obedient* (cf. *obædīre*); “*cui fidem habēbat*” (B. G. 1.19), *in whom he had confidence* (cf. *cōnfīdēbat*).

## §368

The Dative is used:

- i. With the impersonals *libet* (*lubet*), *it pleases*, and *licet*, *it is allowed*.
- ii. With verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*.
- iii. With *grātificor*, *grātulor*, *nūbō*, *permittō*, *plaudō*, *probō*, *studeō*, *supplicō*, *excellō*.

## §369

Some verbs ordinarily intransitive may have an Accusative of the direct

object along with the Dative of the indirect.

### §370

Many verbs compounded with *ao*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and some with *circum*, admit the Dative of the indirect object.

### §372

Intransitive verbs that govern the dative are used impersonally in the passive (§208iv). The dative is retained (cf. §365).

### §373

The Dative is used with *esse* and similar words to denote Possession.

Note. The Genitive or a Possessive with *esse* emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as,—*liber est meus*, *the book is MINE* (and no one's else): *est mihi liber*, *I HAVE a book* (among other things).

ii. *Dēsum* takes the dative; so occasionally *absum* (which regularly has the ablative).

### §374

The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests.

This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§196).

### §376

The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference).

The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed.



## §377

The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word.

## §381

Many verbs of taking away and the like take the Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§401).

Such are compounds of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, and a few of *ad*.

The distinct idea of motion requires the ablative with a preposition—thus generally with names of things (§426i).

## §382

The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows:

The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected.

Note I. This construction is often called the Dative of Service, or the Double Dative construction. The verb is usually *sum*. The noun expressing the end for which is regularly abstract and singular in number and is never modified by an adjective, except one of degree (*māgnus*, *minor*, etc.), or by a genitive.

## §383

The Dative is used after Adjectives or Adverbs, to denote that to which the given quality is directed, for which it exists, or towards which it tends.

## §384

The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites.

Adjectives of this kind are *accommodātus*, *aptus*; *amīcus*, *inimīcus*, *infestus*, *invīsus*, *molestus*; *idōneus*, *opportūnus*, *proprius*; *ūtilis*, *inūtilis*; *affinis*, *finitimus*, *propinquus*, *vicīnus*; *pār*, *dispār*, *similis*, *dissimilis*; *iūcundus*, *grātus*; *nōtus*, *ignōtus*, and others.

## §388

Certain special verbs require notice:

1. Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing feeling, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive.
2. Verbs of motion, compounds of *circum*, *trāns*, and *præter*, and a few others, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative.
3. The accusative is used after the impersonals *decet*, *dēdecet*, *dēlectat*, *iuvat*, *oportet*, *fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*.

## §390

An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Signification.

## §393

Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object.

## §396

Some verbs of asking and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the Person (direct object), and the other of the Thing (secondary object).

- i. Some verbs of asking take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, *petō* (*ab*), *quæro* (*ex*, *ab*, *dē*); usually *poscō* (*ab*), *flāgitō* (*ab*), *postulō* (*ab*), and occasionally others.

## §400

Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative.

## §401

Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with *ab* or *ex*).

## §402

Verbs compounded with *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, (1) take the simple Ablative when used figuratively; but (2) when used literally to denote actual separation or motion, they usually require a preposition.

## §403

The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists.

## §404

The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause.

iii. The ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake of*, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement.

## §405

The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action.

Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires *ā* or *ab*) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus *occīsus gladiō*, *slain by a sword*; but, *occīsus ab hoste*, *slain by an enemy*.

Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule.

ii. The personal agent, when considered as instrument or means, is often expressed by *per* with the accusative, or by *operā* with a genitive or possessive.

## §406

The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative (This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, “*Cicero is eloquent*”; but, starting from him we come to Cato, who is “*more so than he.*”) signifying *than*.

## §407

The comparative may be followed by *quam*, *than*. When *quam* is used, the two things compared are put in the same case:

- i. The construction with *quam* is required when the first of the things compared is not in the Nominative or Accusative.
- ii. In sentences expressing or implying a general negative the ablative (rather than *quam*) is the regular construction when the first member of the comparison is in the nominative or accusative.

After the comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, *longius*, without *quam*, a word of measure or number is often used with no change in its case.

## §408

Means, Instrument, Manner, and Accompaniment are denoted by the Instrumental Ablative (see §398), but some of these uses more commonly require a preposition. As they all come from one source (the old Instrumental Case) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves can hardly have thought of any distinction. Thus, in *omnibus precibus orābant*, *they entreated with every*

[*kind of*] *prayer*, the ablative, properly that of means, cannot be distinguished from that of manner.

## §409

The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.

## §410

The deponents *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative.

i. *Potior* sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase *potīri rērum*, *to get control or be master of affairs* (§357i).

## §411

*Opus* and *usus*, signifying need, take the Ablative.

i. With *opus* the ablative of a perfect participle is often found, either agreeing with a noun or used as a neuter abstract noun.

## §412

The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with *cum*, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun.

- i. But *cum* is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective.
- ii. With such words of manner as *modō*, *pactō*, *ratione*, *rītū*, *vī*, *viā*, and with stock expressions which have become virtually adverbs (as *silentiō*, *iūre*, *iniūriā*), *cum* is not used.

## §414

With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference.

i. The ablatives *quō...eō* (*hōc*), and *quantō... tantō*, are used correlatively

with comparatives, like the English *the...the*.

Note. To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of *quō* and *eō* (*hōc*) with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be distinctly felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause.

## §415

The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality.

In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative.

## §416

The price of a thing is put in the Ablative.

Note. To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty.

## §417

Certain adjectives of quantity are used in the Genitive to denote indefinite value. Such are *māgnī*, *parvī*, *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*.

Note. These are really Genitives of Quality (§345ii).

## §418

The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done.

i. To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative expresses that in accordance with which anything is or is done.

Note. As the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. The ablative of specification (originally instrumental) is closely akin to that of manner, and shows some resemblance to means and cause.

## §419

A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute.

Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (*absolūtus*, i.e. *free* or *unconnected*). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause.

i. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction

## §420

The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause.

Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance.

## §423

Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative.

## §424

Special constructions of time are the following:

- i. The Ablative of time within which sometimes takes in, and the Accusative of time how long *per*, for greater precision.
- ii. Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative.
- iii. Time *during which* or *within which* may be expressed by the Accusative or Ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral.

- iv. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of time when where in English the main idea is rather of place.
- v. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with *ad*, *in*, or *sub* is used. Such are the following.
- vi. Distance of time before or after anything is variously expressed.
- vii. In Dates the phrase *ante diem* (a.d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.
- viii. The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, usually without a conjunction.

## §425

Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative.

- ii. Distance when considered as extent of space is put in the Accusative; when considered as degree of difference, in the Ablative (§414).

## §426

Relations of Place are expressed as follows:

- i. The place from which, by the Ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*.
- ii. The place to which (or end of motion), by the Accusative with *<\*>d* or *in*.
- iii. The place where, by the Ablative with *in* (Locative Ablative).

## §427

With names of towns and small islands, and with *domus* and *rūs*, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows:

- i. The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition.



- ii. The place to which, by the Accusative without a preposition.
- iii. The place where, by the Locative.

## §428

Special uses of place from which, to which, and where are the following:

- i. With names of towns and small islands *ab* is often used to denote *from the vicinity of*, and *ad* to denote *towards, to the neighborhood of*.
- ii. The general words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *insula* require a preposition to express the place from which, to which, or where.
- iii. With the name of a country, *ad* denotes to the borders; *in* with the accusative, into the country itself. Similarly *ab* denotes away from the outside; *ex*, out of the interior.
- iv. With all names of places at, meaning near (not in), is expressed by *ad* or *apud* with the accusative.
- v. Large islands, and all places when thought of as a territory and not as a locality, are treated like names of countries.
- vi. The Ablative without a preposition is used to denote the place from which in certain idiomatic expressions.
- xi. *Domum* denoting the place to which, and the locative *domī*, may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive.

## §429

The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances:

Often in indefinite words, such as *locō*, *parte*, etc.

Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when *tōtus* is used.)

In many idiomatic expressions which have lost the idea of place.

- i. The way by which is put in the Ablative without a preposition. Note. In this use the way by which is conceived as the means of passage.
- ii. Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with *ab* (rarely *ex*), properly meaning from.

### §431

Several verbs are followed by the Ablative. These are *acquiēscō*, *dēlector*, *lætor*, *gaudeō*, *glōrior*, *nītor*, *stō*, *maneō*, *fīdō*, *cōnfīdō*, *cōnsistō*, *contineor*.

### §432

Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions:

- i. The adverbs *prīdiē*, *postrīdiē*, *propius*, *proximē*, less frequently the adjectives *propior* and *proximus*, may be followed by the Accusative.
- ii. *Ūsque* sometimes takes the Accusative, but *ūsque ad* is much more common.
- iii. The adverbs *palam*, *procul*, *simul*, may be used as prepositions and take the Ablative.

### §434

Some Prepositions and Adverbs which imply comparison are followed, like comparatives, by *quam*, which may be separated by several words, or even clauses.

Such words are *ante*, *prius*, *post*, *postea*, *prīdi*, *postrīdiē*; also *magis* and *præ* in compounds.

### §439

The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an exhortation or a command. The negative is *nē*.

### §444

The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing's being done. The negative is *nōn*.

In many cases the question has become a mere exclamation, rejecting a suggested possibility.

### §450

Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by *nōlī* with the Infinitive, (2) by *cavē* with the Present Subjunctive, or (3) by *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive.

### §452

The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with *est* and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative.

### §457

Many verbs take either a Subjunctive Clause or a Complementary Infinitive, without difference of meaning.

Such are verbs signifying willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like.

### §463

The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative.

Note. This construction is not strictly historical, but rather descriptive, and is never used to state a mere historical fact. It is rarely found in subordinate clauses. Though occurring in most of the writers of all periods, it is most frequent in the historians Sallust, Livy, Tacitus. It does not occur in Suetonius.

### §469

The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect.

Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (*repræsentātiō*, §585. b. N.)

## §470

The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as continued or repeated in past time.

Note. The Imperfect is a descriptive tense and denotes an action conceived as in progress or a state of things as actually observed. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus *rēx erat* and *rēx fuit* may often be used indifferently; but the former describes the condition while the latter only states it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English *Preterite*.

## §481

The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses were habitually used in certain fixed connections with the tenses of the main verb.

These connections were determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together. They are known, collectively, as the Sequence of Tenses.

## §495

Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by *esse* or a copulative verb.

Note. From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive,—the participle of completed action with the incomplete tenses of *esse* developing the idea of past time: as, *interfectus est*, *he was* (or *has been*) *killed*, Lit. *he is having-been-killed* (i.e. *already slain*).

## §496

The Present and Perfect Participles are often used as a predicate, where

in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be more natural.

In this use the participles express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances.

### §503

When the Gerund would have an object in the Accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have had.

### §504

The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive.

- i. The genitive of the gerund sometimes takes a direct object, especially a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used substantively.
- ii. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive with *causā* or *gratiā* expresses purpose (§533. ii.)
- iii. The genitive of the gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially a personal pronoun in the plural) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object.

### §506

The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition *ad*, to denote Purpose.

The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition never takes a direct object in classic Latin.

### §507

The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used:

- i. to express manner, means, cause, etc.
- ii. after Comparatives.
- iii. after the propositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *in*, and (rarely) *prō*.

## §508

The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§94ii), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses. (1) The form in *-um* is the Accusative of the end of motion (§428i). (2) The form in *-ū* is usually Dative of purpose (§382), but the Ablative was early confused with it.

## §509

The Supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case.

## §510

The Supine in *-ū* is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns *fās*, *nefās*, and *opus*, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted.

The only common supines in *-ū* are *auditū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *inventū*, *memorātū*, *nātū*, *vīsū*. In classic use this supine is found in comparatively few verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.

Note 1. The supine in *-ū* is thus in appearance an Ablative of Specification (§418).

## §513

Conditions are either (i) Particular or (ii) General:

- i. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.
- ii. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which

may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

## §514

The principal or typical forms of Conditional Sentences may be exhibited as follows:

SIMPLE CONDITIONS (nothing implied as to fulfilment):	
Present Time	Pres. Indic. in both clauses.
Past Time	Imperf. or Perf. Indic. in both clauses.
FUTURE CONDITIONS (as yet unfulfilled):	
More Vivid	Fut. Indic. in both clauses
	Fut. Perf. Indic. in protasis, Fut. Indic. in apodosis.
Less Vivid	Pres. Subj. in both clauses.
	Perf. Subj. in protasis, Pres. Subj. in apodosis.
CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT:	
Present Time	Imperf. Subj. in both clauses.
Past Time	Pluperf. Subj. in both clauses.
GENERAL CONDITIONS	
General Conditions do not usually differ in form from the Conditions above, but are sometimes distinguished in the cases following:	
Present General Condition (Indefinite Time)	Pres. Subj. 2nd. per. sg. (Indefinite Subject) in protasis, Pres. Indic. in apodosis.
	Perf. Indic. in protasis, Pres. Indic. in apodosis:
Past General Condition (Repeated Action in Past Time)	Pluperf. Indic. in protasis, Imperf. Indic. in apodosis.
	Imperf. Subj. in protasis, Imperf. Indic. in apodosis.
PARTICULAR CONDITIONS	
Simple Present and Past Conditions	Nothing Implied.

## §516

Future Conditions may be more vivid or less vivid.

In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition

of a future case, the apodosis expressing what will be the logical result.

In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed:

- i. In the more vivid future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis.
- ii. In the less vivid future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.

## §524

Conditional Clauses of Comparison take the Subjunctive, usually in the Present or Perfect unless the sequence of tenses requires the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Such clauses are introduced by the comparative particles *tamquam*, *tamquam sī*, *quasi*, *ac sī*, *ut sī*, *velut sī* (later *velut*), *poetic ceu* (all meaning *as if*), and by *quam sī* (*than if*).

## §526

The concessive idea is rather vague and general, and takes a variety of forms, each of which has its distinct history. Sometimes concession is expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive in a sentence grammatically independent (§440), but it is more frequently and more precisely expressed by a dependent clause introduced by a concessive particle. The concessive force lies chiefly in the Conjunctions (which are indefinite or conditional in origin), and is often made clearer by an adversative particle (*tamen*, *certē*) in the main clause. As the Subjunctive may be used in independent clauses to express a concession, it is also employed in concessive clauses, and somewhat more frequently than the indicative.

## §527

The Particles of Concession (meaning although, granting that) are *quamvis*, *ut*, *licet*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiam sī*, *quamquam*, and *cum*.

Some of these take the Subjunctive, others the Indicative, according to the nature of the clause which each introduces.



## §529

The Subjunctive in the clause of Purpose is hortatory in origin, coming through a kind of indirect discourse construction.

Thus, *mīsit lēgātōs quī dīcerent* means *he sent ambassadors who should say*, i.e. *who were directed to say*; in the direct orders the verb would be *dīcite*, which would become *dīcant* in the Indirect Discourse of narrative (§588) or *dīcerent* in the past (cf. hortatory subjunctive in past tenses, §439. b). The Subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* is, in general, similar in origin.

## §531

Final Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut* (*utī*), negative *nē* (*ut nē*), or by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb.

Pure Clauses of Purpose, with *ut* (*utī*) or *nē* (*ut nē*), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun *quī* or a relative adverb (*ubi*, *unde*, *quō*, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative.

## §534

The relative clause of Characteristic with the Subjunctive is a development peculiar to Latin. A relative clause in the Indicative merely states something as a fact which is true of the antecedent; a characteristic clause (in the Subjunctive) defines the antecedent as a person or thing of such a character that the statement made is true of him or it and of all others belonging to the same class. Thus,— *nōn potest exercitum continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn continet* (indicative) means simply, *that commander who does not (as a fact) restrain himself cannot restrain his army*; whereas *nōn potest exercitum continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn contineat* (subjunctive) would mean, *that commander who is not such a man as to restrain himself*, etc., that is, who is not characterized by self-restraint.

This construction has its origin in the potential use of the subjunctive (§445). Thus, in the example just given, *quī sē ipse nōn contineat* would mean literally, *who would not restrain himself* (in any supposable case), and this potential idea passes over easily into that of general quality or characteristic. The characterizing force is most easily felt when the antecedent is indefinite or general. But this usage is extended in Latin to cases which differ but slightly from statements of fact, as in some of the examples below.

The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic. Thus, *nōn sum ita hebes ut hēc dīcam* means literally, *I am not dull in the manner (degree) in which I should say this*, hence, *I am not so dull as to say this*. Since, then, the characteristic often appears in the form of a supposed result, the construction readily passes over into Pure Result, with no idea of characteristic; as,— “*tantus in cūrīā clāmor factus est ut populus concurreret*” (Verr. 2.47), *such an outcry was made in the senate-house that the people hurried together*.

### §535

A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined.

When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical, *cum* takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb.

### §536

The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534).

### §537

Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut*, *so that* (negative, *ut nōn*), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb.

Pure Clauses of Result, with *ut* or *ut nōn*, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

## §539

Causal Clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of cause being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument (by implication), in an antecedent of causal meaning (like *propterea*), or in the connecting particles.

*Quod* is in origin the relative pronoun (stem *quo-*) used adverbially in the accusative neuter (cf. §214. d) and gradually sinking to the position of a colorless relative conjunction (cf. English *that* and see §222). Its use as a causal particle is an early special development. *Quia* is perhaps an accusative plural neuter of the relative stem *qui-*, and seems to have developed its causal sense more distinctly than *quod*, and at an earlier period. It is used (very rarely) as an interrogative, *why?* (so in classical Latin with *nam* only), and may, like *quando*, have developed from an interrogative to a relative particle.

*Quoniam* (for *quom iam*) is also of relative origin (*quom* being a case-form of the pronominal stem *quo-*). It occurs in old Latin in the sense of when (cf. *quom*, *cum*), from which the causal meaning is derived (cf. *cum* causal). The Subjunctive with *quod* and *quia* depends on the principle of Informal Indirect Discourse (§592).

*Quandō* is probably the interrogative *quam* (*how?*) compounded with a form of the pronominal stem *do-* (cf. *dum*, *dō-nec*). It originally denoted time (first interrogatively, then as a relative), and thus came to signify cause. Unlike *quod* and *quia*, it is not used to state a reason in informal indirect discourse and therefore is never followed by the Subjunctive.

## §540

The Causal Particles *quod* and *quia* take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another.

Note 1. *Quod* introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. *Quia* regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. *Quoniam*, *inasmuch as*, *since*, *when now*, *now that*, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative.

ii. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō* take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see §580).

### §543

The particles *postquam* (*posteaquam*), *ubi*, *ut* (*ut primum*, *ut semel*), *simul atque* (*simul ac*, or *simul* alone), take the Indicative (usually in the perfect or the historical present).

### §545

A temporal clause with *cum*, *when*, and some past tense of the Indicative dates or defines the time at which the action of the main verb occurred.

When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical, *cum* takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb.

### §546

A temporal clause with *cum* and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb.

### §549

*Cum* causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. *Cum* causal may usually be translated by *since*; *cum* concessive by *although* or *while*; either, occasionally, by *when*.

### §551

*Antequam* and *priusquam* take sometimes the Indicative sometimes the Subjunctive:

- i. With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Perfect Indicative states a fact in past time.
- ii. With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Imperfect Subjunctive is

common when the subordinate verb implies purpose or expectancy in past time, or when the action that it denotes did not take place.

- iii. *Antequam* and *priusquam*, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative; rarely the Present Subjunctive.

### §553

*Dum* and *quoad*, *until*, take the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in temporal clauses implying intention or expectancy.

### §555

*Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, as long as, take the Indicative.

### §556

*Dum*, *while*, regularly takes the Present Indicative to denote continued action in past time.

In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used.

A past tense with *dum* (usually *so long as*) makes the time emphatic by contrast; but a few irregular cases of *dum* with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended.

### §557

The original meaning of *quīn* is *how not? why not?* (*quī-nē*), and when used with the Indicative or (rarely) with the Subjunctive it regularly implies a general negative. Thus, *quīn ego hōc rogem?* *why shouldn't I ask this?* implies that there is no reason for not asking. The implied negative was then expressed in a main clause, like *nūlla causa est* or *fieri nōn potest*. Hence come the various dependent constructions introduced by *quīn*.

*Quōminus* is really a phrase (*quō minus*), and the dependent constructions which it introduces have their origin in the relative clause of purpose

with *quō* and a comparative (see §531i).

## §558

A subjunctive clause with *quīn* is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negated, either expressly or by implication.

i. *Quīn* is especially common with *nōn dubitō*, *I do not doubt*, *nōn est dubium*, *there is no doubt*, and similar expressions.

ii. Verbs of hindering and refusing often take the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), especially when the verb is not negated.

## §560

A clause which is used as a noun may be called a Substantive Clause, as certain relative clauses are sometimes called 'adjective clauses'. But in practice the term is restricted to clauses which represent a nominative or an accusative case, the clauses which stand for an ablative being sometimes called adverbial clauses.

Even with this limitation the term is not quite precise. The fact is rather that the clause and the leading verb are mutually complementary; each reinforces the other. The simplest and probably the earliest form of such sentences is to be found in the paratactic use (see §268) of two verbs like *volō abeās*, *dīcāmus cēnseō*, *adeam optimum est*. From such verbs the usage spread by analogy to other verbs, and the complementary relation of the clause to the verb came to resemble the complementary force of the accusative, especially the accusative of cognate meaning (§390).

## §561

A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause.

A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive, or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative.

## §562

Substantive Clauses are classified as follows:

- i. Subjunctive Clauses (*ut*, *nē*, *ut nōn*, etc.). a. Of purpose (command, wish, fear) (§563, §564). b. Of result (happen, effect, etc.) (§568).
- ii. Indicative Clauses with *quod*: Fact, Specification, Feeling (§572).
- iii. Indirect Questions: Subjunctive, introduced by an Interrogative Word. (§573, §576).
- iv. Infinitive Clauses a. With verbs of ordering, wishing, etc. (§563). b. Indirect Discourse (§579 ff.).

### §563

Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish.

### §564

Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with *nē* affirmative and *nē nōn* or *ut* negative.

In this use *nē* is commonly to be translated by *that*, *ut* and *nē nōn* by *that not*.

### §565

*Volō* and its compounds, the impersonals *licet* and *oportet*, and the imperatives *dīc* and *fac* often take the Subjunctive without *ut*.

- i. Verbs of commanding and the like often take the subjunctive without *ut*.

Note. The subjunctive in this construction is the hortatory subjunctive used to express a command in Indirect Discourse.

### §566

A Substantive Clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive (Impersonal Construction.)

ii. Some verbs that take an infinitive instead of a subjunctive are used impersonally in the passive, and the infinitive becomes the subject of the sentence.

## §567

Clauses of Result may be used substantively:

- i. as the object of *faciō* etc. (§568)
- ii. as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§569)
- iii. in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative etc.

## §568

Substantive Clauses of Result with *ut* (negative *ut nōn*) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort—Such are especially *faciō* and its compounds (*efficiō*, *cōnficiō*, etc.) Verbs and phrases taking an *ut*-clause of result as subject or object are *accēdit*, *accidit*, *additur*, *altera est rēs*, *committō*, *cōsequor*, *contingit*, *efficiō*, *evenit*, *faciō*, *fit*, *flerī potest*, *fore*, *impetrō*, *integrum est*, *mōs est*, *mūnus est*, *necesse est*, *prope est*, *rēctum est*, *relinquitur*, *reliquum est*, *restat*, *tantī est*, *tantum abest*, and a few others.

## §569

Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the subject of the following:

Of passive verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort.

*Fore* (or *futūrum esse*) *ut* with a clause of result as subject is Often used instead of the Future Infinitive active or passive; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem.



## §572

A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consists of *quod* (in the sense of *that, the fact that*) with the Indicative.

The clause in the Indicative with *quod* is used when the statement is regarded as a fact.

Note. Like other substantive clauses, the clause with *quod* may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

## §573

An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt.

In grammatical form, exclamatory sentences are not distinguished from interrogative (see the third example below).

## §576

In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (Accusative of Anticipation).

An indirect question is occasionally introduced by *sī* in the sense of *whether*.

## §577

The use of the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) is a comparatively late form of speech, developed in the Latin and Greek only, and perhaps separately in each of them. It is wholly wanting in Sanskrit, but some forms like it have grown up in English and German.

The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of

Substantive Clause, the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The person of the verb necessarily conforms to the new relation of persons.

The construction of Indirect Discourse, however, is not limited to reports of the language of some person other than the speaker; it may be used to express what any one—whether the speaker or some one else—says, thinks, or perceives, whenever that which is said, thought, or perceived is capable of being expressed in the form of a complete sentence. For anything that can be said etc. can also be reported indirectly as well as directly.

The use of the Infinitive in the main clause undoubtedly comes from its use as a case-form to complete or modify the action expressed by the verb of saying and its object together. This object in time came to be regarded as, and in fact to all intents became, the subject of the infinitive. A transition state is found in Sanskrit, which, though it has no indirect discourse proper, yet allows an indirect predication after verbs of saying and the like by means of a predicative apposition, in such expressions as *“The maids told the king [that] his daughter [was] bereft of her senses.”*

The simple form of indirect statement with the accusative and infinitive was afterwards amplified by introducing dependent or modifying clauses; and in Latin it became a common construction, and could be used to report whole speeches etc., which in other languages would have the direct form. (Compare the style of reporting speeches in English, where only the person and tense are changed.)

The Subjunctive in the subordinate clauses of Indirect Discourse has no significance except to make more distinct the fact that these clauses are subordinate; consequently no direct connection has been traced between them and the uses of the mood in simple sentences. It is probable that the subjunctive in indirect questions (§574), in informal indirect discourse (§592), and in clauses of the integral part (§593) represents the earliest steps of a movement by which the subjunctive became in some degree a mood of subordination.

The Subjunctive standing for hortatory forms of speech in Indirect Discourse is simply the usual hortatory subjunctive, with only a change of person and tense (if necessary), as in the reporter's style.

## §580

In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive.

i. The verb of saying etc. is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence:

## §583

A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative.

## §584

The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is introduced, such as:

cadō	<i>I am falling.</i>
dīcit sē cadere	<i>he says that he is falling.</i>
dīxit sē cadere	<i>he said that he was falling.</i>
cadēbam	<i>I was falling.</i>
cecidī	<i>I fell, have fallen.</i>
cecidēram	<i>I had fallen.</i>
dīcit sē cecidisce	<i>he says that he was falling (fell, has fallen, had fallen).</i>
dīxit sē cecidisce	<i>he said that he fell (had fallen).</i>
cadam	<i>I shall fall.</i>

<i>dīcit sē cāsūrum [esse]</i>	<i>he says that he shall fall.</i>
<i>dixit sē cāsūrum [esse]</i>	<i>he said that he should fall.</i>
<i>ceciderō</i>	<i>I shall have fallen.</i>
<i>dīcit fore ut ceciderit [rare]</i>	<i>he says that he shall have fallen.</i>
<i>dixit fore ut cecidisset [rare]</i>	<i>he said that he should have fallen.</i>

i. All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct.

Note. Continued or repeated action in past time is sometimes expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Imperfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse and is often called the Imperfect Infinitive.

The present infinitive *posse* often has a *future sense*—“*totius Galliae sēsē potūrī posse spērant* ” (I.III), *they hope that they shall be able to get possession of all Gaul.*

## §586

A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

A real question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive; a rhetorical question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, is put in the Infinitive.

## §587

A Deliberative Subjunctive (§444) in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect.

## §588

All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well.

## §589

Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows:

The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive.

The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.

i. The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future conditions (§516ii) becomes the Future Infinitive like the Future Indicative in the apodosis of more vivid future conditions.

Thus there is no distinction between more and less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.

ii. In changing a Condition contrary to fact (§517) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice:

- i. The Protasis always remains unchanged in tense.
- ii. The Apodosis, if active, takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in *-ūrus* with *fuisse*.
- iii. If the verb of the Apodosis is passive or has no supine stem, the periphrasis *futūrum fuisse ut* (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.
- iv. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes a Perfect Infinitive.

## §592

A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker.

When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse.

### §593

A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause.

### §601

In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed:

iii. In coördinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (asyndeton). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

### §640

Anastrophe: inversion of the usual order of words.

Apodosis: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see Protasis).

Asyndeton: omission of conjunctions (§323ii).

Ellipsis: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense.

Hendiadys (hen dia duoin): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

Protasis: a clause introduced by a conditional expression (*if, when, whoever*), leading to a conclusion called the Apodosis (§512).



# LEWIS & SHORT'S LATIN DICTIONARY